



*THE "CHANDOS CLASSICS."*

---

THE  
LIFE AND ADVENTURES  
OF  
ROBINSON CRUSOE

NOW FIRST CORRECTLY REPRINTED FROM  
THE ORIGINAL EDITION OF 1719

*With an Introduction*

BY

WILLIAM LEE, ESQ

ORIGINAL ILLUSTRATIONS BY ERNEST GRISET



LONDON  
FREDERICK WARNE AND CO.  
BEDFORD STREET, STRAND

Ballantyne Press  
BALLANTYNE, HANSON AND CO  
EDINBURGH AND LONDON



## THE PREFACE

TO THE ORIGINAL EDITION, 1719.

*IF ever the Story of any private Man's Adventures in the World were worth making Public, and were acceptable when Publish'd, the Editor of this Account thinks this will be so*

*The Wonders of this Man's Life exceed all that (he thinks) is to be found extant, the Life of one Man being scarce capable of a greater Variety*

*The Story is told with Modesty, with Seriousness, and with a religious Application of Events to the Uses to which wise Men always apply them (viz.) to the Instruction of others by this Example, and to justify and honour the Wisdom of Providence in all the Variety of our Circumstances, let them happen how they will*

*The Editor believes the thing to be a just History of Fact, neither is there any Appearance of Fiction in it And however thinks, because all such things are dispatch'd, that the Improvement of it, as well to the Diversion, as to the Instruction of the Reader, will be the same; and as such, he thinks, without farther Compliment to the World, he does them a great Service in the Publication.*



*[The ornamental head-pieces and initial letters are exact fac similes of those used  
in the First Edition of "Robinson Crusoe."]*

# INTRODUCTION

## TO THE PRESENT EDITION.

---

*To Girls and Boys,—Young and Old,—Everywhere.*

ON this twenty-fifth day of April, in the year one thousand eight hundred and sixty nine, which is exactly a century and a half since his first appearance in the world, it does seem like an act of presumptuous supercrogation to say,—“Allow me to introduce to you Mr *Robinson Crusoe*, and his Strange Surprizing Adventures!” Indeed I can almost hear a reply, in a million voices,—of many languages,—from all points of the compass,—“Why, we have known him ever since we can remember!”

That may be, yet, without presumption, I think I shall be able to tell some, at least, of my readers more than they already know. This then must be my apology. Those who know “all about it,” and need no “Introduction,” may turn over a few leaves, and take their old acquaintance by the hand, without further ceremony.

The historic original of Robinson Crusoe was Alexander Selcraig, the seventh son of John Selcraig and Euphan Mackie. He was born at Largo in the county of Fife, in Scotland, A D 1676, and went to sea in 1695, changing his name to Selkirk. He was not again heard of until 1701, when he returned to his native place. On the 18th May 1703, he sailed from the Downs in the Cinque Ports galley, 96 tons, 18 guns, and 63 men, Charles Pickering, captain, Thomas Stradling, lieutenant, and himself, Selkirk, sailing-master. On the 24th November, the same year, they anchored at La Granda, Brazil, where Capt. Pickering died, and the command devolved upon Stradling. They left on the 8th December, and on the 10th February, the following year, cast anchor at the Island of Juan Fernandez. After taking in wood and water they sailed on the 29th February in pursuit of a French ship, but returned in the month of September. In consequence of frequent quarrels between himself and Stradling, and a fear that the ship was not sea-worthy, Selkirk determined to leave the vessel, and when she departed at the end of the month,

all his effects, with additional necessaries, were taken on shore, and he remained alone on the island

On the 2nd February 1709, the privateer ships *Duke* and *Duchess*, commanded by Captain Woodes Rogers, anchored at Juan Fernandez, and found Selkirk there. He engaged in the capacity of Mate on board the *Duke*, and they sailed on the 12th of the same month, arriving at Erith, on the Thames, the 14th October 1711.

In the following year, Capt. Woodes Rogers published an account of his voyages, in which he relates the finding of Selkirk, and how he had lived alone on the island "four years and four months." Another officer of the same expedition, Capt. Edward Cooke, published a similar volume during the same year, and states on the title-page — "Wherein an Account is given of Mr Alexander Selkirk, his Manner of living and taming some wild Beasts during the four Years and four Months he liv'd upon the uninhabited Island of *Juan Fernandez*." Sir Richard Steele appears to have had an interview with Selkirk soon after the arrival of the latter in England, and made his adventures the subject of No 26 of *The Englishman*, published in December, 1713.

These are all the historical resources known to have been available for the production of "*Robinson Crusoe*."

I may, however, add a few particulars as to the subsequent career of Selkirk. His share of prize money, while on board the ship *Duke*, amounted to £800, which, having received, he set out for his native place, and arrived there early in 1712. After investing his money he appears to have remained in Largo until 1717, when he again went to sea, leaving his property in charge of his relations. He never returned, though he was heard of at times from Bristol, Liverpool, and London, but he became a Lieutenant in the Royal Navy, and died in that capacity on board his Majesty's ship *Weymouth*, in the year 1723.

The first attempt to collect all the facts that could be ascertained about Selkirk, was by Isaac James, of Bristol, who, in 1800, published a small volume, entitled, "*Providence Displayed or, The Remarkable Adventures of Alexander Selkirk,*" &c. &c. A few additional particulars are contained in "*The Life of Alexander Selkirk,*" by John Howell, London, 1829. The most recent work, I believe, on the subject, is entitled "*Crusonia, or, Truth versus Fiction, elucidated in a History of the Islands of Juan Fernandez, by a Retiree Governor of that Colony*" Manchester. Published by the author "1843." The author was Lieut.-Col. Thomas Sutcliffe, and his account of Selkirk forms the second chapter of his work, pp 14-52. I have yet to state one interesting fact, on the authority of the

*Parera Star and Herald* of 6th October, 1868, namely, that a monument had been executed by Messrs J Child & Son, Valparaiso, for erection on the island of Juan Fernandez. Its inscription will tell its own tale,—

IN MEMORY OF  
ALEXANDER SELKIRK,  
MARINER.

A native of LARGO, in the County of FIFE, SCOTLAND,  
Who lived on this Island, in complete Solitude,  
For four years and four months.

---

He was landed from the Cinque Ports galley, 96 tons,  
18 guns A.D. 1704, and was taken off in the  
Duke, privateer, 12th February, 1709

---

He died Lieutenant of H.M.S. Weymouth,  
A.D. 1723, aged 47 years.

---

This Tablet is erected near Selkirk's look-out,  
By COMMODORE POWELL and the OFFICERS  
of H.M.S. TOPAZE, A.D. 1868

The above, erected in a desolate island on the opposite side of the globe, after the lapse of a hundred and fifty years, is evidence of the force of intellectual genius exerted by the writer who first made Selkirk famous. This brings us back to the author of "*Robinson Crusoe*," whose imperishable work will still exist, in all its freshness, when the most endurable monument of marble shall have been resolved into its original dust.

The great reputation of "*Robinson Crusoe*" has attached a degree of interest to every fact connected with its history. As to the authorship of the work. Nearly fifty years after its first publication a rumour was alluded to, in the *Biographia Britannica*, that Dr Arbuthnot was the writer, but no reason was given, and the account concludes with stating—"it was the delectable Offspring of the teeming Brain of Daniel Defoe, a Writer famous in his Generation for Politics and Poetry."

A more circumstantial tissue of hearsay appeared about eight years later, when Mr. T. Warton gravely stated that the Rev Benjamin Holloway, of Middleton Stony, told him, that Lord Sunderland assured him, that the first volume of "*Robinson Crusoe*" was written

by the Earl of Oxford, while a Prisoner in the Tower, "as an amusement under confinement,"—and was given to Defoe, who visited him there, and, that Defoe printed it as his own, with his Lordship's approbation, adding the second volume, "the inferiority of which is generally acknowledged" Now, 1st, Lord Oxford was so prostrated by illness, during the greater part of his imprisonment, that it was matter of speculation whether or not he would live to be tried. He was incapable of preparing his defence, and on that account the House of Lords, from time to time, granted his petitions for postponement of his trial. He was therefore in no capacity to write a romance "as an amusement under confinement." 2nd,—He was discharged from his impeachment, by the House of Lords, two years before "Robinson Crusoe" was heard of. 3rd,—Only the Earl of Oxford and Defoe could have originally known if there had been any foundation of truth in the matter, and there is not a tittle of evidence that either ever uttered a word thereon. 4th,—Lord Sunderland would have been one of the last to whom they would have communicated the secret, because —5th,—During the whole of the impeachment against Lord Oxford, Lord Sunderland spoke and voted against him. There could be no intercourse between the prisoner, and the man who believed him a traitor, and sought to bring his head to the block. 6th,—Defoe was in the service of the government, and under Lord Sunderland's power, during Lord Oxford's imprisonment, and he so continued when "Robinson Crusoe" was published. Self interest would make him reticent. 7th,—The smallest share of critical acumen is sufficient to decide not only that the second volume of "Robinson Crusoe" is not inferior to the first, but that the two volumes are equally the offspring of the same parent.

It seems the singular fate of human greatness to be misunderstood, disparaged, and comparatively forgotten by the generations immediately succeeding. Shakespeare, Milton, Queen Anne, the Duke of Marlborough, Daniel Defoe, and many others might be mentioned as instances of this neglect of posterity. Great men ultimately, however, become incorporated with the history of their country, and some later literary research brings to light much that had been obscured, and enables after ages to form more accurate judgment of their characters and genius. Defoe is now much better known than he was a hundred years ago. Going back to the pamphlets and newspapers of the period, it becomes obvious that no doubt whatever existed, at the time, as to the authorship of "Robinson Crusoe." In the year of its first appearance, and even before the second volume was published, a mutilated abridgment of the first was clandestinely printed for T. Cox, of the Amsterdam Coffee-House, in London. When remonstrated with and threatened, he only replied by an

Advertisement in "The Flying Post," in which he abused and insulted Defoe, proving, that although the work was published anonymously, there was, even then, no doubt as to the authorship. In the preface to the first edition of the second volume Defoe alludes to this transaction. In the same year also, Charles Gildon published a satirical pamphlet, entitled, "The Life and Strange Surprizing Adventures of Mr D—— De F——, of London, Hosier, who has "lived above fifty Years by himself, in the Kingdoms of North and "South Britain. The various Shapes he has appear'd in, and the "Discoveries he has made for the Benefit of his Country. In a "Dialogue between *Him, Robinson Crusoe*, and his Man *Friday* "With Remarks Serious and Comical upon the Life of Crusoe." In "An Epistle to D—— D' F——, the reputed Author of Robinson Crusoe." The writer confesses that "Crusoe" was already "fam'd "from Tuttle Street to Limehouse-hole. There is not an old "Woman," says he, "that can go to the price of it, but buys thy "'Life and Adventures,' and leaves it as a Legacy, with the "'Pilgrim's Progress,' the 'Practice of Piety,' and 'God's Revenge "against Murther,' to her Posterity."

Defoe does not seem to have replied to the above, but when, a few years later, Bishop Benjamin Hoadley inserted some strictures in the *London Journal* about "Robinson Crusoe" filling his pockets with biscuit, after having previously divested himself of his clothes, Defoe replied very warmly in *Applebee's Journal*. In like manner he was highly incensed at one of the pirates, who then infested the coasts of Carolina and Virginia, for having named his ship *Robinson Crusoe*, and calls him "a most bloody-minded murdering Rogue." A collateral and inferential bearing on the fact of Defoe's authorship may be found in the chagrin of the booksellers against Mr William Taylor, for his having secured to himself the great profits arising from the publication of "Robinson Crusoe," and, that seven or more of them shortly afterward, entered into a confederacy for the joint publication of such works of fiction as Defoe might write.

Another unfounded rumour of the generation after Defoe's decease was, that Selkirk had written some Memoir or Journal, which he placed in Defoe's hands in order that he might digest it for publication, but that the latter used the documents for his own purpose to the damage of their author,—and then returned the papers to Selkirk, telling him his history would not sell. The answer is simple and complete. I have stated that Selkirk returned to England in 1711,—that the volume of Capt Woodes Rogers, and that of Capt. Edward Cooke were both published in 1712, followed by Sir Richard Steele's paper in 1713. These three accounts contained what Selkirk had to say of himself, and being printed, they became public property. Yet

they remained otherwise entirely unappropriated until Defoe's work appeared in 1719, and, in "Robinson Crusoe," nothing has been discovered to be historic fact except what he gathered from those previously published works. I have mentioned the titles of subsequent accounts of Selkirk, containing many additional particulars of his adventures, but none of these are to be found in "Robinson Crusoe." Mr James and others, to whom we are indebted for investigating the history of Selkirk, tell us that "John Selkirk, a weaver at Largo, in 1794, was in possession of the Gun and Chest which his great-uncle brought from Juan Fernandez, and they also had a drinking Cup of Cocoa-nut shell, tipped with silver, which had been his property." These treasures are known to be still in existence, but of those who had carefully preserved such relics, Mr James states (in 1800) "Even Selkirk's relations do not know that he left any Journals behind him." The conclusion is evident—that Defoe fairly acquired, from published accounts, some of the fundamental incidents of "Robinson Crusoe's" Life, but the ever-varying events that fill up the historic monotony,—the useful and improving moralities,—and the fascinating style,—are all his own.

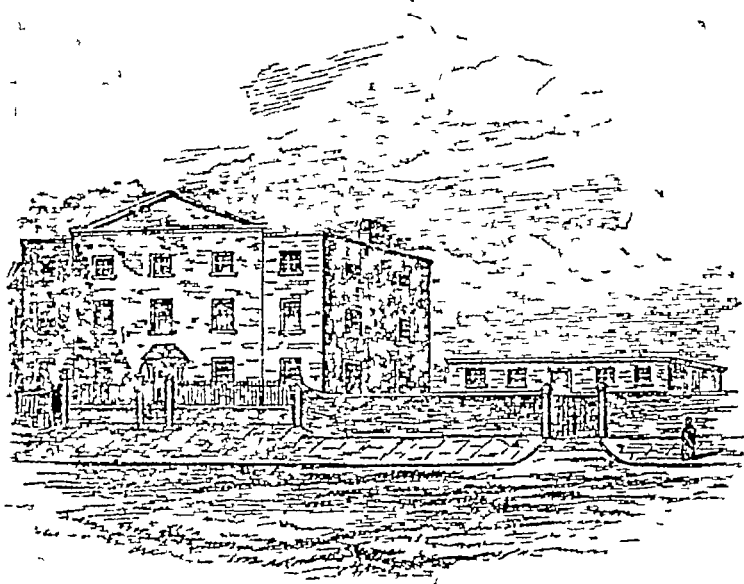
It may add to the interest of "Robinson Crusoe," with young readers, to know something of the circumstances under which it was written. There is every reason to believe that Defoe was then quite easy as to his pecuniary circumstances, yet there is perhaps no parallel in the world's history to his marvellous literary industry. The following is an epitome of his known labours, from the appearance of the first volume of "Robinson Crusoe," on the 25th of April, 1719 (pp 366), to the publication, on the 6th of August 1720, of the third volume (now never reprinted,) entitled "Serious Reflections during the Life and Surprising Adventures of Robinson Crusoe. With his Vision of the Angelick World," &c.

Besides holding a very responsible though objectionable office of "Censor of Public Journals," under the government of George I, he edited, at the same time, a monthly publication called *Mercurius Politicus*, each number containing not less than 64 pages, a *Weekly Journal*,—occasionally *The Whitehall Evening Post*, published thrice weekly,—and part of the time a paper called *The Daily Post*. In addition to these, the first volume of Crusoe was immediately followed by *Some Account of the Life, &c., of Henry Baron Goertz*, (pp 46) *A Letter to the Dissenters*, (pp 27) *The Anatomy of Exchange Alley*, (pp 64) Then appeared the second volume of *Robinson Crusoe*, published on the 20th of August 1719, (pp 380) - This was succeeded by *Dickory Cronke*, (pp 64) *Charity still a Christian Virtue*, (pp 72) - *The King of Pirates, Captain Avery*, (pp 100) *The Chimera*, (pp 76) *The Life and Adventures of Mr Duncan*

*Campbell*, (pp 344) *Campbell's Paquet, an Apparition*, (pp 14) *Memoirs of a Cavalier*, (pp 350) *The Life, Adventures, and Piracies of Captain Singleton*, (pp 344) After which appeared the third volume of *Robinson Crusoe*, published on the 6th August 1720, (pp 370)

The aggregate of Defoe's literary labours, during about a year and a half, including "*Robinson Crusoe*," exceeds four thousand octavo printed pages

I must mention another fact connected with the history of "*Robinson Crusoe*," and its great popularity Even so minute a circumstance as the place where it was written has not escaped controversy, and the claims of different localities have been numerous Most of these claims rest upon an erroneous supposition that Defoe was, at that time, under the frowns of Government, and obliged to conceal himself. A house in Halifax, Yorkshire, is pointed out in the history of that town Gateshead, in the county of Durham, has claimed the honour A house in Harrow-alley, Whitechapel Market, has been said to be the birthplace of both "*Robinson Crusoe*" and the *Journal of the Plague*, although three years intervened between their publication. A correspondent assured one of Defoe's biographers that "*Robinson*



DEFOE'S HOUSE AT STOKES NEWINGTON

*Crusoe*" was written in the back chamber over the washhouse of a cottage in the little village of Hartley, in Kent. It might be deemed conclusive that Gildon, writing at the time, lays the scene of the scur-



rious dialogue already alluded to, in a field at Stoke Newington, where Defoe would be close to his home. We now know, from more recent researches, that he was in London, where his duties under the Government imperatively required his presence,—that he was under no necessity of concealment—and, that “Robinson Crusoe” could only have been written in his own house at Stoke Newington.

But I must now acquaint such readers of “Robinson Crusoe” as are not already aware of the fact, that besides having Alexander Selkirk as an “historical Original,” there is enclosed, in an occasional manner, throughout its pages, an “Emblematic Original,” namely, that Crusoe contains the principal events of Defoe’s own Life.

The first and second volumes contain all the narrative and romantic part of “Robinson Crusoe,” but I have stated that there is a third volume, now never reprinted, and little known, entitled *Serious Reflections*, &c. It is filled with metaphysical disquisitions on morality and religion, divided into chapters and sections—*On Solitude*,—*On Honesty*,—*On Immorality of Conversation*,—*On the present State of Religion in the World*,—*On Divine Providence*,—*On the proportion between the numbers of Christians and Pagans*,—and a *Vision of the Angelic World*. From this brief enumeration of principal topics it will be obvious that, however interesting these digressive *Reflections*, may be to the Christian philosopher, this third volume is not adapted to the same class of readers as the two narrative volumes. It wants that simple naturalness, the charm of reality—which, in them, is spread over the commonest incidents, and yet,—all concentrating in one solitary man,—combine to perfect the fascination of the story.

The above may be sufficient to serve two purposes—first, why the volume of *Serious Reflections* has rarely been reprinted with the narrative, and is also omitted in the present edition,—and secondly, why I have thus mentioned it in this Introduction, namely, that the Preface to the third volume discloses the fact, that the vicissitudes of Defoe’s own Life are parabolically related in the narrative volumes of the work.

In this Preface he affirms that “the story, though Allegorical, is also Historical. Farther, that there is a Man alive, and well known too, the Actions of whose Life are the just subject of these Volumes, and to whom all or most Part of the Story most directly alludes, this may be depended upon for Truth. Without letting the Reader into a nearer Explication of the Matter, I proceed to let him know, that the happy deductions I have employed myself to make from all the Circumstances of my Story, will abundantly make him amends for his not having the Emblem explained by the Original. In a Word, there’s not a Circumstance in the imaginary Story, but has its just allusion to a real Story, and Chimes Part for Part, and Step

"for Step, with the inimitable *Life of Robinson Crusoe*" With respect to the fictitious representation of Crusoe's forced confinement in an island, he says, "'tis as reasonable to represent one kind of Imprisonment by another, as it is to represent any Thing that really exists by that which exists not. Had the common way of writing a Man's private History been taken, and I had given you the conduct or Life of a Man you knew, and whose Misfortunes and Infirmities perhaps you had sometimes unjustly triumphed over, all I could have said would have yielded no Diversion, and perhaps scarce have obtained a reading, or at best no attention. The Teacher, *like a greater*, having no Honour in his own country"

From this it is quite clear that Defoe had seriously considered the propriety, or otherwise, of writing his autobiography, but having in his surprising adventures, as he goes on to say, "suffered all manner of Violences and Oppressions, injurious Reproaches, contempt of Men, attacks of Devils, corrections from Heaven, and Oppositions on Earth, and had innumerable ups and downs in matters of Fortune," he was convinced that the clearing up of his own character and conduct, in plain words, would be an indictment against the age in which he had lived. That his contemporaries would either refuse to read, or would resent it. He therefore gave to the world the eventful story of his own Life, and the lessons contained therein, under the "Emblem" of *Robinson Crusoe*, "without letting the Reader into a nearer Explication of the matter"

If we could now lay open *The Life and Strange Surprising Adventures of Robinson Crusoe*, side by side with *Memoirs of the Life of Daniel Defoe*, and trace throughout the parallels between what he calls the "Emblem" and the "Original," the results would be as valuable as interesting, but the attempt would, we fear, be comparatively in vain. What the author intended to be only veiled, time has rendered obscure, if not consigned to entire oblivion.

Having already given the exact dates when the first editions of the respective volumes of Crusoe were published, I must add a few words as to the success of the work. The first volume was so immediately sold off that a second edition was published on the 12th May, only seventeen days after the first,—a third, on the 6th June,—a spurious edition on the 7th August;—and, on the following day, the fourth edition appeared. Meanwhile, the author had been busy on the second volume, and there is reason to believe that its first edition, on the 20th August, was a very large issue. During the same year the two volumes were translated into German and French. From the 7th October, 1719, to the 19th October, 1720, the first and second volumes were reprinted, in weekly portions, in a newspaper

called the *Original London Post, or Heathcote's Intelligencer*. The fifth edition was an abridgment, in one volume, on the 19th Nov. 1720,—the sixth, in two volumes, 28th October, 1721,—the seventh, on the 28th February, 1722, and the eighth, in two volumes, with 14 copper plates, (called the 6th Edition,) on the 5th of June, in the same year. Since then, it has been translated and printed in Italian, Spanish, Russian, Arabic, and almost every living language that has become subjected to grammar and the press. Even Latin and Greek are not without their translations of this immortal work. In English, the editions have been, and continue to be innumerable,—from the elegantly illustrated, gilt-leaved and morocco-bound, costly edition, for the aristocratic drawing-room,—down, down, through all sizes, abridgments, and prices, suited to every grade of society and every class of readers, to the penny, and even farthing books, vended only from the basket of the itinerant village hawker.

It has been truly said that Defoe took no more of "Robinson Crusoe" from the accounts of Selkirk than Shakespeare did of Macbeth and Hamlet from the old Scotch and Danish Chronicles, yet we have seen that all the materials, available to Defoe, had been published, and were therefore at the service of any other writer, from six to seven years, though none had made use of them, before the genius of our author gave to the world his celebrated romance. No sooner however had the work appeared than its popularity called forth many imitations, some of them short-lived, but several still known and read.

Mr Wilson is mistaken in saying that the first rival of Crusoe was "Philip Quarll." The following work was published on the 3rd October, 1719, and it will be at once seen that the name "Vendchurch" is a travestied synonym of Selkirk. "The Adventures and Surprising Deliverances of James Dubourdieu and his Wife, from the uninhabited Part of the Island of Paradise, &c. Also the Adventures of Alexander Vendchurch, set on Shore on an Island in the South Sea," &c. The next was, "The Life and Strange Surprising Adventures of Major Alexander Ramkins," &c., published the 3rd Dec. 1719. Two days afterwards appeared, "The Voyages, Travels, and dangerous Adventures of Captain Richard Falconer," &c. Defoe himself further contributed to the love of maritime adventure by writing,—*"The King of Pirates Being an Account of the Famous Enterprizes of Captain Avery, the Mock King of Madagascar,"* &c., published on the 10th Dec. 1719. And again, on the 4th of June, in the following year, appeared his *"Life, Adventures and Piracies of the Famous Captain Singleton,"* &c. Many of the imitations of Crusoe are now almost forgotten, but I may mention *"The Voyages and Adventures of Miles Phillips, a West Country Sailor, &c. Written by Himself,"* &c., published the 26th

Feb 1724. The colonies of North America must also have their *Crusoe*, and in Dec. 1725, a book was published at Boston, New England, entitled, "The Strange Adventures and Signal Deliverances of Mr. Philip Ashton, Jun, &c who lived alone upon a Desolate Island in the Gulph of Honduras for about Sixteen Months" I may also notice, in order of date, while passing, that on the 20th of January, 1726, was published "A Voyage Round the World by Way of the Great South Sea, &c. By Captain George Shelvocke." From this book it appears that Shelvocke's ship was cast away, the 25th of May, 1720, on the island of Juan Fernandez, and that he and his crew remained there until the 6th of October in the same year. He fully describes the island, but mentions no relics of Selkirk, or of any previous human inhabitant, and he appears to have been, by long absence from England, ignorant of the existence of "*Robinson Crusoe*" On the 10th of March, 1726, appeared, "The Voyages and Adventures of Captain Robert Boyle," &c. And in October of the same year, Dean Swift's celebrated "Travels into several Remote Nations of the World, by Lemuel Gulliver," &c. The longest-lived, among the strict imitations of *Crusoe*, was published on the 15th of April, 1727, and is entitled "The Hermit or, the Unparalleled Sufferings and Surprizing Adventures of Mr Philip Quarll, an Englishman Who was discovered by Mr Dorrington, a Bristol Merchant, upon an uninhabited Island in the South Sea, where he has lived above Fifty Years, without any human Assistance, still continues to reside, and will not come away," &c. This, though very inferior to *Crusoe*, is still reprinted in abridged form, and in numerous editions. I might go on to mention, "A Voyage to Cacklogallinia, by Captain S Brunt," published the 15th of July, 1727. And "The Pleasant and Surprizing Adventures of Mr Robert Drury, during his Fifteen Years' Captivity on the Island of Madagascar," &c which first appeared on the 24th of May, 1729, and, in which, the hero is almost as perfectly isolated inland, among the barbarous natives, as *Crusoe* was on his desolate island. I might enumerate others that appeared between 1730 and 1750, when "The Life and Adventures of Peter Wilkins, a Cornish Man Taken from his own Mouth in his Passage to England from off Cape Horn in America, in the Ship Hector," was published. These however will suffice to show how large a fleet of smaller craft followed in the wake of that which, in 1719, began its course along the stream of time, having on board "*Robinson Crusoe*, of York, Mariner"

Thus, to recapitulate, I have given a brief account of the "Historical original" of this celebrated work,—of its authorship,—the circumstances under which it was composed,—the place where it was written,—its "Emblematic Original," as enclosing an autobiography

of Defoe, the author,—how it was received by the world, its immediate and lasting popularity,—the numerous rivals and imitations that followed it.

Shall I still keep my readers from the rich intellectual repast before them, by lengthening out this "grace before meat" with any feeble observations and encomiums of my own? As to the naturalness,—the truth and simplicity,—the fine sentiments, the delicate wit,—the pure morality,—the instructive vindication of the ways of Providence,—to be found everywhere in the following pages, all of which, and other unmentioned beauties, make it greatly superior to any other work of its kind? I am convinced that I should not deserve thanks for so doing, nor even if I were to greatly extend this Introduction by quoting the criticism and eloquent things said of it by a host of writers and men of genius, among whom are the names of Dr Blair, Dr Johnson, M. Rousseau, M. Marmontel, Chalmers, Dr Beattie, Dr Towers, Sir Walter Scott, Charles Lamb, Judge Taft, S. T. Coleridge, Wilson, Hazlitt, and Archbishop Whately. The day has long since gone by when "Robinson Crusoe" required any testimonial as to character.

I have aimed only at adding something to what is popularly known respecting the history of the book, and hope I have to some extent succeeded.

Probably few of the present generation, especially of the young, have ever seen the first and unabridged edition of "Robinson Crusoe," except perhaps the one locked up, as a rarity, in a glass show-case in the British Museum. Scarcely any work has been more mutilated by printers, and there is reason to doubt whether, in modern times, the original has ever been reprinted verbatim. I am able to affirm that the present is an exact reproduction from my own copy of the first edition. The illustrations by an eminent French artist have been designed expressly for this edition.

WILLIAM LEE,

BAYSWATER, 1869

THE LIFE  
AND STRANGE SURPRISING ADVENTURES  
OF  
ROBINSON CRUSOE.

## PRELIMINARY.

THE Publisher desires just one word with the readers of this edition of "Robinson Crusoe." After making a careful examination of every accessible reprint of importance from 1719 down to the present time, great was his surprise to find that not one of the hundreds of so-called "revised editions" had given the correct text of the Author, but had—to all appearance—copied from each other, adding a few variations here and there to give an air of originality. Occasionally these variations consist of such trivialities as the change of one word for another, but the substitution of even homely for polite expressions assists in spoiling a narrative charming for its perfect simplicity, thus "horn" has been changed to "residence," "household goods" to "furniture," &c. Even the text of a late edition in the Globe Library must be received with some suspicion when the Editor tells us that he "printed from the edition of 1719 but collated it with earlier editions!" which is all nonsense, because there are no editions earlier than 1719. By the kindness of Mr Lee, a copy of the very valuable and rare first edition, in two vols., 1719, has been deposited with the printers during the progress of the work through the press and there in a glass case, every word and letter have been examined in preparing the present edition, which is believed to represent the only perfect text of Defoe's narrative since the time of its Author.



THE  
LIFE AND ADVENTURES  
OF  
ROBINSON CRUSOE, &c.



WAS born in the Year 1632, in the City of *York*, of a good Family, though not of that Country, my Father being a Foreigner of *Bremen*, who settled first at *Hull* He got a good Estate by Merchandise, and leaving off his Trade, lived afterwards at *York*, from whence he had married my Mother, whose Relations were named *Robinson*, a very good Family in that Country, and from whom I was called *Robinson Kreutznaer*, but by the usual Corruption of Words in *England*, we are now called, nay we call ourselves, and write our Name *Crusoe*, and so my Companions always called me

I had two elder Brothers, one of which was Lieutenant Colonel to an *English* Regiment of Foot in *Flanders*, formerly commanded by the famous Col *Lockhart*, and was killed at the Battle near *Dunkirk* against the *Spaniards* What became of my second Brother I never knew any more than my Father or Mother did know what was become of me

Being the third Son of the Family, and not bred to any Trade, my Head began to be filled very early with rambling Thoughts My Father, who was very ancient, had given me a competent Share of Learning, as far as House Education and a Country Free-School generally goes,



and design'd me for the Law, but I would be satisfied with nothing but going to Sea, and my Inclination to this led me so strongly against the Will, nay the Commands of my Father, and against all the Entreaties and Persuasions of my Mother and other Friends, that there seemed to be something fatal in that Propension of Nature tending directly to the Life of Misery which was to befall me

My Father, a wise and grave Man, gave me serious and excellent Counsel against what he foresaw was my Design. He called me one Morning into his Chamber, where he was confined by the Gout, and expostulated very warmly with me upon this Subject. He asked me what Reasons more than a mere wandering Inclination I had for leaving my Father's House and my native Country, where I might be well introduced, and had a Prospect of raising my Fortunes by Application and Industry, with a Life of Ease and Pleasure. He told me it was for Men of desperate Fortunes on one Hand, or of aspiring, superior Fortunes on the other, who went abroad upon Adventures, to rise by Enterprize, and make themselves famous in Undertakings of a Nature out of the common Road, that these things were all either too far above me, or too far below me, that mine was the middle State, or what might be called the upper Station of *Low Life*, which he had found by long Experience was the best State in the World, the most suited to human Happiness, not exposed to the Miseries and Hardships, the Labour and Sufferings of the mechanic Part of Mankind, and not embarrass'd with the Pride, Luxury, Ambition and Envy of the upper Part of Mankind. He told me, I might judge of the Happiness of this State, by this one thing, *viz* That this was the State of Life which all other People envied, that Kings have frequently lamented the miserable Consequences of being born to great things, and wished they had been placed in the Middle of the two Extremes, between the Mean and the Great, that the wise Man gave his Testimony to this as the just Standard of true Felicity, when he prayed to have neither Poverty or Riches.

He bid me observe it, and I should always find, that the Calamities of Life were shared among the upper and lower Part of Mankind, but that the middle Station had the fewest Disasters, and was not expos'd to so many Vicissitudes as the higher or lower Part of Mankind; nay, they were not subjected to so many Distempers and Uneasinesses either of Body or Mind, as those were who, by vicious Living, Luxury and Extravagances on one Hand, or by hard Labour,

Want of Necessaries, and mean or insufficient Diet on the other Hand, bring Distempers upon themselves by the natural Consequences of their Way of Living, *That* the middle Station of Life was calculated for all kinds of Virtues and all kinds of Enjoyments, that Peace and Plenty were the Handmaids of a middle Fortune, that Temperance, Moderation, Quietness, Health, Society, all agreeable Diversions, and all desirable Pleasures, were the Blessings attending the middle Station of Life, that this Way Men went silently and smoothly through the World, and comfortably out of it, not embarrass'd with the Labours of the Hands or of the Head, not sold to the Life of Slavery for daily Bread, or harass'd with perplex'd Circumstances, which rob the Soul of Peace, and the Body of Rest, not enrag'd with the Passion of Envy, or secret burning Lust of Ambition for great things; but in easy Circumstances sliding gently through the World, and sensibly tasting the Sweets of living, without the bitter, feeling that they are happy, and learning by every Day's Experience to know it more sensibly

After this, he pressed me earnestly, and in the most affectionate manner, not to play the young Man, not to precipitate myself into Miseries which Nature and the Station of Life I was born in, seemed to have provided against, that I was under no Necessity of seeking my Bread; that he would do well for me, and endeavour to enter me fairly into the Station of Life which he had been just recommending to me; and that if I was not very easy and happy in the World, it must be my mere Fate or Fault that must hinder it, and that he should have nothing to answer for, having thus discharg'd his Duty in warning me against Measures which he knew would be to my Hurt. In a word, that as he would do very kind things for me if I would stay and settle at Home as he directed, so he would not have so much Hand in my Misfortunes, as to give me any Encouragement to go away. And to close all, he told me I had my elder Brother for an Example, to whom he had used the same earnest Persuasions to keep him from going into the Low Country Wars, but could not prevail, his young Desires prompting him to run into the Army, where he was killed; and though he said he would not cease to pray for me, yet he would venture to say to me, that if I did take this foolish Step, God would not bless me, and I would have Leisure hereafter to reflect upon having neglected his Counsel when there might be none to assist in my Recovery.

I observed in this last Part of his Discourse, which was truly Prophetic, though I suppose my Father did not know it to be so himself, I say, I observed the Tears run down his Face very plentifully, and especially when he spoke of my Brother who was killed, and that when he spoke of my having Leisure to repent, and none to assist me, he was so moved, that he broke off the Discourse, and told me, his Heart was so full he could say no more to me.

I was sincerely affected with this Discourse, as indeed who could be otherwise, and I resolv'd not to think of going abroad any more, but to settle at home according to my Father's Desire. But alas! a few Days wore it all off, and in short, to prevent any of my Father's farther Importunities, in a few Weeks after, I resolv'd to run quite away from him. However, I did not act so hastily neither as my first Heat of Resolution prompted, but I took my Mother, at a time when I thought her a little pleasanter than ordinary, and told her, that my Thoughts were so entirely bent upon seeing the World, that I should never settle to anything with Resolution enough to go through with it, and my Father had better give me his Consent than force me to go without it, that I was now Eighteen Years old, which was too late to go Apprentice to a Trade, or Clerk to an Attorney, that I was sure if I did, I should never serve out my time, and I should certainly run away from my Master before my Time was out, and go to Sea, and if she would speak to my Father to let me go but one Voyage abroad, if I came home again and did not like it, I would go no more, and I would promise by a double Diligence to recover that Time I had lost.

This put my Mother into a great Passion. She told me, she knew it would be to no Purpose to speak to my Father upon any such Subject, that he knew too well what was my Interest to give his Consent to anything so much for my Hurt, and that she wondered how I could think of any such thing after such a Discourse as I had had with my Father, and such kind and tender Expressions as she knew my Father had used to me, and that, in short, if I would ruin myself there was no Help for me, but I might depend I should never have their Consent to it. That for her Part she would not have so much Hand in my Destruction, and I should never have it to say, that my Mother was willing when my Father was not.

Though my Mother refused to move it to my Father, yet, as I have heard afterwards, she reported all the Discourse to him, and that my

Father, after showing a great Concern at it, said to her with a Sigh, That Boy might be happy if he would stay at home, but if he goes abroad he will be the miserablest Wretch that was ever born I can give no Consent to it

It was not till almost a Year after this that I broke loose, though in the mean time I continued obstinately deaf to all Proposals of settling to Business, and frequently expostulating with my Father and Mother, about their being so positively determin'd against what they



knew my Inclinations prompted me to But being one Day at *Hull*, where I went casually, and without any Purpose of making an Elopement that time, but I say, being there, and one of my Companions being going by Sea to *London*, in his Father's Ship, and prompting me to go with them, with the common Allurement of Seafaring Men, *viz* That it should cost me nothing for my Passage, I consulted neither Father or Mother any more, nor so much as sent them Word of it, but leaving them to hear of it as they might, without God's Blessing, or my Father's, without any Consideration of C

stances or Consequences, and in an ill Hour, God knows On the first of *September* 1651, I went on Board a Ship bound for *London* never any young Adventurer's Misfortunes, I believe, began sooner, or continued longer than mine The Ship was no sooner gotten out of the *Humber*, but the Wind began to blow, and the Waves to rise in a most frightful manner, and as I had never been at Sea before, I was most inexpressibly sick in Body, and terrified in my Mind I began now seriously to reflect upon what I had done, and how justly I was overtaken by the Judgment of Heaven for my wicked leaving my Father's House, and abandoning my Duty, all the good Counsel of my Parents, my Father's Tears and my Mother's Entreaties came now fresh into my Mind, and my Conscience, which was not yet come to the Pitch of Hardness to which it has been since, reproach'd me with the Contempt of Advice, and the Breach of my Duty to God and my Father

All this while the Storm increas'd, and the Sea, which I had never been upon before, went very high, though nothing like what I have seen many times since, no, nor like what I saw a few Days after But it was enough to affect me then, who was but a young Sailor, and had never known anything of the matter I expected every Wave would have swallowed us up, and that every time the Ship fell down, as I thought, in the Trough or Hollow of the Sea, we should never rise more, and in this Agony of Mind, I made many Vows and Resolutions, that if it would please God here to spare my Life this one Voyage, if ever I got once my Foot upon dry Land again, I would go directly home to my Father, and never set it into a Ship again while I lived, that I would take his Advice, and never run myself into such Miseries as these any more Now I saw plainly the Goodness of his Observations about the middle Station of Life, how easy, how comfortably he had lived all his Days, and never had been expos'd to Tempests at Sea, or Troubles on Shore, and I resolv'd that I would, like a true repenting Prodigal, go home to my Father

These wise and sober Thoughts continued all the while the Storm continued, and indeed some time after, but the next Day the Wind was abated and the Sea calmer, and I began to be a little murr'd to it However I was very grave for all that Day, being also a little Sea sick still, but towards Night the Weather cleared up, the Wind was quite over, and a charming fine Evening follow'd, the Sun went down perfectly clear and rose so the next Morning, and having little or no

Wind, and a smooth Sea, the Sun shining upon it, the Sight was, as I thought, the most delightful that ever I saw.

I had slept well in the Night, and was now no more Sea sick but very cheerful, looking with Wonder upon the Sea that was so rough and terrible the Day before, and could be so calm and so pleasant in so little time after. And now lest my good Resolutions should continue, my Companion, who had indeed entic'd me away, comes to me, *W'll Bob, says he, clapping me on the Shoulder, How do you do after it? I warrant you were frighted, wa'n't you, last Night, when it blew but a Capfull of Wind? A Capfull do you call it?* said I, *'twas a terrible Storm*. *A Storm, you Fool you,* replies he, *do you call that a Storm? why it was nothing at all, give us but a good Ship and Sea Room, and we think nothing of such a Squall of Wind as that, but you're but a fresh-water Sailor, Bob, come let us make a Bowl of Punch and we'll forget all that, d'ye see what charming Weather 'tis now*. To make short this sad Part of my Story, we went the old way of all Sailors, the Punch was made, and I was made drunk with it, and in that one Night's Wickedness I drowned all my Repentance, all my Reflections upon my past Conduct, and all my Resolutions for my future. In a word, as the Sea was returned to its Smoothness of Surface and settled Calmness by the Abatement of that Storm, so the Hurry of my Thoughts being over, my Fears and Apprehensions of being swallow'd up by the Sea being forgotten, and the Current of my former Desires return'd, I entirely forgot the Vows and Promises that I made in my Distress. I found indeed some Intervals of Reflection, and the serious Thoughts did, as it were endeavour to return again sometimes, but I shook them off, and roused myself from them as it were from a Distemper, and applying myself to Drink and Company, soon mastered the Return of those Fits, for so I called them, and I had in five or six Days got as complete a Victory over Conscience as any young Fellow that resolv'd not to be troubled with it, could desire. But I was to have another Trial for it still; and Providence, as in such Cases generally it does, resolv'd to leave me entirely without Excuse. For if I would not take this for a Deliverance, the next was to be such a one as the worst and most harden'd Wretch among us would confess both the Danger and the Mercy.

The sixth Day of our being at Sea we came into *Yar mouth Roads*; the Wind having been contrary, and the Weather calm, we had made but little Way since the Storm. Here we were obliged to come to an

Anchor, and here we lay, the Wind continuing contrary, *viz* at South-west, for seven or eight Days, during which time a great many Ships from *Newcastle* came into the same Roads, as the common Harbour where the Ships might wait for a Wind for the River

We had not however rid here so long, but should have Tided it up the River, but that the Wind blew too fresh, and after we had lain four or five Days, blew very hard. However, the Roads being reckoned as good as a Harbour, the Anchorage good, and our Ground-Tackle very strong, our Men were unconcerned, and not in the least apprehensive of Danger, but spent the Time in Rest and Mirth, after the manner of the Sea, but the eighth Day in the Morning, the Wind increased, and we had all Hands at Work to strike our Topmasts, and make everything snug and close, that the Ship might ride as easy as possible. By Noon the Sea went very high indeed, and our Ship rid *Forecastle in*, shipped several Seas, and we thought once or twice our Anchor had come home, upon which our Master order'd out the Sheet Anchor, so that we rode with two Anchors a-Head, and the Cables veered out to the better End

By this Time it blew a terrible Storm indeed, and now I began to see Terror and Amazement in the Faces even of the Seamen themselves. The Master, though vigilant to the Business of preserving the Ship, yet as he went in and out of his Cabin by me, I could hear him softly to himself say several times, *Lord be merciful to us, we shall be all lost, we shall be all undone*, and the like. During these first Hurries, I was stupid, lying still in my Cabin, which was in the Steerage, and cannot describe my Temper. I could ill re-assume the first Penitence, which I had so apparently trampled upon, and harden'd myself against. I thought the Bitterness of Death had been past, and that this would be nothing too like the first. But when the Master himself came by me, as I said just now, and said we should be all lost, I was dreadfully frighted. I got up out of my Cabin, and looked out, but such a dismal Sight I never saw. The Sea went Mountains high, and broke upon us every three or four Minutes. When I could look about, I could see nothing but Distress round us. Two Ships that rid near us we found had cut their Masts by the Board, being deep laden, and our Men cried out, that a Ship which rid about a Mile a-Head of us was foundered. Two more Ships being driven from their Anchors, were run out of the Roads to Sea at all Adventures, and that with not a Mast standing. The light

Ships fared the best, as not so much labouring in the Sea, but two or three of them drove, and came close by us, running away with only their Sprit-sail out before the Wind

Towards Evening the Mate and Boatswain begged the Master of our Ship to let them cut away the Foremast, which he was very unwilling to. But the Boatswain protesting to him, that if he did not, the Ship would founder, he consented, and when they had cut away the Foremast, the Mainmast stood so loose, and shook the Ship so much, they were obliged to cut her away also, and make a clear Deck

Any one may judge what a Condition I must be in at all this, who was but a young Sailor, and who had been in such a Fright before at but a little. But if I can express at this Distance the Thoughts I had about me at that time, I was in tenfold more Horror of Mind upon Account of my former Convictions, and the having returned from them to the Resolutions I had wickedly taken at first, than I was at Death itself, and these added to the Terror of the Storm, put me into such a Condition, that I can by no Words describe it. But the worst was not come yet, the Storm continued with such Fury, that the Seamen themselves acknowledged they had never known a worse. We had a good Ship, but she was deep laden, and wallowed in the Sea, that the Seamen every now and then cried out, she would founder. It was my Advantage in one respect, that I did not know what they meant by Founder, till I inquir'd. However, the Storm was so violent, that I saw what is not often seen, the Master, the Boatswain, and some others more sensible than the rest, at their Prayers, and expecting every Moment when the Ship would go to the Bottom. In the Middle of the Night, and under all the rest of our Distresses, one of the Men that had been down on Purpose to see, cried out we had sprung a Leak, another said there was four Foot Water in the Hold. Then all Hands were called to the Pump. At that very Word my Heart, as I thought, died within me, and I fell backwards upon the Side of my Bed where I sat, into the Cabin. However, the Men roused me, and told me, that I that was able to do nothing before, was as well able to pump as another, at which I stirred up, and went to the Pump and worked very heartily. While this was doing, the Master seeing some light Colliers, who not able to ride out the Storm, were oblig'd to slip and run away to Sea, and would come near us, ordered to fire a Gun as a Signal of Distress. I who



knew nothing what that meant, was so surprised, that I thought the Ship had broke, or some dreadful thing had happened. In a word, I was so surprised, that I fell down in a Swoon. As this was a time when everybody had his own Life to think of, nobody minded me, or what was become of me; but another Man stepped up to the Pump, and thrusting me aside with his Foot, let me lie, thinking I had been dead, and it was a great while before I came to myself

We worked on, but the Water increasing in the Hold, it was apparent that the Ship would founder, and though the Storm began to abate a little, yet as it was not possible she could swim till we might run into a Port, so the Master continued firing Guns for Help, and a light Ship, who had rid it out just a-Head of us ventured a Boat out to help us. It was with the utmost Hazard the Boat came near us, but it was impossible for us to get on Board, or for the Boat to lie near the Ship Side, till at last the Men rowing very heartily, and venturing their Lives to save ours, our Men cast them a Rope over the Stern with a Buoy to it, and then veered it out a great Length, which they after great Labour and Hazard took hold of and we hauled them close under our Stern, and got all into their Boat. It was to no Purpose for them or us after we were in the Boat to think of reaching to their own Ship, so all agreed to let her drive and only to pull her in towards Shore as much as we could, and our Master promised them, That if the Boat was staved upon Shore he would make it good to their Master, so partly rowing and partly driving, our Boat went away to the Norward sloping towards the Shore almost as far as *Winter-ton Ness*

We were not much more than a quarter of an Hour out of our Ship but we saw her sink, and then I understood for the first time what was meant by a Ship foundering in the Sea, I must acknowledge I had hardly Eyes to look up when the Seamen told me she was sinking, for from that Moment they rather put me into the Boat than that I might be said to go in, my Heart was as it were dead within me, partly with Fright, partly with Horror of Mind and the Thoughts of what was yet before me.

While we were in this Condition, the Men yet labouring at the Oar to bring the Boat near the Shore, we could see, when our Boat mounting the Waves, we were able to see the Shore, a great many People running along the Shore to assist us when we should come near, but we made but slow way towards the Shore nor were we able to reach the

Shore, till being past the Lighthouse at *Winton*, the Shore falls off to the Westward towards *Cromer*, and so the Land broke off a little the Violence of the Wind: Here we got in, and though not without much Difficulty got all safe on Shore and walked afterwards on Foot to *Yarmouth*, where, as unfortunate Men, we were used with great Humanity as well by the Magistrates of the Town, who assign'd us good Quarters, as by particular Merchants and Owners of Ships, and had Money given us sufficient to carry us either to *London* or back to *Hull*, as we thought fit.

Had I now had the Sense to have gone back to Hull, and have gone home, I had been happy, and my Father, an Emblem of our Blessed Saviour's Parable, had even killed the fatted Calf for me, for hearing the Ship I went away in was cast away in *Yarmouth Road*, it was a great while before he had any Assurance that I was not drowned.

But my ill Fate pushed me on now with an Obstinacy that nothing could resist, and though I had several times loud Calls from my Reason and my more composed Judgment to go home, yet I had no Power to do it. I know not what to call this, nor will I urge, that it is a secret over-ruling Decree that hurries us on to be the Instruments of our own Destruction, even though it be before us, and that we rush upon it with our Eyes open. Certainly nothing but some such decreed unavoidable Misery attending, and which it was impossible for me to escape, could have pushed me forward against the calm Reasonings and Persuasions of my most retired Thoughts, and against two such visible Instructions as I had met with in my first Attempt.

My Comrade, who had helped to harden me before, and who was the Master's Son, was now less forward than I, the first time he spoke to me after we were at *Yarmouth*, which was not till two or three Days, for we were separated in the Town to several Quarters, I say, the first time he saw me, it appear'd his Tone was alter'd, and looking very melancholy and shaking his Head, asked me how I did, and telling his Father who I was, and how I had come this Voyage only for a Trial in order to go farther abroad, his Father turning to me with a very grave and concern'd Tone, *Young Man*, says he, *you ought never to go to Sea any more, you ought to take this for a plain and visible Token that you are not to be a Seafaring Man*, why Sir, said I, will you go to Sea no more? *That is another Case*, said he, *it is my Calling, and therefore my Duty, but as you made this Voyage for a Trial, you see what a Taste Heaven has given*

301 of what you are to expect if you persist, perhaps this is all befallen us on your Account, like Jonah in the ship of Tarshish Pray, continues he, what are you? and on what Account did you go to Sea? Upon that I told him some of my Story, at the End of which he burst out with a strange kind of Passion, What had I done, says he, that such an unhappy Wretch should come into my Ship? I would not set my Foot in the same Ship with thee again for a Thousand Pounds This indeed was, as I said, an Excursion of his Spirits which were yet agitated by the Sense of his Loss, and was farther than he could have Authority to go However he afterwards talked very gravely to me, exhorted me to go back to my Father, and not tempt Providence to my Ruin, told me I might see a visible Hand of Heaven against me, *And young Man, said he, depend upon it, if you do not go back, wherever you go, you will meet with nothing but Disasters and Disappointments, till your Father's Words are fulfilled upon you*

We parted soon after, for I made him little Answer, and I saw him no more, which way he went, I know not As for me, having some Money in my Pocket, I travelled to London by Land, and there, as well as on the Road, had many Struggles with myself, what Course of Life I should take, and whether I should go Home, or go to Sea.

As to going Home, Shame opposed the best Motions that offered to my Thoughts, and it immediately occur'd to me how I should be laughed at among the Neighbours, and should be asham'd to see, not my Father and Mother only, but even everybody else, from whence I have since often observed, how incongruous and irrational the common Temper of Mankind is, especially of Youth, to that Reason which ought to guide them in such Cases, *viz* That they are not asham'd to sin, and yet are asham'd to repent, not asham'd of the Action for which they ought justly to be esteemed Tools, but are asham'd of the returning, which only can make them be esteem'd wise Men.

In this State of Life however I remained some time, uncertain what Measures to take, and what Course of Life to lead An irresistible Reluctance contrin'd to going Home; and as I stayed a while, the Remembrance of the Distress I had been in wore off, and as that abated the little Motion I had in my Desires to a Return wore off with it, till at last I quite laid aside the Thoughts of it, and looked out for a Voyage

That evil Influence which carried me first away from my Father's House, that hurried me into the wild and indigested Notion of raising my Fortune, and that impress'd those Concepts so forcibly upon me, as to make me deaf to all good Advice, and to the Entreaties and even Command of my Father I say the same Influence, whatever it was, presented the most unfortunate of all Enterprises to my View, and I went on board a Vessel bound to the Coast of *Africa*, or, as our Sailors vulgarly call it, a Voyage to *Guinea*

It was my great Misfortune that in all these Adventures I did not ship myself as a Sailor, whereby, though I might indeed have worked a little harder than ordinary, yet at the same time I had learned the Duty and Office of a Foremast Man, and in time might have qualified myself for a Mate or Lieutenant, if not for a Master But as it was always my Fate to choose for the worst, so I did here, for having Money in my Pocket, and good Clothes upon my Back, I would always go on board in the Habit of a Gentleman, and so I neither had any Business in the Ship, or learned to do any

It was my Lot first of all to fall into pretty good Company in *London*, which does not always happen to such loose and unguided young Fellows as I then was, the Devil generally not omitting to lay some Snare for them very early But it was not so with me, I first fell acquainted with the Master of a Ship who had been on the Coast of *Guinea*, and who having had very good Success there, was resolved to go again, and who taking a Fancy to my Conversation, which was not at all disagreeable at that time, hearing me say I had a mind to see the World, told me if I would go the Voyage with him I should be at no Expense, I should be his Messmate and his Companion, and if I could carry anything with me, I should have all the Advantage of it that the Trade would admit, and perhaps I might meet with some Encouragement.

I embrac'd the Offer, and entering into a strict Friendship with this Captain, who was an honest and plain-dealing Man, I went the Voyage with him, and carried a small Adventure with me, which by the disinterested Honesty of my Friend the Captain, I increased very considerably, for I carried about 40*l* in such Toys and Trifles as the Captain directed me to buy This 40*l* I had mustered together by the Assistance of some of my Relations whom I corresponded with, and who, I believe, got my Father, or at least my Mother, to contribute so much as that to my first Adventure



but laying us on Board the next time upon our other Quarter, he entered 60 Men upon our Decks, who immediately fell to cutting and hacking the Decks and Rigging. We plied them with Small-shot, Half-Pikes, Powder-Chests, and such like, and cleared our Deck of them twice. However, to cut short this melancholy Part of our Story, our Ship being disabled, and three of our Men killed, and eight wounded, we were obliged to yield, and were carried all Prisoners into *Sallee*, a Port belonging to the *Moors*

The Usage I had there was not so dreadful as at first I apprehended, nor was I carried up the Country to the Emperor's Court, as the rest of our Men were, but was kept by the Captain of the Rover, as his proper Prize, and made his Slave, being young and nimble, and fit for his Business. At this surprising Change of my Circumstances from a Merchant to a miserable Slave, I was perfectly overwhelmed, and now I looked back upon my Father's prophetic Discourse to me, that I should be miserable, and have none to relieve me, which I thought was now so effectually brought to pass, that it could not be worse, that now the Hand of Heaven had overtaken me, and I was undone without Redemption. But alas! this was but a Taste of the Misery I was to go through, as will appear in the Sequel of this Story

As my new Patron or Master had taken me Home to his House, so I was in hopes that he would take me with him when he went to Sea again, believing that it would some time or other be his Fate to be taken by a *Spanish* or *Portugal* Man of War, and that then I should be set at Liberty. But this Hope of mine was soon taken away, for when he went to Sea, he left me on Shore to look after his little Garden, and do the common Drudgery of Slaves about his House, and when he came home again from his Cruise, he order'd me to lie in the Cabin to look after the Ship

Here I meditated nothing but my Escape; and what Method I might take to effect it, but found no Way that had the least Probability in it. Nothing presented to make the Supposition of it rational, for I had nobody to communicate it to, that would embark with me, no Fellow-Slave, no *Englishman*, *Irishman*, or *Scotsman* there but myself, so that for two Years, though I often pleased myself with the Imagination, yet I never had the least encouraging Prospect of putting it in Practice.

After about two Years an odd Circumstance presented itself, which put the old Thought of making some Attempt for my Liberty, again

in my Head My Patron lying at Home longer than usual, without fitting out his Ship, which, as I heard, was for want of Money, he used constantly, once or twice a Week, sometimes oftener, if the Weather was fair, to take the Ship's Pinnace, and go out into the Road a fishing, and as he always took me and a young *Maresco* with him to row the Boat, we made him very merry, and I proved very dexterous in catching Fish, insomuch that sometimes he would send me with a *Moor*, one of his Kinsmen, and the Youth the *Maresco*, as they called him, to catch a Dish of Fish for him.

It happen'd one time, that going a fishing in a stark calm Morning, a Fog rose so thick, that though we were not half a League from the Shore we lost Sight of it, and rowing we knew not whither or which way, we labour'd all Day and all the next Night, and when the Morning came we found we had pulled off to Sea instead of pulling in for the Shore, and that we were at least two Leagues from the Shore. However we got well in again, though with a great deal of Labour, and some Danger, for the Wind began to blow pretty fresh in the Morning, but particularly we were all very hungry.

But our Patron warn'd by this Disaster, resolv'd to take more Care of himself for the future, and having lying by him the Long-boat of our *English* Ship we had taken, he resolv'd he would not go a fishing any more without a Compass and some Provision, so he order'd the Carpenter of his Ship, who also was an *English* Slave to build a little State-room or Cabin in the middle of the Long Boat like that of a Barge, with a Place to stand behind it to steer and hale home the Main-sheet, and Room before for a hand or two to stand and work the Sails, she saled with that we call a Shoulder of Mutton Sail, and the Boom gibbed over the Top of the Cabin, which lay very snug and low, and had in it Room for him to lie, with a Slave or two, and a Table to eat on, with some small Lockers to put in some Bottles of such Liquor as he thought fit to drink in; particularly his Bread, Rice and Coffee.

We went frequently out with this Boat a fishing, and as I was most dexterous to catch fish for him, he never went without me. It happen'd that he had appointed to go out in this Boat, either for Pleasure or for Fish, with two or three *Moors* of some Distinction in that Place, and for whom he had provided extraordinarily, and had therefore sent on board the Boat over Night, a larger Store of Provisions than ordinary, and had order'd me to get ready three Fuzees

with Powder and Shot, which were on board his Ship, for that they design'd some Sport of Fowling as well as Fishing

I got all things ready as he had directed, and waited the next Morning with the Boat, washed clean, her Ancient and Pendants out, and everything to accommodate his Guests, when by and by my Patron came on board alone, and told me his Guests had put off going, upon some Business that fell out, and order'd me with the Man and Boy, as usual, to go out with the Boat and catch them some Fish, for that his Friends were to sup at his House, and commanded that as soon as I had got some Fish I should bring it home to his House, all which I prepar'd to do

This Moment my former Notions of Deliverance darted into my Thoughts, for now I found I was like to have a little Ship at my Command, and my Master being gone, I prepar'd to furnish myself, not for a fishing Business, but for a Voyage, though I knew not, neither did I so much as consider whither I should steer, for anywhere to get out of that Place was my Way

My first Contrivance was to make a Pretence to speak to this *Moor*, to get something for our Subsistence on board, for I told him we must not presume to eat of our Patron's Bread, he said, that was true, so he brought a large Basket of Rusk or Biscuit of their kind, and three Jars with fresh Water into the Boat, I knew where my Patron's Case of Bottles stood, which it was evident by the make were taken out of some *English* Prize, and I convey'd them into the Boat while the *Moor* was on Shore, as if they had been there before, for our Master I convey'd also a great Lump of Bees-Wax into the Boat, which weighed above half a Hundred Weight, with a Parcel of Twine or Thread, a Hatchet, a Saw and a Hammer, all which were of great Use to us afterwards, especially the Wax to make Candles Another Trick I tried upon him, which he innocently came into also, his Name was *Ismach*, who they call *Muly*, or *Moely*, so I called to him, *Moely* said I, our Patron's Guns are on board the Boat, can you not get a little Powder and Shot, it may be we may kill some *Alcamies* (a Fowl like our *Curlews*) for ourselves. for I know he keeps the Gunner's Stores in the Ship? Yes, says he, I'll bring some, and accordingly he brought a great Leather Pouch which held about a Pound and half of Powder, or rather more; and another with Shot, that had five or six Pound, with some Bullets, and put all into the Boat At the same time I had found some



Powder of my Master's in the Great Cabin, with which I filled one of the large Bottles in the Case, which was almost empty, pouring what was in it into another and thus furnished with everything needful, we sailed out of the Port to fish. The Castle which is at the Entrance of the Port knew who we were, and took no Notice of us, and we were not above a Mile out of the Port before we hauled in our Sail, and set us down to fish. The Wind blew from the N N E which was contrary to my Desire, for had it blown southerly I had been sure to have made the Coast of *Spain*, and at least reached to the Bay of *Cádiz*, but my Resolutions were, blow which way it would, I would be gone from that horrid Place where I was, and leave the rest to Fate.

After we had fished some time and caught nothing, for when I had Fish on my Hook, I would not pull them up, that he might not see them, I said to the *Moor*, this will not do, our Master will not be thus served, we must stand farther off. He thinking no harm, agreed, and being in the head of the Boat set the Sails, and as I had the Helm I run the Boat out near a League farther, and then brought her to as if I would fish, when giving the Boy the Helm, I stepped forward to where the *Moor* was, and making as if I stooped for something behind him, I took him by Surprise with my Arm under his Twist, and tossed him clear overboard into the Sea, he rose immediately, for he swam like a Cork, and called to me, begged to be taken in, told me he would go all over the World with me, he swam so strong after the Boat that he would have reached me very quickly, there being but little Wind, upon which I stepped into the Cabin, and fetching one of the Fowling-pieces, I presented it at him, and told him, I had done him no hurt, and if he would be quiet I would do him none, but said I, you swim well enough to reach to the Shore, and the Sea is calm, make the best of your Way to Shore and I will do you no harm, but if you come near the Boat I'll shoot you through the Head, for I am resolved to have my Liberty, so he turned himself about and swam for the Shore, and I make no doubt but he reached it with Ease, for he was an Excellent Swimmer.

I could have been content to have taken this *Moor* with me, and have drowned the Boy, but there was no venturing to trust him. When he was gone I turned to the Boy, who they called *Xury*, and said to him, *Xury*, if you will be faithful to me I'll make you a great Man, but if you will not stroke your Face to be true to me, *that is, wear by Mahomet and his Father's Beard*, I must throw you into the

Sea; the Boy smiled in my Face, and spoke so innocently that I could not mistrust him; and swore to be faithful to me, and go all over the World with me

While I was in View of the *Isle* that was swimming, I stood out directly to Sea with the Boat, rather stretching to Windward, that they might think me gone towards the *Straits-mouth* (as indeed any one that had been in their Wits must have been suppos'd to do) for who would have suppos'd we were sail'd on to the southward to the truly *Barbary* Coast, where whole Nations of Negroes were sure to surround us with their Canoes, and destroy us, where we could never once go on Shore but we should be devour'd by savage Beasts, or more merciless Savages of human Kind

But as soon as it grew dusk in the Evening, I changed my Course, and steer'd directly South and by East, bending my Course a little toward the East, that I might keep in with the Shore; and having a fair fresh Gale of Wind, and a smooth quiet Sea, I made such Sail that I believe by the next Day at Three o'Clock in the Afternoon, when I first made the Land, I could not be less than 150 Miles South of *Salce*, quite beyond the Emperor of *Morocco's* Dominions, or indeed of any other King thereabouts, for we saw no People.

Yet such was the Fright I had taken at the *Moons*, and the dreadful Apprehensions I had of falling into their Hands, that I would not stop, or go on Shore, or come to an Anchor, the Wind continuing fair, until I had sail'd in that manner five Days. And then the Wind shifting to the southward, I concluded also that if any of our Vessels were in Chase of me, they also would now give over, so I ventur'd to make to the Coast, and came to an Anchor in the Mouth of a little River, I knew not what, or where, neither what Latitude, what Country, what Nations, or what River. I neither saw, or desir'd to see any People, the principal thing I wanted was fresh Water. We came into this Creek in the Evening, resolving to swim on Shore as soon as it was dark, and discover the Country, but as soon as it was quite dark, we heard such dreadful Noises of the Barking, Roaring, and Howling of Wild Creatures, of we knew not what Kinds, that the poor Boy was ready to die with Fear, and begged of me not to go on Shore till Day; well *Xury*, said I, then I wont, but it may be we may see Men by Day, who will be as bad to us as those Lions, *then we give them the shoot Gun*, says *Xury*, laughing, *make them run wey*, such *English Xury* spoke by conversing among us Slaves, however I was

glad to see the Boy so cheerful, and I gave him a Dram (out of our Patron's Case of Bottles) to cheer him up. After all, *Xury's* Advice was good, and I took it, we dropped our little Anchor and lay still all Night, I say still, for we slept none! for in two or three Hours we saw vast great Creatures (we knew not what to call them) of many sorts, come down to the Sea-shore and run into the Water, wallowing and washing themselves for the Pleasure of cooling themselves, and they made such hideous Howlings and Yellings, that I never indeed heard the like

*Xury* was dreadfully frighted, and indeed so was I too, but we were both more frighted when we heard one of these mighty Creatures come swimming towards our Boat, we could not see him, but we might hear him by his blowing to be a monstrous, huge and furious Beast, *Xury* said it was a Lion, and it might be so for ought I know, but poor *Xury* cried to me to weigh the Anchor and row away, no, says I, *Xury*, we can slip our Cable with the Buoy to it and go off to Sea, they cannot follow us far, I had no sooner said so, but I perceiv'd the Creature (whatever it was) within Two Oars' Length, which something surprized me, however I immediately stepped to the Cabin-door, and taking up my Gun fired at him, upon which he immediately turned about and swam towards the Shore again

But it is impossible to describe the horrible Noises, and hideous Cries and Howlings, that were raised as well upon the Edge of the Shore, as higher within the Country, upon the Noise or Report of the Gun, a Thing I have some Reason to believe those Creatures had never heard before. This Convinc'd me that there was no going on Shore for us in the Night upon that Coast, and how to venture on Shore in the Day was another Question too, for to have fallen into the Hands of any of the Savages, had been as bad as to have fallen into the Hands of Lions and Tigers, at least we were equally apprehensive of the Danger of it.

Be that as it would, we were oblig'd to go on Shore somewhere or other for Water, for we had not a Pint left in the Boat, when or where to get to it was the Point. *Xury* said, if I would let him go on Shore with one of the Jars, he would find if there was any Water and bring some to me. I ask'd him why he would go? Why I should not go and he stay in the Boat? The Boy answer'd with so much Affection that made me love him ever after. *Well, if wild Mans come, they eat me, you go wey.* Well, *he, If wild Mans come, they* we will both go, and if the

wild Mans come, we will kill them, they shall Eat neither of us; so I gave Xury a piece of Rusk-bread to Eat, and a Dram out of our Patron's Case of Bottles which I mentioned before, and we hauled the Boat in as near the Shore as we thought was proper, and so waded on Shore, carrying nothing but our Arms and two Jars for Water.

I did not care to go out of Sight of the Boat, fearing the coming of Canoes with *Savages* down the River; but the Boy seeing a low Place about a Mile up the Country rambled to it, and by and by I saw him come running towards me, I thought he was pursued by some Savage, or frighted with some wild Beast, and I run forward towards him to help him, but when I came nearer to him, I saw something hanging over his Shoulders which was a Creature that he had shot, like a Hare but different in Colour, and longer Legs, however



we were very glad of it, and it was very good Meat, but the great Joy that poor Xury came with, was to tell me he had found good Water and seen no wild Mans

But we found afterwards that we need not take such Pains for Water, for a little higher up the Creek where we were, we found the Water fresh when the tide was out, which flowed but a little way up, so we filled our Jars and feasted on the Hare we had killed, and prepared to go on our Way, having seen no Footsteps of any human Creature in that part of the Country.

As I had been one Voyage to this Coast before, I knew very well that the Islands of the *Canaries*, and the *Cape de Verd* Islands also, lay not far off from the coast. But as I had no Instruments to take an Observation to know what Latitude we were in, and did not exactly know, or at least remember what Latitude they were in, I

knew not where to look for them, or when to stand off to Sea towards them, otherwise I might now easily have found some of these Islands. But my hope was, that if I stood along this Coast till I came to that Part where the *English* Traded, I should find some of their Vessels upon their usual Design of Trade, that would relieve and take us in.

By the best of my Calculation, that Place where I now was, must be that Country, which lying between the Emperor of *Morocco's* Dominions and the *Negroes*, lies waste and uninhabited, except by wild Beasts, the *Negroes* having abandon'd it and gone farther South for fear of the *Moors*, and the *Moors* not thinking it worth inhabiting, by reason of its Barrenness, and indeed both forsaking it because of the prodigious Numbers of Tigers, Lions, Leopards and other furious Creatures which harbour there, so that the *Moors* use it for their Hunting only, where they go like an Army, two or three thousand Men at a time, and indeed for near an hundred Miles together upon this Coast, we saw nothing but a waste uninhabited Country, by Day, and heard nothing but Howlings and Roaring of wild Beasts, by Night.

Once or twice in the Daytime, I thought I saw the *Pico* of *Teneriffe*, being the high top of the Mountain *Teneriffe* in the *Canaries*; and had a great mind to venture out in hopes of reaching thither, but having tried twice I was forced in again by contrary Winds, the Sea also going too high for my little Vessel, so I resolved to pursue my first Design and keep along the Shore.

Several times I was obliged to land for fresh Water, after we had left this Place, and once in particular, being early in the Morning, we came to an Anchor under a little Point of Land which was pretty high, and the Tide beginning to flow, we lay still to go farther in, *Xury*, whose Eyes were more about him than it seems mine were, calls softly to me, and tells me that we had best go farther off the Shore, for, says he, look yonder lies a dreadful Monster on the side of that Hillock fast asleep. I looked where he pointed, and saw, a dreadful Monster indeed, for it was a terrible great Lion that lay on the Side of the Shore, under the Shade of a Piece of the Hill that hung as it were a little over him. *Xury*, says I, you shall go on Shore and kill him, *Xury* looked frighted, and said, *Me kill! he eat me at one Mouth*, one Mouthful he meant, however, I said no more to the Boy, but bad him lie still, and I took our biggest Gun,

which was almost Musket-bore, and loaded it with a good Charge of Powder, and with two Slugs, and laid it down; then I loaded another Gun with two Bullets, and the third, for we had three Pieces, I loaded with five smaller Bullets. I took the best aim I could with the first Piece to have shot him into the Head, but he lay so with his Leg raised a little above his Nose, that the Slugs hit his Leg about the Knee, and broke the Bone. He started up growling at first, but finding his Leg broke fell down again, and then got up upon three Legs and gave the most hideous Roar that ever I heard, I was a little surpriz'd that I had not hit him on the Head, however I took up the second Piece immediately, and though he began to move off fired again, and shot him into the Head, and had the Pleasure to see him drop, and make but little Noise, but lay struggling for Life. Then *Xury* took Heart, and would have me let him go on Shore. Well, so said I, so the Boy jumped into the Water, and taking a little Gun in one Hand, swam to Shore with the other Hand, and coming close to the Creature, put the Muzzle of the Piece to his Ear, and shot him into the head again, which despatch'd him quite.

This was Game indeed to us, but this was no Food, and I was very sorry to lose three Charges of Powder and Shot upon a Creature that was good for nothing to us. However *Xury* said he would have some of him; so he comes on board, and asked me to give him the Hatchet; for what, *Xury*, said I? *Me cut off his Head*, said he. However *Xury* could not cut off his Head, but he cut off a Foot and brought it with him, and it was a monstrous great one.

I bethought myself however, that perhaps the Skin of him might one way or other be of some Value to us, and I resolved to take off his Skin if I could. So *Xury* and I went to work with him, but *Xury* was much the better Workman at it, for I knew very ill how to do it. Indeed it took us up both the whole Day, but at last we got off the Hide of him, and spreading it on the top of our Cabin, the Sun effectually dried it in two Days' time, and it afterwards served me to lie upon.

After this Stop we made on to the Southward continually for ten or twelve Days, living very sparing on our Provisions, which began to abate very much, and going no oftener into the Shore than we were oblig'd to for fresh Water, my Design in this was to make the River *Gambia* or *Senegall*, that is to say, anywhere about the *Cape de Ver*, where I was in hopes to meet with some *European* Ship, and if I

not, I knew not what Course I had to take, but to seek out for the *Islands*, or perish there among the *Negroes*. I knew that all the Ships from *Europe*, which sailed either to the Coast of *Guinea*, or to *Brasil*, or to the *East Indies*, made this *Cape*, or those *Islands*, and in a word, I put the whole of my Fortune upon this single Point, either that I must meet with some Ship, or must perish.

When I had pursued this Resolution about ten Days longer, as I have said, I began to see that the Land was inhabited, and in two or three Places, as we sailed by, we saw People stand upon the Shore to look at us, we could also perceive they were quite Black and Stark naked. I was once inclin'd to have gone on Shore to them, but *Xury* was my better Counsellor, and said to me, *no go, no go*, however I hauled in nearer the Shore, that I might talk to them, and I found they ran along the Shore by me a good way, I observ'd they had no Weapons in their Hands, except one who had a long slender Stick, which *Xury* said was a Lance, and that they would throw them a great way with good aim, so I kept at a distance, but talked with them by Signs as well as I could, and particularly made Signs for something to Eat, they beckon'd to me to stop my Boat, and that they would fetch me some Meat, upon this I lower'd the top of my Sail, and lay by, and two of them run up into the Country, and in less than half an Hour came back and brought with them two Pieces of dry Flesh and some Corn, such as is the Produce of their Country, but we neither knew what the one or the other was, however we were willing to accept it, but how to come at it was our next Dispute, for I was not for venturing on Shore to them, and they were as much afraid of us but they took a safe way for us all, for they brought it to the Shore and laid it down, and went and stood a great way off till we fetch'd it on Board, and then came close to us again.

We made Signs of Thanks to them, for we had nothing to make them amends, but an Opportunity offer'd that very Instant to oblige them wonderfully, for while we were lying by the Shore, came two mighty Creatures, one pursuing the other, (as we took it) with great Fury, from the Mountains towards the Sea, whether it was the Male pursuing the Female, or whether they were in Sport or in Rage, we could not tell, any more than we could tell whether it was usual or strange, but I believe it was the latter, because in the first Place those ravenous Creatures seldom appear but in the Night, and in the second Place, we found the People terribly frighted, especially

the Women. The Man that had the Lance or Dart did not fly from them, but the rest did; however as the two Creatures ran directly into the Water, they did not seem to offer to fall upon any of the *Negroes*, but plunged themselves into the Sea and swam about as if they had come for their Diversion, at last one of them began to come nearer our Boat than at first I expected, but I lay ready for him, for I had loaded my Gun with all possible Expedition, and bad *Xury* load both the other, as soon as he came fairly within my reach, I fired, and shot him directly into the Head, immediately he sunk down into the Water, but rose instantly and plunged up and down as if he was struggling for Life, and so indeed he was, he immediately made to the Shore, but between the Wound which was his mortal Hurt, and the strangling of the Water, he died just before he reached the Shore.

It is impossible to express the Astonishment of these poor Creatures at the Noise and the Fire of my Gun, some of them were even ready to die for Fear, and fell down as Dead with the very Terror. But when they saw the Creature dead and sunk in the Water, and that I made Signs to them to come to the Shore; they took Heart and came to the Shore and began to search for the Creature, I found him by his Blood staining the Water, and by the help of a Rope which I slung round him and gave the *Negroes* to haul, they dragged him on Shore, and found that it was a most curious Leopard, spotted and fine to an admirable Degree, and the *Negroes* held up their Hands with Admiration to think what it was I had killed him with.

The other Creature frighted with the flash of Fire and the Noise of the Gun swam on Shore, and ran up directly to the Mountains from whence they came, nor could I at that Distance know what it was. I found quickly the *Negroes* were for eating the Flesh of this Creature, so I was willing to have them take it as a Favour from me, which when I made Signs to them that they might take it, they were very thankful for, immediately they fell to work with him, and though they had no Knife, yet with a sharpen'd Piece of Wood they took off his Skin as readily, and much more readily than we could have done with a Knife; they offer'd me some of the Flesh, which I declined, making as if I would give it them, but made Signs for the Skin, which they gave me very freely, and brought me a great deal more of their Provision, which though I did not understand, yet I accepted, then I made Signs to them for some Water, and held out one of my Jars to them,



tuning it bottom upward, to show that it was empty, and that I wanted to have it filled. They called immediately to some of their Friends, and there came two Women and brought a great Vessel made of Earth, and burnt as I suppose in the Sun, this they set down for me, as before, and I sent *Xury* on Shore with my Jars, and filled them all three. The Women were as stark Naked as the Men.

I was now furnished with Roots and Corn, such as it was, and Water, and leaving my friendly *Negroes*, I made forward for about eleven Days more without offering to go near the Shore, till I saw the Land run out a great Length into the Sea, at about the Distance of four or five Leagues before me, and the Sea being very calm I kept a large offing to make this Point, at length, doubling the Point at about two Leagues from the Land, I saw plainly Land on the other Side to Seaward, then I concluded, as it was most certain indeed, that this was the *Cape de Verd*, and those the *Islands*, call'd from thence *Cape de Verd Islands*. However they were at a great Distance, and I could not well tell what I had best to do, for if I should be taken with a Fresh of Wind I might neither reach one or other.

In this Dilemma, as I was very pensive, I stepped into the Cabin and sat me down, *Xury* having the Helm, when on a sudden, the Boy cried out, *Master, Master, a Ship with a Sail*, and the foolish Boy was frighted out of his Wits, thinking it must needs be some of his Master's Ships sent to pursue us, when I knew we were gotten far enough out of their reach. I jumped out of the Cabin, and immediately saw not only the Ship, but what she was, (*viz*) that it was a *Portuguese Ship*, and as I thought was bound to the Coast of *Guinea* for *Negroes*. But when I observ'd the Course she steered, I was soon convinc'd they were bound some other way, and did not design to come any nearer to the Shore, upon which I stretched out to Sea as much as I could, resolving to speak with them if possible.

With all the Sail I could make, I found I should not be able to come in their Way, but that they would be gone by, before I could make any Signal to them, but after I had crowded to the utmost and began to despair, they it seems saw me by the help of their Perspective-Glasses, and that it was some *European Boat*, which as they supposed must belong to some Ship that was lost, so they shortened Sail to let me come up. I was encouraged with this, and as I had my Patron's Ancient on Board, I made a Waft of it to them for a Signal of Distress, and fired a Gun, both which they saw, for they told me

they saw the Smoke, though they did not hear the Gun; upon these Signals they very kindly brought too, and lay by for me, and in about three Hours' time I came up with them.

They asked me what I was, in *Portuguese*, and in *Spanish*, and in *French*, but I understood none of them, but at last a *Scots* Sailor who was on board, called to me, and I answer'd him, and told him I was an *Englishman*, that I had made my escape out of Slavery from the *Moor*s at *Sallee*, then they bade me come on board, and very kindly took me in, and all my Goods

It was an inexpressible Joy to me, that any one will believe, that I was thus deliver'd, as I esteem'd it, from such a miserable and almost hopeless Condition as I was in, and I immediately offered all I had to the Captain of the Ship, as a Return for my Deliverance, but he generously told me, he would take nothing from me, but that all I had should be deliver'd safe to me when I came to the *Brasils*, for says he, *I have saved your Life on no other Terms than I would be glad to be saved myself, and it may one time or other be my Lot to be taken up in the same Condition, besides, said he, when I carry you to the Brasils, so great a way from your own Country, if I should take from you what you have, you will be starved there, and then I only take away that Life I have given. No, no, Signor Inglese*, says he, *Mr Englishman, I will carry you thither in Charity, and those things will help you to buy your Subsistence there and your Passage home again*

As he was Charitable in his Proposal, so he was Just in the Performance to a tittle, for he ordered the Seamen that none should offer to touch anything I had, then he took everything into his own Possession, and gave me back an exact Inventory of them, that I might have them, even so much as my three Earthen Jars

As to my Boat it was a very good one, and that he saw, and told me he would buy it of me for the Ship's Use, and asked me what I would have for it? I told him he had been so generous to me in everything, that I could not offer to make any Price of the Boat, but left it entirely to him, upon which he told me he would give me a Note of his Hand to pay me 80 Pieces of Eight for it at *Brasil*, and when it came there, if any one offer'd to give more he would make it up, he offer'd me also 60 Pieces of Eight more for my Boy *Xury*, which I was loth to take, not that I was not willing to let the Captain have him, but I very loth to sell the poor Boy's Liberty, who had assisted me so faithfully in procuring my own. However when

I let him know my Reason, he owned it to be just, and offer'd me this Medium, that he would give the Boy an Obligation to set him free in ten Years, if he turned Christian, upon this, and *Xury* saying he was willing to go to him, I let the Captain have him

We had a very good Voyage to the *Brasils*, and arriv'd in the *Bay de Todos los Santos*, or *All-Saints Bay*, in about Twenty two Days after And now I was once more deliver'd from the most miserable of all Conditions of Life, and what to do next with myself I was now to consider

The generous Treatment the Captain gave me, I can never enough remember, he would take nothing of me for my Passage, gave me twenty Ducats for the Leopard's Skin, and forty for the Lion's Skin which I had in my Boat, and caused everything I had in my Ship to be punctually deliver'd me, and what I was willing to sell he bought, such as the Case of Bottles, two of my Guns, and a Piece of the Lump of Bees-wax, for I had made Candles of the rest, in a word, I made about 220 Pieces of Eight of all my Cargo, and with this Stock I went on Shore in the *Brasils*

I had not been long here, but being recommended to the House of a good honest Man like himself, who had an *Ingeino* as they call it, that is, a Plantation and a Sugar-House I lived with him some time, and acquainted myself by that means with the Manner of their planting and making of Sugar, and seeing how well the Planters lived, and how they grew rich suddenly, I resolv'd, if I could get Licence to settle there, I woud turn Planter among them, resolving in the meantime to find out some Way to get my Money which I had left in *London* remitted to me To this Purpose getting a kind of a Letter of Naturalization, I purchased as much Land that was Uncur'd, as my Money would reach, and formed a Plan for my Plantation and Settlement, and such a one as might be suitable to the Stock which I proposed to myself to receive from *England*

I had a Neighbour, a *Portuguese* of *Lisbon*, but born of *English* Parents, whose Name was *Wells*, and in much such Circumstances as I was I call him my Neighbour, because his Plantation lay next to mine, and we went on very sociably together My Stock was but low as well as his, and we rather planted for Food, than anything else, for about two Years However, we began to increase, and our Land began to come into Order, so that the third Year we planted some Tobacco, and made each of us a large Piece of Ground ready

for planting Canes in the Year to come, but we both wanted Help, and now I found more than before, I had done wrong in parting with my Boy *Xury*.

But alas! for me to do wrong that never did right, was no great Wonder I had no Remedy but to go on, I was gotten into an employment quite remote to my Genius, and directly contrary to the Life I delighted in, and for which I forsook my Father's House, and broke through all his good Advice, nay, I was coming into the very Middle Station, or upper Degree of low Life, which my Father advised me to before, and which if I resolved to go on with, I might as well have stayed at Home, and never have fatigu'd myself in the World as I had done, and I used often to say to myself, I could have done this as well in *England* among my Friends, as have gone 5000 Miles off to do it among Strangers and Savages in a Wilderness, and at such a Distance, as never to hear from any Part of the World that had the least Knowledge of me.

In this manner I used to look upon my Condition with the utmost Regret. I had nobody to converse with but now and then this Neighbour, no Work to be done, but by the Labour of my Hands, and I used to say, I lived just like a Man cast away upon some desolate Island, that had nobody there but himself But how just has it been, and how should all Men reflect, that when they compare their present Conditions with others that are worse, Heaven may oblige them to make the Exchange, and be convinc'd of their former Felicity by their Experience I say, how just has it been, that the truly solitary Life I reflected on in an Island of mere Desolation should be my Lot, who had so often unjustly compar'd it with the Life which I then led, in which had I continued, I had in all Probability been exceeding prosperous and rich

I was in some Degree settled in my Measures for carrying on the Plantation, before my kind Friend the Captain of the Ship that took me up at Sea, went back, for the Ship remained there in providing his Loading, and preparing for his Voyage, near three Months, when telling him what little Stock I had left behind me in *London*, he gave me this friendly and sincere Advice, *Signior Inglese, says he*; for so he always called me, if you will give me Letters, and a Procuration here in Form to me, with Orders to the Person who has your Money in *London*, to send your Effects to *Lisbon*, to such Persons as I shall direct, and in such Goods as are proper for this Country, I will bring

you the Produce of them, God willing, at my Return, but since human Affairs are all subject to Changes and Disasters, I would have you give Orders but for One Hundred Pounds *Sterl.* which you say is Half your Stock, and let the Hazard be run for the first; so that if it come safe, you may order the rest the same Way, and if it miscarry, you may have the other Half to have Recourse to for your Supply.

This was so wholesome Advice, and looked so friendly, that I could not but be convinc'd it was the best Course I could take, so I accordingly prepared Letters to the Gentlewoman with whom I had left my Money, and a Procuration to the *Portuguese* Captain, as he desired

I wrote the *English* Captain's Widow a full Account of all my Adventures, my Slavery, Escape, and how I had met with the *Portugal* Captain at Sea, the Humanity of his Behaviour, and in what Condition I was now in, with all other necessary Directions for my Supply, and when this honest Captain came to *Lisbon*, he found means by some of the *English* Merchants there, to send over not the Order only, but a full Account of my Story to a Merchant at *London*, who represented it effectually to her, whereupon, she not only delivered the Money, but out of her own Pocket sent the *Portugal* Captain a very handsome Present for his Humanity and Charity to me.

The Merchant in *London* vesting this Hundred Pounds in *English* Goods, such as the Captain had writ for, sent them directly to him at *Lisbon*, and he brought them all safe to me to the *Brasils*, among which, without my Direction (for I was too young in my Business to think of them) he had taken Care to have all Sorts of Tools, Iron-Work, and Utensils necessary for my Plantation, and which were of great Use to me.

When this Cargo arriv'd, I thought my Fortunes made, for I was surpris'd with Joy of it, and my good Steward the Captain had laid out the Five Pounds which my Friend had sent him for a Present for himself, to purchase, and bring me over a Servant under Bond for six Years' Service, and would not accept of any Consideration, except a little Tobacco, which I would have him accept, being of my own Produce.

Neither was this all, but my Goods being all *English* Manufactures, such as Cloth, Stuffs, Bays, and things particularly valuable and desirable in the Country, I found means to sell them to a very great Advantage, so that I might say, I had more than four times the Value

of my first Cargo, and was now infinitely beyond my poor Neighbour, I mean in the Advancement of my Plantation; for the first thing I did, I bought me a Negro Slave, and an *European* Servant also; I mean another besides that which the Captain brought me from *Lisbon*.

But as abus'd Prosperity is oftentimes made the very Means of our greatest Adversity, so was it with me. I went on the next Year with great Success in my Plantation. I raised fifty great Rolls of Tobacco on my own Ground, more than I had disposed of for Necessaries among my Neighbours, and these fifty Rolls being each of above a 100 *Wt* were well cured and laid by against the Return of the Fleet from *Lisbon* and now increasing in Business and in Wealth, my Head began to be full of Projects and Undertakings beyond my Reach, such as are indeed often the Ruin of the best Heads in Business.

Had I continued in the Station I was now in, I had room for all the happy things to have yet befallen me, for which my Father so earnestly recommended a quiet retired Life, and of which he had so sensibly describ'd the middle Station of Life to be full of, but other things attended me, and I was still to be the wilful Agent of all my own Miseries, and particularly to increase my Fault and double the Reflections upon myself, which in my future Sorrows I should have leisure to make, all these Miscarriages were produced by my apparent obstinate adhering to my foolish inclination of wandering abroad and pursuing that Inclination, in contradiction to the clearest Views of doing myself good in a fair and plain pursuit of those Prospects and those measures of Life, which Nature and Providence concurred to present me with, and to make my Duty.

As I had once done thus in my breaking away from my Parents, so I could not be content now, but I must go and leave the happy View I had of being a rich and thriving Man in my new Plantation, only to pursue a rash and immoderate Desire of rising faster than the Nature of the Thing admitted, and thus I cast myself down again into the deepest Gulf of human Misery that ever Man fell into, or perhaps could be consistent with Life and a State of Health in the World.

To come then by the just Degrees, to the Particulars of this Part of my Story, you may suppose, that having now lived almost four Years in the *Brasile*, and beginning to thrive and prosper very well upon my Plantation; I had not only learned the Language, but had contracted Acquaintance and Friendship among my Fellow-Planters, as well as among the Merchants at St *Salvadore*, which was our Port

and that in my Discourses among them, I had frequently given them an Account of my two Voyages to the Coast of *Guinea*, the manner of Trading with the *Negroes* there, and how easy it was to purchase upon the Coast, for Trifles, such as Beads, Toys, Knives, Scissars, Hatchets, bits of Glass, and the like, not only Gold Dust, *Guinea* Grains, Elephants' Teeth, &c., but *Negroes* for the Service of the *Brasils*, in great Numbers

They listened always very attentively to my Discourses on these Heads, but especially to that Part which related to the buying *Negroes*, which was a Trade at that time not only not far entered into, but as far as it was, had been carried on by the Assiento, or Permission of the Kings of *Spain* and *Portugal*, and engross'd in the Public, so that few *Negroes* were brought, and those excessive dear

It happen'd, being in Company with some Merchants and Planters of my Acquaintance, and talking of those things very earnestly, three of them came to me the next Morning, and told me they had been musing very much upon what I had discoursed with them of, the last Night, and they came to make a secret Proposal to me, and after enjoining me Secrecy, they told me, that they had a mind to fit out a Ship to go to *Guinea*, that they had all Plantations as well as I, and were straiten'd for nothing so much as Servants, that as it was a Trade that could not be carried on, because they could not publicly sell the *Negroes* when they came home, so they desired to make but one Voyage, to bring the *Negroes* on Shore privately, and divide them among their own Plantations, and in a Word, the Question was, whether I would go their Supercargo in the Ship to manage the Trading Part upon the Coast of *Guinea*? And they offer'd me that I should have my equal Share of the *Negroes* without providing any Part of the Stock

This was a fair Proposal it must be confess'd, had it been made to any one that had not had a Settlement and Plantation of his own to look after, which was in a fair way of coming to be very considerable, and with a good Stock upon it. But for me that was thus entered and established, and had nothing to do but go on as I had begun for three or four Years more, and to have sent for the other hundred Pound from *England*, and who in that time, and with that little Addition, could scarce have failed of being worth three or four thousand Pounds Sterling, and that increasing too, for me to think

of such a Voyage, was the most preposterous Thing that ever Man in such Circumstances could be guilty of

But I that was born to be my own Destroyer, could no more resist the Offer than I could restrain my first rambling Designs, when my Father's good Counsel was lost upon me. In a word, I told them I would go with all my Heart, if they would undertake to look after my Plantation in my Absence, and would dispose of it to such as I should direct if I miscarry'd. This they all engag'd to do, and entered into Writings or Covenants to do so, and I made a formal Will, disposing of my Plantation and Effects, in Case of my Death, making the Captain of the Ship that had saved my Life as before, my universal Heir, but obliging him to dispose of my Effects as I had directed in my Will, one half of the Produce being to himself, and the other to be shipped to *England*

In short I took all possible Caution to preserve my Effects, and keep up my Plantation, had I used half as much Prudence to have looked into my own Interest, and have made a Judgment of what I ought to have done, and not to have done, I had certainly never gone away from so prosperous an Undertaking, leaving all the probable Views of a thriving Circumstance, and gone upon a Voyage to Sea, attended with all its common Hazards, to say nothing of the Reasons I had to expect particular Misfortunes to myself

But I was hurried on, and obey'd blindly the Dictates of my Fancy rather than my Reason, and accordingly the Ship being fitted out, and the Cargo furnished, and all things done as by Agreement, by my Partners in the Voyage, I went on Board in an evil Hour, the First of *September* 1659, being the same Day eight Year that I went from my Father and Mother at *Hull*, in order to act the Rebel to their Authority, and the Fool to my own Interest.

Our Ship was about 120 Ton Burthen, carried 6 Guns, and 14 Men, besides the Master, his Boy, and myself, we had on board no large Cargo of Goods, except of such Toys as were fit for our Trade with the *Negroes*, such as Beads, bits of Glass, Shells, and odd Trifles, especially little Looking-Glasses, Knives, Scissars, Hatchets, and the like

The same Day I went on board we set sail, standing a-way to the Northward upon our own Coast, with Design to stretch to the *African* Coast, when they came about 10 or 12 Degrees Latitude, which it seems was the manner of their



We had very good Weather, only excessive hot, all the way upon our own Coast, till we came to the Height of *Cape St. Augustino*, from whence keeping farther off at Sea we lost Sight of Land, and steered as if we were bound for the Isle *Fernand de Noronha*, holding our Course *NE* by *N* and leaving those Isles on the East, in this Course we passed the Line in about 12 Days' time, and were by our last Observation in 7 Degrees 22 Min. Northern Latitude, when a violent Tornado or Hurricane took us quite out of our Knowledge, it began from the South-East, came about to the North-West, and then settled into the North-East, from whence it blew in such a terrible manner, that for 12 Days together we could do nothing but drive, and scudding away before it, let it carry us whither ever Fate and the Fury of the Winds directed, and during these 12 Days, I need not say, that I expected every Day to be swallowed up, nor indeed did any in the Ship expect to save their Lives

In this Distress, we had, besides the Terror of the Storm, one of our Men died of the Calenture, and one Man and the Boy washed overboard, about the 12th Day the Weather abating a little, the Master made an Observation as well as he could, and found that he was in about 11 Degrees North Latitude, but that he was 22 Degrees of Longitude difference West from *Cape St. Augustino*, so that he found he was gotten upon the Coast of *Guinea*, or the North Part of *Brasil*, beyond the River *Amazones*, toward that of the River *Oronogue*, commonly called the *Great River*, and began to consult with me what Course he should take, for the Ship was leaky and very much disabled, and he was going directly back to the Coast of *Brasil*

I was positively against that, and looking over Charts of the Sea Coast of *America* with him, we concluded there was no inhabited Country for us to have recourse to, till we came within the Circle of the *Carribbe-Islands*, and therefore resolved to stand away for *Barbadoes*, which by keeping off at Sea, to avoid the Indraft of the Bay or Gulf of *Mexico*, we might easily perform, as we hoped, in about fifteen Days' Sail, whereas we could not possibly make our Voyage to the Coast of *Africa* without some Assistance, both to our Ship and to ourselves

With this Design we changed our Course and steered away *NW* by *W* in order to reach some of our *English* Islands, where I hoped for Relief, but our Voyage was otherwise determined, for being in the Latitude of 12 Deg 18 Min. a second Storm came upon us, which

carried us away with the same Impetuosity Westward, and drove us so out of the very Way of all human Commerce, that had all our Lives been saved, as to the Sea, we were rather in Danger of being devoured by Savages than ever returning to our own Country.

In this Distress, the Wind still blowing very hard, one of our Men early in the Morning, cried out, *Land*, and we had no sooner run out of the Cabin to look out in hopes of seeing whereabouts in the World we were, but the Ship struck upon a Sand, and in a moment her Motion being so stopped, the Sea broke over her in such a manner, that we expected we should all have perish'd immediately, and we were immediately driven into our close Quarters to shelter us from the very Foam and Spray of the Sea.

It is not easy for any one, who has not been in the like Condition, to describe or conceive the Consternation of Men in such Circumstances; we knew nothing where we were, or upon what Land it was we were driven, whether an Island or the Main, whether inhabited or not inhabited, and as the Rage of the Wind was still great, though rather less than at first, we could not so much as hope to have the Ship hold many Minutes without breaking in Pieces, unless the Winds by a kind of Miracle should turn immediately about. In a word, we sat looking one upon another, and expecting Death every Moment, and every Man acting accordingly, as preparing for another World, for there was little or nothing more for us to do in this; that which was our present Comfort, and all the Comfort we had, was, that contrary to our Expectation the Ship did not break yet, and that the Master said the Wind began to abate.

Now though we thought that the Wind did a little abate, yet the Ship having thus struck upon the Sand, and sticking too fast for us to expect her getting off, we were in a dreadful Condition indeed, and had nothing to do but to think of saving our Lives as well as we could, we had a Boat at our Stern just before the Storm, but she was first staved by dashing against the Ship's Rudder, and in the next Place she broke away, and either sunk or was driven off to Sea, so there was no hope from her; we had another Boat on board, but how to get her off into the Sea, was a doubtful thing; however, there was no room to debate, for we fancied the Ship would break in Pieces every Minute, and some told us she was actually broken already.

In this Distress, the Mate of our Vessel lays hold of the Boat, and

with the help of the rest of the Men, they got her slung over the Ship's side, and getting all into her, let go, and committed ourselves being Eleven in Number, to God's Mercy, and the wild Sea, for though the Storm was abated considerably, yet the Sea went dreadful high upon the Shore, and might well be called, *Den wild Zee*, as the *Dutch* call the Sea in a Storm.

And now our Case was very dismal indeed, for we all saw plainly that the Sea went so high, that the Boat could not live, and that we should be inevitably drowned. As to making Sail, we had none, nor, if we had, could we have done anything with it, so we worked at the Oar towards the Land, though with heavy Hearts, like Men going to Execution, for we all knew, that when the Boat came nearer the Shore, she would be dashed in a Thousand Pieces by the Breach of the Sea. However, we committed our Souls to God in the most earnest Manner, and the Wind driving us towards the Shore, we hasten'd our Destruction with our own Hands, pulling as well as we could towards Land.

What the Shore was, whether Rock or Sand, whether Steep or Shoal, we knew not, the only Hope that could rationally give us the least Shadow of Expectation, was, if we might happen into some Bay or Gulf, or the Mouth of some River, where by great Chance we might have run our Boat in, or got under the Lee of the Land, and perhaps made smooth Water. But there was nothing of this appeared, but as we made nearer and nearer the Shore, the Land looked more frightful than the Sea.

After we had rowed, or rather driven about a League and a Half, as we reckon'd it, a raging Wave, Mountain-like, came rolling a-stern of us, and plainly bade us expect the *Coup-de-Grace*. In a word, it took us with such a Fury, that it overset the Boat at once, and separating us as well from the Boat, as from one another, gave us not time hardly to say, O God! for we were all swallowed up in a Moment.

Nothing can describe the Confusion of Thought which I felt when I sunk into the Water, for though I swam very well, yet I could not deliver myself from the Waves so as to draw Breath, till that Wave having driven me, or rather carried me a vast Way on towards the Shore, and having spent itself, went back, and left me upon the Land almost dry, but half dead with the Water I took in. I had so much Presence of Mind as well as Breath left, that seeing myself

nearer the main Land than I expected, I got upon my Feet, and endeavoured to make on towards the Land as fast as I could, before another Wave should return, and take me up again. But I soon found it was impossible to avoid it, for I saw the Sea come after me as high as a great Hill, and as furious as an Enemy which I had no Means or Strength to contend with, my Business was to hold my Breath, and raise myself upon the Water, if I could; and so by swimming to preserve my Breathing, and Pilot myself towards the Shore, if possible, my greatest Concern now being, that the Sea, as it would carry me a great Way towards the Shore when it came on, might not carry me back again with it when it gave back towards the Sea.

The Wave that came upon me again, buried me at once 20 or 30

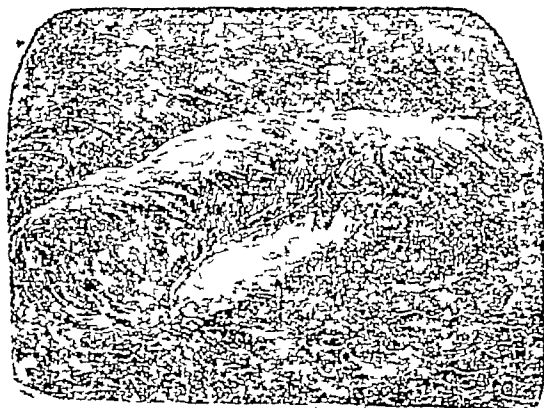


Foot deep in its own Body, and I could feel myself carried with a mighty Force and Swiftness towards the Shore a very great Way, but I held my Breath, and assisted myself to swim still forward with all my Might. I was ready to burst with holding my Breath, when, as I felt myself rising up, so to my immediate Relief, I found my Head and Hands shoot out above the Surface of the Water, and though it was not two Seconds of Time that I could keep myself so, yet it reliev'd me greatly, gave me Breath and new Courage. I was covered again with Water a good while, but not so long but I held it out; and finding the Water had spent itself, and began to return, I struck forward against the Return of the Waves, and felt Ground again with my Feet. I stood still a few Moments to recover Breath, and till the Water went from me, and then took to my Heels, and run with what

Strength I had farther towards the Shore. But neither would this deliver me from the Fury of the Sea, which came pouring in after me again, and twice more I was lifted up by the Waves, and carried forwards as before, the Shore being very flat.

The last Time of these two had well near been fatal to me, for the Sea having hurried me along as before, landed me, or rather dashed me against a Piece of a Rock, and that with such Force, as it left me senseless, and indeed helpless, as to my own Deliverance, for the Blow taking my Side and Breast, beat the Breath as it were quite out of my Body, and had it returned again immediately, I must have been strangled in the Water, but I recover'd a little before the return of the Waves, and seeing I should be cover'd again with the Water, I resolv'd to hold fast by a Piece of the Rock, and so to hold my Breath, if possible, till the Wave went back, now as the Waves were

not so high as at first, being nearer Land, I held my Hold till the Wave abated, and then fetched another Run, which brought me so near the Shore, that the next Wave, though it went over me, yet did not so swallow me up as to carry me away, and the next run I took, I got to the main Land,



where, to my great Comfort, I clamber'd up the Cliffs of the Shore, and sat me down upon the Grass, free from Danger, and quite out of the Reach of the Water

I was now landed, and safe on Shore, and began to look up and thank God that my Life was saved in a Case wherein there was some Minutes before scarce any room to hope. I believe it is impossible to express to the Life what the Ecstasies and Transports of the Soul are, when it is so saved, as I may say, out of the very Grave, and I do not wonder now at that Custom, *viz* That when a Malefactor, who has the Halter about his Neck, is tied up, and just going to be turned off, and has a Reprieve brought to him I say, I do not wonder that

they bring a Surgeon with it, to let him Blood that very Moment they tell him of it, that the Surprise may not drive the Animal Spirits from the Heart, and overwhelm him.

*For sudden Joys, like Griefs, confound at first.*

I walked about on the Shore, lifting up my Hands, and my whole Being, as I may say, wrapt up in the Contemplation of my Deliverance, making a Thousand Gestures and Motions which I cannot describe, reflecting upon all my Comrades that were drowned, and that there should not be one Soul saved but myself, for, as for them, I never saw them afterwards, or any Sign of them, except three of their Hats, one Cap, and two Shoes that were not Fellows

I cast my Eyes to the stranded Vessel, when the Breach and Froth of the Sea being so big, I could hardly see it, it lay so far off, and considered, Lord! how was it possible I could get on Shore?

After I had solac'd my Mind with the comfortable Part of my Condition, I began to look round me to see what kind of Place I was in, and what was next to be done, and I soon found my Comforts abate, and that in a word I had a dreadful Deliverance. For I was wet, had no Clothes to shift me, nor anything either to eat or drink to comfort me, neither did I see any Prospect before me, but that of perishing with Hunger, or being devour'd by wild Beasts, and that which was particularly afflicting to me, was, that I had no Weapon either to hunt and kill any Creature for my Sustenance, or to defend myself against any other Creature that might desire to kill me for theirs. In a Word, I had nothing about me but a Knife, a Tobacco-pipe, and a little Tobacco in a Box, this was all my Provision, and this threw me into terrible Agonies of Mind, that for a while I ran about like a Madman, Night coming upon me, I began with a heavy Heart to consider what would be my Lot if there were any ravenous Beasts in that Country, seeing at Night they always come abroad for their Prey.

All the Remedy that offer'd to my Thoughts at that Time, was, to get up into a thick bushy Tree like a Fir, but thorny, which grew near me, and where I resolv'd to sit all Night, and consider the next Day what Death I should die, for as yet I saw no Prospect of Life, I walked about a Furlong from the Shore, to see if I could find any fresh Water to drink, which I did, to my great Joy; and having drank and put a little Tobacco in my Mouth to prevent Hunger, I went to the Tree, and getting up into it, endeavour'd to place myself

so, as that if I should sleep I might not fall, and having cut me a short Stick, like a Truncheon, for my Defence, I took up my Lodging, and having been excessively fatigu'd, I fell fast asleep, and slept as comfortably as, I believe, few could have done in my Condition, and found myself the most refresh'd with it, that I think I ever was on such an Occasion.

When I waked it was broad Day, the Weather clear, and the Storm abated, so that the Sea did not rage and swell as before But that which surpris'd me most, was, that the Ship was lifted off in the Night from the Sand where she lay, by the Swelling of Tide, and was driven up almost as far as the Rock which I first mention'd, where I had been so bruised by the dashing me against it, this being within



about a Mile from the Shore where I was, and the Ship seeming to stand upright still, I wished myself on board, that, at least, I might have some necessary things for my use

When I came down from my Apartment in the Tree, I looked about me again, and the first thing I found was the Boat, which lay as the Wind and the Sea had tossed her up upon the Land, about two Miles on my right Hand, I walked as far as

I could upon the Shore to have got to her, but found a Neck or Inlet of Water between me and the Boat, which was about half a Mile broad, so I came back for the present, being more intent upon getting at the Ship, where I hoped to find something for my present Subsistence.

A little after Noon I found the Sea very calm, and the Tide ebbed so far out, that I could come within a Quarter of a Mile of the Ship, and here I found a fresh renewing of my Grief, for I saw evidently, that if we had kept on board, we had all been safe, that is to say, we had all got safe on Shore, and I had not been so miserable as to be left entirely destitute of all Comfort and Company, as I now was, this forced Tears from my Eyes again, but as there was little Relief in that, I resolv'd, if possible, to get to the Ship, so

I pulled off my Clothes, for the Weather was hot to the Extremity, and took the Water, but when I came to the Ship, my Difficulty was still greater to know how to get on board, for as she lay a-ground, and high out of the Water, there was nothing within my Reach to lay hold of, I swam round her twice, and the second Time I spied a small Piece of a Rope, which I wonder'd I did not see at first, hang down by the Fore-Chains so low, as that with great Difficulty I got hold of it, and by the help of that Rope, got up into the Forecastle of the Ship, here I found that the Ship was bulged, and had a great deal of Water in her Hold, but that she lay so on the Side of a Bank of hard Sand, or rather Earth, that her Stern lay lifted up upon the Bank, and her Head low almost to the Water, by this Means all her Quarter was free, and all that was in that Part was dry, for you may be sure my first Work was to search and to see what was spoiled and what was free, and first I found that all the Ship's Provisions were dry and untouch'd by the Water, and being very well dispos'd to eat, I went to the Bread-room and filled my Pockets with Biscuit, and eat it as I went about other things, for I had no time to lose, I also found some Rum in the great Cabin, of which I took a large Dram, and which I had indeed need enough of to spirit me for what was before me. Now I wanted nothing but a Boat to furnish myself with many things which I foresaw would be very necessary to me.

It was in vain to sit still and wish for what was not to be had, and this Extremity roused my Application, we had several spare Yards, and two or three large spars of Wood, and a spare Topmast or two in the Ship, I resolv'd to fall to work with these, and flung as many of them overboard as I could manage for their Weight, tying every one with a Rope that they might not drive away, when this was done I went down the Ship's Side, and pulling them to me, I tied four of them fast together at both Ends as well as I could, in the Form of a Raft, and laying two or three short Pieces of Plank upon them crossways, I found I could walk upon it very well, but that it was not able to bear any great Weight, the Pieces being too light, so I went to work, and with the Carpenter's Saw I cut a spare Topmast into three Lengths, and added them to my Raft, with a great deal of Labour and Pains, but hope of furnishing myself with Necessaries, encourag'd me to go beyond what I should have been able to have done upon another Occasion.



My Raft was now strong enough to bear any reasonable Weight ; my next Care was what to load it with, and how to preserve what I laid upon it from the Surf of the Sea , But I was not long considering thus, I first laid all the Plank or Boards upon it that I could get, and having consider'd well what I most wanted, I first got three of the Seamen's Chests, which I had broken open and empty'd, and lower'd them-down upon my Raft , the first of these I filled with Provisions, *viz* Bread, Rice, three Dutch Cheeses, five Pieces of dried Goats Flesh, which we lived much upon, and a little Remainder of *European* Corn which had been laid by for some Fowls which we brought to



Sea with us, but the Fowls were killed, there had been some Barley and Wheat together, but, to my great disappointment, I found afterwards that the Rats had eaten or spoiled it all, as for Liquors, I found several Cases of Bottles belonging to our Skipper, in which were some Cordial Waters, and in all about five or six Gallons of Rack, these I stowed by themselves, there being no need to put them into the Chest, nor no room for them. While I was doing this, I found the Tide began to flow, though very calm, and I had the Mortification to see my Coat, Shirt, and Waistcoat, which I had left on Shore upon the Sand, swim away , as for my Breeches which were

only Linen and open-kneed, I swam on board in them and my Stockings. However this put me upon rummaging for Clothes, of which I found enough, but took no more than I wanted for present use, for I had other things which my Eye was more upon, as first Tools to work with on Shore, and it was after long searching that I found out the Carpenter's Chest, which was indeed a very useful Prize to me, and much more valuable than a Ship Loading of Gold would have been at that time; I got it down to my Raft, even whole as it was, without losing time to look into it, for I knew in general what it contain'd.

My next Care was for some Ammunition, and Arms; there were two very good Fowling-pieces in the great Cabin, and two Pistols, these I secur'd first, with some Powder-horns, and a small Bag of Shot, and two old rusty Swords. I knew there were three Barrels of Powder in the Ship, but knew not where our Gunner had stowed them, but with much search I found them, two of them dry and

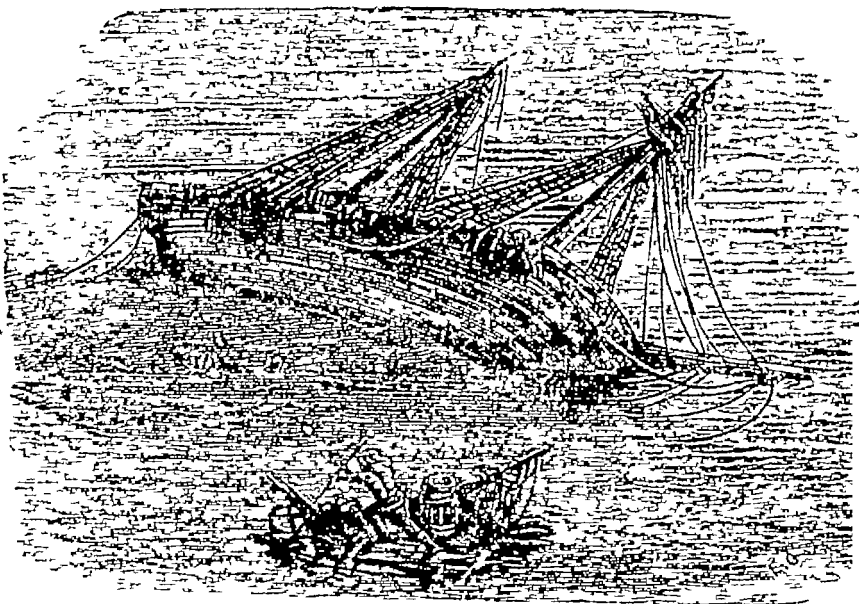
good, the third had taken Water, those two I got to my Raft, with the Arms, and now I thought myself pretty well freighted, and began to think how I should get to Shore with them, having neither Sail, Oar, or Rudder, and the least Capfull of Wind would have overset all my Navigation.

I had three Encouragements, 1. A smooth calm Sea, 2 The Tide rising and setting in to the Shore, 3 What little Wind there was blew me towards the Land, and thus, having found two or three



broken Oars belonging to the Boat, and besides the Tools which were in the Chest, I found two Saws, an Axe, and a Hammer, and with this Cargo I put to Sea. For a Mile, or thereabouts, my Raft went very well, only that I found it drive a little distant from the Place where I had landed before, by which I perceiv'd that there was some Indraft of the Water, and consequently I hoped to find some Creek or River there, which I might make use of as a Port to get to Land with my Cargo

As I imagin'd, so it was, there appear'd before me a little opening of the Land, and I found a strong Current of the Tide set into it, so



I guided my Raft as well as I could to keep in the Middle of the Stream. But here I had like to have suffer'd a second Shipwreck, which, if I had, I think verily would have broke my Heart, for knowing nothing of the Coast, my Raft run a-ground at one end of it upon a Shoal, and not being a-ground at the other End, it wanted but a little that all my Cargo had slipped off towards that End that was afloat, and so fallen into the Water. I did my utmost by setting my Back against the Chests, to keep them in their Places, but could not thrust off the Raft with all my Strength, neither durst I stir from the

Because I was in, I put holding up the Chests with all my Might, stood in that Manner near half an Hour, in which time the rising of the Water brought me a little more upon a Level, and a little after, the Water subsiding, my Pile floated again, and I thrust her off with the Oar I had, into the Current, and then driving up higher, I at length found myself in the Mouth of a little River, with Land on both Sides, and a strong Current or Tide running up, I looked on both Sides for a proper Place to get to Shore, for I was not willing to be driven too high up the River, hoping in time to see some Ship at Sea, and there fore resolv'd to place myself as near the Coast as I could.

At length I found a little Cove on the right Shore of the Creek, to which with great Pain and Difficulty I guided my Raft, and at last got so near, at that resting Ground with my Oar, I could thrust her directly in, but here I had lide to have dipped all my Cargo in the Sea again, for that Shore lying pretty steep, that is to say sloping, there was no Place to land, but where one End of my Floot, if it run on Shore would be so high, and the other sink lower as before, that it would endanger my Cargo again. All that I could do, was to wait till the Tide was at highest, keeping the Raft with my Oar like an Anchor to hold the Side of it fast to the Shore, near a flat Piece of Ground, which I expected the Water would flow over, and so it did. As soon as I found Water enough, for my Raft drew about a Foot of Water, I thrust her on upon that flat Piece of Ground, and there fasten'd or moor'd her by sneling my two broken Oars into the Ground, one on one Side near one Land, and one on the other Side near the other Land; and thus I lay till the Water ebb'd away, and left my Raft and all my Cargo safe on Shore.

My next Work was to view the Country, and seek a proper Place for my Habitation, and where to stow my Goods to secure them from whatever might happen; where I was I yet knew not, whether on the Continent or on an Island, whether inhabited or not inhabited, whether in Danger of wild Beasts or not. There was a Hill not above a Mile from me, which rose up very steep and high, and which seemed to over-top some other Hills which lay as in a Ridge from it northward, I took out one of the fowling Pieces, and one of the Pistols, and an Horn of Powder, and thus armed I travell'd for Discovery up to the Top of that Hill, where after I had with great Labour and Difficulty got to the Top, I saw my Fate to my great Affliction, (*viz.*) that I was in an Island environ'd every Way with the Sea, no Land

to be seen, except some Rocks which lay a great Way off, and two small Islands less than this, which lay about three Leagues to the West.

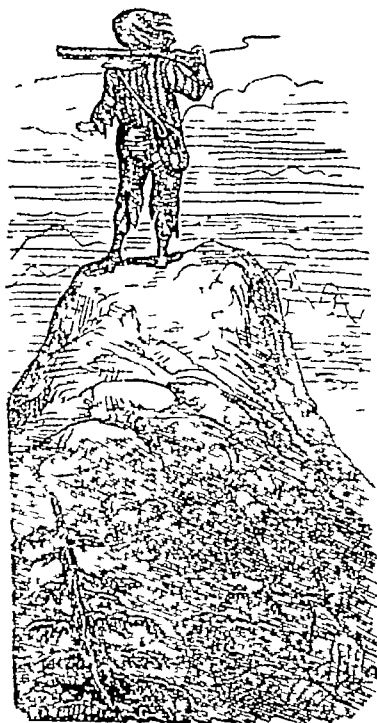
I found also that the Island I was in was barren, and, as I saw good Reason to believe, uninhabited, except by wild Beasts, of whom however I saw none, yet I saw Abundance of Fowls, but knew not

their Kinds, neither when I killed them could I tell what was fit for Food, and what not, at my coming back, I shot at a great Bird which I saw sitting upon a Tree on the Side of a great Wood, I believe it was the first Gun that had been fired there since the Creation of the World, I had no sooner fired, but from all the Parts of the Wood there arose an innumerable Number of Fowls of many Sorts, making a confus'd Screaming, and crying every one according to his usual Note, but not one of them of any Kind that I knew As for the Creature I killed, I took it to be a Kind of a Hawk, its Colour and Beak resembling it, but had no Talons or Claws more than common, its Flesh was Carrion, and fit for nothing

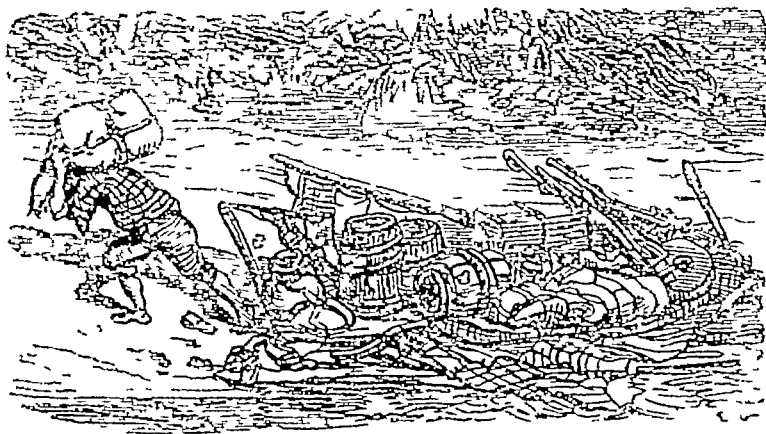
Contented with this Discovery,

I came back to my Raft, and fell to Work to bring my Cargo on Shore, which took me up the rest of that Day, and what to do with myself at Night I knew not, nor indeed where to rest, for I was afraid to lie down on the Ground, not knowing but some wild Beast might devour me, though as I afterwards found there was really no Need for those Fears

However, as well as I could, I barricado'd myself round with the Chests and Boards that I had brought on Shore, and made a Kind of a Hut for that Night's Lodging, as for Food, I yet saw not which Way to supply myself, except I had seen two or three Creatures like Hares run out of the Wood where I shot the Fowl



I now began to consider, that I might yet get a great many Things out of the Ship, which would be useful to me, and particularly some of the Riggings, and Sails, and such other Things as might come to Land, and I resolv'd to make another Voyage on Board the Vessel, if possible; and as I knew that the first Storm that blew must necessarily break her all in Pieces, I resolv'd to set all other Things apart, until I got everything out of the Ship that I could get, then I called a Council, that is to say, in my Thoughts, whether I should take back the Raft, but this appear'd impracticable, so I resolv'd to go as before, when the Tide was down, and I did so, only that I stripped before I went from my Hut, having nothing on but a Chequer'd Shirt, and a Pair of Linen Drawers, and a Pair of Pumps on my Feet.



I got on Board the Ship, as before, and prepar'd a second Raft, and having had Experience of the first, I neither made this so unwieldy, nor loaded it so hard, but yet I brought away several Things very useful to me, as first, in the Carpenter's Stores I found two or three Bags full of Nails and Spikes, a great Screw-Jack, a Dozen or two of Hatchets, and above all, that most useful Thing called a Grindstone, all these I secured together, with several Things belonging to the Gunner, particularly two or three Iron Crows, and two Barrels of Musket-Bullets, seven Muskets, and another fowling Piece, with some small Quantity of Powder more, a large Bag full of small Shot, and a great Roll of Sheet Lead. But this last was so heavy, I could not hoist it up to get it over the Ship's Side.

Besides these Things, I took all the Men's Clothes that I could

find, and a spare Fore-topsail, a Hammock, and some Bedding, and with this I loaded my second Raft, and brought them all safe on Shore to my very great Comfort.

I was under some Apprehensions during my Absence from the Land, that at least my Provisions might be devour'd on Shore, but when I came back, I found no Sign of any Visitor, only there sat a Creature like a wild Cat upon one of the Chests, which when I came towards it, ran away a little Distance, and then stood still, she sat very compos'd, and unconcern'd, and looked full in my Face, as if she had a Mind to be acquainted with me, I presented my Gun at her, but as she did not understand it, she was perfectly unconcern'd at it, nor did she offer to stir away, upon which I tossed her a Bit of Biscuit, though by the Way I was not very free of it, for my Store was not great. However, I spared her a Bit, I say, and she went to it, smelled of it, and ate it, and looked (as pleased) for more, but I thanked her, and could spare no more, so she marched off.

Having got my second Cargo on Shore, though I was fain to open the Barrels of Powder, and bring them by Parcels, for they were too heavy, being large Casks, I went to work to make me a little Tent with the Sail and some Poles which I cut for that Purpose, and into this Tent I brought everything that I knew would spoil, either with Rain or Sun, and I piled all the empty Chests and Casks up in a Circle round the Tent, to fortify it from any sudden Attempt, either from Man or Beast.

When I had done this I blocked up the Door of the Tent with some Boards within, and an empty Chest set up on End without, and spreading one of the Beds upon the Ground, laying my two Pistols just at my Head, and my Gun at Length by me, I went to Bed for the first Time, and slept very quietly all Night, for I was very weary and heavy, for the Night before I had slept little, and had labour'd very hard all Day, as well to fetch all those Things from the Ship, as to get them on Shore.

I had the biggest Magazine of all Kinds now that ever were laid up, I believe, for one Man, but I was not satisfy'd still, for while the Ship sat upright in that Posture, I thought I ought to get everything out of her that I could, so every Day at low Water I went on Board, and brought away something or other. But particularly the third Time I went, I brought away as much of the Rigging as I could as also all the small Ropes and Rope-twine I could get, with a Piece

of spare Canvas, which was to mend the Sails upon Occasion, the Barrel of wet Gunpowder : In a Word, I brought away all the Sails first and last, only that I was fain to cut them in Pieces, and bring as much at a Time as I could , for they were no more useful to be Sails, but as mere Canvas only.

But that which comforted me more still, was, that at last of all, after I had made five or six such Voyages as these, and thought I had nothing more to expect from the Ship that was worth my meddling with, I say, after all this, I found a great Hogshead of Bread, and three large Runlets of Rum or Spirits, and a Box of Sugar, and a Barrel



of fine Flour, this was surprising to me, because I had given over expecting any more Provisions, except what was spoiled by the Water . I soon empty'd the Hogshead of that Bread, and wrapt it up Parcel by Parcel in Pieces of the Sails, which I cut out, and in a Word, I got all this safe on Shore also

The next Day I made another Voyage , and now having plunder'd the Ship of what was portable and fit to hand out, I began with the Cables ; and cutting the great Cable into Pieces, such as I could move, I got two Cables and a Hawser on Shore, with all the Iron-work I could get , and having cut down the Sprtsail-yard, and the Misen-yard, and every thing I could to make a large Raft, I loaded



it with all those heavy Goods, and came away But my good Luck began now to leave me, for this Raft was so unwieldy, and so overladen, that after I was enter'd the little Cove, where I had landed the rest of my Goods, not being able to guide it so handily as I did the other, it overset, and threw me and all my Cargo into the Water; as for myself it was no great Harm, for I was near the Shore; but as to my Cargo, it was great Part of it lost, especially the Iron, which I expected would have been of great Use to me However, when the Tide was out, I got most of the Pieces of Cable ashore, and some of the Iron, though with infinite Labour, for I was fain to dip for it into the Water, a Work which fatigu'd me very much After this I went every Day on Board, and brought away what I could get.

I had been now Thirteen Days on Shore, and had been eleven Times on Board the Ship, in which Time I had brought away all that one Pair of Hands could well be suppos'd capable to bring, though I believe verily, had the calm Weather held, I should have brought away the whole Ship Piece by Piece But preparing the 12th Time to go on Board, I found the Wind begin to rise, however at low Water I went on Board, and though I thought I had rummag'd the Cabin so effectually, as that nothing more could be found, yet I discover'd a Locker with Drawers in it, in one of which I found two or three Razors, and one Pair of large Scissars, with some ten or a dozen of good Knives and Forks, in another I found about Thirty six-Pounds value in Money, some *European* Coin, some *Brasil*, some Pieces of Eight, some Gold, some Silver

I smiled to myself at the Sight of this Money, O Drug! said I aloud, what art thou good for, Thou art not worth to me, no not the taking off of the Ground, one of those Knives is worth all this Heap, I have no Manner of use for thee, e'en remain where thou art, and go to the Bottom as a Creature whose Life is not worth saving How ever upon Second Thoughts, I took it away, and wrapping all this in a Piece of Canvas, I began to think of making another Raft, but while I was preparing this, I found the Sky overcast, and the Wind began to rise, and in a Quarter of an Hour it blew a fresh Gale from the Shore, it presently occur'd to me, that it was in vain to pretend to make a Raft with the Wind off Shore, and that it was my Business to be gone before the Tide of Flood began, otherwise I might not be able to reach the Shore at all Accordingly I let myself down into the Water, and swam cross the Channel, which lay between the Ship

and the Sands, and even that with Difficulty enough, partly with the Weight of the Things I had about me, and partly the Roughness of the Water, for the Wind rose very hastily, and before it was quite high Water, it blew a Storm.

But I was gotten home to my little Tent, where I lay with all my Wealth about me very secure. It blew very hard all that Night, and in the Morning when I looked out, behold no more Ship was to be seen, I was a little surpriz'd, but recover'd myself with this satisfactory Reflection, *viz* That I had lost no time, nor abated no Diligence to get everything out of her that could be useful to me, and that indeed there was little left in her that I was able to bring away if I had had more time.

I now gave over any more Thoughts of the Ship, or of anything out of her, except what might drive on Shore from her Wreck, as indeed divers Pieces of her afterwards did, but those things were of small use to me.

My Thoughts were now wholly employ'd about securing myself against either Savages, if any should appear, or wild Beasts, if any were in the Island, and I had many Thoughts of the Method how to do this, and what kind of Dwelling to make, whether I should make me a Cave in the Earth, or a Tent upon the Earth. And, in short, I resolv'd upon both, the Manner and Description of which, it may not be improper to give an Account of.

I soon found the Place I was in was not for my Settlement, particularly because it was upon a low moonish Ground near the Sea, and I believ'd would not be wholesome, and more particularly because there was no fresh Water near it, so I resolv'd to find a more healthy and more convenient Spot of Ground.

I consulted several Things in my Situation which I found would be proper for me 1st, Health, and fresh Water I just now mentioned 2dly, Shelter from the Heat of the Sun. 3dly, Security from ravenous Creatures, whether Men or Beasts 4thly, a View to the Sea, that if God sent any Ship in Sight, I might not lose any Advantage for my Deliverance, of which I was not willing to banish all my Expectation yet.

In search of a Place proper for this, I found a little Plain on the side of a rising Hill, whose Front towards this little Plain, was steep as a House-side, so that nothing could come down upon me from the Top; on the Side of this Rock there was a hollow Place worn a little way in like the Entrance or Door of a Cave, but there was not really any Cave or Way into the Rock at all.

On the Flat of the Green, just before this hollow Place, I resolv'd to pitch my Tent, This Plain was not above an Hundred Yards broad and about twice as long, and lay like a Green before my Door, and at the End of it descended irregularly every Way down into the Low-grounds by the Sea-side. It was on the *NNW* Side of the Hill, so that I was shelter'd from the Heat every Day, till it came to a *W* and by *S* Sun, or thereabouts, which in those Countries is near the Setting

Before I set up my Tent, I drew a half Circle before the hollow Place, which took in about Ten Yards in its Semi-diameter from the Rock, and Twenty Yards in its Diameter, from its Beginning and Ending

In this half Circle I pitched two Rows of strong Stakes, driving them into the Ground till they stood very firm like Piles, the biggest End being out of the Ground about Five Foot and a Half, and sharpen'd on the Top The two Rows did not stand above Six Inches from one another

Then I took the Pieces of Cable which I had cut in the Ship, and I laid them in Rows one upon another, within the Circle, between these two Rows of Stakes, up to the Top, placing other Stakes in the Inside, leaning against them, about two Foot and a half high, like a Spur to a Post, and this Fence was so strong, that neither Man or Beast could get into it or over it This cost me a great deal of Time and Labour, especially to cut the Piles in the Woods, bring them to the Place, and drive them into the Earth

The Entrance into this Place I made to be not by a Door, but by a short Ladder to go over the Top, which Ladder, when I was in, I lifted over after me, and so I was completely fenced in, and fortified, as I thought, from all the World, and consequently slept secure in the Night, which otherwise I could not have done, though as it appear'd afterward, there was no need of all this Caution from the Enemies that I apprehended Danger from.

Into this Fence or Fortress, with infinite Labour, I carried all my Riches, all my Provisions, Ammunition and Stores, of which you have the Account above, and I made me a large Tent, which, to preserve me from the Rains that in one Part of the Year are very violent there, I made double, *viz* One smaller Tent within, and one larger Tent above it, and cover'd the uppermost with a large Tarpaulin which I had saved among the Sails

And now I lay no more for a while in the Bed which I had brought on Shore, but in a Hammock, which was indeed a very good one, and belong'd to the Mate of the Ship.

Into this Tent I brought all my Provisions, and everything that would spoil by the Wet, and having thus enclos'd all my Goods, I made up the Entrance, which till now I had left open, and so passed and repass'd, as I said, by a short Ladder

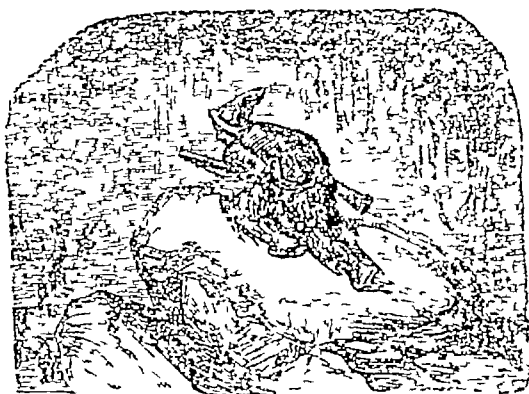
When I had done this, I began to work my Way into the Rock, and bringing all the Earth and Stones that I dug down out through my Tent, I laid them up within my Fence in the Nature of a Terrace, that so it rais'd the Ground within about a Foot and a Half, and thus I made me a Cave just behind my Tent, which served me like a Cellar to my House.

It cost me much Labour, and many Days, before all these Things were brought to Perfection, and therefore I must go back to some other things which took up some of my Thoughts At the same time it happen'd after I had laid my Scheme for the setting up my Tent, and making the Cave, that a Storm of Rain falling from a thick dark Cloud, a sudden Flash of Lightning happen'd, and after that a great Clap of Thunder, as is naturally the Effect of it; I was not so much surpris'd with the Lightning as I was with a Thought which darted into my Mind as swift as the Lightning itself O my Powder! My very Heart sunk within me, when I thought, that at one Blast all my Powder might be destroy'd, on which, not my defence only, but the providing me Food, as I thought, entirely depended, I was nothing near so anxious about my own Danger, though had the Powder took fire, I had never known who had hurt me

Such Impression did this make upon me, that after the Storm was over, I laid aside all my Works, my Building, and Fortifying, and applied myself to make Bags and Boxes to separate the Powder, and keep it a little and a little in a Parcel, in hope, that whatever might come, it might not all take Fire at once, and to keep it so apart that it should not be possible to make one part fire another I finish'd this Work in about a Fortnight, and I think my Powder, which in all was about 240 lb weight was divided in not less than a Hundred Parcels, as to the Barrel that had been wet, I did not apprehend any Danger from that, so I placed it in my new Cave, which in my Fancy I called my Kitchen, and the rest I hid up and down in Holes among

the Rocks, so that no wet might come to it, marking very carefully where I laid it.

In the Interval of time while this was doing I went out once at least every Day with my Gun, as well to divert myself, as to see if I could kill anything fit for Food, and as near as I could to acquaint myself with what the Island produc'd The first time I went out I presently discover'd that there were Goats in the Island, which was a great Satisfaction to me, but then it was attended with this Misfortune to me, *viz* That they were so shy, so subtle, and so swift of Foot, that it was the difficultest thing in the World to come at them But I was not discourag'd at this, not doubting but I might now and then shoot one, as it soon happen'd, for



after I had found their Haunts a little, I laid wait in this Manner for them I observ'd if they saw me in the Valleys, though they were upon the Rocks, they would run away as in a terrible Fright, but if they were feeding in the Valleys, and I was upon the Rocks, they took no Notice of me,

from whence I concluded, that by the Position of their Optics, their Sight was so directed downward, that they did not readily see Objects that were above them, so afterward I took this Method, I always climbed the Rocks first to get above them, and then had frequently a fair Mark. The first shot I made among these Creatures, I killed a She-Goat which had a little Kid by her which she gave Suck to, which grieved me heartily, but when the Old one fell, the Kid stood stock still by her till I came and took her up, and not only so, but when I carried the Old one with me upon my Shoulders, the Kid follow'd me quite to my Enclosure, upon which I laid down the Dam, and took the Kid in my Arms, and carried it over my Pale, in hopes to have bred it up tame, but it would not eat, so I was forced to kill it and eat it myself, these two supplied me with Flesh a great

while, for I eat sparingly; and saved my Provisions (my Bread especially) as much as possibly I could

Having now fixed my Habitation, I found it absolutely necessary to provide a Place to make a Fire in, and Fuel to burn; and what I did for that, as also how I enlarg'd my Cave, and what Conveniences I made, I shall give a full Account of in its Place: But I must first give some little Account of myself, and of my Thoughts about Living, which it may well be suppos'd were not a few

I had a dismal Prospect of my Condition, for as I was not cast away upon that Island without being driven, as is said, by a violent Storm quite out of the Course of our intended Voyage, and a great Way, viz. some Hundreds of Leagues

out of the ordinary Course of the Trade of Mankind, I had great Reason to consider it as a Determination of Heaven, that in this desolate Place, and in this desolate Manner I should end my Life, the Tears would run plentifully down my Face when I made these Reflections, and sometimes I would expostulate with myself, Why Providence should thus completely run its Creatures, and render them so absolutely miserable, so without Help abandon'd, so entirely depress'd, that it could hardly be rational to be thankful for such a Life.



But something always return'd swift upon me to check these Thoughts, and to reprove me, and particularly one Day walking with my Gun in my Hand by the Sea-side, I was very pensive upon the Subject of my present Condition, when Reason as it were expostulated with me the other Way, thus Well, you are in a desolate Condition it is true, but pray remember, Where are the rest of you? Did not you come Eleven of you into the Boat, where are the Ten? Why were not they saved and you lost? Why were you singled out? Is it better to be here or there? and then I pointed to the Sea. All Evils are to be consider'd with the Good that is in them, and with what worse attends them

Then it occur'd to me again, how well I was furnish'd for my Subsistence, and what would have been my Case if it had not happen'd, *Which was an Hundred Thousand to one*, that the Ship floated from the Place where she first struck and was driven so near the Shore that I had time to get all these Things out of her. What would have been my Case, if I had been to have lived in the Condition in which I at first came on Shore, without Necessaries of Life, or Necessaries to supply and procure them? Particularly said I aloud, (though to myself) what should I have done without a Gun, without Ammunition, without any Tools to make anything, or to work with, without Clothes, Bedding, a Tent, or any manner of Covering, and that now I had all these to a Sufficient Quantity, and was in a fair way to provide myself in such a manner, as to live without my Gun when my Ammunition was spent, so that I had a tolerable View of subsisting without any Want as long as I lived, for I consider'd from the beginning how I would provide for the Accidents that might happen, and for the time that was to come, even not only after my Ammunition should be spent, but even after my Health or Strength should decay

I confess I had not entertain'd any Notion of my Ammunition being destroy'd at one Blast, I mean my Powder being blown up by Lightning, and thus made the Thoughts of it so surprising to me when it lighten'd and thunder'd, as I observ'd just now

And now being to enter into a melancholy Relation of a Scene of silent Life, such perhaps as was never heard of in the World before, I shall take it from its Beginning, and continue it in its Order. It was, by my Account, the 30th of *Sept* when, in the Manner as above-said, I first set Foot upon this horrid Island, when the Sun being, to

us, in its Autumnal Equinox, was almost just over my Head, for I reckon'd myself, by Observation, to be in the Latitude of 9 Degrees 22 Minutes North of the Line.

After I had been there about Ten or Twelve Days, it came into my Thoughts, that I should lose my Reckoning of Time for want of Books and Pen and Ink, and should even forget the Sabbath Days from the working Days, but to prevent this I cut it with my Knife upon a large Post, in Capital Letters, and making it into a great Cross I set it up on the Shore where I first landed, *viz* I came on Shore here on the 30th of Sept. 1659 Upon the Sides of this square Post, I cut every Day a Notch with my Knife, and every seventh Notch was as long again as the rest, and every first Day of the Month as long again as that long one, and thus I kept my Kalendar, or weekly, monthly, and yearly reckoning of Time

In the next place we are to observe, that among the many things which I brought out of the Ship in the several Voyages, which, as above mention'd, I made to it, I got several things of less Value, but not all less useful to me, which I omitted setting down before, as in particular, Pens, Ink, and Paper, several Parcels in the Captain's, Mate's, Gunner's, and Carpenter's keeping, three or four Compasses, some Mathematical Instruments, Dials, Perspectives, Charts, and Books of Navigation, all which I huddled together, whether I might want them or no, also I found three very good Bibles which came to me in my Cargo from *England*, and which I had packed up among my things, some *Portuguese* Books also, and among them two or three Popish Prayer-Books, and several other Books, all which I carefully secur'd And I must not forget, that we had in the Ship a Dog and two Cats, of whose eminent History I may have occasion to say something in its Place, for I carried both the Cats with me, and as for the Dog, he jumped out of the Ship of himself and swam on Shore to me the Day after I went on Shore with my first Cargo, and was a trusty Servant to me many Years, I wanted nothing that he could fetch me, nor any Company that he could make up to me, I only wanted to have him talk to me, but that would not do As I observ'd before, I found Pen, Ink and Paper, and I husbanded them to the utmost, and I shall show, that while my Ink lasted, I kept things very exact, but after that was gone, I could not, for I could not make any Ink by any Means that I could devise.



And this put me in mind that I wanted many things, notwithstanding all that I had amassed together, and of these, this of Ink was one, as also Spade, Pick-Axe and Shovel, to dig or remove the Earth, Needles, Pins, and Thread, as for Linen, I soon learned to want that without much Difficulty

This want of Tools made every Work I did go on heavily, and it was near a whole Year before I had entirely finish'd my little Pale or surrounded Habitation The Piles or Stakes, which were as heavy as I could well lift, were a long time in cutting and preparing in the Woods, and more by far in bringing home, so that I spent sometimes two Days in cutting and bringing home one of those Posts, and a third Day in driving it into the Ground, for which Purpose I got a heavy Piece of Wood at first, but at last bethought myself of one of the Iron Crows, which however, though I found it, yet it made driving those Posts or Piles very laborious and tedious Work.

But what need I have been concern'd at the Tediousness of anything I had to do, seeing I had time enough to do it in, nor had I any other Employment if that had been over, at least, that I could foresee, except the ranging the Island to seek for Food, which I did more or less every Day

I now began to consider seriously my Condition, and the Circumstance I was reduc'd to, and I drew up the State of my Affairs in Writing, not so much to leave them to any that were to come after me, for I was like to have but few Heirs, as to deliver my Thoughts from daily poring upon them, and afflicting my Mind, and as my Reason began now to master my Despondency, I began to comfort myself as well as I could, and to set the good against the Evil, that I might have something to distinguish my Case from worse, and I stated it very impartially, like Debtor and Creditor, the Comforts I enjoy'd against the Miseries I suffer'd, Thus,

#### Evil.

*I am cast upon a horrible desolate Island, void of all hope of Recovery*

*I am sing'd out and separated, as it were, from all the World to be miserable.*

#### Good.

*But I am alive, and not drowned as all my Ship's Company was*

*But I am sing'd out too from all the Ship's Crew to be spared from Death, and he that miraculously saved me from Death, can deliver me from this Condition*

## Evil

*I am divided from Mankind, a Solitaire, one banish'd from human Society*

*I have not Clothes to cover me.*

*I am without any Defence or Means to resist any Violence of Man or Beast.*

*I have no Soul to speak to, or relieve me.*

## Good

*But I am not starved and perishing on a barren Place, affording no Sustenance.*

*But I am in a hot Climate, where if I had Clothes I could hardly wear them*

*But I am cast on an Island, where I see no wild Beasts to hurt me, as I saw on the Coast of Africa And what if I had been Shipwreck'd there?*

*But God wonderfully sent the Ship in near enough to the Shore, that I have gotten out so many necessary things as will either supply my Wants, or enable me to supply myself even as long as I live*

Upon the whole, here was an undoubted Testimony, that there was scarce any Condition in the World so miserable, but there was something *Negative* or something *Positive* to be thankful for in it, and let this stand as a Direction from the Experience of the most miserable of all Conditions in this World, that we may always find in it something to comfort ourselves from, and to set in the Description of Good and Evil, on the Credit Side of the Account.

Having now brought my Mind a little to relish my Condition, and given over looking out to Sea to see if I could spy a Ship, I say, giving over these things, I began to apply myself to accommodate my way of Living, and to make things as easy to me as I could.

I have already described my Habitation, which was a Tent under the Side of a Rock, surrounded with a strong Pale of Posts and Cables, but I might now rather call it a Wall, for I raised a kind of Wall up against it of Turfs, about two Foot thick on the Outside, and after some time, I think it was a Year and Half, I raised Rasters from it leaning to the Rock, and thatched or cover'd it with Boughs of Trees, and such things as I could get to keep out the Rain, which I found at some times of the Year very violent

I have already observ'd how I brought all my Goods into this

Pale, and into the Cave which I had made behind me But I must observe too, that at first this was a confus'd Heap of Goods, which as they lay in no Order, so they took up all my Place, I had no room to turn myself, so I set myself to enlarge my Cave and Works farther into the Earth, for it was a loose sandy Rock, which yielded easily to the Labour I bestow'd on it And so when I found I was pretty safe as to Beasts of Prey, I worked sideways to the Right Hand into the Rock, and then turning to the Right again, worked quite out and made me a Door to come out, on the Outside of my Pale or Fortification.

This gave me not only Egress and Regress, as it were a Back-way to my Tent and to my Storehouse, but gave me room to stow my Goods

And now I began to apply myself to make such necessary things as I found I most wanted, as particularly a Chair and a Table, for without these I was not able to enjoy the few Comforts I had in the World, I could not write, or eat, or do several things with so much Pleasure without a Table.

So I went to work, and here I must needs observe, that as Reason is the Substance and Original of the Mathematics, so by stating and squaring everything by Reason, and by making the most rational Judgment of things, every Man may be in time Master of every mechanic Art. I had never handled a Tool in my Life, and yet in time by Labour, Application, and Contrivance, I found at last that I wanted nothing but I could have made it, especially if I had had Tools, however I made abundance of things, even without Tools, and some with no more Tools than an Adze and a Hatchet, which perhaps were never made that way before, and that with infinite Labour For Example, If I wanted a Board, I had no other Way but to cut down a Tree, set it on an Edge before me, and hew it flat on either Side with my Axe, till I had brought it to be thin as a Plank, and then dubb it smooth with my Adze It is true, by this Method, I could make but one Board out of a whole Tree, but this I had no Remedy for but Patience, any more than I had for the prodigious deal of Time and Labour which it took me up to make a Plank or Board But my Time or Labour was little worth, and so it was as well employ'd one way as another

However, I made me a Table and a Chair, as I observ'd above, in the first Place, and this I did out of the short Pieces of Boards that I

brought on my Raft from the Ship: But when I had wrought out some Boards, as above, I made large Shelves of the Breadth of a Foot and Half one over another, all along one Side of my Cave, to lay all my Tools, Nails, and Ironwork, and in a Word, to separate every thing at large in their Places, that I might come easily at them, I knocked Pieces into the Wall of the Rock to hang my Guns and all things that would hang up

So that had my Cave been to be seen, it looked like a general Magazine of all Necessary things, and I had everything so ready at my Hand, that it was a great Pleasure to me to see all my Goods in such Order, and especially to find my Stock of all Necessaries so great.

And now it was when I began to keep a Journal of every Day's Employment, for indeed at first I was in too much Hurry, and not only Hurry as to Labour, but in too much Discomposure of Mind, and my Journal would have been full of many dull things For Example, I must have said thus *Sept* the 30th After I got to Shore and had escap'd drowning, instead of being thankful to God for my Deliverance, having first vomited with the great Quantity of salt Water which was gotten into my Stomach, and recovering myself a little, I ran about the Shore, wringing my Hands and beating my Head and Face, exclaiming at my Misery, and crying out, I was undone, undone, till tired and faint I was forced to lie down on the Ground to repose, but durst not sleep for fear of being devour'd

Some Days after this, and after I had been on board the Ship, and got all that I could out of her, yet I could not forbear getting up to the Top of a little Mountain and looking out to Sea in hopes of seeing a Ship, then fancy at a vast Distance I spied a Sail, please myself with the Hopes of it, and then after looking steadily till I was almost blind, lose it quite, and sit down and weep like a Child, and thus increase my Misery by my Folly

But having gotten over these things in some Measure, and having settled my household Stuff and Habitation, made me a Table and a Chair, and all as handsome about me as I could, I began to keep my Journal, of which I shall here give you the Copy (though in it will be told all these Particulars over again) as long as it lasted, for having no more Ink I was forced to leave it off.

## THE JOURNAL

September 30, 1659 I poor miserable *Robinson Crusoe*, being shipwreck'd, during a dreadful Storm, in the offing, came on Shore on this dismal unfortunate Island, which I called *the Island of Despair*, all the rest of the Ship's Company being drowned, and myself almost dead.



All the rest of that Day I spent in afflicting myself at the dismal Circumstances I was brought to, *viz* I had neither Food, House, Clothes, Weapon, or Place to fly to, and in Despair of any Relief, saw nothing but Death before me, either that I should be devour'd by wild Beasts, murdered by Savages, or starved to Death for Want of Food At the Ap-

proach of Night, I slept in a Tree for fear of wild Creatures, but slept soundly though it rained all Night.

October 1 In the Morning I saw to my great Surprise the Ship had floated with the high Tide, and was driven on Shore again much nearer the Island, which as it was some Comfort on one hand, for seeing her sit upright, and not broken to Pieces, I hoped, if the Wind abated, I might get on board, and get some Food and Necessaries out of her for my Relief, so on the other hand, it renew'd my Grief at the Loss of my Comrades, who I imagin'd if we had all stayed on board might have saved the Ship, or at least that they would not have been all drowned as they were, and that had the Men been saved, we might perhaps have built us a Boat out of the Ruins of the Ship, to have carried us to some other Part of the World. I spent great Part

of this Day in perplexing myself on these things; but at length seeing the Ship almost dry, I went upon the Sand as near as I could, and then swam on board, this Day also it continu'd raining, though with no Wind at all

From the 1st of *October* to the 24th All these Days entirely spent in many several Voyages to get all I could out of the Ship, which I brought on Shore, every Tide of Flood, upon Rafts Much Rain also in these Days, though with some Intervals of fair Weather But, it seems, this was the rainy Season

*Oct. 20.* I overset my Raft, and all the Goods I had got upon it, but being in shoal Water, and the things being chiefly heavy, I recover'd many of them when the Tide was out.

*Oct. 25* It rained all Night and all Day, with some Gusts of Wind, during which time the Ship broke in Pieces, the Wind blowing a little harder than before, and was no more to be seen, except the Wreck of her, and that only at low Water. I spent this Day in covering and securing the Goods which I had saved, that the Rain might not spoil them

*Oct 26* I walked about the Shore almost all Day to find out a place to fix my Habitation, greatly concern'd to secure myself from an Attack in the Night, either from wild Beasts or Men Towards Night I fixed upon a proper Place under a Rock, and marked out a Semicircle for my Encampment, which I resolv'd to strengthen with a Work, Wall, or Fortification made of double Piles, lined within with Cables, and without with Turfs

From the 26th to the 30th I worked very hard in carrying all my Goods to my new Habitation, though some part of the time it rained exceeding hard

The 31st in the Morning I went out into the Island with my Gun to see for some Food, and discover the Country, when I killed a She-Goat, and her Kid follow'd me home, which I afterwards killed also, because it would not feed.

*November 1.* I set up my Tent under a Rock, and lay there for the first Night, making it as large as I could with Stakes driven in to swing my Hammock upon

*Nov 2* I set up all my Chests and Boards, and the Pieces of Timber which made my Rafts, and with them formed a Fence round me, a little within the Place I had marked out for my Fortification

*Nov 3* I went out with my Gun, and killed two Fowls like Ducks, which were very good Food. In the Afternoon went to work to make me a Table.

*Nov 4.* This Morning I began to order my times of Work, of going out with my Gun, time of Sleep, and time of Diversion, *viz* Every Morning I walked out with my Gun for two or three Hours if it did not rain, then employ'd myself to work till about Eleven o'clock, then eat what I had to live on, and from Twelve to Two I lay down to sleep, the Weather being excessive hot, and then in the Evening to work again The working Part of this Day and of the next were wholly employ'd in making my Table, for I was yet but a very sorry Workman, though Time and Necessity made me a complete natural Mechanic soon after, as I believe it would do any one else.

*Nov 5* This Day went abroad with my Gun and my Dog, and killed a wild Cat, her Skin pretty soft, but her Flesh good for nothing Every Creature I killed, I took off the Skins and preserv'd them Coming back by the Sea-Shore, I saw many Sorts of Sea-Fowls, which I did not understand, but was surpriz'd, and almost frighted with two or three Seals, which, while I was gazing at, not well knowing what they were, got into the Sea, and escap'd me for that time.

*Nov 6* After my Morning Walk I went to work with my Table again, and finish'd it, though not to my liking, nor was it long before I learnt to mend it.

*Nov 7* Now it began to be settled fair Weather The 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, and part of the 12th, (for the 11th was Sunday) I took wholly up to make me a Chair, and with much ado brought it to a tolerable Shape, but never to please me, and even in the making I pulled it in Pieces several times. *Note*, I soon neglected my keeping Sundays, for omitting my Mark for them on my Post, I forgot which was which.

*Nov 13* This Day it rained, which refresh'd me exceedingly, and cooled the Earth, but it was accompany'd with terrible Thunder and Lightning, which frighted me dreadfully for fear of my Powder, as soon as it was over, I resolv'd to separate my Stock of Powder into as many little Parcels as possible, that it might not be in Danger

*Nov 14, 15, 16* These three Days I spent in making little square Chests or Boxes, which might hold about a Pound, or two Pound, at most, of Powder and so putting the Powder in, I stowed it in

Places as secure and remote from one another as possible. On one of these three Days I killed a large Bird that was good to eat, but I know not what to call it.

*Nov* 17. This Day I began to dig behind my Tent into the Rock to make room for my farther Conveniency. *Note*, Two Things I wanted exceedingly for this Work, *viz* a Pick-axe, a Shovel, and a Wheel-barrow or Basket, so I desisted from my Work, and began to consider how to supply that Want and make me some Tools, as for a Pick-axe, I made use of the Iron Crows, which were proper enough, though heavy, but the next thing was a Shovel or Spade; this was so absolutely necessary, that indeed I could do nothing effectually without it, but what kind of one to make I knew not.

*Nov* 18 The next Day in searching the Woods I found a Tree of that Wood, or like it, which, in the *Brasils* they call the *Lion Tree*, for its exceeding Hardness, of this, with great Labour and almost spoiling my Axe, I cut a Piece, and brought it home too with Difficulty enough, for it was exceeding heavy

The excessive Hardness of the Wood, and having no other Way, made me a long while upon this Machine, for I worked it effectually by little and little into the Form of a Shovel or Spade, the Handle exactly shaped like ours in *England*, only that the broad Part having no Iron shod upon it at Bottom, it would not last me so long, however it served well enough for the uses which I had occasion to put it to, but never was a Shovel, I believe, made after that Fashion, or so long a making

I was still deficient, for I wanted a Basket or a Wheel-barrow, a Basket I could not make by any Means, having no such things as Twigs that would bend to make Wicker Ware, at least none yet found out, and as to a Wheel-barrow, I fancy'd I could make all but the Wheel, but that I had no Notion of, neither did I know how to go





about it, besides I had no possible Way to make the Iron Gudgeons for the Spindle or Axis of the Wheel to run in, so I gave it over, and so for carrying away the Earth which I dug out of the Cave, I made me a Thing like a Hod, which the Labourers carry Mortar in, when they serve the Bricklayers.

This was not so difficult to me as the making the Shovel; and yet this, and the Shovel, and the Attempt which I made in vain, to make a Wheel barrow, took me up no less than four Days, I mean always, excepting my Morning Walk with my Gun, which I seldom failed, and very seldom failed also bringing Home something fit to eat.

*Nov 23* My other Work having now stood still, because of my making these Tools, when they were finish'd, I went on, and working every Day, as my Strength and Time allow'd, I spent eighteen Days entirely in widening and deepening my Cave, that it might hold my Goods commodiously.

*Note*, During all this Time, I worked to make this Room or Cave spacious enough to accommodate me as a Warehouse or Magazine, a Kitchen, a Dining-room, and a Cellar, as for my Lodging, I kept to the Tent, except that Sometimes in the wet Season of the Year, it rained so hard, that I could not keep myself dry, which caused me afterwards to cover all my Place within my Pale with long Poles in the Form of Rafters leaning against the Rock, and load them with Flags and large Leaves of Trees like a Thatch.

*December 10* I began now to think my Cave or Vault finished, when on a Sudden (it seems I had made it too large) a great Quantity of Earth fell down from the Top and one Side, so much, that in short it frighted me, and not without Reason too, for if I had been under it I had never wanted a Grave-digger. Upon this Disaster I had a great deal of Work to do over again; for I had the loose Earth to carry out; and which was of more Importance, I had the Ceiling to prop up, so that I might be sure no more would come down.

*Dec 11* This Day I went to Work with it accordingly, and got two Shores or Posts pitched upright to the Top, with two Pieces of Boards across over each Post, this I finished the next Day; and setting more Posts up with Boards, in about a Week more I had the Roof secur'd; and the Posts standing in Rows, served me for Partitions to part off my House.

*Dec 17* From this Day to the Twentieth I placed Shelves, and knocked up Nails on the Posts to hang everything up that could be hung up, and now I began to be in some Order within Doors.

*Dec 20* Now I carry'd everything into the Cave, and began to furnish my House, and set up some Pieces of Boards, like a Dresser, to order my Victuals upon, but Boards began to be very scarce with me, also I made me another Table.

*Dec 24* Much Rain all Night and all Day, no stirring out.

*Dec 25* Rain all Day

*Dec 26* No Rain, and the Earth much cooler than before, and pleasanter

*Dec 27* Killed a young Goat, and lamed another so that I caught it and led it Home in a String, when I had it Home, I bound and splinter'd up its Leg which was broke. *NB* I took such Care of it, that it lived, and the Leg grew well and as strong as ever, but by my nursing it so long it grew tame, and fed upon the little Green at my Door, and would not go away This was the first Time that I entertain'd a Thought of breeding up some tame Creatures, that I might have Food when my Powder and Shot was all spent.

*Dec 28, 29, 30* Great Heats and no Breeze, so that there was no Stirring abroad, except in the Evening for Food, this Time I spent in putting all my Things in Order within Doors

*January 1* Very hot still, but I went abroad early and late with my Gun, and lay still in the Middle of the Day, this Evening going farther into the Valleys which lay towards the Centre of the Island, I found there was plenty of Goats, though exceeding shy and hard to come at, however I resolv'd to try if I could not bring my Dog to hunt them down.

*Jan 2* Accordingly, the next Day, I went out with my Dog, and set him upon the Goats, but I was mistaken, for they all faced about upon the Dog, and he knew his Danger too well, for he would not come near them

*Jan 3* I began my Fence or Wall, which being still jealous of my being attack'd by somebody, I resolv'd to make very thick and strong

*N.B* *This Wall being describ'd before, I purposely omit what was said in the Journal, it is sufficient to observe, that I was no less Time than from the 3rd of January to the 14th of April, working, finishing and perfecting this Wall, though it was no more than about 24 Yards in Length, being a half-Circle from one Place in the Rock to another Place about eight Yards from it, the Door of the Cave being in the Centre behind it*

All this Time I worked very hard, the Rains hindering me many Days, nay sometimes Weeks together, but I thought I should never be perfectly secure till this Wall was finished, and it is scarce credible what inexpressible Labour everything was done with, especially the bringing Piles out of the Woods, and driving them into the Ground, for I made them much bigger than I need to have done.

When this Wall was finished, and the Outside double fenced with a Turf-Wall raised up to close it, I persuaded myself that if any People were to come on Shore there, they would not perceive anything like a Habitation, and it was very well I did so, as may be observ'd hereafter upon a very remarkable Occasion

During this Time, I made my Rounds in the Woods for Game every Day when the Rain admitted me, and made frequent Discoveries in these Walks of something or other to my Advantage, particularly I found a Kind of wild Pigeons, who built not as Wood Pigeons in a Tree, but rather as House Pigeons, in the Holes of the Rocks, and taking some young ones, I endeavoured to breed them up tame, and did so, but when they grew older they flew all away, which perhaps was at first for Want of feeding them, for I had nothing to give them, however I frequently found their Nests, and got their young ones, which were very good Meat.

And now, in the managing my household Affairs, I found myself wanting in many Things, which I thought at first it was impossible for me to make, as indeed as to some of them it was, *for Instance*, I could never make a Cask to be hooped, I had a small Runlet or two *as I observed before*, but I could never arrive to the Capacity of making one by them, though I spent many Weeks about it, I could neither put in the Heads, or joint the Staves so true to one another, as to make them hold Water, so I gave that also over

In the next Place, I was at a great Loss for Candle, so that as soon as ever it was dark, which was generally by Seven o'Clock I was oblig'd to go to Bed. I remembered the Lump of Beeswax with which I made Candles in my *African* Adventure, but had none of that now, the only Remedy I had was, that when I had killed a Goat, I saved the Tallow, and with a little Dish made of Clay, which I baked in the Sun, to which I added a Wick of some Oakum, I made me a Lamp, and this gave me Light, though not clear steady Light like a Candle, in the Middle of all my Labour it happen'd, that rummaging my Things, I found a little Bag, which

as I hinted before, had been filled with Corn for the feeding of Poultry, not for this Voyage, but before, as I suppose, when the Ship came from *Lisbon*, what little Remainder of Corn had been in the Bag, was all devour'd with the Rats, and I saw nothing in the Bag but Husks and Dust; and being willing to have the Bag for some other Use, I think it was to put Powder in, when I divided it for Fear of the Lightning, or some such Use, I shook the Husks of Corn out of it on one Side of my Fortification under the Rock.

It was a little before the great Rains, just now mention'd, that I threw this Stuff away, taking no Notice of anything, and not so much as remembering that I had thrown anything there, when about a Month after, or thereabout, I saw some few Stalks of something green, shooting out of the Ground, which I fancied might be some Plant I had not seen, but I was surpris'd and perfectly astonish'd, when, after a little longer Time, I saw about ten or twelve Ears come out, which were perfect green Barley of the same Kind as our *European*, nay, as our *English* Barley.

It is impossible to express the Astonishment and Confusion of my Thoughts on this Occasion, I had hitherto acted upon no religious Foundation at all, indeed I had very few Notions of Religion in my Head, or had entertain'd any Sense of anything that had befallen me, otherwise than as a Chance, or, as we lightly say, what pleases God, without so much as inquiring into the End of Providence in these Things, or his Order in governing Events in the World. But after I saw Barley grow there, in a Climate which I know was not proper for Corn, and especially that I knew not how it came there, it startled me strangely, and I began to suggest, that God had miraculously caused this Grain to grow without any Help of Seed sown, and that it was so directed purely for my Sustenance, on that wild miserable Place.

This touched my Heart a little, and brought Tears out of my Eyes, and I began to bless myself, that such a Prodigy of Nature should happen upon my Account, and this was the more strange to me, because I saw near it still all along by the Side of the Rock, some other straggling Stalks, which proved to be Stalks of Rice, and which I knew, because I had seen it grow in *Africa*, when I was ashore there.

I not only thought these the pure Productions of Providence for my Support, but not doubting, but that there was more in the Place, I went all over that Part of the Island, where I had been before, peer-

ing in every Corner, and under every Rock, to see for more of it, but I could not find any, at last it occur'd to my Thoughts, that I had shook a Bag of Chickens' Meat out in that Place, and then the Wonder began to cease, and I must confess, my religious Thankfulness to God's Providence began to abate too upon the Discovering that all this was nothing but what was common, though I ought to have been as thankful for so strange and unforeseen Providence, as if it had been miraculous, for it was really the Work of Providence as to me, that should order or appoint, that 10 or 12 Grains of Corn should remain unspoil'd (when the Rats had destroy'd all the rest,) as if it, had been dropped from Heaven, as also, that I should throw it out in that particular Place, where it being in the Shade of a high Rock, it sprang up immediately, whereas, if I had thrown it anywhere else, at that Time, it had been burnt up and destroy'd.

I carefully saved the Ears of this Corn you may be sure in their Season, which was about the End of *June*, and laying up every Corn, I resolv'd to sow them all again, hoping in Time to have some Quantity sufficient to supply me with Bread; But it was not till the 4th Year that I could allow myself the least Grain of this Corn to eat, and even then but sparingly, as I shall say afterwards in its Order, for I lost all that I sowed the first Season, by not observing the proper Time, for I sowed it just before the dry Season, so that it never came up at all, at least, not as it would have done Of which in its Place.

Besides this Barley, there was, as above, 20 or 30 Stalks of Rice, which I preserv'd with the same Care, and whose Use was of the same Kind or to the same Purpose, (*viz*) to make me Bread, or rather Food, for I found Ways to cook it up without baking, though I did that also after some Time But to return to my Journal

I worked excessive hard these three or four Months to get my Wall done, and the 14th of *April* I closed it up, contriving to go into it, not by a Door, but over the Wall by a Ladder, that there might be no Sign in the Outside of my Habitation.

*April* 16 I finish'd the Ladder, so I went up with the Ladder to the Top, and then pulled it up after me, and let it down in the Inside. This was a complete Enclosure to me, for within I had Room enough, and nothing could come at me from without, unless it could first mount my Wall.

The very next Day after this Wall was finish'd, I had almost had

all my Labour overthrown at once, and myself killed, the Case was thus, As I was busy in the Inside of it, behind my Tent, just in the Entrance into my Cave, I was terribly frighted with a most dreadful surprising Thing indeed, for all on a sudden I found the Earth come crumbling down from the Roof of my Cave, and from the Edge of the Hill over my Head, and two of the Posts I had set up in the Cave cracked in a frightful Manner I was heartily scared, but thought nothing of what was really the Cause, only thinking that the Top of my Cave was falling in, as some of it had done before; and for Fear I should be buried in it, I ran forward to my Ladder, and not thinking myself safe there neither, I got over my Wall for Fear of the Pieces of the Hill which I expected might roll down upon me: I was no sooner stept down upon the firm Ground, but I plainly saw it was a terrible Earthquake, for the Ground I stood on shook three Times at about eight Minutes' Distance, with three such Shocks, as would have overturn'd the strongest Building that could be suppos'd to have stood on the Earth, and a great Piece of the Top of a Rock, which stood about half a Mile from me next the Sea, fell down with such a terrible Noise, as I never heard in all my Life, I perceiv'd also, the very Sea was put into violent Motion by it, and I believe the Shocks were stronger under the Water than on the Island

I was so amazed with the Thing itself, having never felt the like, or discours'd with any one that had, that I was like one dead or stupify'd; and the Motion of the Earth made my Stomach sick like one that was tossed at Sea, but the Noise of the falling of the Rock awaked me as it were, and rousing me from the stupify'd Condition I was in, filled me with Horror, and I thought of nothing then but the Hill falling upon my Tent and all my household Goods, and burying all at once, and thus sunk my very Soul within me a second Time

After the third Shock was over, and I felt no more for some Time, I began to take Courage, and yet I had not Heart enough to go over my Wall again, for Fear of being burned alive, but sat still upon the Ground, greatly cast down and disconsolate, not knowing what to do: All this while I had not the least serious religious Thought, nothing but the common, *Lord have Mercy upon me*, and when it was over, that went away too.

While I sat thus, I found the Air overcast, and grow cloudy, as if it would Rain; soon after that the Wind rose, by little and little, so that, in

less than half an Hour, it blew a most dreadful Hurricane. The Sea was all on a Sudden cover'd with Foam and Froth, the Shore was cover'd with the Breach of the Water, the Trees were torn up by the Roots, and a terrible Storm it was, and this held about three Hours, and then began to abate, and in two Hours more it was stark calm, and began to rain very hard.

All this while I sat upon the Ground very much terrify'd and dejected, when on a sudden it came into my thoughts, that these Winds and Rain being the Consequences of the Earthquake, the Earthquake itself was spent and over, and I might venture into my Cave again. With this Thought my Spirits began to revive, and the Rain also helping to persuade me, I went in and sat down in my Tent, but the Rain was so violent, that my Tent was ready to be beaten down with it, and I was forced to go into my Cave, though very much afraid and uneasy for fear it should fall on my Head.

This violent Rain forced me to a new Work, *viz* To cut a Hole through my new Fortification like a Sink to let the Water go out, which would else have drowned my Cave. After I had been in my Cave some time, and found still no more Shocks of the Earthquake follow, I began to be more compos'd, and now to support my Spirits, which indeed wanted it very much, I went to my little Store and took a small Sup of Rum, which however I did then and always very sparingly, knowing I could have no more when that was gone.

It continu'd raining all that Night, and great Part of the next Day, so that I could not stir abroad, but my Mind being more compos'd, I began to think of what I had best do, concluding that if the Island was subject to these Earthquakes, there would be no living for me in a Cave, but I must consider of building me some little Hut in an open Place which I might surround with a Wall as I had done here, and so make myself secure from wild Beasts or Men, but concluded, if I stay'd where I was, I should certainly, one time or other, be bury'd alive.

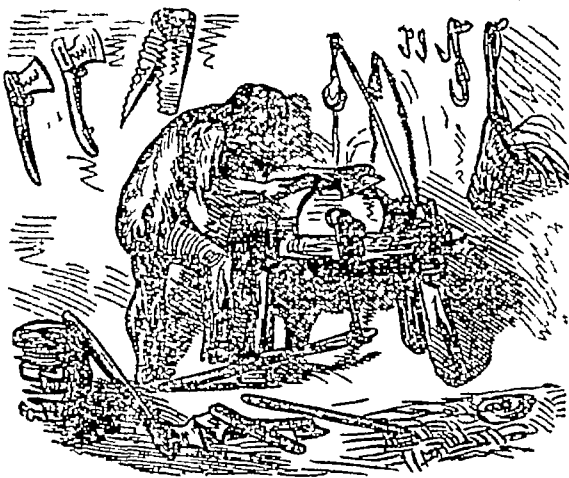
With these Thoughts I resolv'd to remove my Tent from the Place where it stood, which was just under the hanging Precipice of the Hill and which, if it should be shaken again, would certainly fall upon my Tent. And I spent the two next Days, being the 19th and 20th of *April*, in contriving where and how to remove my Habitation.

The fear of being swallow'd up alive, made me that I never slept in quiet, and yet the Apprehensions of lying abroad without any Tence

was almost equal to it, but still when I looked about and saw how everything was put in order, how pleasantly conceal'd I was, and how safe from Danger, it made me very loth to remove.

In the meantime it occur'd to me that it would require a vast deal of time for me to do this, and that I must be contented to run the Venture where I was, till I had formed a Camp for myself, and had secur'd it so as to remove to it. So with this Resolution I compos'd myself for a time, and resolv'd that I would go to work with all Speed to build me a Wall with Piles and Cables, &c, in a Circle as before, and set my Tent up in it when it was finish'd, but that I would venture to stay where I was till it was finish'd and fit to remove to. This was the 21st.

*April 22* The next Morning I began to consider of Means to put this Resolve in Execution, but I was at a great loss about my Tools, I had three large Axes and abundance of Hatchets, (for we carried the Hatchets for Traffic with the *Indians*) but with much chopping and cutting knotty hard Wood, they were all full of Notches and dull, and though I had a Grindstone I could not turn it and grind my Tools too, this cost me as much Thought as a Statesman would have bestow'd upon a grand Point of Politics, or a Judge upon the Life and Death of a Man. At length I contriv'd a Wheel with a String, to turn it with my Foot, that I might have both my Hands at Liberty. *Note*, I had never seen any such thing in *England*,



or at least not to take Notice how it was done, though since I have observ'd it is very common there, besides that, my Grindstone was very large and heavy. This Machine cost me a full Week's Work to bring it to Perfection.

*April 28, 29* These two whole Days I took up in grinding my Tools, my Machine for turning my Grindstone performing very well.



*April 30* Having perceiv'd my Bread had been low a great while, now I took a Survey of it, and reduc'd myself to one Biscuit-cake a Day, which made my Heart very heavy

*May 1.* In the Morning looking towards the Sea side, the Tide being low, I saw something lie on the Shore bigger than ordinary, and it looked like a Cask, when I came to it, I found a small Barrel, and two or three Pieces of the Wreck of the Ship, which were driven on Shore by the late Hurricane, and looking towards the Wreck itself, I thought it seemed to lie higher out of the Water than it used to do, I examin'd the Barrel which was driven on Shore, and soon found it was a Barrel of Gunpowder, but it had taken Water, and the Powder was caked as hard as a stone, however I rolled it farther on Shore for the present, and went on upon the Sands as near as I could to the Wreck of the Ship to look for more

When I came down to the Ship I found it strangely remov'd, The Forecastle, which lay before'd bury'd in Sand was heaved up at least Six Foot, and the Stern, which was broke to Pieces and parted from the rest by the Force of the Sea soon after I had left rummaging her, was tossed, as it were, up, and cast on one Side, and the Sand was thrown so high on that Side next her Stern, that whereas there was a great Place of Water before, so that I could not come within a Quarter of a Mile of the Wreck without swimming, I could now walk quite up to her when the Tide was out, I was surpris'd with this at first, but soon concluded it must be done by the Earth quake, and as by this Violence the Ship was more broken open than formerly, so many Things came daily on Shore, which the Sea had loosen'd, and which the Winds and Water rolled by Degrees to the Land.

This wholly diverted my Thoughts from the Design of removing my Habitation, and I busied myself mightily that Day especially, in searching whether I could make any Way into the Ship, but I found nothing was to be expected of that Kind, for that all the Inside of the Ship was choked up with sand. However, as I had learned not to despair of anything, I resolv'd to pull everything to Pieces that I could of the Ship, concluding, that everything I got from her would be of some Use or other to me.

*May 3* I began with my Saw, and cut a Piece of a Beam through which I thought held some of the upper Part or Quarter-Deck together

and when I had cut it through, I cleared away the Sand as well as I could from the Side which lay highest, but the Tide coming in, I was oblig'd to give over for that Time.

*May 4.* I went a fishing, but caught not one Fish that I durst eat of, till I was weary of my Sport, when just going to leave off, I caught a young Dolphin. I had made me a long Line of some Rope Yarn, but I had no Hooks, yet I frequently caught Fish enough, as much as I cared to eat, all which I dried in the Sun, and eat them dry.

*May 5* Worked on the Wreck, cut another Beam asunder, and brought three great Fir Planks off from the Decks, which I tied together, and made swim on Shore when the Tide of Flood came on.

*May 6* Worked on the Wreck, got several Iron Bolts out of her, and other Pieces of Iron-Work, worked very hard, and came Home very much tired, and had Thoughts of giving it over.

*May 7.* Went to the Wreck again, but with an Intent not to work, but found the Weight of the Wreck had broke itself down, the Beams being cut, that several Pieces of the Ship seemed to lie loose, and the Inside of the Hold lay so open, that I could see into it, but almost full of Water and Sand.

*May 8* Went to the Wreck, and carry'd an Iron Crow to wrench up the Deck, which lay now quite clear of the Water or Sand, I wrenched open two Planks, and brought them on Shore also with the Tide. I left the Iron Crow in the Wreck for next Day.

*May 9.* Went to the Wreck, and with the Crow made Way into the Body of the Wreck, and felt several Casks, and loosen'd them with the Crow, but could not break them up, I felt also the Roll of *English Lead*, and could stir it, but it was too heavy to remove.

*May 10, 11, 12, 13, 14.* Went every Day to the Wreck, and got a great deal of Pieces of Timber, and Boards, or Plank, and 2 or 300 Weight of Iron.

*May 15.* I carry'd two Hatchets to try if I could not cut a Piece off of the Roll of Lead, by placing the Edge of one Hatchet, and driving it with the other, but as it lay about a Foot and a half in the Water, I could not make any Blow to drive the Hatchet.

*May 16.* It had blowed hard in the Night, and the Wreck appear'd more broken by the Force of the Water, but I stayed so long in the Woods to get Pigeons for Food, that the Tide prevented me going to the Wreck that Day.

*May 17* I saw some Pieces of the Wreck blown on Shore, at a great Distance, near two Miles off me, but resolv'd to see what they were, and found it was a Piece of the Head, but too heavy for me to bring away

*May 24.* Every Day to this Day I worked on the Wreck, and with hard Labour I loosen'd some Things so much with the Crow, that the first blowing Tide several Casks floated out, and two of the Seamen's Chests, but the Wind blowing from the Shore, nothing came to Land that Day, but Pieces of Timber, and a Hogshead which had some *Brasil* Pork in it, but the Salt-water and the Sand had spoiled it.

I continu'd this Work every Day to the 15th of *June*, except the Time necessary to get Food, which I always appointed, during this Part of my Employment, to be when the Tide was up, that I might be ready when it was ebb'd out, and by this Time I had gotten Timber, and Plank, and Iron-Work enough, to have build'd a good Boat, if I had known how, and also, I got at several Times, and in several Pieces, near 100 Weight of the Sheet-Lead.



*June 16* Going down to the Sea-side, I found a large Tortoise or Turtle, this was the first I had seen, which it seems was only my Misfortune, not any Defect of the Place, or Scarcity, for had I happen'd to be on the other Side of the Island, I might have had Hundreds of them

every Day, as I found afterwards, but perhaps had paid dear enough for them

*June 17* I spent in cooking the Turtle, I found in her threescore Eggs, and her Flesh was to me at that Time the most savoury and pleasant that ever I tasted in my Life, having had no Flesh, but of Goats and Fowls, since I landed in this horrid Place

*June 18* Rained all Day, and I stayed within I thought at this

Time the Rain felt Cold, and I was something chilly, which I knew was not usual in that Latitude

*June 19* Very ill, and shivering, as if the Weather had been cold

*June 20* No Rest all Night, violent Pains in my Head, and feverish

*June 21* Very ill, frightened almost to Death with the Apprehensions of my sad Condition, to be sick, and no Help Prayed to GOD for the first Time since the Storm off of *Hull*, but scarce knew what I said, or why, my Thoughts being all confused

*June 22* A little better, but under dreadful Apprehensions of Sickness

*June 23* Very bad again, cold and shivering, and then a violent Headache

*June 24* Much better

*June 25* An Ague very violent; the Fit held me seven Hours, cold Fit and hot, with faint Sweats after it

*June 26* Better, and having no Victuals to eat, took my Gun, but found myself very weak, however I killed a She-Goat, and with much Difficulty got it Home, and broiled some of it, and eat, I would fain have stewed it, and made some Broth, but had no Pot.

*June 27* The Ague again so violent, that I lay a-Bed all Day, and neither eat or drank. I was ready to perish for Thirst, but so weak, I had not Strength to stand up, or to get myself any Water to drink Prayed to God again, but was light-headed, and when I was not, I was so ignorant, that I knew not what to say, only I lay and cried, *Lord look upon me, Lord pity me, Lord have Mercy upon me*. I suppose I did nothing else for two or three Hours, till the Fit wearing off, I fell asleep, and did not wake till far in the Night, when I waked, I found myself much refresh'd, but weak, and exceeding thirsty However, as I had no Water in my whole Habitation, I was forced to lie till Morning, and went to sleep again In this second Sleep, I had this terrible Dream

I thought, that I was sitting on the Ground on the Outside of my Wall, where I sat when the Storm blew after the Earthquake, and that I saw a Man descend from a great black Cloud, in a bright Flame of Fire, and light upon the Ground He was all over as bright as a Flame, so that I could but just bear to look towards him, his Countenance was most inexpressibly dreadful, impossible for Words to describe, when he stepped upon the Ground with his Feet, I thought

the Earth trembled, just as it had done before in the Earthquake, and all the Air looked, to my Apprehension, as if it had been filled with Flashes of Fire.

He was no sooner landed upon the Earth, but he moved forward towards me, with a long Spear or Weapon in his Hand, to kill me, and when he came to a rising Ground, at some Distance, he spoke to me, or I heard a Voice so terrible, that it is impossible to express the Terror of it, all that I can say, I understood, was this, *Seeing all these Things have not brought thee to Repentance, now thou shalt die* At which Words, I thought he lifted up the Spear that was in his Hand, to kill me.

No one, that shall ever read this Account, will expect that I should be able to describe the Horrors of my Soul at this terrible Vision, I mean, that even while it was a Dream, I even dreamed of those Horrors, nor is it any more possible to describe the Impression that remain'd upon my Mind when I awak'd and found it was but a Dream.

I had alas! no divine Knowledge, what I had received by the good Instruction of my Father was then worn out by an uninterrupted Series, for 8 Years, of Seafaring Wickedness, and a constant Conversation with nothing but such as were like myself, wicked and profane to the last Degree. I do not remember that I had in all that Time one Thought that so much as tended either to looking upwards toward God, or inwards towards a Reflection upon my own Ways But a certain Stupidity of Soul, without Desire of Good, or Conscience of Evil, had entirely overwhelm'd me, and I was all that the most hardened, unthinking, wicked Creature among our common Sailors, can be supposed to be, not having the least Sense, either of the Fear of God in Danger, or of Thankfulness to God in Deliverances

In the relating what is already past of my Story, this will be the more easily believ'd, when I shall add, that through all the Variety of Miseries that had to this Day befallen me, I never had so much as one Thought of it being the Hand of God, or that it was a just Punishment for my Sin, my rebellious Behaviour against my Father, or my present Sins which were great, or so much as a Punishment for the general Course of my wicked Life. When I was on the desperate Expedition on the desert Shores of *Africa*, I never had so much as one Thought of what would become of me, or one Wish to God to direct me whither I should go or to keep me from the Danger which

apparently surrounded me, as well from voracious Creatures as cruel Savages : But I was merely thoughtless of a God, or a Providence, acted like a mere Brute from the Principles of Nature, and by the Dictates of common Sense only, and indeed hardly that.

When I was deliver'd and taken up at Sea by the *Portugal* Captain, well used, and dealt justly and honourably with, as well as charitably, I had not the least Thankfulness on my Thoughts. When again I was shipwreck'd, ruined, and in Danger of drowning on this Island, I was as far from Remorse, or looking on it as a Judgment ; I only said to myself often, that I was *an unfortunate Dog*, and born to be always miserable.

It is true, when I got on Shore first here, and found all my Ship's Crew drowned, and myself spared, I was surpris'd with a Kind of Ecstasy, and some Transports of Soul, which, had the Grace of God assisted, might have come up to true Thankfulness ; but it ended where it begun, in a mere common Flight of Joy, or as I may say, *being glad I was alive*, without the least Reflection upon the distinguishing Goodness of the Hand which had preserv'd me, and had singled me out to be preserv'd, when all the rest were destroy'd, or an Inquiry why Providence had been thus merciful to me, even just the same common Sort of Joy which Seamen generally have after they are got safe ashore from a Shipwreck, which they drown all in the next Bowl of Punch, and forget almost as soon as it is over, and all the rest of my Life was like it.

Even when I was afterwards, on due Consideration, made sensible of my Condition, how I was cast on this dreadful Place, out of the Reach of human Kind, out of all Hope of Relief, or Prospect of Redemption ; as soon as I saw but a Prospect of living, and that I should not starve and perish for Hunger, all the Sense of my Affliction wore off, and I begun to be very easy, applied myself to the Works proper for my Preservation and Supply, and was far enough from being afflicted at my Condition, as a Judgment from Heaven, or as the Hand of God against me ; these were Thoughts which very seldom enter'd into my Head.

The growing up of the Corn, as is hinted in my Journal, had at first some little Influence upon me, and began to affect me with Seriousness, as long as I thought it had something miraculous in it ; but as soon as ever that Part of the Thought was remov'd, all the Im-

pression which was raised from it, wore off also, as I have noted already

Even the Earthquake, though nothing could be more terrible in its Nature, or more immediately directing to the invisible Power which alone directs such Things, yet no sooner was the first Fright over, but the Impression it had made went off also I had no more Sense of God or his Judgments, much less of the present Affliction of my Circumstances being from his Hand, than if I had been in the most prosperous Condition of Life

But now when I began to be sick, and a leisurely View of the Miseries of Death came to place itself before me, when my Spirits began to sink under the Burden of a strong Distemper, and Nature was exhausted with the Violence of the Fever, Conscience that had slept so long, begun to awake, and I began to reproach myself with my past Life, in which I had so evidently, by uncommon Wickedness, provok'd the Justice of God to lay me under uncommon Strokes, and to deal with me in so vindictive a Manner

These Reflections oppress'd me for the second or third Day of my Distemper, and in the Violence, as well of the Fever, as of the dreadful Reproaches of my Conscience, extorted some Words from me, like praying to God, though I cannot say they were either a Prayer attended with Desires or with Hopes, it was rather the Voice of mere Fright and Distress, my Thoughts were confus'd, the Convictions grew upon my Mind, and the Horror of dying in such a miserable Condition raised Vapours into my Head with the mere Apprehensions, and in these Hurries of my Soul, I know not what my Tongue might express, but it was rather Exclamation, such as, Lord! what a miserable Creature am I? If I should be sick, I shall certainly die for Want of Help, and what will become of me! Then the Tears burst out of my Eyes, and I could say no more for a good while.

In this Interval, the good Advice of my Father came to my Mind, and presently his Prediction which I mention'd at the Beginning of this Story, viz *That if I did take this foolish Step, God would not bless me, and I would have Leisure hereafter to reflect upon having neglected his Counsel, when there might be none to assist in my Reasoning* Now, said I aloud, My dear Father's Words are come to pass God's Justice has overtaken me, and I have none to help or hear me. I rejected the Voice of Providence, which had mercifully put me in a

Posture or Station of Life, wherein I might have been happy and easy, but I would neither see it myself, or learn to know the Blessing of it from my Parents; I left them to mourn over my Folly, and now I am left to mourn under the Consequences of it. I refus'd their Help and Assistance who would have list'd me into the World, and would have made everything easy to me, and now I have Difficulties to struggle with, too great for even Nature itself to support, and no Assistance, no Help, no Comfort, no Advice; then I cried out, *Lord be my Help, for I am in great Distress.*

This was the first Prayer, if I may call it so, that I had made for many Years: But I return to my Journal.

June 28 Having been somewhat refresh'd with the Sleep I had had, and the Fit being entirely off, I got up; and though the Fright and Terror of my Dream was very great, yet I consider'd, that the Fit of the Ague would return again the next Day, and now was my Time to get something to refresh and support myself when I should be ill, and the first Thing I did, I fill'd a large square Case Bottle with Water, and set it upon my Table, in Reach of my Bed, and to take off the chill or aguish Disposition of the Water, I put about a Quarter of a Pint of Rum into it, and mix'd them together, and then I got me a Piece of the Goat's Flesh, and broil'd it on the Coals, but could eat very little, I walk'd about, but was very weak, and withal very sad and heavy hearted in the Sense of my miserable Condition, dreading the Return of my Distemper the next Day; at Night I made my Supper of three of the Turtle's Eggs, which I roasted in the Ashes, and eat, as we call it, in the Shell; and this was the first Bit of Meat I had ever ask'd God's Blessing to, even as I could remember, in my whole Life.

After I had eaten, I tried to walk, but found myself so weak, that I cou'd hardly carry the Gun, (for I never went out without that) so I went but a little Way, and sat down upon the Ground, looking out upon the Sea, which was just before me, and very calm and smooth. As I sat here, some such Thoughts as these occurred to me

What is this Earth and Sea of which I have seen so much, whence is it produc'd, and what am I, and all the other Creatures, wild and tame, human and brutal, whence are we?

Sure we are all made by some secret Power, who formed the Earth and Sea, the Air and Sky, and who is that?

Then it follow'd most naturally, It is God that has made it all:



Well, but then it came on strangely, if God has made all these Things, He guides and governs them all, and all Things that concern them, for the Power that could make all Things, must certainly have Power to guide and direct them.

If so, nothing can happen in the great Circuit of his Works, either without his Knowledge or Appointment.

And if nothing happens without his Knowledge, he knows that I am here, and am in this dreadful Condition, and if nothing happens without his Appointment, he has appointed all this to befall me.

Nothing occur'd to my Thought to contradict any of these Conclusions, and therefore it rested upon me with the greater Force, that it must needs be, that God had appointed all this to befall me, that I was brought to this miserable Circumstance by his Direction, he having the sole Power, not of me only, but of everything that happen'd in the World. Immediately it follow'd,

*Why has God done this to me? What have I done to be thus used?*

My Conscience presently checked me in that Inquiry, as if I had blasphem'd, and methought it spoke to me like a Voice; *WRETCH! dost thou ask what thou hast done? look back upon a dreadful mispent Life, and ask thyself what thou hast not done? ask, Why is it that thou wert not long ago destroy'd? Why wert thou not drowned in Yarmouth Roads? Killed in the Fight when the Ship was taken by the Sallee Man of War? Devour'd by the wild Beasts on the Coast of Africa? Or, Drowned HERE, when all the Crew perished but thyself? Dost thou ask, What have I done?*

I was struck dumb with these Reflections, as one astonish'd, and had not a Word to say, no not to answer to myself, but rose up pensive and sad, walked back to my Retreat, and went up over my Wall, as if I had been going to Bed, but my Thoughts were sadly disturb'd, and I had no Inclination to Sleep, so I sat down in my Chair, and lighted my Lamp, for it began to be dark. Now as the Apprehension of the Return of my Distemper terrify'd me very much, it occur'd to my Thought, that the *Brasilians* take no Physic but their Tobacco, for almost all Distempers, and I had a Piece of a Roll of Tobacco in one of the Chests, which was quite cured, and some also that was green and not quite cured.

I went, directed by Heaven no doubt, for in this Chest I found a Cure, both for Soul and Body, I open'd the Chest, and found what I looked for, *viz.* the Tobacco, and as the few Books, I had saved, lay

there too, I took out one of the Bibles which I mention'd before, and which to this Time I had not found Leisure, or so much as Inclination to look into; I say, I took it out, and brought both that and the Tobacco with me to the Table.

What Use to make of the Tobacco, I knew not, as to my Distemper, or whether it was good for it or no, but I tried several Experiments with it, as if I was resolv'd it should hit one Way or other. I first took a Piece of a Leaf, and chewed it in my Mouth, which indeed at first almost stupified my Brain, the Tobacco being green and strong, and that I had not been much used to it, then I took some and steeped it an Hour or two in some Rum, and resolv'd to take a Dose of it when I lay down, and lastly, I burnt some upon a Pan of Coals, and held my Nose close over the Smoke of it as long as I could bear it, as well for the Heat as almost for Suffocation.

In the Interval of this Operation, I took up the Bible and began to read, but my Head was too much disturb'd with the Tobacco to bear reading, at least that Time, only having open'd the Book casually, the first Words that occur'd to me were these, *Call on me in the Day of Trouble, and I will deliver, and thou shalt glorify me.*

The Words were very apt to my Case, and made some Impression upon my Thoughts at the Time of reading them, though not so much as they did afterwards, for as for being deliver'd, the Word had no Sound, as I may say, to me, the Thing was so remote, so impossible in my Apprehension of Things, that I began to say as the Children of Israel did, when they were promis'd Flesh to eat, *Can God spread a Table in the Wilderness?* so I began to say, can God himself deliver me from this Place? and as it was not for many Years that any Hope appear'd, this prevail'd very often upon my Thoughts. But however, the Words made a great Impression upon me, and I mused upon them very often. It grew now late, and the Tobacco had, as I said, dosed my Head so much, that I inclin'd to sleep, so I left my Lamp burning in the Cave, lest I should want anything in the Night, and went to Bed; but before I lay down, I did what I never had done in all my Life, I kneeled down and prayed to God to fulfil the Promise to me, that if I called upon him in the Day of Trouble, he would deliver me, after my broken and imperfect Prayer was over, I drank the Rum in which I had steeped the Tobacco, which was so strong and rank of the Tobacco, that indeed I could scarce get it down, immediately upon this I went to Bed, I found

presently it flew up in my Head violently, but I fell into a sound Sleep, and waked no more 'till by the Sun it must necessarily be near Three o'Clock in the Afternoon the next Day, nay, to this Hour I am partly of the Opinion, that I slept all the next Day and Night, and till almost Three that Day after, for otherwise I knew not how I should lose a Day out of my Reckoning in the Days of the Week, as it appear'd some Years after I had done, for if I had lost it by crossing and recrossing the Line, I should have lost more than one Day But certainly I lost a Day in my Account, and never knew which Way

Be that however one Way or the other, when I awak'd I found myself exceedingly refresh'd, and my Spirits lively and cheerful, when I got up, I was stronger than I was the Day before, and my Stomach better, for I was hungry, and in short, I had no Fit the next Day, but continu'd much alter'd for the better, this was the 29th.

The 30th was my well-Day of Course, and I went abroad with my Gun, but did not care to travel too far, I killed a Sea Fowl or two; something like a brand Goose, and brought them Home, but was not very forward to eat them so I ate some more of the Turtle's Eggs, which were very good This Evening I renew'd the Medicine which I had suppos'd did me good the Day before, *viz* the Tobacco steeped in Rum, only I did not take so much as before, nor did I chew any of the Leaf, or hold my Head over the Smoke; however, I was not so well the next Day, which was the first of *July*, as I hoped I should have been, for I had a little Spice of the cold Fit, but it was not much

*July 2* I renew'd the Medicine all the three Ways, and dosed myself with it as at first, and doubled the Quantity which I drank

3 I missed the Fit for good and all, though I did not recover my full Strength for some Weeks after, while I was thus gathering Strength, my Thoughts run exceedingly upon this Scripture, *I will deliver thee*, and the Impossibility of my Deliverance lay much upon my Mind in Bar of my ever expecting it But as I was discouraging myself with such Thoughts, it occur'd to my Mind, that I pored so much upon my Deliverance from the main Affliction, that I disregarded the Deliverance I had receiv'd, and I was, as it were, made to ask myself such Questions as these, *viz*. Have I not been deliver'd, and wonderfully too, from Sickness? from the most distress'd Condition that could be, and that was so frightful to me, and what

Notice I had taken of it: Had I done my Part, *God had deliver'd me, but I had not glorify'd him*; that is to say, I had not owned and been thankful for that as a Deliverance, and how could I expect greater Deliverance.

This touch'd my Heart very much, and immediately I kneeled down and gave God Thanks aloud, for my Recovery from my Sickness.

*July 4* In the Morning I took the Bible, and beginning at the New Testament, I began seriously to read it, and impos'd upon myself to read a while every Morning and every Night, not tying myself to the Number of Chapters, but as long as my Thoughts should engage me: It was not long after I set seriously to this Work, but I found my Heart more deeply and sincerely affected with the Wickedness of my past Life: The Impression of my Dream reviv'd, and the Words, *All these Things have not brought thee to Repentance*, ran seriously in my Thought: I was earnestly begging of God to give me Repentance, when it happen'd providentially the very Day that reading the Scripture, I came to these Words, *He is exalted a Prince and a Saviour, to give Repentance, and to give Remission*. I threw down the Book, and with my Heart as well as my Hands lifted to Heaven, in a Kind of Ecstasy of Joy, I cried out aloud, *Jesus, thou Son of David, Jesus, thou exalted Prince and Saviour, give me Repentance!*

This was the first Time that I could say, in the true Sense of the Word's, that I prayed in all my Life, for now I prayed with a Sense of my Condition, and with a true Scripture View of Hope founded on the Encouragement of the Word of God, and from this Time, I may say, I began to have Hope that God would hear me.

Now I began to construe the Words mentioned above, *Call on me, and I will deliver you*, in a different Sense from what I had ever done before; for then I had no Notion of anything being called Deliverance, but my being deliver'd from the Captivity I was in, for though I was indeed at large in the Place, yet the Island was certainly a Prison to me, and that in the worst Sense in the World, but now I learned to take it in another Sense. Now I looked back upon my past Life with such Horror, and my Sins appear'd so dreadful, that my Soul sought nothing of God, but Deliverance from the Load of Guilt that bore down all my Comfort. As for my solitary Life it was nothing, I did not so much as pray to be deliver'd from it, or think of it, It was all of no Consideration in Comparison to this. And I add

this Part here, to hint to whoever shall read it, that whenever they come to a true Sense of things, they will find Deliverance from Sin a much greater Blessing, than Deliverance from Affliction.

But leaving this Part, I return to my Journal

My Condition began now to be, though not less miserable as to my Way of living, yet much easier to my Mind, and my Thoughts being directed, by a constant reading the Scripture, and praying to God, to things of a higher Nature. I had a great deal of Comfort within, which till now I knew nothing of, also, as my Health and Strength returned, I bestir'd myself to furnish myself with everything that I wanted, and make my Way of living as regular as I could

From the 4th of *July* to the 14th, I was chiefly employ'd in walking about with my Gun in my Hand, a little and a little, at a Time, as a Man that was gathering up his Strength after a Fit of Sickness. For it is hardly to be imagin'd, how low I was, and to what Weakness I was reduc'd. The Application which I made Use of was perfectly new, and perhaps what had never cured an Ague before, neither can I recommend it to anyone to practise, by this Experiment, and though it did carry off the Fit, yet it rather contributed to weakening me, for I had frequent Convulsions in my Nerves and Limbs for some Time.

I learnt from it also this in particular, that being abroad in the rainy Season was the most pernicious thing to my Health that could be, especially in those Rains which came attended with Storms and Hurricanes of Wind, for as the Rain which came in the dry Season was always most accompany'd with such Storms, so I found that Rain was much more dangerous than the Rain which fell in *September* and *October*.

I had been now in this unhappy Island above 10 Months, all Possibility of Deliverance from this Condition, seemed to be entirely taken from me, and I firmly believed, that no human Shape had ever set Foot upon that Place. Having now secur'd my Habitation, as I thought, fully to my Mind, I had a great Desire to make a more perfect Discovery of the Island, and to see what other Productions I might find, which I yet knew nothing of

It was the 15th of *July* that I began to take a more particular Survey of the Island itself. I went up the Creek first, where, as I hinted, I brought my Rafts on Shore, I found after I came about two Miles up, that the Tide did not flow any higher, and that it was

no more than a little Brook of running Water, and very fresh and good, but this being the dry Season, there was hardly any Water in some Parts of it, at least, not enough to run in any Stream, so as it could be perceiv'd

On the Bank of this Brook I found many pleasant *Savanas*, or *Morasses*; plain, smooth, and cover'd with Grass; and on the rising Parts of them next to the higher Grounds, where the Water, as it might be supposed, never overflow'd, I found a great deal of Tobacco, green, and growing to a great and very strong Stalk, there were divers other Plants which I had no Notion of, or Understanding about, and might perhaps have Virtues of their own, which I could not find out

I searched for the *Cassia* Root which the *Indians* in all that Climate make their Bread of, but I could find none. I saw large Plants of Aloes, but did not then understand them. I saw several Sugar Canes, but wild and for want of Cultivation, imperfect. I contented myself with these Discoveries for this Time, and came back musing with myself what Course I might take to know the Virtue and Goodness of any of the Fruits or Plants which I should discover, but could bring it to no Conclusion; for in short, I had made so little Observation while I was in the *Brasils*, that I knew little of the Plants in the Field, at least very little that might serve me to any Purpose now in my Distress

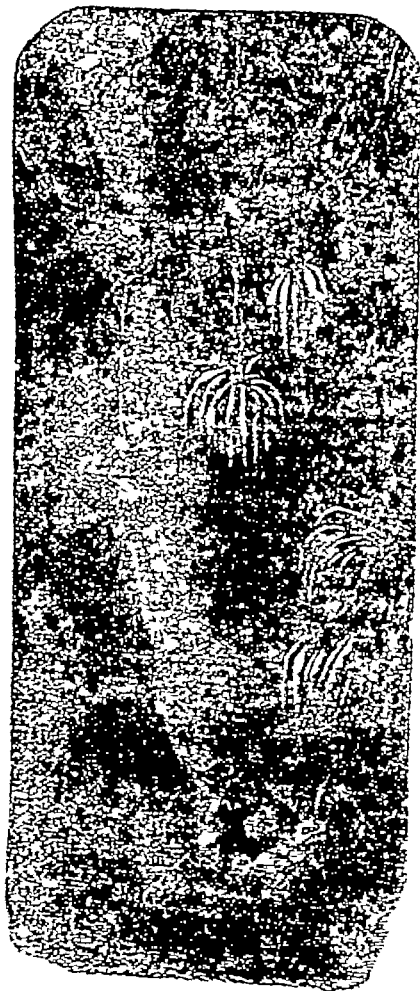
The next Day, the 16th, I went up the same Way again, and after going something farther than I had gone the Day before, I found the Brook, and the *Savanas* began to cease, and the Country became more woody than before, in this Part I found different Fruits, and particularly I found Melons upon the Ground in great Abundance, and Grapes upon the Trees; the Vines had spread indeed over the Trees, and the Clusters of Grapes were just now in their Prime, very ripe and rich. This was a surprising Discovery, and I was exceeding glad of them; but I was warned by my Experience to eat sparingly of them, remembering that when I was ashore in *Barbary*, the eating of Grapes killed several of our *English* Men who were Slaves there, by throwing them into Fluxes and Fevers. But I found an excellent Use for these Grapes, and that was to cure or dry them in the Sun, and keep them as dried Grapes or Raisins are kept, which I thought would be, as indeed they were, as wholesome as agreeable to eat, when no Grapes might be to be had.

I spent all that Evening there, and went not back to my Habitation, which by the Way was the first Night, as I might say, I had lain from Home. In the Night I took my first Contrivance, and got up, into a Tree, where I slept well, and the next Morning proceeded upon my Discovery, travelling near four Miles, as I might judge by the Length of the Valley, keeping still due North, with a Ridge of Hills on the South and North side of me.

At the End of this March I came to an Opening, where the Country seemed to descend to the West, and a little Spring of fresh Water, which issued out of the Side of the Hill by me, run the other Way, that is due East, and the Country appear'd so fresh, so green, so flourishing, everything being in a constant Verdure, or Flourish of *Spring*, that it looked-like a planted Garden.

I descended a little on the Side of that delicious Vale, surveying it with a secret Kind of Pleasure, (though mixed with my other afflicting Thoughts) to think that this was all my own, that I was King and Lord of all this Country indefeasibly, and had

a Right of Possession, and if I could convey it, I might have it in Inheritance, as completely as any Lord of a Manor in *England*. I saw here Abundance of Cocoa Trees, Orange, and Lemon, and Citron Trees, but all wild and very few bearing any Fruit, at least not then.



However, the green Limes that I gathered, were not only pleasant to eat, but very wholesome, and I mixed their Juice afterwards with Water, which made it very wholesome, and very cool, and refreshing

I found now I had Business enough to gather and carry Home; and I resolv'd to lay up a Store, as well of Grapes, as Limes and Lemons, to furnish myself for the wet Season, which I knew was approaching

In Order to this, I gather'd a great Héap of Grapes in one Place, and a lesser Heap in another Place, and a great Parcel of Limes and Lemons in another Place, and taking a few of each with me, I travell'd homeward, and resolv'd to come again, and bring a Bag or Sack, or what I could make to carry the rest Home.

Accordingly, having spent three Days in this Journey, I came Home, so I must now call my Tent and my Cave But, before I got thither, the Grapes were spoiled, the Richness of the Fruits, and the Weight of the Juice having broken them, and bruised them, they were good for little or nothing, as to the Limes, they were good, but I could bring but a few

The next Day, being the 19th, I went back, having made me two small Bags to bring Home my Harvest But I was surpris'd, when coming to my Heap of Grapes, which were so rich and fine when I gather'd them, I found them all spread about, trod to Pieces, and dragged about, some here, some there, and Abundance eaten and devour'd By this I concluded, there were some wild Creatures thereabouts, which had done this, but what they were, I knew not.

However, as I found there was no laying them up on Heaps, and no carrying them away in a Sack, but that one Way they would be destroy'd, and the other Way they would be crushed with their own Weight, I took another Course; for I gather'd a large Quantity of the Grapes, and hung them up upon the out Branches of the Trees, that they might cure and dry in the Sun, and as for the Limes and Lemons, I carried as many back as I could well stand under.

When I came Home from this Journey, I contemplated with great Pleasure the Fruitfulness of that Valley, and the Pleasantness of the Situation, the Security from Storms on that Side the Water, and the Wood, and concluded, that I had pitched upon a Place to fix my Abode, which was by far the worst Part of the Country Upon the Whole I began to consider of removing my Habitation, and to look



out for a Place equally safe, as where I now was situate, if possible, in that pleasant fruitful Part of the Island

This Thought run long in my Head, and I was exceeding fond of it for some Time, the Pleasantry of the Place tempting me, but when I came to a nearer View of it, and to consider that I was now by the Sea-Side, where it was at least possible that something might happen to my Advantage, and by the same ill Fate that brought me hither, might bring some other unhappy Wretches to the same Place; and though it was scarce probable that any such Thing should ever happen, yet to enclose myself among the Hills and Woods, in the Centre of the Island, was to anticipate my Bondage, and to render such an Affair not only Improbable, but Impossible, and that therefore I ought not by any Means to remove

However, I was so Enamour'd of this Place, that I spent much of my Time there, for the whole remaining Part of the Month of *July*, and though upon second Thoughts I resolv'd as above, not to remove, yet I built me a little kind of a Bower, and surrounded it at a Distance with a strong Fence, being a double Hedge, as high as I could reach, well staked, and filled between with *Brushwood*, and here I lay very secure, sometimes two or three Nights together, always going over it with a Ladder, as before, so that I fancied now I had my Country House, and my Sea-Coast House And this Work took me up to the Beginning of *August*

I had but newly finish'd my Fence, and began to enjoy my Labour, but the Rains came on, and made me stick close to my first Habitation, for though I had made me a Tent like the other, with a Piece of a Sail, and spread it very well, yet I had not the Shelter of a Hill to keep me from Storms, nor a Cave behind me to retreat into, when the Rains were extraordinary

About the Beginning of *August*, as I said, I had finish'd my Bower, and began to enjoy myself The third of *August*, I found the Grapes I had hung up were perfectly dried, and indeed, were excellent good Raisins of the Sun, so I began to take them down from the Trees, and it was very happy that I did so, for the Rains which follow'd would have spoiled them, and I had lost the best Part of my Winter Food; for I had above two hundred large Bunches of them. No sooner had I taken them all down, and carried most of them Home to my Cave, but it began to rain, and from hence, which was the fourteenth of *August*, it rained more or less, every Day, till the middle of *October*:

and sometimes so violently, that I could not stir out of my Cave for several Days

In this Season I was much surpris'd with the Increase of my Family, I had been concern'd for the Loss of one of my Cats, who run away from me, or as I thought had been dead, and I heard no more Tale or Tidings of her, till to my Astonishment she came Home about the End of *August*, with three *Kittens*, this was the more strange to me, because though I had killed a wild Cat, as I called it, with my Gun; yet I thought it was a quite differing Kind from our *European* Cats; yet the young Cats were the same Kind of



House breed like the old one, and both my Cats being Females, I thought it very strange But from these three Cats, I afterwards came to be so pester'd with Cats, that I was forced to kill them like Vermin, or wild Beasts, and to drive them from my House, as much as possible

From the fourteenth of *August* to the twenty-sixth, incessant Rain, so that I could not stir, and was now very careful not to be much wet. In this Confinement I began to be straitened for Food, but venturing out twice, I one Day killed a Goat, and the last Day, which was the twenty-sixth, found a very large Tortoise, which was a

Treat to me, and my Food was regulated thus, I eat a Bunch of Raisins for my Breakfast, a Piece of the Goat's Flesh, or of the Turtle for my Dinner broiled, for to my great Misfortune, I had no Vessel to boil or stew anything, and two or three of the Turtle's Eggs for my Supper

During this Confinement in my Cover, by the Rain, I worked daily two or three Hours at enlarging my Cave, and by Degrees worked it on towards one Side, till I came to the Outside of the Hill, and made a Door or Way out, which came beyond my Fence or Wall, and so I came in and out this Way, but I was not perfectly easy at lying so open, for as I had manag'd myself before, I was in a perfect Enclosure, whereas now I thought I lay expos'd, and open for anything to come in upon me, and yet I could not perceive that there was any living Thing to fear, the biggest Creature that I had yet seen upon the Island being a Goat.

*September* the thirtieth, I was now come to the unhappy Anniversary of my Landing I cast up the Notches on my Post, and found I had been on Shore three hundred and sixty-five Days I kept this Day as a Solemn Fast, setting it apart to Religious Exercise, prostrating myself on the Ground with the most serious Humiliation, confessing my Sins to God, acknowledging his Righteous Judgments upon me, and praying to him to have Mercy on me, through Jesus Christ; and having not tasted the least Refreshment for twelve Hours, even till the going down of the Sun, I then eat a Biscuit Cake, and a Bunch of Grapes, and went to Bed, finishing the Day as I began it.

I had all this Time observ'd no Sabbath-Day, for as at first I had no Sense of Religion upon my Mind, I had after some Time omitted to distinguish the Weeks, by making a longer Notch than ordinary for the Sabbath-Day, and so did not really know what any of the Days were, but now having cast up the Days, as above, I found I had been there a Year, so I divided it into Weeks, and set apart every seventh Day for a Sabbath, though I found at the End of my Account I had lost a Day or two in my Reckoning

A little after this my Ink began to fail me, and so I contented myself to use it more sparingly, and to write down only the most remarkable Events of my Life, without continuing a daily *Memorandum* of other Things

The rainy Season, and the dry Season, began now to appear regular to me, and I learnt to divide them so, as to provide for them accordingly But I bought all my Experience before I had it, and

this I am going to relate, was one of the most discouraging Experiments that I made at all I have mention'd that I had saved the few Ears of Barley and Rice, which I had so surprisingly found spring up, as I thought, of themselves, and believe there were about thirty Stalks of Rice, and about twenty of Barley, and now I thought it a proper Time to sow it after the Rains, the Sun being in its *Southern* Position going from me.

Accordingly I dug up a Piece of Ground as well as I could with my wooden Spade, and dividing it into two Parts, I sowed my Grain, but as I was sowing, it casually occur'd to my Thoughts, That I would not sow it all at first, because I did not know when was the proper Time for it, so I sowed about two Thirds of the Seed, leaving about a Handful of each

It was a great Comfort to me afterwards, that I did so, for not one Grain of that sowed this Time came to anything, for the dry Months following, the Earth having had no Rain after the Seed was sown, it had no Moisture to assist its Growth, and never came up at all, till the wet Season had come again, and then it grew as if it had been but newly sown

Finding my first Seed did not grow, which I easily imagin'd was by the Drought, I sought for a moister Piece of Ground to make another Trial in, and I dug up a Piece of Ground near my new Bower, and sowed the rest of my Seed in *February*, a little before the *Vernal Equinox*, and this having the rainy Months of *March* and *April* to water it, sprung up very pleasantly, and yielded a very good Crop, but having Part of the Seed left only, and not daring to sow all that I had, I had but a small Quantity at last, my whole Crop not amounting to above half a Peck of each kind.

But by this Experiment I was made Master of my Business, and knew exactly when the proper Season was to sow, and that I might expect two Seed Times, and two Harvests every Year

While this Corn was growing, I made a little Discovery which was of use to me afterwards As soon as the Rains were over, and the Weather began to settle, which was about the Month of *November*, I made a Visit up the Country to my Bower, where though I had not been some Months, yet I found all Things just as I left them The Circle or double Hedge that I had made, was not only firm and entire, but the Stakes which I had cut out of some Trees that grew thereabouts, were all shot out and grown with long Branches, as much

as a Willow-Tree usually shoots the first Year after lopping its Head, I could not tell what Tree to call it, that these Stakes were cut from. I was surpris'd, and yet very well pleased, to see the young Trees grow, and I pruned them, and led them up to grow as much alike as I could, and it is scarce credible how beautiful a Figure they grew into in three Years, so that though the Hedge made a Circle of about twenty-five Yards in Diameter, yet the Trees, for such I might now call them, soon cover'd it, and it was a complete Shade, sufficient to lodge under all the dry Season

This made me resolve to cut some more Stakes, and make me a Hedge like this in a Semicircle round my Wall; I mean that of my first Dwelling, which I did, and placing the Trees or Stakes in a double Row, at about eight Yards' distance from my first Fence, they grew presently, and were at first a fine Cover to my Habitation, and afterward served for a Defence also, as I shall observe in its Order

I found now, That the Seasons of the Year might generally be divided, not into *Summer* and *Winter*, as in *Europe*, but into the Rainy Seasons, and the Dry Seasons, which were generally thus,

Half <i>February</i> ,	}	Rainy, the <i>Sun</i> being then on, or near the <i>Equinox</i> .
<i>March</i> ,		
Half <i>April</i> ,		
Half <i>April</i> ,	}	Dry, the <i>Sun</i> being then to the <i>North</i> of the <i>Line</i> .
<i>May</i> ,		
<i>June</i> ,		
<i>July</i> ,		
Half <i>August</i> ,		
Half <i>August</i> ,	}	Rainy, the <i>Sun</i> being then come back.
<i>September</i> ,		
Half <i>October</i> ,		
Half <i>October</i> ,	}	Dry, the <i>Sun</i> being then in the <i>South</i> of the <i>Line</i> .
<i>November</i> ,		
<i>December</i> ,		
<i>January</i> ,		
Half <i>February</i> ,		

The Rainy Season sometimes held longer or shorter, as the Winds happen'd to blow, but this was the general Observation I made: After I had found by Experience, the ill Consequence of being abroad in the Rain, I took Care to furnish myself with Provisions beforehand,

that I might not be oblig'd to go out; and I sat within Doors as much as possible during the wet Months.

In this Time I found much Employment, (and very suitable also to the Time) for I found great Occasion of many Things which I had no way to furnish myself with, but by hard Labour and constant Application; particularly, I tried many Ways to make myself a Basket, but all the Twigs I could get for the Purpose proved so brittle, that they would do nothing. It proved of excellent Advantage to me now, That when I was a Boy, I used to take great Delight in standing at a *Basket-maker's*, in the Town where my Father lived, to see them make their *Wicker-ware*, and being as Boys usually are,



very officious to help, and a great Observer of the Manner how they worked those Things, and sometimes lending a Hand, I had by this Means full Knowledge of the Methods of it, that I wanted nothing but the Materials, when it came into my Mind, That the Twigs of that Tree from whence I cut my Stakes that grew, might possibly be as tough as the *Sallows*, and *Willows*, and *Osters* in *England*, and I resolv'd to try

Accordingly the next Day, I went to my Country-House, as I called it, and cutting some of the smaller Twigs, I found them to my Purpose as much as I could desire, whereupon I came the next Time prepar'd with a Hatchet to cut down a Quantity, which I soon found,

for there was great Plenty of them, these I set up to dry within my Circle or Hedge, and when they were fit for Use, I carried them to my Cave, and here during the next Season, I employed myself in making, *as well as I could*, a great many Baskets, both to carry Earth, or to carry or lay up anything as I had occasion, and though I did not finish them very handsomely, yet I made them sufficiently serviceable for my Purpose, and thus afterwards I took Care never to be without them, and as my *Wicker-ware* decay'd, I made more, especially, I made strong deep Baskets to place my Corn in, instead of Sacks, when I should come to have any Quantity of it.

Having master'd this Difficulty, and employ'd a World of Time about it, I bestir'd myself to see if possible how to supply two Wants. I had no Vessels to hold anything that was Liquid, except two Runlets which were almost full of Rum, and some Glass-Bottles, some of the common Size, and others which were Case-Bottles-Square, for the holding of Waters, Spirits, &c. I had not so much as a Pot to boil anything, except a great Kettle, which I saved out of the Ship, and which was too big for such Use as I desir'd, *viz* To make Broth, and stew a Bit of Meat by itself. The Second Thing I would fain have had was a Tobacco-Pipe, but it was impossible to me to make one, however, I found a Contrivance for that too at last.

I employ'd myself in Planting my Second Rows of Stakes or Piles and in this *Wicker* working all the Summer, or dry Season, when another Business took me up more Time than it could be imagin'd I could spare.

I mention'd before, That I had a great Mind to see the whole Island, and that I had travell'd up the Brook, and so on to where I built my Bower, and where I had an Opening quite to the Sea on the other Side of the Island, I now resolv'd to travel quite Cross to the Sea-Shore on that Side, so taking my Gun, a Hatchet, and my Dog, and a larger Quantity of Powder and Shot than usual, with two Biscuit Cakes, and a great Bunch of Raisins in my Pouch for my Store, I began my Journey, when I had passed the Vale where my Bower stood as above, I came within View of the Sea, to the *West*, and it being a very clear Day, I fairly descry'd Land, whether an Island or a Continent, I could not tell, but it lay very high, extending from the *West* to the *WSW* at a very great Distance, by my Guess it could not be less than Fifteen or Twenty Leagues off.

I could not tell what Part of the World this might be, otherwise

than that I know it must be Part of *America*, and as I concluded by all my Observations, must be near the *Spanish* Dominions, and perhaps was all Inhabited by Savages, where if I should have landed, I had been in a worse Condition than I was now, and therefore I acquiesced in the Dispositions of Providence, which I began now to own, and to believe, order'd everything for the best, I say, I quieted my Mind with this, and left afflicting myself with Fruitless Wishes of being there.

- Besides, after some Pause upon this Affair, I consider'd, that if this Land was the *Spanish* Coast, I should certainly, one Time or other, see some Vessel pass or re-pass one Way or other, but if not, then it was the *Savage* Coast between the *Spanish* Country and *Brasils* which are indeed the worst of *Savages*, for they are Cannibals, or Men-eaters, and full not to murder and devour all the human Bodies that fall into their Hands

With these Considerations I walked very leisurely forward, I found that Side of the Island where I now was, much pleasanter than mine, the open or *Savana* Fields sweet, adorn'd with Flowers and Grass, and full of very fine Woods I saw Abundance of Parrots, and said I would have caught one, if possible to have kept it to be tame, and taught it to speak to me. I did, after some Painstaking, catch a young Parrot, for I knocked it down with a Stick, and having recover'd it, I brought it home, but it was some Years before I could make him speak. However, at last I taught him to call me by my Name very familiarly. But the Accident that follow'd, though it be a Trifle, will be very diverting in its Place.

I was exceedingly diverted with this Journey. I found in the low Grounds Hares, as I thought them to be, and Foxes, but they differ'd greatly from all the other Kinds I had met with, nor could I satisfy myself to eat them, though I killed several. But I had no Need to be venturous; for I had no Want of Food, and of that which was very good too; especially these three Sorts, *viz* Goats, Pigeons, and Turtle or Tortoise, which, added to my Grapes, *Leaden-hall* Market could not have furnish'd a Table better than I, in Proportion to the Company; and though my Case was deplorable enough, yet I had great Cause for Thankfulness, and that I was not driven to any Extremities for Food, but rather Plenty, even to Dainties.

I never travell'd in this Journey above two Miles outright in a Day, or thereabouts. but I took so many Turns and Returns, to see what



Discoveries I could make, that I came weary enough to the Place where I resolv'd to sit down for all Night, and then I either repos'd myself in a Tree, or surrounded myself with a Row of Stakes set upright in the Ground, either from one Tree to another, or so as no wild Creature could come at me, without waking me

As soon as I came to the Sea Shore, I was surpris'd to see that I had taken up my Lot on the worst Side of the Island, for here indeed the Shore was cover'd with innumerable Turtles, whereas on the other Side I had found but three in a Year and half. Here was also an infinite Number of Fowls, of many Kinds, some which I had seen, and some which I had not seen of before, and many of them very good Meat, But such as I knew not the Names of, except those called *Penguins*

I could have shot as many as I pleased, but was very sparing of my Powder and Shot, and therefore had more Mind to kill a she Goat, if I could, which I could better feed on, and though there were many Goats here more than on my Side the Island, yet it was with much more Difficulty that I could come near them, the Country being flat and even, and they saw me much sooner than when I was on the Hill

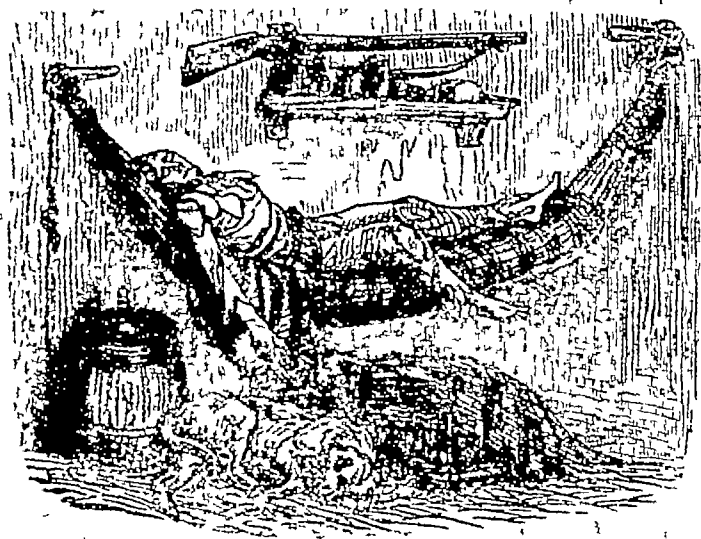
I confess this Side of the Country was much pleasanter than mine, but yet I had not the least Inclination to remove, for as I was fix'd in my Habitation, it became natural to me, and I seem'd all the while I was here, to be as it were upon a Journey, and from Home. However, I travell'd along the Shore of the Sea, towards the *East*. I suppose about twelve Miles, and then setting up a great Pole upon the Shore for a Mark, I concluded I would go Home again; and that the next Journey I took should be on the other Side of the Island, *East* from my Dwelling, and so round till I came to my Post again. Of which in its Place

I took another Way to come back than that I went, thinking I could easily keep all the Island so much in my View, that I could not miss finding my first Dwelling by viewing the Country, but I found myself mistaken, for being come about two or three Miles, I found myself descended into a very large Valley, ~~surrounded~~ surrounded with Hills, and those Hills cover'd with Wood, that I could not see which was my Way by any Direction but that of the Sun, nor even then, unless I knew very well the Position of the Sun at that Time of the Day.

It happen'd to my farther Misfortune, That the Weather proved hazy for three or four Days, while I was in this Valley; and not being able to see the Sun, I wander'd about very uncomfortably, and at last was oblig'd to find out the Sea Side, look for my Post, and come back the same Way I went, and then by easy Journeys I turned Homeward, the Weather being exceeding hot, and my Gun, Ammunition, Hatchet, and other Things very heavy

In this Journey my Dog surpris'd a Young Kid, and seized upon it, and I running in to take hold of it, caught it and saved it alive from the Dog I had a great Mind to bring it Home if I could, for I had often been musing, Whether it might not be possible to get a Kid or two, and so raise a Breed of tame Goats, which might supply me when my Powder and Shot should be all spent.

I made a Collar to this little Creature, and with a String which I had of some Rope-Yarn, which I always carried about with me, I led



him along, though with some Difficulty, till I came to my Bower, and there I enclos'd him, and left him, for I was very impatient to be at Home, from whence I had been absent above a Month.

I cannot express what a Satisfaction it was to me, to come into my old Hutch, and lie down in my Hammock-Bed This little wandering Journey, without settled Place of Abode, had been so unpleasant to me, that my own House, as I called it to myself, was a perfect

Settlement to me, compar'd to that, and it rendered everything about me so comfortable, that I resolv'd I would never go a great Way from it again, while it should be my Lot to stay on the Island.

I repos'd myself here a Week, to rest and regale myself after my long Journey, during which, most of the Time was taken up in the weighty Affair of making a Cage for my Poll, who began now to be a mere Domestic, and to be mighty well acquainted with me. Then I began to think of the poor Kid, which I had penned in within my little Circle, and resolv'd to go and fetch it Home, or give it some Food, accordingly I went, and found it where I left it, for indeed it could not get out, but almost starved for want of Food. I went and cut Boughs of Trees, and Branches of such Shrubs as I could find, and threw it over, and having fed it, I tied it as I did before, to lead it away, but it was so tame with being hungry, that I had no need to have tied it, for it follow'd me like a Dog, and as I continually fed it, the Creature became so loving, so gentle, and so fond, that it became from that Time one of my Domestics also, and would never leave me afterwards.

The rainy Season of the *Autumnal Equinox* was now come, and I kept the 30th of *September* in the same solemn Manner as before, being the Anniversary of my Landing on the Island, having now been there two Years, and no more Prospect of being deliver'd than the first Day I came there. I spent the whole Day in humble and thankful Acknowledgments of the many wonderful Mercies which my Solitary Condition was attended with, and without which it might have been infinitely more miserable. I gave humble and hearty Thanks that God had been pleas'd to discover to me, even that it was possible I might be more happy in this Solitary Condition, than I should have been in a Liberty of Society, and in all the Pleasures of the World. That he could fully make up to me, the Deficiencies of my Solitary State, and the want of Human Society, by his Presence, and the Communications of his Grace to my Soul, supporting, comforting, and encouraging me to depend upon his Providence here, and hope for his Eternal Presence hereafter.

It was now that I began sensibly to feel how much more happy this Life I now led was, with all its miserable Circumstances, than the wicked, cursed, abominable Life I led all the past Part of my Days, and now I changed both my Sorrows and my Joys, my very Desires alter'd, my Affections changed their Gusts, and my Delights

were perfectly new, from what they were at my first Coming, or indeed for the two Years past.

Before, as I walked about, either on my Hunting, or for viewing the Country; the Anguish of my Soul at my Condition, would break out upon me on a sudden, and my very Heart would die within me, to think of the Woods, the Mountains, the Deserts I was in, and how I was a Prisoner locked up with the Eternal Bars and Bolts of the Ocean, in an uninhabited Wilderness, without Redemption In the midst of the greatest Composures of my Mind, this would break out upon me like a Storm, and make me wring my Hands, and weep like a Child Sometimes it would take me in the middle of my Work, and I would immediately sit down and sigh, and look upon the Ground for an Hour or two together, and this was still worse to me, for if I could burst out into Tears, or vent myself by Words, it would go off, and the Grief having exhausted itself would abate

But now I began to exercise myself with new Thoughts, I daily read the Word of God, and apply'd all the Comforts of it to my present State One Morning being very sad, I open'd the Bible upon these Words, *I will never, never leave thee, nor forsake thee*, immediately it occur'd, That these Words were to me, Why else should they be directed in such a Manner, just at the Moment when I was mourning over my Condition, as one forsaken of God and Man? Well then, said I, if God does not forsake me, of what ill Consequence can it be, or what matters it, though the World should all forsake me, seeing on the other Hand, if I had all the World, and should lose the Favour and Blessing of God, there would be no Comparison in the Loss

From this Moment I began to conclude in my Mind, That it was possible for me to be more happy in this forsaken Solitary Condition, than it was probable I should ever have been in any other Particular State in the World, and with this Thought I was going to give Thanks to God for bringing me to this Place.

I know not what it was, but something shocked my Mind at that Thought, and I durst not speak the Words How canst thou be such a Hypocrite, (said I, even audibly) to pretend to be thankful for a Condition, which however thou may'st endeavour to be contented with, thou would'st rather pray heartily to be deliver'd from, so I stopped there But though I could not say, I thanked God for being

there, yet I sincerely gave Thanks to God for opening my Eyes, by whatever afflicting Providences, to see the former Condition of my Life, and to mourn for my Wickedness, and repent. I never open'd the Bible, or shut it, but my very Soul within me blessed God for directing my Friend, in *England*, without any Order of mine, to pack it up among my Goods; and for assisting me afterwards to save it out of the Wreck of the Ship

Thus, and in this Disposition of Mind, I began my third Year, and though I have not given the Reader the Trouble of so particular Account of my Works this Year as the first, yet in General it may be observ'd, That I was very seldom idle, but having regularly divided my Time, according to the several daily Employments that were before me, such as, *First*, My Duty to God, and the Reading the Scriptures, which I constantly set apart some Time for thrice every Day *Secondly*, The going Abroad with my Gun for Food, which generally took me up three Hours in every Morning, when it did not Rain *Thurdly*, The ordering, curing, preserving, and cooking what I had killed or caught for my Supply, these took up great Part of the Day also it is to be considered that the middle of the Day when the Sun was in the *Zenith*, the Violence of the Heat was too great to stir out, so that about four Hours in the Evening was all the Time I could be suppos'd to Work in; with this Exception, That sometimes I changed my Hours of Hunting and Working, and went to work in the Morning, and Abroad with my Gun in the Afternoon.

To this short Time allow'd for Labour, I desire may be added the exceeding Laboriousness of my Work, the many Hours which for want of Tools, want of Help, and want of Skill, everything I did took up out of my Time For Example, I was full two-and-forty Days making me a Board for a long Shelf, which I wanted in my Cave, whereas two Sawyers with their Tools, and a Saw-Pit, would have cut six of them out of the same Tree in half a Day

My Case was this, It was to be a large Tree, which was to be cut down, because my Board was to be a broad one. This Tree I was three Days a cutting down, and two more cutting off the Boughs, and reducing it to a Log, or Piece of Timber With inexpressible hacking and hewing I reduc'd both the Sides of it into Chips, till it begun to be light enough to move, then I turned it, and made one Side of it smooth, and flat, as a Board from End to End, then turning that

Side downward, cut the other Side, till I brought the Plank to be about three Inches thick, and smooth on both Sides. Any one may judge the Labour of my Hands in such a Piece of Work, but Labour and Patience carry'd me through that and many other Things. I only observe this in Particular, to show The Reason why so much of my Time went away with so little Work, *viz* That what might be a little to be done with Help and Tools, was a vast Labour, and requir'd a prodigious Time to do alone, and by hand

But notwithstanding this, with Patience and Labour I went through many Things, and indeed everything that my Circumstances made necessary to me to do, as will appear by what follows

I was now, in the Months of *November* and *December*, expecting my Crop of Barley and Rice. The Ground I had manur'd or dug up for them was not great, for as I observ'd, my Seed of each was not above the Quantity of half a Peck, for I had lost one whole Crop by sowing in the dry Season; but now my Crop promised very well, when on a sudden I found I was in Danger of losing it all again by Enemies of several Sorts, which it was scarce possible to keep from it, as First, The Goats, and wild Creatures which I called Hares, who tasting the Sweetness of the Blade, lay in it Night and Day, as soon as it came up, and eat it so close, that it could get no Time to shoot up into Stalk.

This I saw no Remedy for, but by making an Enclosure about it with a Hedge, which I did with a great deal of Toil, and the more, because it requir'd Speed. However, as my Arable Land was but small, suited to my Crop, I got it totally well fenced, in about three Weeks' Time, and shooting some of the Creatures in the Daytime, I set my Dog to guard it in the Night, tying him up to a Stake at the Gate, where he would stand and bark all Night long, so in a little Time the Enemies forsook the Place, and the Corn grew very strong, and well, and began to ripen apace

But as the Beasts ruined me before, while my Corn was in the Blade, so the Birds were as likely to ruin me now, when it was in the Ear, for going along by the Place to see how it throve, I saw my little Crop surrounded with Fowls of I know not how many sorts, who stood as it were watching till I should be gone. I immediately let fly among them (for I always had my Gun with me) I had no sooner shot but there rose up a little Cloud of Fowls, which I had not seen at all, from among the Corn itself

This touched me sensibly, for I foresaw, that in a few Days they would devour all my Hopes, that I should be starved, and never be able to raise a Crop at all, and what to do I could not tell. However I resolv'd not to lose my Corn, if possible, though I should watch it Night and Day. In the first Place, I went among it to see what Damage was already done, and found they had spoiled a good deal of it, but that as it was yet too Green for them, the Loss was not so great, but that the Remainder was like to be a good Crop if it could be saved.

I stayed by it to load my Gun, and then coming away I could easily see the Thieves sitting upon all the Trees about me, as if they only waited till I was gone away, and the Event proved it to be so, for as I walked off as if I was gone, I was no sooner out of their Sight, but they dropt down one by one into the Corn again. I was so provok'd that I could not have Patience to stay till more came on, knowing that every Grain that they eat now, was, *as it might be said*, a Peck-loaf to me in the Consequence, but coming up to the Hedge, I fired again, and killed three of them. This was what I wished for, so I took them up, and served them as we serve notorious Thieves in *England*, (*viz*) Hanged them in Chains for a Terror to others, it is impossible to imagine almost, that this should have such an Effect, as it had, for the Fowls would not only not come at the Corn, but in short they forsook all that Part of the Island, and I could never see a Bird near the Place as long as my Scare Crows hung there.

This I was very glad of, you may be sure, and about the latter end of *December*, which was our second Harvest of the Year, I reaped my Crop.

I was sadly put to it for a Scythe or a Sickle to cut it down, and all I could do was to make one as well as I could out of one of the Broad Swords or Cutlasses, which I saved among the Arms out of the Ship. However, as my first Crop was but small I had no great Difficulty to cut it down, in short, I reaped it my Way, for I cut nothing off but the Ears, and carry'd it away in a great Basket which I had made, and so rubbed it out with my Hands, and at the End of all my Harvesting, I found that out of my half Peck of Seed, I had near two Bushels of Rice, and above two Bushels and half of Barley, *that is to say*, by my Guess, for I had no Measure at that time.

However, this was a great Encouragement to me, and I foresaw that in time, it would please God to supply me with Bread. And yet

here I was perplex'd again, for I neither knew how to grind or make Meal of my Corn, or indeed how to clean it or part it, nor if made into Meal, how to make Bread of it, and if how to make it, yet I knew not how to bake it; these things being added to my Desire of having a good Quantity for Store, and to secure a constant Supply, I resolv'd not to taste any of this Crop but to preserve it all for Seed against the next Season, and in the mean time to employ all my Study and Hours of Working to accomplish this great Work of Providing myself with Corn and Bread

It might be truly said, that now I worked for my Bread, it is a little wonderful, and what I believe few People have thought much upon, (viz) the strange multitude of little Things necessary in the Providing, Producing, Curing, Dressing, Making and Finishing this one Article of Bread

I that was reduced to a mere State of Nature, found this to my daily Discouragement, and was made more and more sensible of it every Hour, even after I had got the first Handful of Seed-Corn, which, as I have said, came up unexpectedly, and indeed to a surprise.

First, I had no Plough to turn up the Earth, no Spade or Shovel to dig it. Well, this I conquer'd, by making a wooden Spade, as I observ'd before, but this did my Work in but a wooden manner, and though it cost me a great many Days to make it, yet for want of Iron it not only wore out the sooner, but made my Work the harder, and made it be perform'd much worse.

However this I bore with, and was content to work it out with Patience, and bear with the badness of the Performance. When the Corn was sowed, I had no Harrow, but was forced to go over it myself and drag a great heavy Bough of a Tree over it, to Scratch it, as it may be called, rather than Rake or Harrow it.

When it was growing and grown, I have observ'd already, how many things I wanted, to Fence it, Secure it, Mow or Reap it, Cure and Carry it Home, Thrash, Part it from the Chaff, and Save it. Then I wanted a Mill to Grind it, Sieves to Dress it, Yeast and Salt to make it into Bread, and an Oven to bake it, and yet all these things I did without, as shall be observ'd, and yet the Corn was an inestimable Comfort and Advantage to me too. All this, as I said, made everything laborious and tedious to me, but that there was no help for, neither was my time so much Loss to me, because as I had



divided it, a certain Part of it was every Day appointed to these Works, and as I resolv'd to use none of the Corn for Bread till I had a greater Quantity by me, I had the next six Months to apply myself wholly by Labour and Invention to furnish myself with Utensils proper for the performing all the Operations necessary for the making the Corn (when I had it) fit for my use.

But first, I was to prepare more Land, for I had now Seed enough to sow above an Acre of Ground. Before I did this, I had a Week's work at least to make me a Spade, which when it was done was but a sorry one indeed, and very heavy, and requir'd double Labour to work with it, however I went through that, and sowed my Seed in two large flat Pieces of Ground, as near my House as I could find them to my Mind, and fenced them in with a good Hedge, the Stakes of which were all cut of that Wood which I had set before, and knew it would grow, so that in one Year's time I knew I should have a Quick or Living-Hedge, that would want but little Repair. This Work was not so little as to take me up less than three Months, because great Part of that time was of the wet Season, when I could not go abroad.

Within Doors, *that is*, when it rained, and I could not go out, I found Employment on the following Occasions, always observing, that all the while I was at work I diverted myself with talking to my Parrot, and teaching him to Speak, and I quickly learned him to know his own Name, and at last to speak it out pretty loud POLL, which was the first Word I ever heard spoken in the Island by any Mouth but my own. This therefore was not my Work, but an assistant to my Work, for now, as I said, I had a great Employment upon my Hands, as follows, (*viz*) I had long studied by some Means or other, to make myself some Earthen Vessels, which indeed I wanted sorely, but knew not where to come at them. However, considering the Heat of the Climate, I did not doubt but if I could find out any such Clay, I might botch up some such Pot, as might, being dried in the Sun, be hard enough, and strong enough to bear handling, and to hold anything that was dry, and requir'd to be kept so, and as this was necessary in the preparing Corn, Meal, &c. which was the Thing I was upon, I resolv'd to make some as large as I could, and fit only to stand like Jars to hold what should be put into them.

It would make the Reader pity me, or rather laugh at me, to tell how many awkward ways I took to raise this Paste, what odd

misshapen ugly things I made, how many of them fell in, and how many fell out, the Clay not being stiff enough to bear its own Weight, how many cracked by the over violent Heat of the Sun, being set out too hastily ; and how many fell in pieces with only removing, as well before as after they were dried , and in a word, how after having laboured hard to find the Clay, to dig it, to temper it, to bring it home and work it , I could not make above two large earthen ugly things, I cannot call them Jars, in about two Months' Labour

However, as the Sun baked these Two, very dry and hard, I lifted them very gently up, and set them down again in two great Wicker Baskets which I had made on purpose for them, that they might not break, and as between the Pot and the Basket there was a little room to spare, I stuffed it full of the Rice and Barley Straw, and these two Pots being to stand always dry, I thought would hold my dry Corn, and perhaps the Meal, when the Corn was bruised.

Though I miscarried so much in my Design for large Pots, yet I made several smaller things with better Success, such as little round Pots, flat Dishes, Pitchers and Pipkins, and any things my Hand turned to, and the Heat of the Sun baked them strangely hard.

But all this would not answer my End, which was to get an earthen Pot to hold what was Liquid, and bear the Fire, which none of these could do It happen'd after some time, making a pretty large Fire for cooking my Meat, when I went to put it out after I had done with it, I found a broken Piece of one of my Earthenware Vessels in the Fire, burnt as hard as a Stone, and red as a Tile I was agreeably surpris'd to see it, and said to myself, that certainly they might be made to burn whole if they would burn broken

This set me to studying how to order my Fire, so as to make it burn me some Pots I had no Notion of a Kiln, such as the Potters burn in, or of glazing them with Lead, though I had some Lead to do it with , but I placed three large Pipkins, and two or three Pots in a Pile one upon another, and placed my Firewood all round it with a great Heap of Embers under them, I plied the Fire with fresh Fuel round the outside, and upon the top, till I saw the Pots in the inside red hot quite through, and observ'd that they did not crack at all , when I saw them clear red, I let them stand in that Heat about 5 or 6 Hours, till I found one of them, though it did not crack, did melt or run, for the Sand which was mixed with the Clay melted by the violence of the Heat, and would have run into Glass if I had gone on so I

slacked my Fire gradually till the Pots began to abate of the red Colour, and watching them all Night, that I might not let the Fire abate too fast, in the Morning I had three very good, I will not say handsome, Pipkins, and two other Earthen Pots, as hard burnt as

could be desir'd; and one of them perfectly glazed with the Running of the Sand.

After this Experiment, I need not say that I wanted no sort of Earthen Ware for my Use, but I must needs say, as to the Shapes of them, they were very indifferent, as any one may suppose, when I had no way of mending them,

but as the Children make Dirt-Pies, or as a Woman would make Pie, who never learned to raise Paste

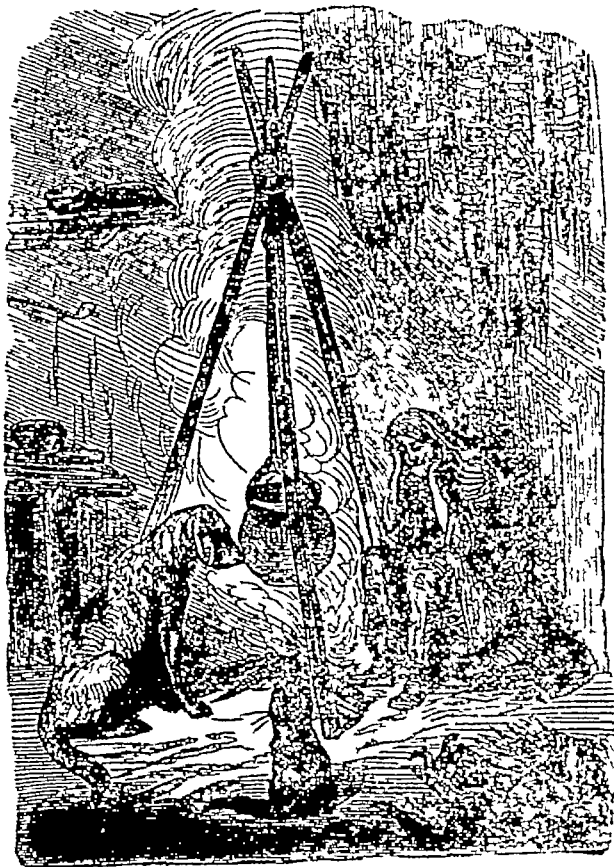
No Joy at a Thing of so mean a Nature was ever equal to mine, when I found I had made an Earthen Pot that would bear the Fire, and I had hardly Patience to stay till they were cold, before I set one upon the Fire again, with some Water in it, to boil me some Meat, which it did admirably well, and with a Piece of a Kid I made some very good Broth, though I wanted Oatmeal, and several other Ingredients, requisite to make it so good as I would have had it been.

My next Concern was, to get me a Stone Mortar, to stamp or beat some Corn in, for as to the Mill, there was no thought at arriving to that Perfection of Art, with one Pair of Hands To supply this Want I was at a great Loss, for of all Trades in the World I was as perfectly unqualify'd for a Stone-cutter, as for any whatever; neither had I any Tools to go about it with I spent many a Day to find out a great Stone big enough to cut hollow, and make fit for a Mortar, and



could find none at all, except what was in the solid Rock, and which I had no way to dig or cut out, nor indeed were the Rocks in the Island of Hardness sufficient, but were all of a sandy crumbling Stone, which neither would bear the Weight of a heavy Pestle, or would break the Corn without filling it with Sand, so after a great deal of Time lost in searching for a Stone, I gave it over, and resolv'd to look

out for a great Block of hard Wood, which I found indeed much easier, and getting one as big as I had Strength to stir, I rounded it, and formed it in the Outside with my Axe and Hatchet, and then with the Help of Fire, and infinite Labour, made a hollow Place in it, as the *Indians in Brasil* make their *Canoes*. After this, I made a great heavy Pestle or Beater, of the Wood called the Iron-wood, and this I prepar'd and laid by against I had my next Crop



of Corn, when I propos'd to myself, to grind, or rather pound my Corn into Meal to make my Bread

My next Difficulty was to make a Sieve, or Search, to dress my Meal, and to part it from the Bran, and the Husk, without which I did not see it possible I could have any Bread. This was a most difficult Thing, so much as but to think on; for to be sure I had nothing like the necessary Thing to make it, I mean fine thin Canvas,

or Stuff, to search the Meal through And here I was at a full Stop for many Months, nor did I really know what to do, Linen I had none left, but what was mere Rags, I had Goat's Hair, but neither knew I how to weave it, or spin it, and had I known how, here was no Tools to work it with, all the Remedy that I found for this, was, That at last I did remember I had among the Seamen's Clothes which were saved out of the Ship, some Neckcloths of Calico or Muslin; and with some Pieces of these, I made three small Sieves, but proper enough for the Work, and thus I made shift for some Years, how I did afterwards, I shall show in its Place.

The baking Part was the next Thing to be consider'd, and how I should make Bread when I came to have Corn, for first I had no Yeast, as to that Part, as there was no supplying the Want, so I did not concern myself much about it But for an Oven, I was indeed in great Pain, at length I found out an Experiment for that also, which was this, I made some Earthen Vessels very broad, but not deep, that is to say, about two Foot Diameter, and not above nine Inches deep, these I burnt in the Fire, as I had done the other, and laid them by, and when I wanted to bake, I made a great Fire upon my Hearth, which I had paved with some square Tiles of my own making, and burning also, but I should not call them square

When the Firewood was burnt pretty much into Embers, or live Coals, I drew them forward upon this Hearth, so as to cover it all over, and there I let them lie, till the Hearth was very hot then sweeping away all the Embers, I set down my Loaf, or Loaves, and wheeling down the Earthen Pot upon them, drew the Embers all round the Outside of the Pot, to keep in, and add to the Heat; and thus, as well as in the best Oven in the World, I baked my Barley Loaves, and became in little Time a mere Pastrycook into the Bargain, for I made myself several Cakes of the Rice, and Puddings, indeed I made no Pies, neither had I anything to put into them, supposing I had, except the Flesh either of Fowls or Goats.

It need not be wondered at, if all these Things took me up most Part of the third Year of my Abode here, for it is to be observ'd, That in the Intervals of these Things, I had my new Harvest and Husbandry to manage, for I reaped my Corn in its Season, and carry'd it Home as well as I could, and laid it up in the Ear, in my large Baskets, till I had Time to rub it out, for I had no Floor to thrash it on, or Instrument to thrash it with.

And now indeed my Stock of Corn increasing, I really wanted to build my Barns bigger I wanted a Place to lay it up in; for the Increase of the Corn now yielded me so much, that I had of the Barley about twenty Bushels, and of the Rice as much, or more; insomuch, that now I resolv'd to begin to use it freely, for my Bread had been quite gone a great while, Also I resolv'd to see what Quantity would be sufficient for me a whole Year, and to sow but once a Year

Upon the whole, I found that the forty Bushels of Barley and Rice was much more than I could consume in a Year, so I resolv'd to sow just the same Quantity every Year, that I sowed the last, in Hopes that such a Quantity would fully provide me with Bread, &c

All the while these Things were doing, you may be sure my Thoughts run many times upon the Prospect of Land which I had seen from the other Side of the Island, and I was not without secret Wishes that I were on Shore there, fancying the seeing the main Land, and in an inhabited Country, I might find some Way or other to convey myself farther, and perhaps at last find some Means of Escape.

But all this while I made no Allowance for the Dangers of such a Condition, and how I might fall into the Hands of Savages, and perhaps such as I might have Reason to think far worse than the Lions and Tigers of *Africa* That if I once came into their Power, I should run a Hazard more than a thousand to one of being killed, and perhaps of being eaten, for I had heard that the People of the *Caribbean* Coasts were Cannibals, or Man-eaters, and I knew by the Latitude that I could not be far off from that Shore That suppose they were not Cannibals, yet that they might kill me, as many *Europeans* who had fallen into their Hands had been served, even when they had been ten or twenty together; much more I that was but one, and could make little or no Defence. All these Things, I say, which I ought to have consider'd well of, and did cast up in my Thoughts afterwards, yet took up none of my Apprehensions at first, but my Head run mightily upon the Thought of getting over to the Shore

Now I wished for my Boy *Xury*, and the long Boat, with the Shoulder of Mutton Sail, with which I sailed above a thousand Miles on the Coast of *Africa*, but this was in vain Then I thought I would go and look at our Ship's Boat, which, as I have said, was blown up upon the Shore, a great Way in the Storm, when we were first cast away. She lay almost where she did at first, but not quite, and was turned by the Force of the Waves and the Winds almost Bottom

upward, against a high Ridge of Beachy rough Sand; but no Water about her as before.

If I had had Hands to have refitted her, and to have launched her into the Water, the Boat would have done well enough, and I might have gone back into the *Brasils* with her easily enough, but I might have foreseen, That I could no more turn her, and set her upright upon her Bottom, than I could remove the Island. However, I went to the Woods, and cut Levers and Rollers, and brought them to the Boat, resolv'd to try what I could do, suggesting to myself, That if I could but turn her down, I might easily repair the Damage she had receiv'd, and she would be a very good Bort, and I might go to Sea in her very easily.

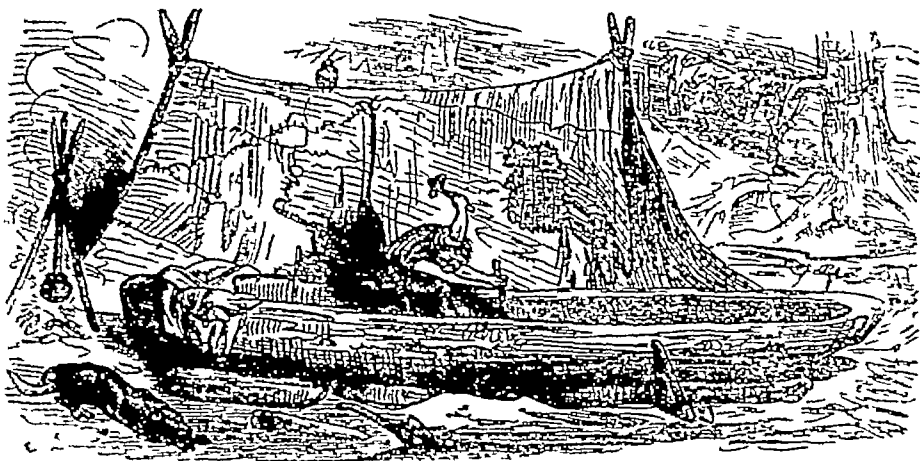
I spared no Pains indeed, in this Piece of fruitless Toil, and spent, I think, three or four Weeks about it, at last finding it impossible to heave it up with my little Strength, I fell to digging away the Sand, to undermine it, and so to make it fall down, setting Pieces of Wood to thrust and guide it right in the Fall.

But when I had done this, I was unable to stir it up again, or to get under it, much less to move it forward, towards the Water, so I was forced to give it over, and yet, though I gave over the Hopes of the Boat, my desire to venture over for the Main increased, rather than decreased, as the Means for it seemed impossible.

This at length put me upon thinking, Whether it was not possible to make myself a *Canoe*, or *Periagua*, such as the Natives of those Climates make, even without Tools, or, as I might say, without Hands, viz of the Trunk of a great Tree. This I not only thought possible, but easy, and pleased myself extremely with the Thoughts of making it, and with my having much more Convenience for it than any of the *Negroes* or *Indians*, but not at all considering the particular Inconveniences which I lay under, more than the *Indians* did, viz Want of Hands to move it, when it was made, into the Water, a Difficulty much harder for me to surmount, than all the Consequences of Want of Tools could be to them, for what was it to me, That when I had chosen a vast Tree in the Woods, I might with much Trouble cut it down, if after I might be able with my Tools to hew and dub the Outside into the proper Shape of a Boat, and burn or cut out the Inside to make it hollow, so to make a Boat of it. If after all this, I must leave it just there where I found it, and was not able to launch it into the Water.

One would have thought, I could not have had the least Reflection upon my Mind of my Circumstance, while I was making this Boat, but I should have immediately thought how I should get it into the Sea, but my Thoughts were so intent upon my Voyage over the Sea in it, that I never once consider'd how I should get it off of the Land, and it was really in its own Nature more easy for me to guide it over forty-five Miles of Sea, than about forty-five Fathom of Land, where it lay, to set it afloat in the Water.

I went to work upon this Boat, the most like a Fool, that ever Man did, who had any of his Senses awake. I pleased myself with the Design, without determining whether I was ever able to undertake it,



not but that the Difficulty of launching my Boat came often into my Head, but I put a stop to my own Inquiries into it, by this foolish Answer which I gave myself, *Let's first make it, I'll warrant I'll find some Way or other to get it afloat, when it is done.*

This was a most preposterous Method, but the Eagerness of my Fancy prevail'd, and to work I went. I felled a Cedar Tree I question much whether *Solomon* ever had such a One for the Building of the Temple at *Jerusalem*. It was five Foot ten Inches Diameter at the lower Part next the Stump, and four Foot eleven Inches Diameter at the End of twenty-two Foot, after which it lessen'd for a while, and then parted into Branches. It was not without infinite Labour that I felled this Tree. I was twenty Days hacking and hewing at it at the Bottom,



I was fourteen more getting the Branches and Limbs, and the vast spreading Head of it cut off, which I hacked and hewed through with Axe and Hatchet, and inexpressible Labour. After this, it cost me a Month to shape it, and dub it to a Proportion, and to something like the Bottom of a Boat, that it might swim upright as it ought to do. It cost me near three Months more to clear the Inside, and work it out so, as to make an exact Boat of it. This I did indeed without Fire, by mere Mallet and Chisel, and by the dint of hard Labour, till I had brought it to be a very handsome *Periagua*, and big enough to have carried six-and-twenty Men, and consequently big enough to have carried me and all my Cargo.

When I had gone through this Work, I was extremely delighted with it. The Boat was really much bigger than I ever saw a *Canoe*, or *Periagua*, that was made of one Tree, in my Life. Many a weary Stroke it had cost, you may be sure, and there remain'd nothing but to get it into the Water, and had I gotten it into the Water, I make no question but I should have began the maddest Voyage, and the most unlikely to be perform'd, that ever was undertaken.

But all my Devices to get it into the Water failed me, though they cost me infinite Labour too. It lay about one hundred Yards from the Water, and not more. But the first Inconvenience was, it was uphill towards the Creek, well, to take away this Discouragement, I resolv'd to dig into the Surface of the Earth, and so make a Declivity. This I begun, and it cost me a prodigious deal of Pains, but who grudges Pains, that have their Deliverance in View. But when this was worked through, and this Difficulty manag'd, it was still much at one, for I could no more stir the *Canoe*, than I could the other Boat.

Then I measur'd the Distance of Ground, and resolv'd to cut a Dock, or Canal, to bring the Water up to the *Canoe*, seeing I could not bring the *Canoe* down to the Water. Well, I began this Work, and when I began to enter into it, and calculate how deep it was to be dug, how broad, how the Stuff to be thrown out, I found, That by the Number of Hands I had, being none but my own, it must have been ten 'or twelve Years before I should have gone through with it, for the Shore lay high, so that at the upper End, it must have been at least twenty Foot Deep, so at length, though with great Reluctancy, I gave this Attempt over also.

This grieved me heartily, and now I saw, though too late, the Folly

of beginning a Work before we count the Cost, and before we judge rightly of our own Strength to go through with it.

In the middle of this Work, I finished my fourth Year in this Place, and kept my Anniversary with the same Devotion, and with as much Comfort as ever before, for by a constant Study, and serious Application of the Word of God, and by the Assistance of his Grace, I gained a different Knowledge from what I had before. I entertain'd different Notions of Things. I looked now upon the World as a Thing remote, which I had nothing to do with, no Expectation from, and indeed no Desires about: In a Word, I had nothing indeed to do with it, nor was ever like to have, so I thought it looked as we may perhaps look upon it hereafter, *viz* as a Place I had lived in, but was come out of it; and well might I say, as Father Abraham to Dives, *Between me and thee is a great Gulf fixed*

In the first Place, I was removed from all the Wickedness of the World here. I had neither the *Lust of the Flesh, the Lust of the Eye, or the Pride of Life*. I had nothing to covet, for I had all that I was now capable of enjoying. I was Lord of the whole Manor, or if I pleased, I might call myself King, or Emperor over the whole Country which I had Possession of. There were no Rivals. I had no Competitor, none to dispute Sovereignty or Command with me. I might have raised Ship Loadings of Corn, but I had no use for it, so I let as little grow as I thought enough for my Occasion. I had Tortoise or Turtles enough; but now and then one, was as much as I could put to any use. I had Timber enough to have built a Fleet of Ships. I had Grapes enough to have made Wine, or to have cured into Raisins, to have loaded that Fleet when they had been built.

But all I could make use of, was, All that was valuable. I had enough to eat, and to supply my Wants, and, what was all the rest to me? If I killed more Flesh than I could eat, the Dog must eat it, or the Vermin. If I sowed more Corn than I could eat, it must be spoiled. The Trees that I cut down, were lying to rot on the Ground. I could make no more use of them than for Fuel, and that I had no Occasion for, but to dress my Food.

In a Word, The Nature and Experience of Things dictated to me upon just Reflection, That all the good Things of this World, are no farther good to us, than they are for our Use, and that whatever we may heap up indeed to give others, we enjoy just as much as we can use, and no more. The most covetous griping Miser in the World

would have been cured of the Vice of Covetousness, if he had been in my Case, for I possess'd infinitely more than I knew what to do with. I had no room for Desire, except it was of Things which I had not, and they were but Trifles, though indeed of great Use to me. I had, as I hinted before, a Parcel of Money, as well Gold as Silver, about thirty-six Pounds Sterling. Alas! There the nasty sorry useless Stuff lay, I had no manner of Business for it, and I often thought with myself, That I would have given a Handful of it for a Gross of Tobacco Pipes, or for a Hand-Mill to grind my Corn, nay, I would have given it all for Sixpenny-worth of *Turnip* and *Carrot* Seed out of *England*, or for a Handful of *Pease* and *Beans*, and a Bottle of Ink; *As it was*, I had not the least Advantage by it, or Benefit from it, but there it lay in a Drawer and grew mouldy with the Damp of the Cave, in the wet Season, and if I had had the Drawer full of Diamonds, it had been the same Case, and they had been of no manner of Value to me, because of no Use.

I had now brought my State of Life to be much easier in itself than it was at first, and much easier to my Mind, as well as to my Body. I frequently sat down to my Meat with Thankfulness, and admir'd the Hand of God's Providence, which had thus spread my Table in the Wilderness. I learned to look more upon the bright Side, of my Condition, and less upon the dark Side, and to consider what I enjoy'd, rather than what I wanted, and this gave me sometimes such secret Comforts, that I cannot express them, and which I take Notice of here, to put those discontented People in Mind of it, who cannot enjoy comfortably what God has given them, because they see and covet something that he has not given them. All our Discontents about what we want, appear'd to me, to spring from the Want of Thankfulness for what we have.

Another Reflection was of great Use to me, and doubtless would be so to any one that should fall into such Distress as mine was; and this was, To compare my present Condition with what I at first expected it should be, nay, with what it would certainly have been, if the good Providence of God had not wonderfully order'd the Ship to be cast up nearer to the Shore, where I not only could come at her, but could bring what I got out of her to the Shore, for my Relief and Comfort, without which, I had wanted for Tools to work, Weapons for Defence, or Gunpowder and Shot for getting my Food.

I spent whole Hours, I may say whole Days, in representing to

myself in the most lively Colours, how I must have acted, if I had got nothing out of the Ship. How I could not have so much as got any Food, except Fish and Turtles, and that as it was long before I found any of them, I must have perished first. That I should have lived, if I had not perished, like a mere Savage. That if I had killed a Goat, or a Fowl, by any Contrivance, I had no way to flay or open them, or part the Flesh from the Skin, and the Bowels, or to cut it up, but must gnaw it with my Teeth, and pull it with my Claws like a Beast.

These Reflections made me very sensible of the Goodness of Providence to me, and very thankful for my present Condition, with all its Hardships and Misfortunes. And this Part also I cannot but recommend to the Reflection of those, who are apt in their Misery to say, *Is any Affliction like mine!* Let them consider, How much worse the Cases of some People are, and their Case might have been, if Providence had thought fit.

I had another Reflection which assisted me also to comfort my Mind with Hopes, and this was, comparing my present Condition with what I had deserv'd, and had therefore Reason to expect from the Hand of Providence. I had lived a dreadful Life, perfectly destitute of the Knowledge and Fear of God. I had been well instructed by Father and Mother, neither had they been wanting to me, in their early Endeavours, to infuse a religious Awe of God into my Mind, a Sense of my Duty, and of what the Nature and End of my Being requir'd of me. But alas! falling early into the Seafaring Life, which of all the Lives is the most destitute of the Fear of God, though His Terrors are always before them, I say, falling early into the Seafaring Life, and into Seafaring Company, all that little Sense of Religion which I had entertain'd, was laugh'd out of me by my Messmates, by a harden'd despising of Dangers, and the Views of Death, which grew habitual to me, by my long Absence from all Manner of Opportunities to converse with anything but what was like myself, or to hear anything that was good, or tended towards it.

So void was I of everything that was good, or of the least Sense of what I was, or was to be, that in the greatest Deliverances I enjoy'd, such as my Escape from *Sallee*, my being taken up by the *Portuguese* Master of the Ship; my being planted so well in the *Brasils*, my receiving the Cargo from *England*, and the like, I never had once the Word *Thank God*, so much as on my Mind, or in my Mouth, nor

in the greatest Distress, had I so much as a Thought to pray to him, or so much as to say, *Lord have Mercy upon me*, no nor to mention the Name of God, unless it was to swear by, and blaspheme it.

I had terrible Reflections upon my Mind for many Months, as I have already observ'd, on the Account of my wicked and hardened Life past, and when I looked about me and considered what particular Providences had attended me since my coming into this Place, and how God had dealt bountifully with me, had not only punished me less than my Iniquity had deserv'd, but had so plentifully provided for me; this gave me great hopes that my Repentance was accepted, and that God had yet Mercy in store for me.

With these Reflections I worked my Mind up, not only to Resignation to the Will of God in the present Disposition of my Circumstances, but even to a sincere Thankfulness for my Condition, and that I who was yet a living Man, ought not to complain, seeing I had not the due Punishment of my Sins, that I enjoy'd so many Mercies which I had no reason to have expected in that Place, that I ought never more to repine at my Condition but to rejoice, and to give daily Thanks for that daily Bread, which nothing but a Crowd of Wonders could have brought. That I ought to consider I had been fed even by Miracle, even as great as that of feeding *Elijah* by Ravens, nay, by a long Series of Miracles, and that I could hardly have named a Place in the uninhabitable Part of the World where I could have been cast more to my Advantage. A Place, where as I had no Society, which was my Affliction on one Hand, so I found no ravenous Beast, no furious Wolves or Tigers to threaten my Life, no venomous Creatures or poisonous, which I might feed on to my Hurt, no Savages to murder and devour me.

In a Word, as my Life was a Life of Sorrow, one way, so it was a Life of Mercy, another, and I wanted nothing to make it a Life of Comfort, but to be able to make my Sense of God's Goodness to me, and Care over me in this Condition, be my daily Consolation, and after I did make a just Improvement of these things, I went away and was no more sad.

I had now been here so long, that many Things which I brought on Shore for my Help, were either quite gone, or very much wasted and near spent.

My Ink, as I observed, had been gone some time, all but a very little, which I eked out with Water a little and a little, till it was

so pale it scarce left any Appearance of black upon the Paper. As long as it lasted, I made use of it to minute down the Days of the Month on which any remarkable Thing happen'd to me, and first by casting up Times past I remember that there was a strange Concurrence of Days in the various Providences which befel me, and which, if I had been superstitiously inclin'd to observe Days as Fatal or Fortunate, I might have had Reason to have looked upon with a great deal of Curiosity

First I had observed, that the same Day that I broke away from my Father and my Friends, and run away to *Hull*, in order to go to Sea, the same Day afterwards I was taken by the *Sallee* Man of War, and made a Slave.

The same Day of the Year that I escaped out of the Wreck of that Ship in *Yarmouth* Roads, that same Day-Year afterwards I made my escape from *Sallee* in the Boat

The same Day of the Year I was born on (*viz*) the 30th of *September*, that same Day, I had my Life so miraculously saved 26 Year after, when I was cast on Shore in this Island, so that my wicked Life, and my solitary Life begun both on a Day

The next Thing to my Ink's being wasted, was that of my Bread, I mean the Biscuit which I brought out of the Ship, thus I had husbanded to the last degree, allowing myself but one Cake of Bread a Day for above a Year, and yet I was quite without Bread for near a Year before I got any Corn of my own, and great Reason I had to be thankful that I had any at all, the getting it being, as has been already observed, next to miraculous

My Clothes began to decay too mightily. As to Linen, I had had none a good while, except some chequer'd Shirts which I found in the Chests of the other Seamen, and which I carefully preserved, because many times I could bear no other Clothes on but a Shirt, and it was a very great help to me that I had among all the Men's Clothes of the Ship almost three dozen of Shirts. There were also several thick Watch Coats of the Seamen's, which were left indeed, but they were too hot to wear, and though it is true, that the Weather was so violent hot, that there was no need of Clothes, yet I could not go quite naked, no, though I had been inclin'd to it, which I was not, nor could not abide the thoughts of it, though I was all alone.

The Reason why I could not go quite naked, was, I could not bear

the heat of the Sun so well when quite naked, as with some Clothes on, nay, the very Heat frequently blistered my Skin, whereas with a Shirt on, the Air itself made some Motion and whistling under that Shirt was twofold cooler than without it; no more could I ever bring myself to go out in the heat of Sun without a Cap or Hat, the heat of the Sun beating with such Violence as it does in that Place, would give me the Head-ache presently, by darting so directly on my Head, without a Cap or Hat on, so that I could not bear it, whereas, if I put on my Hat, it would presently go away

Upon those Views I began to consider about putting the few Rags I had, which I called Clothes, into some order, I had worn out all the Waistcoats I had, and my Business was now to try if I could not make Jackets out of the great Watch-Coats which I had by me, and such other Materials as I had, so I set to Work a Tailoring, or rather



indeed a Botching, for I made most piteous Work of it. However, I made shift to make two or three new Waistcoats, which I hoped would serve me a great while; as for Breeches or Drawers, I made but a sorry shift indeed, till afterwards

I have mentioned that I saved the Skins of all the Creatures that I killed, I mean four-footed ones, and I had hung them up stretched out with Sticks in the Sun, by which means some of them were so dry and hard that they were fit for little, but others, it seems were very useful.

The first thing I made of these was a great Cap for my Head, with the Hair on the Outside to shoot off the Rain, and this

I perform'd so well, that after this I made me a Suit of Clothes wholly of these Skins, that is to say, a Waistcoat, and Breeches open at Knees, and both loose, for they were rather wanting to keep me cool than to keep me warm. I must not omit to acknowledge that they were wretchedly made, for if I was a bad *Carpenter*, I was a worse *Tailor*. However, they were such as I made very good shift with, and when I was abroad, if it happen'd to rain, the Hair of my Waistcoat and Cap being outermost, I was kept very dry.

After this I spent a great deal of Time and Pains to make me an Umbrella; I was indeed in great want of one, and had a great Mind to make one, I had seen them made in the *Brasils*, where they are very useful in the great Heats which are there. And I felt the Heats every jot as great here, and greater too, being nearer the Equinox, besides, as I was oblig'd to be much abroad, it was a most useful thing to me, as well for the Rains as the Heats. I took a world of Pains at it, and was a great while before I could make anything likely to hold, nay, after I thought I had hit the Way, I spoiled 2 or 3 before I made one to my Mind, but at last I made one that answer'd indifferently well. The main Difficulty I found was to make it to let down. I could make it to spread, but if it did not let down too, and draw in, it was not portable for me any Way but just over my Head, which would not do. However, at last, as I said, I made one to answer, and covered it with Skins, the Hair upwards, so that it cast off the Rains like a Pent-house, and kept off the Sun so effectually, that I could walk out in the hottest of the Weather with greater Advantage than I could before in the coolest, and when I had no need of it, could close it and carry it under my Arm.

Thus I lived mighty comfortably, my Mind being entirely composed by resigning to the Will of God, and throwing myself wholly upon the Disposal of his Providence. This made my Life better than sociable, for when I began to regret the want of Conversation, I would ask myself whether thus conversing mutually with my own Thoughts, and, as I hope I may say, with even God himself by Ejaculations, was not better than the utmost Enjoyment of human Society in the World.

I cannot say that after this, for five Years, any extraordinary thing happened to me, but I lived on in the same Course, in the same Posture and Place, just as before, the chief things I was employ'd in, besides my yearly Labour of planting my Barley and Rice, and curing my Raisins, of both which I always kept up just enough to have



sufficient Stock of one Year's Provisions beforehand I say, besides this yearly Labour, and my daily Labour of going out with my Gun, I had one Labour to make me a Canoe, which at last I finished, So that by digging a Canal to it of six Foot wide, and four Foot deep, I brought it into the Creek, almost half a Mile As for the first, which was so vastly big, as I made it without considering before-hand, as I ought to do, how I should be able to launch it, so never being able to bring it to the Water, or bring the Water to it, I was oblig'd to let it lie where it was, as a *Memorandum* to teach me to be wiser next Time. Indeed, the next Time, though I could not get a Tree proper for it, and in a Place where I could not get the Water to it, at any less Distance, than as I have said, near half a Mile, yet as I saw it was practicable at last, I never gave it over, and though I was near two Years about it, yet I never grudged my Labour, in Hopes of having a Boat to go off to Sea at last.

However, though my little *Periagua* was finish'd, yet the Size of it was not at all answerable to the Design which I had in View, when I made the first, I mean, Of venturing over to the *Terra Firma*, where it was above forty Miles broad, accordingly, the Smallness of my Boat assisted to put an End to that Design, and now I thought no more of it But as I had a Boat, my next Design was to make a Tour round the Island, for as I had been on the other Side, in one Place, crossing as I have already describ'd it, over the Land, so the Discoveries I made in that little Journey, made me very eager to see other Parts of the Coast, and now I had a Boat, I thought of nothing but sailing round the Island.

For this Purpose, that I might do everything with Discretion and Consideration, I fitted up a little Mast to my Boat, and made a Sail to it, out of some of the Pieces of the Ship's Sail, which lay in store; and of which I had a great Stock by me

Having fitted my Mast and Sail, and tried the Boat, I found she would sail very well Then I made little Lockers, or Boxes, at either End of my Boat, to put Provisions, Necessaries and Ammunition, &c. into, to be kept dry, either from Rain, or the Spray of the Sea; and a little long hollow Place I cut in the Inside of the Boat, where I could lay my Gun, making a Flap to hang down over it to keep it dry

I fixed my Umbrella also in a Step at the Stern, like a Mast, to stand over my Head, and keep the Heat of the Sun off of me like an Awning, and thus I every now and then took a little Voyage upon the

Sea, but never went far out, nor far from the little Creek; but at last being eager to view the Circumference of my little Kingdom, I resolv'd upon my Tour, and accordingly I victuall'd my Ship for the Voyage, putting in two Dozen of my Loaves (Cakes I should rather call them) of Barley Bread, an Earthen Pot full of parched Rice, a Food I eat a great deal of, a little Bottle of Rum, half a Goat, and Powder and Shot for killing more, and two large Watch-coats, of those which, as I mention'd before, I had saved out of the Seamen's Chests, these I took, one to lie upon, and the other to cover me in the Night.

It was the sixth of *November*, in the sixth Year of my Reign, or my Captivity, which you please, That I set out on this Voyage, and I found it much longer than I expected, for though the Island itself was not very large, yet when I came to the *East* Side of it, I found a great Ledge of Rocks lie out above two Leagues into the Sea, some above Water, some under it, and beyond that, a Shoal of Sand, lying dry half a League more, so that I was oblig'd to go a great Way out to Sea to double the Point.

When first I discover'd them, I was going to give over my Enterprise, and come back again, not knowing how far it might oblige me to go out to Sea, and above all, doubting how I should get back again, so I came to an Anchor, for I had made me a kind of an Anchor with a Piece of a broken Graplin, which I got out of the Ship.

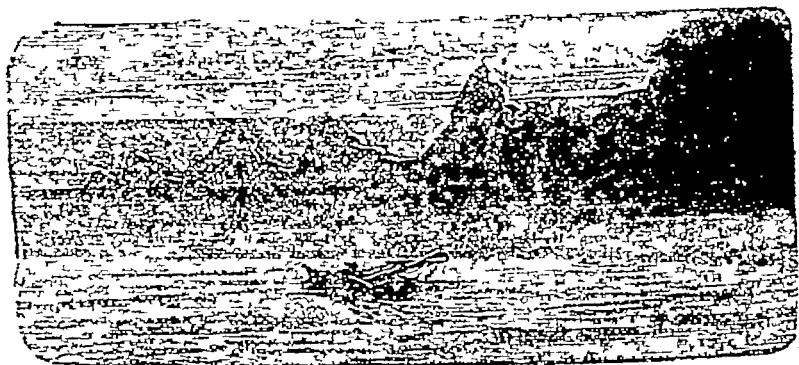
Having secur'd my Boat, I took my Gun, and went on Shore, climbing up upon a Hill, which seemed to overlook that Point, where I saw the full Extent of it, and resolv'd to venture.

In my viewing the Sea from that Hill where I stood, I perceiv'd a strong, and indeed, a most furious Current, which ran to the *East*, and even came close to the Point; and I took the more Notice of it, because I saw there might be some Danger, that when I came into it, I might be carried out to Sea by the Strength of it, and not be able to make the Island again, and indeed, had I not gotten first up upon this Hill, I believe it would have been so, for there was the same Current on the other Side the Island, only, that it set off at a farther Distance, and I saw there was a strong Eddy under the Shore, so I had nothing to do but to get in out of the first Current, and I should presently be in an Eddy.

I lay here, however, two Days, because the Wind blowing pretty fresh at *E S E* and that being just contrary to the said Current, made a great Breach of the Sea upon the Point, so that it was not safe for

me to keep too close to the Shore for the Breach, nor to go too far off because of the Stream

The third Day in the Morning, the Wind having abated over Night, the Sea was calm, and I ventur'd, but I am a warning Piece again, to all rash and ignorant Pilots, for no sooner was I come to the Point, when even I was not my Boat's Length from the Shore, but I found myself in a great Depth of Water, and a Current like the Sluice of a Mill It carried my Boat along with it with such Violence, That all I could do, could not keep her so much as on the Edge of it, but I found it hurried me farther and farther out from the Eddy, which was on my left Hand. There was no Wind stirring to help me, and all I could do with my Paddlers signify'd nothing, and now I began to give myself over for lost, for as the Current was on both Sides the



Island, I knew in a few Leagues' Distance they must join again, and then I was irrecoverably gone, nor did I see any Possibility of avoiding it, so that I had no Prospect before me but of Perishing, not by the Sea, for that was calm enough, but of starving for Hunger I had indeed found a Tortoise on the Shore, as big almost as I could lift, and had tossed it into the Boat, and I had a great Jar of fresh Water, that is to say, one of my Earthen Pots, but what was all this to being driven into the vast Ocean, where to be sure, there was no Shore, no main Land, or Island, for a thousand Leagues at least.

And now I saw how easy it was for the Providence of God to make the most miserable Condition Mankind could be in, *worse* Now I looked back upon my desolate solitary Island, as the most pleasant Place in the World, and all the Happiness my Heart could wish for,

was to be but there again I stretched out my Hands to it with eager Wishes. O happy Desert, said I, I shall never see thee more. O miserable Creature, said I, whither am I going : Then I reproach'd myself with my unthankful Temper, and how I had repin'd at my solitary Condition ; and now what would I give to be on Shore there again. Thus we never see the true State of our Condition, till it is illustrated to us by its Contraries, nor know how to value what we enjoy, but by the want of it. It is scarce possible to imagine the Consternation I was now in, being driven from my beloved Island (for so it appear'd to me now to be) into the wide Ocean, almost two Leagues, and in the utmost Despair of ever recovering it again. However, I worked hard, till indeed my Strength was almost exhausted, and kept my Boat as much to the *Northward*, that is, towards the Side of the Current which the Eddy lay on, as possibly I could, when about Noon, as the Sun passed the Meridian, I thought I felt a little Breeze of Wind in my Face, springing up from the *SSE*. This cheered my Heart a little, and especially when in about half an Hour more, it blew a pretty small gentle Gale. By this Time I was gotten at a frightful Distance from the Island, and had the least Cloud or hazy Weather interven'd, I had been undone another Way too, for I had no Compass on Board, and should never have known how to have steered towards the Island, if I had but once lost Sight of it, but the Weather continuing clear, I applied myself to get up my Mast again, spread my Sail, standing away to the *North*, as much as possible, to get out of the Current.

Just as I had set my Mast and Sail, and the Boat began to stretch away, I saw even by the Clearness of the Water, some Alteration of the Current was near, for where the Current was so strong, the Water was foul, but perceiving the Water clear, I found the Current abate, and presently I found to the *East*, at about half a Mile, a Breach of the Sea upon some Rocks ; these Rocks I found caused the Current to part again, and as the main Stress of it ran away more *Southerly*, leaving the Rocks to the *North-East*, so the other return'd by the Repulse of the Rocks, and made a strong Eddy, which ran back again to the *North-West*, with a very sharp Stream.

They who know what it is to have a Reprieve brought to them upon the Ladder, or to be rescued from Thieves just a going to murder them, or who have been in such like Extremities, may guess what my present Surprise of Joy was, and how gladly I put my Boat into the Stream

of this Eddy, and the Wind also freshening, how gladly I spread my Sail to it, running cheerfully before the Wind, and with a strong Tide or Eddy under Foot.

This Eddy carried me about a League in my Way back again directly towards the Island, but about two Leagues more to the Northward than the Current which carried me away at first; so that when I came near the Island, I found myself open to the Northern Shore of it, that is to say, the other End of the Island opposite to that which I went out from.

When I had made something more than a League of Way by the help of this Current or Eddy, I found it was spent and served me no farther. However, I found that being between the two great Currents, (*viz*) that on the South Side, which had hurried me away, and that on the North, which lay about a League on the other Side; I say between these two, in the wake of the Island, I found the Water at least still and running no Way, and having still a Breeze of Wind fair for me, I kept on steering directly for the Island, though not making such fresh Way as I did before.

About four o'Clock in the Evening, being then within about a League of the Island, I found the Point of the Rocks which occasioned this Disaster, stretching out as is described before to the Southward, and casting off the Current more Southwardly, had of Course made another Eddy to the North, and this I found very strong but not directly setting the Way my Course lay which was due West but almost full North. However, having a fresh Gale, I stretched across this Eddy slanting North-west, and in about an Hour came within about a Mile of the Shore, where it being smooth Water, I soon got to Land.

When I was on Shore I fell on my Knees and gave God Thanks for my Deliverance, resolving to lay aside all Thoughts of my Deliverance by my Boat, and refreshing myself with such Things as I had, I brought my Boat close to the Shore in a little Cove that I had spied under some Trees, and laid me down to sleep, being quite spent with the Labour and Fatigue of the Voyage.

I was now at a great Loss which Way to get Home with my Boat. I had run so much Hazard, and knew too much the Case to think of attempting it by the Way I went out, and what might be at the other Side (I mean the 'West' Side) I knew not, nor had I any Mind to run any more Ventures, so I only resolved in the Morning to make it

Way Westward along the Shore and to see if there was no Creek where I might lay up my Frigate in Safety, so as to have her again if I wanted her; in about three Mile or thereabout coasting the Shore, I came to a very good Inlet or Bay about a Mile over, which narrowed till it came to a very little Rivulet or Brook, where I found a very convenient Harbour for my Boat, and where she lay as if she had been in a little Dock made on Purpose for her. Here I put in, and having stowed my Boat very safe, I went on Shore to look about me and see where I was.

I soon found I had but a little passed by the Place where I had been before, when I travell'd on Foot to that Shore; so taking nothing out of my Boat, but my Gun and my Umbrella, for it was exceedingly hot, I began my March. The Way was comfortable enough after such a Voyage as I had been upon, and I reached my old Bower in the Evening, where I found everything standing as I left it, for I always kept it in good Order, being, as I said before, my Country House.

I got over the Fence, and laid me down in the Shade to rest my Limbs, for I was very weary, and fell asleep. But judge you, if you can, that read my Story, what a Surprise I must be in, when I was waked out of my Sleep by a Voice calling me by my Name several times, *Robin, Robin, Robin Crusoe*, poor *Robin Crusoe*, where are you *Robin Crusoe*? Where are you? Where have you been?

I was so dead asleep at first, being fatigu'd with Rowing, or Paddling, as it is called, the first Part of the Day, and with walking the latter Part, that I did not wake thoroughly, but dozing between sleeping and waking, thought I dreamed that somebody spoke to me. But as the Voice continu'd to repeat, *Robin Crusoe, Robin Crusoe*, at last I began to wake more perfectly, and was at first dreadfully frightened, and started up in the utmost Consternation. But no sooner were my Eyes open, but I saw my *Poll* sitting on the Top of the Hedge, and immediately knew that it was he that spoke to me, for just in such bemoaning Language I had used to talk to him, and teach him, and he had learned it so perfectly, that he would sit upon my Finger, and lay his Bill close to my Face, and cry, *Poor Robin Crusoe, Where are you? Where have you been? How come you here?* and such things as I had taught him.

However, even though I knew it was the Parrot, and that indeed it could be nobody else, it was a good while before I could compose myself. First, I was amazed how the Creature got thither,

and then, how he should just keep about the Place, and nowhere else But as I was well satisfied it could be nobody but honest *Poll*, I got it over, and holding out my Hand, and calling him by his Name *Poll*, the sociable Creature came to me, and sat upon my Thumb, as he used to do, and continu'd talking to me, *Poor Robin Crusoe*, and *how did I come here?* and *where had I been?* just as if he had been overjoy'd to see me again, and so I carry'd him Home along with me.

I had now had enough of rambling to Sea for some time, and had enough to do for many Days to sit still, and reflect upon the Danger I had been in I would have been very glad to have had my Boat again on my Side of the Island, but I knew not how it was practicable to get it about, as to the East Side of the Island, which I had gone round I knew well enough there was no venturing that Way; my very heart would shrink, and my very Blood run chill but to think of it And as to the other Side of the Island, I did not know how it might be there, but supposing the Current ran with the same Force against the Shore at the East as it passed by it on the other, I might run the same Risk of being driven down the Stream, and carried by the Island, as I had been before, of being carried away from it, so with these Thoughts I contented myself to be without any Boat, though it had been the Product of so many Months' Labour to make it, and of so many more to get it unto the Sea

In this Government of my Temper, I remain'd near a Year, lived a very sedate retir'd Life, as you may well suppose, and my Thoughts being very much compos'd as to my Condition, and fully comforted in resigning myself to the Dispositions of Providence, I thought I lived really very happily in all things, except that of Society

I improv'd myself in this time in all the mechanic Exercises which my Necessities put me upon applying myself to, and I believe could upon Occasion, make a very good *Carpenter*, especially considering how few Tools I had.

Besides this, I arriv'd at an unexpected Perfection in my Earthen ware, and contriv'd well enough to make them with a Wheel, which I found infinitely easier and better, because I made things round and shapeable, which before were filthy things indeed to look on But I think I was never more vain of my own Performance, or more joyful for anything I found out, than for my being able to make a Tobacco-Pipe And though it was a very ugly clumsy thing, when

it was done, and only burnt red like other Earthenware, yet as it was hard and firm, and would draw the Smoke, I was exceedingly comforted with it, for I had been always used to smoke, and there were Pipes in the Ship, but I forgot them at first, not knowing that there was Tobacco in the Island; and afterwards, when I searched the Ship again, I could not come at any Pipes at all.

In my Wicker-ware also I improved much, and made abundance of necessary Baskets, as well as my Invention showed me, though not very handsome, yet they were such as were very handy and convenient for my laying things up in, or fetching things home in. For Example, if I killed a Goat abroad, I could hang it up in a Tree, flay it, and dress it, and cut it in Pieces, and bring it home in a Basket, and the like by a



Turtle, I could cut it up, take out the Eggs, and a Piece or two of the Flesh, which was enough for me, and bring them home in a Basket, and leave the rest behind me. Also large deep Baskets were my Receivers for my Corn, which I always rubbed out as soon as it was dry, and cured, and kept it in great Baskets.

I began now to perceive my Powder abated considerably, and this was a Want which it was impossible for me to supply, and I began seriously to consider what I must do when I should have no more Powder, that is to say, how I should do to kill any Goat. I had, as is observ'd in the third Year of my being here, kept a young Kid, and bred her up tame, and I was in hope of getting a He-Goat, but I could not by any Means bring it to pass, till my Kid grew an old Goat;



and I could never find it in my Heart to kill her, till she died at last of mere Age.

But being now in the eleventh Year of my Residence, and, as I have said, my Ammunition growing low, I set myself to study some Art to trap and snare the Goats, to see whether I could not catch some of them alive, and particularly I wanted a She Goat great with young

To this Purpose I made Snares to hamper them, and I do believe they were more than once taken in them, but my Tackle was not good, for I had no Wire, and I always found them broken, and my Bait devoured

At length I resolv'd to try a Pitfall, so I dug several large Pits in the Earth, in Places where I had observ'd the Goats used to feed, and over these Pits I placed Hurdles of my own making too, with a great Weight upon them, and several times I put Ears of Barley, and dry Rice, without setting the Trap, and I could easily perceive that the Goats had gone in and eaten up the Corn, for I could see the Mark of their Feet. At length I set three Traps in one Night, and going the next Morning I found them all standing, and yet the Bait eaten and gone This was very discouraging However, I alter'd my Trap, and, not to trouble you with Particulars, going one Morning to see my Trap, I found in one of them a large old He-Goat, and in one of the other, three Kids, a Male and two Females

As to the old one, I knew not what to do with him, he was so fierce I durst not go into the Pit to him, that is to say, to go about to bring him away alive, which was what I wanted. I could have killed him, but that was not my Business, nor would it answer my End. So I e'en let him out, and he ran away as if he had been frighted out of his Wits But I had forgot then what I learned afterwards, that Hunger will tame a Lion. If I had let him stay there three or four Days without Food, and then have carried him some Water to drink, and then a little Corn, he would have been as tame as one of the Kids, for they are mighty sagacious tractable Creatures, where they are well used

However, for the present I let him go, knowing no better at that time, then I went to the three Kids, and taking them one by one, I tied them with Strings together, and with some Difficulty brought them all home.

It was a good while before they would feed, but throwing them

some sweet Corn, it tempted them and they began to be tame, and now I found that if I expected to supply myself with Goat-Flesh when I had no Powder or Shot left, breeding some up tame was my only way, when perhaps I might have them about my House like a Flock of Sheep.



But then it presently occur'd to me, that I must keep the tame from the wild, or else they would always run wild when they grew up, and the only Way for this was to have some enclosed Piece of Ground, well fenced either with Hedge or Pale, to keep them in so effectually, that those within might not break out, or those without break in.

This was a great Undertaking for one Pair of Hands, yet as I saw there was an absolute Necessity of doing it, my first Piece of Work was to find out a proper Piece of Ground, *viz* where there was likely to be Herbage for them to eat, Water for them to drink, and Cover to keep them from the Sun.

Those who understand such Enclosures will think I had very little Contrivance, when I pitched upon a Place very proper for all these, being a plain open Piece of Meadow-Land or *Savana*, (as our People call it in the Western Colonies,) which had two or three little Rills of fresh Water in it, and at one end was very woody. I say they will smile at my Forecast, when I shall tell them I began my enclosing of this Piece of Ground in such a manner, that my Hedge or Pale must have been at least two Mile about. Nor was the Madness of it so great as to the Compass, for if it was ten Mile about I was like to have time enough to do it in. But I did not consider that my Goats would be as wild in so much Compass, as if they had had the whole Island, and I should have so much Room to chase them in, that I should never catch them.

My Hedge was begun and carried on, I believe about fifty Yards, when this Thought occur'd to me, so I presently stopped short, and for the first beginning I resolv'd to enclose a Piece of about 150 Yards in length, and 100 Yards in breadth, which as it would maintain as many as I should have in any reasonable time, so as my Flock increased, I could add more Ground to my Enclosure.

This was acting with some Prudence, and I went to work with Courage. I was about three Months hedging in the first Piece, and till I had done it I tether'd the three Kids in the best Part of it, and used them to feed as near me as possible to make them familiar, and very often I would go and carry them some Ears of Barley, or a handful of Rice, and feed them out of my Hand, so that after my Enclosure was finished, and I let them loose, they would follow me up and down, bleating after me for a handful of Corn.

This answer'd my End, and in about a Year and half I had a Flock of about twelve Goats, Kids and all, and in two Years more I had three-and-forty, besides several that I took and killed for my Food. And after that I enclosed five several Pieces of Ground to feed them in, with little Pens to drive them into, to take them as I wanted, and Gates out of one Piece of Ground into another.

But this was not all, for now I not only had Goat's-Flesh to feed on when I pleased, but Milk too, a thing which indeed in my beginning I did not so much as think of, and which, when it came into my Thoughts, was really an agreeable Surprise. For now I set up my Dairy, and had sometimes a Gallon or two of Milk in a Day. And as Nature, who gives Supplies of Food to every Creature, dictates even naturally how to make use of it, so I that had never milked a Cow, much less a Goat, or seen Butter or Cheese made, very readily and handily, though after a great many Essays and Miscarriages, made me both Butter and Cheese at last, and never wanted it afterwards.

How mercifully can our great Creator treat his Creatures, even in those Conditions in which they seemed to be overwhelm'd in Destruction. How can he sweeten the bitterest Providences, and give us cause to praise Him for Dungeons and Prisons. What a Table was here spread for me in a Wilderness, where I saw nothing at first but to perish for Hunger.

It would have made a Stoic smile to have seen me and my little Family sit down to Dinner, there was my Majesty the Prince and Lord of the whole Island, I had the Lives of all my Subjects at my

absolute Command I could hang, draw, give Liberty, and take it away, and no Rebels among all my Subjects.

Then, to see how like a King I dined too all alone, attended by my Servants, *Poll*, as if he had been my Favourite, was the only Person permitted to talk to me. My Dog who was now grown very old and crazy, and had found no Species to multiply his Kind upon, sat always at my Right Hand, and two Cats, one on one Side the Table, and one on the other, expecting now and then a Bit from my Hand, as a Mark of special Favour.

But these were not the two Cats which I brought on Shore at first, for they were both of them dead, and had been interr'd near my Habitation by my own Hand, but one of them having multiplied by I know not what Kind of Creature, these were two which I had preserv'd tame, whereas the rest ran wild in the Woods, and became indeed troublesome to me at last, for they would often come into my House, and plunder me too, till at last I was obliged to shoot them, and did kill a great many, at length they left me with this Attendance, and in this plentiful Manner I lived, neither could I be said to want anything but Society, and of that in some time after this, I was like to have too much.



I was something impatient, as I have observ'd, to have the Use of my Boat, though very loth to run any more Hazards, and therefore sometimes I sat contriving Ways to get her about the Island, and at other Times I sat myself down contented enough without her. But I had a strange Uneasiness in my Mind to go down to the Point of the Island, where, as I have said, in my last Ramble, I went up the Hill

to see how the Shore lay, and how the Current set, that I might see what I had to do. This Inclination increas'd upon me every Day, and at length I resolv'd to travel thither by Land, following the Edge of the Shore; I did so. But had anyone in *England* been to meet such a Man as I was, it must either have frighted them, or raised a great deal of Laughter; and as I frequently stood still to look at myself, I could not but smile at the Notion of my travelling through *Yorkshire* with such an Equipage, and in such a Dress. Be pleased to take a Sketch of my Figure as follows,

I had a great high shapeless Cap, made of a Goat's Skin, with a Flap hanging down behind, as well to keep the Sun from me, as to shoot the Rain off from running into my Neck; nothing being so hurtful in these Climates, as the Rain upon the Flesh under the Clothes.

I had a short Jacket of Goat-Skin, the Skirts coming down to about the middle of my Thighs; and a Pair of open-kneed Breeches of the same, the Breeches were made of the Skin of an old *He-Goat*, whose Hair hung down such a Length on either Side, that like *Pan-taloon's* it reach'd to the middle of my Legs, Stockings and Shoes I had none, but had made me a Pair of somethings, I scarce know what to call them, like *Buskins* to flap over my Legs; and lace on either Side like Spatterdashes, but of a most barbarous Shape, as indeed were all the rest of my Clothes.

I had on a broad Belt of Goat's-Skin dried, which I drew together with two Thongs of the same, instead of Buckles, and in a kind of a Frog on either Side of this, instead of a Sword and a Dagger, hung a little Saw and a Hatchet, one on one Side, one on the other. I had another Belt not so broad, and fasten'd in the same Manner, which hung over my Shoulder, and at the End of it, under my left Arm, hung two Pouches, both made of Goat's-Skin too, in one of which hung my Powder, in the other my Shot. At my Back I carried my Basket, on my Shoulder my Gun, and over my Head a great clumsy ugly Goat-Skin Umbrella, but which, after all, was the most necessary Thing I had about me, next to my Gun. As for my Face, the Colour of it was really not so *Mulatto*, like as one might expect from a Man not at all careful of it, and living within nineteen Degrees of the *Equinox*. My Beard I had once suffer'd to grow, till it was about a Quarter of a Yard long, but as I had both Scissars and Razors sufficient, I had cut it pretty short, except what grew on

my upper Lip, which I had trimmed into a large Pair of *Mahometan* Whiskers, such as I had seen worn by some *Turks*, who I saw at *Sal-lée*: for the *Moor*s did not wear such, though the *Turks* did, of these Moustachos or Whiskers, I will not say they were long enough to hang my Hat upon them, but they were of a Length and Shape monstrous enough, and such, as in *England* would have passed for frightful

But all this is by the by, for as to my Figure, I had so few to observe me, that it was of no manner of Consequence, so I say no more to that Part. In this kind of Figure I went my new Journey, and was out five or six Days. I travell'd first along the Sea-Shore, directly to the Place where I first brought my Boat to an Anchor, to get up upon the Rocks, and having no Boat now to take care of, I went over the Land a nearer Way, to the same Height that I was upon before, when looking forward to the Point of the Rocks which lay out, and which I was oblig'd to double with my Boat, as is said above. I was surpris'd to see the Sea all smooth and quiet, no Rippling, no Motion, no Current, any more than in other Places

I was at a strange Loss to understand this, and resolv'd to spend some Time in the observing it, to see if nothing from the Sets of the Tide had occasion'd it, but I was presently convinc'd how it was, *viz* That the Tide of Ebb setting from the *West*, and joining with the Current of Waters from some great River on the Shore, must be the Occasion of this Current, and that according as the Wind blew more forcibly from the *West*, or from the *North*, this Current came nearer, or went farther from the Shore, for waiting thereabouts till Evening, I went up to the Rock again, and then the Tide of Ebb being made, I plainly saw the Current again as before, only, that it run farther off, being near half a League from the Shore, whereas in my Case, it set close upon the Shore, and hurried me and my *Canoe* along with it, which at another Time it would not have done

This Observation convinc'd me, That I had nothing to do but to observe the Ebbing and the Flowing of the Tide, and I might very easily bring my Boat about the Island again. But when I began to think of putting it in Practice, I had such a Terror upon my Spirits at the Remembrance of the Danger I had been in, that I could not think of it again with any Patience, but on the contrary, I took up another Resolution which was more safe, though more laborious; and this was, That I would build, or rather make me another

*Periagua* or *Canoe*, and so have one for one Side of the Island, and one for the other

You are to understand, that now I had, as I may call it, two Plantations in the Island; one my little Fortification or Tent, with the Wall about it under the Rock, with the Cave behind me, which by this Time I had enlarg'd into several Apartments, or Caves, one within another. One of these, which was the dryest, and largest, and had a Door out beyond my Wall or Fortification, that is to say, beyond where my Wall joined to the Rock, was all filled up with the large Earthen Pots, of which I have given an Account, and with fourteen or fifteen great Baskets, which would hold five or six Bushels each, where I laid up my Stores of Provision, especially my Corn, some in the Ear cut off short from the Straw, and the other rubbed out with my Hand.

As for my Wall made, *as before*, with long Stakes or Piles, those Piles grew all like Trees, and were by this Time grown so big, and spread so very much, that there was not the least Appearance to any one's View of any Habitation behind them

Near this Dwelling of mine, but a little farther within the Land, and upon lower Ground, lay my two Pieces of Corn-Ground, which I kept duly cultivated and sowed, and which duly yielded me their Harvest in its Season, and whenever I had occasion for more Corn, I had more Land adjoining as fit as that.

Besides this, I had my Country Seat, and I had now a tolerable Plantation there also, for first, I had my little Bower, as I called it, which I kept in Repair, *that is to say*, I kept the Hedge which circled it in constantly fitted up to its usual Height, the Ladder standing always in the Inside, I kept the Trees which at first were no more than my Stakes, but were now grown very firm and tall, I kept them always so cut, that they might spread and grow thick and wild, and make the more agreeable Shade, which they did effectually to my Mind. In the Middle of this I had my Tent always standing, being a piece of a Sail spread over Poles set up for that Purpose, and which never wanted any Repair or Renewing, and under this I had made me a Squab or Couch, with the Skins of the Creatures I had killed, and with other soft Things, and a Blanket laid on them, such as belong'd to our Sea-Bedding, which I had saved, and a great Watch-Coat to Cover me, and here, whenever I had Occasion to be absent from my chief Seat, I took up my Country Habitation.

Adjoining to this I had my Enclosures for my Cattle, that is to say, my Goats: And as I had taken an inconceivable deal of Pains to fence and inclose this Ground, so I was so uneasy to see it kept entire, lest the Goats should break through, that I never left off till with infinite Labour I had stuck the Outside of the Hedge so full of small Stakes, and so near to one another, that it was rather a Pale than a Hedge, and there was scarce Room to put a Hand through between them, which afterwards when those Stakes grew, as they all did in the next rainy Season, made the Enclosure strong like a Wall, indeed stronger than any Wall

This will testify for me that I was not idle, and that I spared no Pains to bring to pass whatever appear'd necessary for my comfortable Support, for I consider'd the keeping up a Breed of tame Creatures thus at my Hand, would be a living Magazine of Flesh, Milk, Butter and Cheese, for me as long as I lived in the Place, if it were to be forty Years, and that keeping them in my Reach, depended entirely upon my perfecting my Enclosures to such a Degree, that I might be sure of keeping them together, which by this Method indeed I so effectually secur'd, that when these little Stakes began to grow, I had planted them so very thick, I was forced to pull some of them up again.

In this Place also I had my Grapes growing, which I principally depended on for my Winter Store of Raisins, and which I never failed to preserve very carefully, as the best and most agreeable Dainty of my whole Diet, and indeed they were not agreeable only, but physical, wholesome, nourishing, and refreshing to the last Degree

As this was also about half Way between my other Habitation, and the Place where I had laid up my Boat, I generally stay'd, and lay here in my Way thither, for I used frequently to visit my Boat, and I kept all Things about or belonging to her in very good Order, sometimes I went out in her to divert myself, but no more hazardous Voyages would I go, nor scarce ever above a Stone's Cast or two from the Shore, I was so apprehensive of being hurried out of my Knowledge again by the Currents, or Winds, or any other Accident. But now I come to a new Scene of my Life

It happen'd one Day about Noon going towards my Boat, I was exceedingly surpris'd with the Print of a Man's naked Foot on the Shore, which was very plain to be seen in the Sand. I stood like one Thunder-struck, or as if I had seen an Apparition, I listen'd, I looked



round me, I could hear nothing, nor see anything, I went up to a rising Ground to look farther, I went up the Shore and down the Shore, but it was all one, I could see no other Impression but that one, I went to it again to see if there were any more, and to observe if it might not be my Fancy, but there was no Room for that, for there was exactly the very Print of a Foot, Toes, Heel, and every Part of a Foot; how it came thither, I knew not, nor could in the least imagine. But after innumerable fluttering Thoughts, like a Man perfectly confus'd and out of myself, I came Home to my Fortification, not feeling, as we say, the Ground I went on, but terrify'd to the last Degree, looking behind me at every two or three Steps, mistaking every Bush and Tree, and fancying every Stump at a Distance to be a Man, nor is it possible to describe how many various Shapes affrighted Imagination represented Things to me in, how many wild Ideas were



found every Moment in my Fancy, and what strange unaccountable Whimsies came into my Thoughts by the Way

When I came to my Castle, for so I think I called it ever after this, I fled into it like one pursued, whether I went over by the Ladder as first contriv'd, or went in at the Hole in the Rock, which I called a Door, I cannot remember, no, nor could I remember the next morning, for never frightened Hare fled to Cover, or Fox to Earth, with more Terror of Mind than I to this Retreat.

I slept none that Night, the farther I was from the Occasion of my Fright, the greater my Apprehensions were, which is something contrary to the Nature of such Things, and especially to the usual Practice of all Creatures in Fear but I was so embarrass'd with my

own frightful Ideas of the Thing, that I formed nothing but dismal Imaginations to myself, even though I was now a great way off of it. Sometimes I fancied it must be the Devil, and Reason joined in with me upon this Supposition. For how should any other Thing in human Shape come into the Place? Where was the Vessel that brought them? What Marks were there of any other Footsteps? And how was it possible a Man should come there? But then to think that *Satan* should take human Shape upon him in such a Place where there could be no manner of Occasion for it, but to leave the Print of his Foot behind him, and that even for no Purpose too, for he could not be sure I should see it; this was an Amusement the other Way, I consider'd that the Devil might have found out abundance of other Ways to have terrified me than this of the single Print of a Foot. That as I lived quite on the other Side of the Island, he would never have been so simple to leave a Mark in a Place where it was Ten Thousand to one whether I should ever see it or not, and in the Sand too, which the first Surge of the Sea upon a high Wind would have defac'd entirely. All this seem'd inconsistent with the Thing itself, and with all the Notions we usually entertain of the Subtlety of the Devil.

Abundance of such Things as these assisted to argue me out of all Apprehensions of its being the Devil. And I presently concluded then, that it must be some more dangerous Creature, (*viz*) That it must be some of the Savages of the main Land over against me, who had wander'd out to Sea in their *Canoes*, and either driven by the Currents, or by contrary Winds, had made the Island; and had been on Shore, but were gone away again to Sea, being as loth, perhaps, to have stay'd in this desolate Island, as I would have been to have had them.

While these Reflections were rolling upon my Mind, I was very thankful in my Thoughts, that I was so happy as not to be thereabouts at that Time, or that they did not see my Boat, by which they would have concluded that some Inhabitants had been in the Place, and perhaps have searched farther for me. Then terrible Thoughts rack'd my Imagination about their having found my Boat, and that there were People here, and that if so, I should certainly have them come again in greater Numbers, and devour me, that if it should happen so that they should not find me, yet they would find my Enclosure, destroy all my Corn, carry away all my Flock of tame Goats, and I should perish at last for mere Want.

Thus my Fear banish'd all my religious Hope, all that former Confidence in God which was founded upon such wonderful Experience as I had had of his Goodness, now vanished, as if he that had fed me by Miracle hitherto, could not preserve by his Power the Provision which he had made for me by his Goodness. I reproach'd myself with my Easiness, that would not sow any more Corn one Year than would just serve me till the next Season, as if no Accident, could intervene to prevent my enjoying the Crop that was upon the Ground, and thus I thought so just a Reproof, that I resolv'd for the future to have two or three Years' Corn beforehand, so that whatever might come, I might not perish for want of Bread.

How strange a Chequer-Work of Providence is the Life of Man! and by what secret differing Springs are the Affections hurried about as differing Circumstances present! To-day we love what to-morrow we hate, to-day we seek what to-morrow we shun, to-day we desire what to-morrow we fear, nay, even tremble at the Apprehensions of, this was exemplified in me at this Time in the most lively Manner imaginable for I, whose only Affliction was, that I seemed banished from human Society, that I was alone, circumscrib'd by the boundless Ocean, cut off from Mankind, and condemn'd to what I called silent Life, that I was as one whom Heaven thought not worthy to be number'd among the Living, or to appear among the rest of his Creatures, that to have seen one of my own Species would have seemed to me a Raising me from Death to Life, and the greatest Blessing that Heaven itself, next to the supreme Blessing of Salvation, could bestow, *I say*, that I should now tremble at the very Apprehensions of seeing a Man, and was ready to sink into the Ground at but the Shadow or silent Appearance of a Man's having set his Foot in the Island.

Such is the uneven State of human Life. And it afforded me a great many curious Speculations afterwards, when I had a little recover'd my first Surprise, I consider'd that this was the Station of Life the infinitely wise and good Providence of God had determin'd for me, that as I could not foresee what the Ends of Divine Wisdom might be in all this, so I was not to dispute his Sovereignty, who, as I was his Creature, had an undoubted Right by Creation to govern and dispose of me absolutely as he thought fit, and who, as I was a Creature who had offended him, had likewise a judicious Right to condemn me to

what Punishment he thought fit, and that it was my Part to submit to bear his Indignation, because I had sinned against him

I then reflected that God, who was not only Righteous but Omnipotent, as he had thought fit thus to punish and afflict me, so he was able to deliver me, that if he did not think fit to do it, it was my unquestion'd Duty to resign myself absolutely and entirely to his Will, and on the other Hand, it was my Duty also to hope in him, pray to him, and quietly to attend the Dictates and Directions of his daily Providence.

These Thoughts took me up many Hours, Days, nay, I may say, Weeks and Months, and one particular Effect of my Cogitations on this Occasion, I cannot omit, *viz* One Morning early, lying in my Bed, and filled with Thought about my Danger from the Appearance of Savages, I found it discompos'd me very much, upon which those Words of the Scripture came into my Thoughts, *Call upon me in the Day of Trouble, and I will deliver, and thou shalt glorify me*

Upon this, rising cheerfully out of my Bed, my Heart was not only comforted, but I was guided and encourag'd to pray earnestly to God for Deliverance. When I had done praying, I took up my Bible, and opening it to read, the first Words that presented to me, were, *Wait on the Lord, and be of good Cheer, and he shall strengthen thy Heart, wait, I say, on the Lord* It is impossible to express the Comfort this gave me. In answer I thankfully laid down the Book, and was no more sad, at least, not on that Occasion

In the middle of these Cogitations, Apprehensions and Reflections, it came into my Thought one Day, that all this might be a mere Chimera of my own; and that this Foot might be the Print of my own Foot, when I came on Shore from my Boat, This cheered me up a little too, and I began to persuade myself it was all a Delusion, that it was nothing else but my own Foot, and why might not I come that way from the Boat, as well as I was going that way to the Boat, again, I consider'd also that I could by no Means tell for certain where I had trod, and where I had not, and that if at last this was only the Print of my own Foot, I had played the part of those Fools, who strive to make stories of Spectres, and Apparitions, and then are frighted at them more than anybody

Now I began to take Courage, and to peep abroad again, for I had not stirred out of my Castle for three Days and Nights, so that I

began to starve for Provision, for I had little or nothing within Doors, but some Barley Cakes and Water. Then I knew that my Goats wanted to be milked too, which usually was my Evening Diversion, and the poor Creatures were in great Pain and Inconvenience for want of it, and indeed, it almost spoiled some of them, and almost dried up their Milk.

Heartening myself therefore with the belief that this was nothing but the Print of one of my own Feet, and so I might be truly said to start at my own Shadow, I began to go abroad again, and went to my Country House, to milk my Flock, but to see with what Fear I went forward, how often I looked behind me, how I was ready every now and then to lay down my Basket, and run for my Life, it would have made anyone have thought I was haunted with an evil Conscience, or that I had been lately most terribly frightened, and so indeed I had.

However, as I went down thus two or three Days, and having seen nothing, I began to be a little bolder, and to think there was really nothing in it, but my own Imagination. But I could not persuade myself fully of this, till I should go down to the Shore again, and see this Print of a Foot, and measure it by my own, and see if there was any Similitude or Fitness, that I might be assur'd it was my own Foot. But when I came to the Place, *First*, it appeared evidently to me, that when I laid up my Boat, I could not possibly be on Shore anywhere there about. *Secondly*, When I came to measure the Mark with my own Foot, I found my Foot not so large by a great deal, both these Things filled my Head with new Imaginations, and gave me the Vapours again, to the highest Degree; so that I shook with cold, like one in an Ague. And I went Home again, filled with the Belief that some Man or Men had been on Shore there, or in short, that the Island was inhabited, and I might be surpris'd before I was aware, and what course to take for my Security I knew not.

O what ridiculous Resolution Men take, when possess'd with Fear! It deprives them of the Use of those Means which Reason offers for their Relief. The first Thing I propos'd to myself, was, to throw down my Enclosures, and turn all my tame Cattle wild into the Woods, that the Enemy might not find them, and then frequent the Island in Prospect of the same, or the like Booty. Then to the simple Thing of Digging up my two Corn Fields, that they might not find such a Gran there, and still be prompted to frequent the Island; then to demolish my Bower, and Tent, that they might not see any

Vestiges of Habitation, and be prompted to look farther, in order to find out the Persons inhabiting.

These were the Subject of the first Night's Cogitation, after I was come Home again, while the Apprehensions which had so over-run my Mind were fresh upon me, and my Head was full of Vapours, as above. Thus Fear of Danger is ten thousand Times more terrifying than Danger itself, when apparent to the Eyes, and we find the Burden of Anxiety greater by much, than the Evil which we are anxious about, and which was worse than all this, I had not that Relief in this Trouble from the Resignation I used to practise, that I hoped to have. I looked, I thought, like *Saul*, who complain'd not only that the *Philistines* were upon him, but that God had forsaken him, for I did not now take due Ways to compose my Mind, by crying to God in my Distress, and resting upon his Providence, as I had done before, for my Defence and Deliverance, which if I had done, I had, at least, been more cheerfully supported under this new Surprise, and perhaps carried through it with more Resolution.

This Confusion of my Thoughts kept me waking all Night, but in the Morning I fell asleep, and having by the Amusement of my Mind, been, as it were, tired, and my Spirits exhausted, I slept very soundly, and waked much better compos'd than I had ever been before, and now I began to think sedately, and upon the utmost Debate with myself, I concluded, That this Island, which was so exceedingly pleasant, fruitful, and no farther from the main Land than as I had seen, was not so entirely abandon'd as I might imagine. That although there were no stated Inhabitants who lived on the Spot, yet that there might sometimes come Boats off from the Shore, who either with Design, or perhaps never, but when they were driven by cross Winds, might come to this Place.

That I had lived here fifteen Years now, and had not met with the least Shadow or Figure of any People yet, and that if at any Time they should be driven here, it was probable they went away again as soon as ever they could, seeing they had never thought fit to fix there upon any Occasion, to this Time.

That the most I could suggest any Danger from, was, from any such casual accidental Landing of straggl'ing People from the Main, who, as it was likely if they were driven hither, were here against their Wills; so they made no stay here, but went off again with all possible Speed, seldom staying one Night on Shore, lest they should not have

the Help of the Tides, and Daylight back again, and that therefore I had nothing to do but to consider of some safe Retreat, in Case I should see any Savages land upon the Spot.

Now I began sorely to repent, that I had dug my Cave so large, as to bring a Door through again, which Door, as I said, came out beyond where my Fortification joined to the Rock, upon maturely considering this therefore, I resolv'd to draw me a second Fortification, in the same Manner of a Semicircle, at a Distance from my Wall, just where I had planted a double Row of Trees, about twelve Years before, of which I made mention. These Trees having been planted so thick before, they wanted but a few Piles to be driven between them, that they should be thicker, and stronger, and my Wall would be soon finish'd

So that I had now a double Wall, and my outer Wall was thickened with Pieces of Timber, old Cables, and everything I could think of, to make it strong, having in it seven little Holes, about as big as I might put my Arm out at. In the Inside of this, I thickened my Wall to above ten Foot thick, with continual bringing Earth out of my Cave, and laying it at the Foot of the Wall, and walking upon it, and through the seven Holes, I contriv'd to plant the Muskets, of which I took Notice, that I got seven on Shore out of the Ship; these, I say, I planted like my Cannon, and fitted them into Frames that held them like a Carriage, that so I could fire all the seven Guns in two Minutes' Time. This Wall I was many a weary Month a finishing, and yet never thought myself safe till it was done.

When this was done, I stuck all the Ground without my Wall, for a great way every way, as full with Stakes or Sticks of the *Osier*-like Wood, which I found so apt to grow, as they could well stand, inso-much, that I believe I might set in near twenty thousand of them, leaving a pretty large Space between them and my Wall, that I might have room to see an Enemy, and they might have no shelter from the young Trees, if they attempted to approach my outer Wall.

Thus in two Years' Time I had a thick Grove, and in five or six Years' Time I had a Wood before my Dwelling, growing so monstrous thick and strong, that it was indeed perfectly impassable, and no Men of what kind soever, would ever imagine that there was anything beyond it, much less a Habitation. As for the Way which I propos'd, to myself to go in and out, for I left no Avenue, it was by setting two Ladders, one to a Part of the Rock which was low, and then broke

in, and left room to place another Ladder upon that; so when the two Ladders were taken down, no Man living could come down to me without mischieving himself, and if they had come down, they were still on the Outside of my outer Wall.

Thus I took all the Measures human Prudence could suggest for my own Preservation; and it will be seen at length, that they were not altogether without just Reason; though I foresaw nothing at that Time, more than my mere Fear suggested to me.

While this was doing, I was not altogether Careless of my other Affairs; for I had a great Concern upon me, for my little Herd of Goats, they were not only a present Supply to me upon every Occasion, and began to be sufficient to me, without the Expence of Powder and Shot; but also without the T fatigue of Hunting after the wild Ones, and I was loth to lose the Advantage of them, and to have all to nurse up over again.

To this Purpose, after long Consideration, I could think of but two Ways to preserve them; one was to find another convenient Place to dig a Cave Under-ground, and to drive them into it every Night, and the other was to enclose two or three little Bits of Land, remote from one another and as much conceal'd as I could, where I might keep about half a Dozen young Goats in each Place. So that if any Disaster happen'd to the Flock in general, I might be able to raise them again with little Trouble and Time. And thus, though it would require a great deal of Time and Labour, I thought was the most rational Design. Accordingly I spent some Time to find out the most retired Parts of the Island; and I pitched upon one which was as private indeed as my Heart could wish for; it was a little damp Piece of Ground in the Middle of the hollow and thick Woods, where, as is observ'd, I almost lost myself once before, endeavouring to come back that Way from the Eastern Part of the Island. Here I found a clear Piece of Land near three Acres, so surrounded with Woods, that it was almost an Enclosure by Nature, at least it did not want near so much Labour to make it so, as the other Pieces of Ground I had worked so hard at. I immediately went to Work with this Piece of Ground, and in less than a Month's Time, I had so fenced it round, that my Flock or Herd, call it which you please, who were not so wild now as at first they might be supposed to be; were well enough secur'd in it. So



without any further Delay, I removed ten young She-goats and two He-goats to this Piece, and when they were there, I continued to perfect the Fence till I had made it as secure as the other, which however, I did at more Leisure, and it took me up more Time by a great deal.

All this Labour I was at the Expense of, purely from my Apprehensions on the Account of the Print of a Man's Foot which I had seen; for as yet I never saw any human Creature come near the Island, and I had now lived two Years under these Uneasinesses, which indeed made my Life much less comfortable than it was before, as may well be imagin'd by any who know what it is to live in the constant Snare of the *Fear of Man*, and this I must observe with Grief too, that the Discomposure of my Mind had too great Impressions also upon the religious Part of my Thoughts, for the Dread and Terror of falling into the Hands of Savages and Cannibals, lay so upon my Spirits, that I seldom found myself in a due Temper for Application to my Maker, at least not with the sedate Calmness and Resignation of Soul which I was wont to do, I rather prayed to God as under great Affliction and Pressure of Mind, surrounded with Danger, and in Expectation every Night of being murder'd and devour'd before Morning, and I must testify from my Experience, that a Temper of Peace, Thankfulness, Love and Affection, is much more the proper Frame, for Prayer than that of Terror and Discomposure; and that under the Dread of Mischief impending, a Man is no more fit for a comforting Performance of the Duty of praying to God, than he is for Repentance on a sick Bed. For these Discomposures affect the Mind as the others do the Body, and the Discomposure of the Mind must necessarily be as great a Disability as that of the Body, and much greater, Praying to God being properly an Act of the Mind, not of the Body.

But to go on, After I had thus secur'd one Part of my little living Stock, I went about the whole Island, searching for another private Place, to make such another Deposit, when wandering more to the West Point of the Island, than I had ever done yet, and looking out to Sea, I thought I saw a Boat upon the Sea, at a great Distance, I had found a Prospective-Glass, or two, in one of the Seamen's Chests, which I saved out of our Ship, but I had it not about me, and this was so remote, that I could not tell what to make of it, though I looked at it till my Eyes were not able to hold to look any

longer, whether it was a Boat, or not, I do not know; but as I descended from the Hill, I could see no more of it, so I gave it over; only I resolv'd to go no more out without a Prospective-Glass in my Pocket.

When I was come down the Hill, to the End of the Island, where indeed I had never been before, I was presently convinc'd, that the Print of a Man's Foot, was not such a strange Thing in the Island as I imagin'd; and but that it was a special Providence that I was cast upon the Side of the Island, where the Savages never came I should easily have known, that nothing was more frequent than for the *Canoes* from the Main, when they happen'd to be a little too far out at Sea, to shoot over to that Side of the Island for Harbour, likewise as they often met, and fought in their *Canoes*, the Victors having taken any Prisoners, would bring them over to this Shore, where according to their dreadful Customs, being all *Cannibals*, they would kill and eat them, of which hereafter

When I was come down the Hill, to the Shore, as I said above, being the *SW* Point of the Island, I was perfectly confounded and amaz'd; nor is it possible for me to express the Horror of my Mind, at seeing the Shore spread with Skulls, Hands, Feet, and other Bones of human Bodies, and particularly I observ'd a Place where there had been a Fire made, and a Circle dug in the Earth, like a Cockpit, where it is suppos'd the Savage Wretches had sat down to their inhuman Feastings upon the Bodies of their Fellow-Creatures

I was so astonish'd with the Sight of these Things, that I entertain'd no Notions of any Danger to myself from it for a long while, All my Apprehensions were buried in the Thoughts of such a Pitch of inhuman, hellish Brutality, and the Horror of the Degeneracy of Human Nature, which though I had heard of often, yet I never had so near a View of before, in short, I turned away my Face from the horrid Spectacle; my Stomach grew sick, and I was just at the Point of Fainting, when Nature discharg'd the Disorder from my Stomach, and having vomited with an uncommon Violence, I was a little reliev'd; but could not bear to stay in the Place a Moment, so I gat me up the Hill again, with all the Speed I could, and walked on towards my own Habitation.

When I came a little out of that Part of the Island, I stood still awhile as amaz'd, and then recovering myself, I looked up with the utmost Affection of my Soul, and with a Flood of Tears in my Eyes,

gave God Thanks that had cast my first Lot in a Part of the World, where I was distinguish'd from such dreadful Creatures as these; and that though I had esteem'd my present Condition very miserable, had yet given me so many Comforts in it, that I had still more to give Thanks for than to complain of, and this above all, that I had even in this miserable Condition been comforted with the Knowledge of himself, and the Hope of his Blessing, which was a Felicity more than sufficiently equivalent to all the Misery which I had suffer'd, or could suffer

In this Frame of Thankfulness, I went Home to my Castle, and began to be much easier now, as to the Safety of my Circumstances, than ever I was before, for I observ'd, that these Wretches never came to this Island in search of what they could get; perhaps not seeking, not wanting, or not expecting anything here, and having often, no doubt, been up in the cover'd woody Part of it, without finding anything to their Purpose. I knew I had been here now almost eighteen Years, and never saw the least Footsteps of Human Creature there before, and I might be here eighteen more, as entirely conceal'd as I was now, if I did not discover myself to them, which I had no manner of Occasion to do, it being my only Business to keep myself entirely conceal'd where I was, unless I found a better sort of Creatures than *Cannibals* to make myself known to

Yet I entertain'd such an Abhorrence of the Savage Wretches, that I have been speaking of, and of the wretched inhuman Custom of their devouring and eating one another up, that I continu'd pensive, and sad, and kept close within my own Circle for almost two Years after this. When I say my own Circle, I mean by it, my three Plantations, *viz* my Castle, my Country Seat, which I called my Bower, and my Enclosure in the Woods, nor did I look after this for any other Use than as an Enclosure for my Goats, for the Aversion which Nature gave me to these hellish Wretches, was such, that I was fearful of seeing them, as of seeing the Devil himself, nor did I so much as go to look after my Boat, in all this time, but began rather to think of making me another; for I could not think of ever making any more Attempts, to bring the other Boat round the Island to me, lest I should meet with some of these Creatures at Sea, in which, if I had happen'd to have fallen into their Hands, I knew what would have been my Lot.

Time however, and the Satisfaction I had, that I was in no Danger

of being discover'd by these People, began to wear off my Uneasiness about them, and I began to live just in the same compos'd Manner as before; only with this Difference, that I used more Caution, and kept my Eyes more about me than I did before, lest I should happen to be seen by any of them; and particularly, I was more cautious of firing my Gun, lest any of them being on the Island, should happen to hear of it; and it was therefore a very good Providence to me, that I had furnish'd myself with a tame Breed of Goats, that I needed not hunt any more about the Woods, or shoot at them, and if I did catch any of them after this, it was by Traps and Snares, as I had done before; so that for two Years after this, I believe I never fired my Gun once off, though I never went out without it, and which was more, as I had saved three Pistols out of the Ship, I always carried them out with me, or at least two of them, sticking them in my Goat-skin Belt; also I furnish'd up one of the great Cutlasses, that I had out of the Ship, and made me a Belt to put it on also, so that I was now a most formidable Fellow to look at, when I went abroad, if you add to the former Description of myself, the Particular of two Pistols, and a great broad Sword, hanging at my Side in a Belt, but without a Scabbard.

Things going on thus, as I have said, for some Time, I seemed, excepting these Cautions, to be reduc'd to my former calm, sedate Way of Living, all these Things tended to showing me more and more how far my Condition was from being miserable, compar'd to some others, nay, to many other Particulars of Life, which it might have pleased God to have made my Lot. It put me upon reflecting, How little repining there would be among Mankind, at any Condition of Life, if People would rather compare their Condition with those that are worse, in order to be thankful, than be always comparing them with those which are better, to assist their Murmurings and Complainings.

As in my present Condition there were not really many Things which I wanted, so indeed I thought that the Frights I had been in about these Savage Wretches, and the Concern I had been in for my own Preservation, had taken off the Edge of my Invention for my own Conveniences, and I had dropped a good Design, which I had once bent my Thoughts too much upon, and that was, to try if I could not make some of my Barley into Malt, and then try to brew myself some Beer. This was really a whimsical Thought, and I re-

prov'd myself often for the Simplicity of it; for I presently saw there would be the Want of several Things necessary to the making my Beer, that it would be impossible for me to supply as First, Casks to preserve it in, which was a Thing, that as I have observ'd already, I could never compass, no, though I spent not many Days, but Weeks, nay, Months in attempting it, but to no purpose. In the next Place, I had no Hops to make it keep, no Yeast to make it work, no Copper or Kettle to make it boil; and yet all these Things, notwithstanding, I verily believe, had not these Things interven'd, I mean the Frights and Terrors I was in about the Savages, I had undertaken it, and perhaps brought it to pass too, for I seldom gave anything over without accomplishing it, when I once had it in my Head enough to begin it.

But my Invention now run quite another Way, for Night and Day I could think of nothing but how I might destroy some of these Monsters in their cruel bloody Entertainment, and if possible, save the Victim they should bring hither to destroy. It would take up a larger Volume than this whole Work is intended to be, to set down all the Contrivances I hatched, or rather brooded upon in my Thought, for the destroying these Creatures, or at least frightening them, so as to prevent their coming hither any more, but all was abortive, nothing could be possible to take effect, unless I was to be there to do it myself; and what could one Man do among them, when perhaps there might be twenty or thirty of them together, with their Darts, or their Bows and Arrows, with which they could shoot as true to a Mark, as I could with my Gun?

Sometimes I contriv'd to dig a Hole under the Place where they made their Fire, and put in five or six Pound of Gunpowder, which when they kindled their Fire, would consequently take Fire, and blow up all that was near it, but as in the first Place I should be very loth to waste so much Powder upon them, my Store being now within the Quantity of one Barrel, so neither could I be sure of its going off at any certain Time, when it might surprise them, and at best, that it would do little more than just blow the Fire about their Ears and fright them, but not sufficient to make them forsake the Place, so I laid it aside, and then propos'd, that I would place myself in Ambush in some convenient Place, with my three Guns, all double loaded and in the middle of their bloody Ceremony, let fly at them, when I should be sure to kill or wound perhaps two or three at every Shoot

and then falling in upon them with my three Pistols, and my Sword, I made no doubt, but that if there was twenty I should kill them all: This Fancy pleased my Thoughts for some Weeks, and I was so full of it, that I often dreamed of it, and sometimes that I was just going to let fly at them in my Sleep

I went so far with it in my Imagination, that I employ'd myself several Days to find out proper Places to put myself in Ambuscade, as I said, to watch for them, and I went frequently to the Place itself, which was now grown more familiar to me, and especially while my Mind was thus filled with Thoughts of Revenge, and of a bloody putting twenty or thirty of them to the Sword, as I may call it; the Horror I had at the Place, and at the Signals of the barbarous Wretches devouring one another, abated my Malice

Well, at length I found a Place in the Side of the Hill, where I was satisfied I might securely wait till I saw any of their Boats coming, and might then, even before they would be ready to come on Shore, convey myself unseen into Thickets of Trees, in one of which there was a Hollow large enough to conceal me entirely, and where I might sit and observe all their bloody Doings, and take my full aim at their Heads, when they were so close together, as that it would be next to impossible that I should miss my Shoot, or that I could fail wounding three or four of them at the first Shoot.

In this Place then I resolv'd to fix my Design, and accordingly I prepared two Muskets and my ordinary Fowling Piece. The two Muskets I loaded with a Brace of Slugs each, and four or five smaller Bullets, about the Size of Pistol Bullets, and the Fowling Piece I loaded with near a Handful of Swan-shot, of the largest Size, I also loaded my Pistols with about four Bullets each, and in this Posture, well provided with Ammunition for a second and third Charge, I prepar'd myself for my Expedition.

After I had thus laid the Scheme of my Design, and in my Imagination put it in Practice, I continually made my Tour every Morning up to the Top of the Hill, which was from my Castle, as I call'd it, about three Miles, or more, to see if I could observe any Boats upon the Sea, coming near the Island, or standing over towards it, but I began to tire of this hard Duty, after I had for two or three Months constantly kept my Watch; but came always back without any Discovery, there having not in all that Time been the least Appear-

ance, not only on or near the Shore, but not on the whole Ocean, far as my Eyes or Glasses could reach every Way.

As long as I kept up my daily Tour to the Hill, to look out, so long also I kept up the Vigour of my Design, and my Spirits seemed to be all the while in a suitable Form, for so outrageous an Execution as the killing twenty or thirty naked Savages, for an Offence which I had not at all entered into a Discussion of in my Thoughts, any farther than my Passions were at first fired by the Horror I conceiv'd at the unnatural Custom of that People of the Country, who it seems had been suffer'd by Providence in his wise Disposition of the World, to have no other Guide than that of their own abominable and vitiated Passions, and consequently were left, and perhaps had been so for some Ages, to act such horrid Things, and receive such dreadful Customs, as nothing but Nature entirely abandon'd of Heaven, and acted by some helish Degeneracy, could have run them into. But now when, as I have said, I began to be weary of the fruitless Excursion, which I had made so long, and so far, every Morning in vain, so my Opinion of the Action itself began to alter, and I began with cooler and calmer Thoughts to consider what it was I was going to engage in. What Authority, or Call I had, to pretend to be Judge and Executioner upon these Men as Criminals, whom Heaven had thought fit for so many Ages to suffer unpunish'd, to go on, and to be as it were, the Executioners of his Judgments one upon another. How far these People were Offenders against me, and what Right I had to engage in the Quarrel of that Blood, which they shed promiscuously one upon another. I debated this very often with myself thus; How do I know what God himself judges in this particular Case; it is certain these People either do not commit this as a Crime, it is not against their own Consciences reproving, or their Light reproaching them. They do not know it to be an Offence, and then commit it in Defiance of Divine Justice, as we do in almost all the Sins we commit. They think it no more a Crime to kill a Captive taken in War, than we do to kill an Ox, nor to eat human Flesh, than we do to eat Mutton.

When I had consider'd this a little, it follow'd necessarily, that I was certainly in the Wrong in it, that these People were not Murderers, in the Sense that I had before condemn'd them, in my Thoughts, any more than those Christians were Murderers, who often put to Death the Prisoners taken in Battle, or more frequently, upon many Occa-

sions, put whole Troops of Men to the Sword, without giving Quarter, though they threw down their Arms and submitted.

In the next Place it occur'd to me, that albeit the Usage they thus gave one another, was thus brutish and inhuman, yet it was really nothing to me. These People had done me no Injury. That if they attempted me, or I saw it necessary for my immediate Preservation to fall upon them, something might be said for it, but that as I was yet out of their Power, and they had really no Knowledge of me, and consequently no Design upon me, and therefore it could not be just for me to fall upon them. That this would justify the Conduct of the *Spaniards* in all their Barbanties practis'd in *America*, and where they destroy'd Millions of these People, who however they were Idolaters and Barbarians, and had several bloody and barbarous Rites in their Customs, such as sacrificing human Bodies to their Idols, were yet, as to the *Spaniards*, very innocent People, and that the rooting them out of the Country, is spoken of with the utmost Abhorrence and Detestation, by even the *Spaniards* themselves, at this Time, and by all other Christian Nations of *Europe*, as a mere Butchery, a bloody and unnatural Piece of Cruelty, unjustifiable either to God or Man, and such, as for which the very Name of a *Spaniard* is reckon'd to be frightful and terrible to all People of Humanity, or of Christian Compassion. As if the Kingdom of *Spain* were particularly Eminent for the Product of a Race of Men, who were without Principles of Tenderness, or the common Bowels of Pity to the Miserable, which is reckon'd to be a Mark of generous Temper in the Mind.

These Considerations really put me to a Pause, and to a kind of a Full-stop, and I began by little and little to be off of my Design, and to conclude, I had taken wrong Measures in my Resolutions to attack the Savages, that it was not my Business to meddle with them, unless they first attack'd me, and this it was my Business if possible to prevent, but that if I were discover'd, and attack'd, then I knew my Duty.

On the other hand, I argu'd with myself, That this really was the way not to deliver myself, but entirely to ruin and destroy myself, for unless I was sure to kill every one that not only should be on Shore at that Time, but that should ever come on Shore afterwards, if but one of them escap'd to tell their Country People what had happen'd, they would come over again by Thousands to revenge the Death of their



Fellows, and I should only bring upon myself a certain Destruction, which at present I had no manner of occasion for.

Upon the whole I concluded, That neither in Principles nor in Policy, I ought one way or other to concern myself in this affair. That my Business was by all possible Means to conceal myself from them, and not to leave the least Signal to them to guess by, that there were any living Creatures upon the Island, I mean of human Shape

Religion joined in with this Prudential, and I was convinc'd now many Ways, that I was perfectly out of my Duty, when I was laying all my Bloody Schemes for the Destruction of innocent Creatures, I mean innocent as to me. As to the Crimes they were guilty of towards one another, I had nothing to do with them, they were National, and I ought to leave them to the Justice of God, who is the Governor of Nations, and knows how by National Punishments to make just Retribution for National Offences, and to bring public Judgments upon those who offend in a public Manner, by such Ways as best pleases him

This appear'd so clear to me now, that nothing was a greater Satisfaction to me, than that I had not been suffer'd to do a Thing which I now saw so much Reason to believe would have been no less a Sin, than that of wilful Murder, if I had committed it, and I gave most humble Thanks on my Knees to God, that had thus deliver'd me from Blood-Guiltiness, beseeching him to grant me the Protection of his Providence, that I might not fall into the Hands of the *Barbarians*, or that I might not lay my Hands upon them, unless I had a more clear Call from Heaven to do it, in Defence of my own Life

In this Disposition I continu'd, for near a Year after this; and so far was I from desiring an Occasion for falling upon these Wretches, that in all that Time, I never once went up the Hill to see whether there were any of them in Sight, or to know whether any of them had been on Shore there, or not, that I might not be tempted to renew any of my Contrivances against them, or be provok'd by any Advantage which might present itself, to fall upon them; only this I did, I went and remov'd my Boat, which I had on the other Side the Island, and carried it down to the *East End* of the whole Island, where I ran it into a little Cove which I found under some high Rocks, and where I knew, by Reason of Currents, the Savages durst not

at least would not come with their Boats, upon any Account whatsoever.

With my Boat I carried away everything that I had left there belonging to her, though not necessary for the bare going thither, *viz* A Mast and Sail which I had made for her, and a thing like an Anchor, but indeed which could not be called either Anchor or Grappling; however, it was the best I could make of its kind. all these I remov'd, that there might not be the least Shadow of any Discovery, or any Appearance of any Boat, or of any human Habitation upon the Island.

Besides this, I kept myself, as I said, more retir'd than ever, and seldom went from my Cell, other than upon my constant Employment, *viz*. To milk my She-Goats, and manage my little Flock, in the Wood, which as it was quite on another Part of the Island, was quite out of Danger; for certain it is, that these Savage People who sometimes haunted this Island, never came with any Thoughts of finding anything here, and consequently never wandered off from the Coast, and I doubt not, but they might have been several Times on the Shore, after my Apprehensions of them had made me cautious as well as before, and indeed, I looked back with some Horror upon the Thoughts of what my Condition would have been, if I had chopped upon them, and been discover'd before that, when naked and unarm'd, except with one Gun, and that loaded often only with small Shot, I walked everywhere peeping, and peeping about the Island, to see what I could get, what a Surprise should I have been in, if when I discover'd the Print of a Man's Foot, I had instead of that, seen fifteen or twenty Savages, and found them pursuing me, and by the Swiftess of their Running, no Possibility of my escaping them.

The Thoughts of this sometimes sunk my very Soul within me, and distress'd my Mind so much, that I could not soon recover it, to think what I should have done, and how I not only should not have been able to resist them, but even should not have had Presence of Mind enough to do what I might have done, much less, what now after so much Consideration and Preparation I might be able to do. Indeed, after serious thinking of these Things, I should be very Melancholy, and sometimes it would last a great while, but I resolv'd it at last all into Thankfulness to that Providence, which had deliver'd me from so many unseen Dangers, and had kept me from

those Mischiefs which I could no way have been the Agent in delivering myself from, because I had not the least Notion of any such Thing depending, or the least Supposition of it being possible

This renew'd a Contemplation, which often had come to my Thoughts in former Time, when first I began to see the merciful Dispositions of Heaven, in the Dangers we run through in this Life How wonderfully we are deliver'd, when we know nothing of it. How when we are in (a *Quandary*, as we call it) a Doubt or Hesitation, whether to go this Way, or that Way, a secret Hint shall direct us this Way, when we intended to go that Way, nay, when Sense, our own Inclination, and perhaps Business has called to go the other Way, yet a strange Impression upon the Mind, from we know not what Springs, and by we know not what Power, shall overrule us to go this Way, and it shall afterwards appear, that had we gone that Way which we should have gone, and even to our Imagination ought to have gone, we should have been ruin'd and lost Upon these, and many like Reflections, I afterwards made it a certain Rule with me, That whenever I found those secret Hints, or pressings of my Mind, to doing, or not doing anything that presented, or to going this Way, or that Way, I never failed to obey the secret Dictate, though I knew no other Reason for it, than that such a Pressure, or such a Hint hung upon my Mind I could give many Examples of the Success of this Conduct in the Course of my Life, but more especially in the latter Part of my inhabiting this unhappy Island, besides many Occasions which it is very likely I might have taken Notice of, if I had seen with the same Eyes then, that I saw with now But it is never too late to be wise, and I cannot but advise all considering Men, whose Lives are attended with such extraordinary Incidents as mine, or even not so extraordinary, not to slight such secret Intimations of Providence, let them come from what invisible Intelligence they will, that I shall not discuss, and perhaps cannot account for, but certainly they are a Proof of the Converse of Spirits, and the secret Communication between those embody'd, and those unembody'd, and such a Proof as can never be withstood Of which I shall have Occasion to give some very remarkable Instances, in the Remainder of my solitary Residence in this dismal Place.

I believe the Reader of this will not think strange, if I confess that these Anxieties, these constant Dangers I lived in, and the Concern

that was now upon me, put an End to all Invention, and to all the Contrivances that I had laid for my future Accommodations and Conveniences. I had the Care of my Safety more now upon my Hands, than that of my Food. I cared not to drive a Nail, or chop a Stick of Wood now, for fear the Noise I should make should be heard, much less would I fire a Gun, for the same Reason, and above all, I was intolerably uneasy at making any Fire, lest the Smoke which is visible at a great Distance in the Day should betray me, and for this Reason I remov'd that Part of my Business which requir'd Fire, such as burning of Pots, and Pipes, &c. into my new Apartment in the Woods, where after I had been some Time, I found to my unspeakable Consolation, a mere natural Cave in the Earth, which went in a vast way, and where, I dare say, no Savage, had he been at the Mouth of it, would be so hardy as to venture in, nor indeed, would any Man else, but one who like me, wanted nothing so much as a safe Retreat

The Mouth of this Hollow was at the Bottom of a great Rock where by mere Accident, (I would say, if I did not see abundant Reason to ascribe all such Things now to Providence) I was cutting down some thick Branches of Trees, to make Charcoal, and before I go on, I must observe the Reason of my making this Charcoal, which was thus

I was afraid of making a Smoke about my Habitation, as I said before, and yet I could not live there without baking my Bread, cooking my Meat, &c. so I contriv'd to burn some Wood here, as I had seen done in *England*, under Turf, until it became Chark, or dry Coal, and then putting the Fire out, I preserv'd the Coal to carry Home, and perform the other Services which Fire was wanting for at Home, without Danger of Smoke.

But this is by the by While I was cutting down some Wood here, I perceiv'd that behind a very thick Branch of low Brushwood, or Underwood, there was a kind of hollow Place, I was curious to look into it, and getting with Difficulty into the Mouth of it, I found it was pretty large, that is to say, sufficient for me to stand upright in it, and perhaps another with me, but I must confess to you, I made more haste out than I did in, when looking farther into the Place, and which was perfectly dark, I saw two broad shining Eyes of some Creature, whether Devil or Man I knew not, which twinkled like two Stars, the dim Light from the Cave's Mouth shining directly in and making the Reflection.

However, after some Pause, I recover'd myself, and began to call myself a thousand Fools, and tell myself, that he that was afraid to see the Devil, was not fit to live twenty Years in an Island all alone, and that I durst to believe there was nothing in this Cave that was more frightful than myself, upon this, plucking up my Courage, I took up a great Firebrand, and in I rushed again, with the Stick flaming in my Hand, I had not gone three Steps in, but I was almost as much frighted as I was before, for I heard a very loud Sigh, like that of a Man in some Pain, and it was follow'd by a broken Noise, *as if of* Words half express'd, and then a deep Sigh again I stepped back, and was indeed struck with such a Surprise, that it put me into a cold Sweat, and if I had had a Hat on my Head, I will not answer for it, that my Hair might not have lifted it off But still plucking up my Spirits as well as I could, and encouraging myself a little with considering that the Power and Presence of God was everywhere, and was able to protect me, upon this I stepped forward again, and by the Light of the Firebrand, holding it up a little over my Head, I saw lying on the Ground a most monstrous frightful old He-goat, just making his Will, as we say, and gasping for Life, and dying indeed of mere old Age.

I stirred him a little to see if I could get him out, and he essay'd to get up, but was not able to raise himself, and I thought with myself, he might even lie there, for if he had frighted me so, he would certainly fright any of the Savages, if any of them should be so hardy as to come in there, while he had any Life in him

I was now recover'd from my Surprise, and began to look round me, when I found the Cave was but very small, that is to say, it might be about twelve Foot over, but in no manner of Shape, either round or square, no Hands having ever been employ'd in making it, but those of mere Nature I observ'd also, that there was a Place at the farther Side of it, that went in farther, but was so low, that it requir'd me to creep upon my Hands and Knees to go into it, and whither I went I knew not, so having no Candle, I gave it over for some Time, but resolv'd to come again the next Day, provided with Candles, and a Tinder-box, which I had made of the Lock of one of the Muskets, with some Wildfire in the Pan.

Accordingly, the next Day I came provided with six large Candles of my own making, for I made very good Candles now of Goat's Tallow, and going into this low Place, I was oblig'd to creep upon

all Fours, as I have said, almost ten Yards, which by the Way, I thought was a Venture bold enough, considering that I knew not how far it might go, nor what was beyond it. When I was got through the Strait, I found the Roof rose higher up, I believe near twenty Foot; but never was such a glorious Sight seen in the Island, I dare say, as it was, to look round the Sides and Roof of this Vault, or Cave; the Walls reflected a hundred thousand Lights to me from my two Candles; what it was in the Rock, whether Diamonds, or any other precious Stones, or Gold, which I rather suppos'd it to be, I knew not.

The Place I was in, was a most delightful Cavity, or Grotto, of its kind, as could be expected, though perfectly dark, the Floor was dry and level, and had a sort of small loose Gravel upon it, so that there was no nauseous or venomous Creature to be seen, neither was there any damp or wet on the Sides or Roof. The only Difficulty in it was the Entrance, which however, as it was a Place of Security, and such a Retreat as I wanted, I thought that was a Convenience, so that I was really rejoic'd at the Discovery, and resolv'd without any Delay, to bring some of those Things which I was most anxious about, to this Place, particularly, I resolv'd to bring hither my Magazine of Powder, and all my spare Arms, *viz.* Two Fowling-Pieces, for I had three in all, and three Muskets, for of them I had eight in all, so I kept at my Castle only five, which stood ready mounted like Pieces of Cannon, on my outmost Fence, and were ready also to take out upon any Expedition.

Upon this Occasion of removing my Ammunition, I took Occasion to open the Barrel of Powder which I took up out of the Sea, and which had been wet; and I found that the Water had penetrated about three or four Inches into the Powder, on every Side, which caking and growing hard, had preserv'd the inside like a Kernel in a Shell, so that I had near ~~sixty~~ Pound of very good Powder in the Centre of the Cask, and this was an agreeable Discovery to me at that Time, so I carried all away thither, never keeping above two or three Pound of Powder with me in my Castle, for fear of a Surprise of any Kind. I also carried thither all the Lead I had left for Bullets.

I fancied myself now like one of the ancient Giants, which are said to live in Caves, and Holes, in the Rocks, where none could come at them, for I persuaded myself while I was here, if five hundred Savages were to hunt me, they could never find  
did, they would not venture to attack me here.

The old Goat who I found expiring, died in the Mouth of the Cave, the next Day after I made this Discovery, and I found it much easier to dig a great Hole there, and throw him in, and cover him with Earth, than to drag him out, so I interr'd him there, to prevent the Offence to my Nose

I was now in my twenty-third Year of Residence in this Island, and was so naturalis'd to the Place, and to the Manner of Living, that could I have but enjoy'd the Certainty that no Savages would come to the Place to disturb me, I could have been content to have capitulated for spending the rest of my Time there, even to the last Moment, until I had laid me down and died, like the old Goat in the Cave. I had also arriv'd to some little Diversions and Amusements, which made the Time pass more pleasantly with me a great deal, than it did before, as First, I had taught my Poll, as I noted before, to speak, and he did it so familiarly, and talked so articulately and plain, that it was very pleasant to me, and he lived with me no less than six-and-twenty Years. How long he might live afterwards, I know not, though I know they have a Notion in the *Brasils*, that they live a hundred Years, perhaps poor Poll may be alive there still, calling after *Poor Robin Crusoe*, to this Day. I wish no *Englishman* the ill Luck to come there and hear him, but if he did, he would certainly believe it was the Devil. My Dog was a very pleasant and loving Companion to me, for no less than sixteen Years of my Time, and then died, of mere old Age, as for my Cats, they multiplied, as I have observ'd, to that Degree, that I was oblig'd to shoot several of them at first, to keep them from devouring me and all I had, but at length, when the two old Ones I brought with me were gone, and after some Time continually driving them from me, and letting them have no Provision with me, they all ran wild into the Woods, except two or three Favourites, which I kept tame, and whose Young when they had any, I always drowned, and these were part of my Family. Besides these, I always kept two or three household Kids about me, who I taught to feed out of my Hand, and I had two more Parrots which talked pretty well, and would all call *Robin Crusoe*, but none like my first, nor indeed did I take the Pains with any of them that I had done with him. I had also several tame Sea-Fowls, whose Names I know not, who I caught upon the Shore, and cut their Wings; and the little Stakes which I had planted before my Castle Wall being now grown up to a good thick Grove, these Fowls all lived

among these low Trees, and bred there, which was very agreeable to me, so that, as I said above, I began to be very well contented with the Life I led, if it might but have been secur'd from the dread of the Savages

But it was otherwise directed; and it may not be amiss for all People who shall meet with my Story, to make this just Observation from it, *viz* How frequently in the Course of our Lives, the Evil which in itself we seek most to shun, and which when we are fallen into it, is the most dreadful to us, is oftentimes the very Means or Door of our Deliverance, by which alone we can be raised again from the Affliction we are fallen into I could give many Examples of this in the Course of my unaccountable Life, but in nothing was it more particularly remarkable, than in the Circumstances of my last Years of solitary Residence in this Island.

It was now the Month of *December*, as I said above, in my twenty-third Year, and this being the Southern Solstice, for Winter I cannot call it, was the particular Time of my Harvest, and requir'd my being pretty much abroad in the Fields, when going out pretty early in the Morning, even before it was thorough Daylight, I was surpris'd with seeing a Light of some Fire upon the Shore, at a Distance from me, of about two Mile towards the End of the Island, where I had observ'd some Savages had been as before, but not on the other Side, but to my great Affliction, it was on my Side of the Island

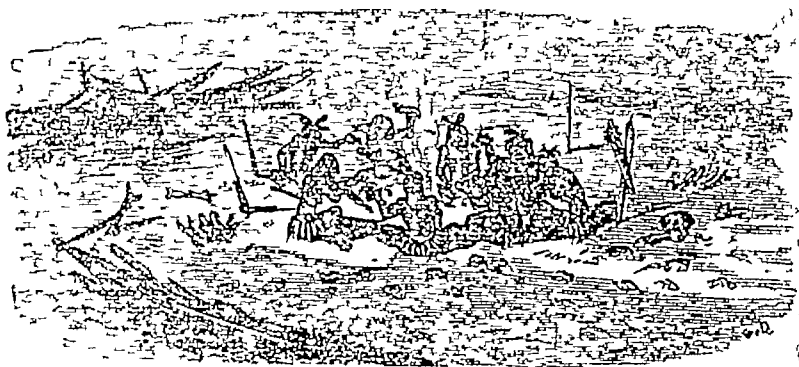
I was indeed terribly surpris'd at the Sight, and stepped short within my Grove, not daring to go out, least I might be surpris'd; and yet I had no more Peace within, from the Apprehensions I had, that if these Savages in rambling over the Island, should find my Corn standing, or cut, or any of my Works and Improvements, they would immediately conclude, that there were People in the Place, and would then never give over till they had found me out In this Extremity I went back directly to my Castle, pulled up the Ladder after me, and made all Things without look as wild and natural as I could.

Then I prepar'd myself within, putting myself in a Posture of Defence, I loaded all my Cannon, as I called them; that is to say, my Muskets, which were mounted upon my new Fortification, and all my Pistols, and resolv'd to defend myself to the last Gasp, not forgetting seriously to commend myself to the Divine Protection, and earnestly to pray to God to deliver me out of the Hands of the Barbarians, and in this Posture I continu'd about two Hours but



began to be mighty impatient for Intelligence abroad, for I had no Spies to send out.

After sitting a while longer, and musing what I should do in this Case, I was not able to bear sitting in Ignorance any longer, so setting up my Ladder to the Side of the Hill, where there was a flat Place, as I observ'd before, and then pulling the Ladder up after me, I set it up again, and mounted to the Top of the Hill, and pulling out my Perspective-Glass, which I had taken on Purpose, I laid me down flat on my Belly, on the Ground, and began to look for the Place, I presently found there was no less than nine naked Savages, sitting round a small Fire, they had made, not to warm them; for they had no need of that, the Weather being extreme hot, but as I suppos'd, to dress some of their barbarous Diet of human Flesh,



which they had brought with them, whether alive or dead I could not know

They had two *Canoes* with them, which they had hauled up upon the Shore, and as it was then Tide of Ebb, they seemed to me to wait for the Return of the Flood, to go away again, it is not easy to imagine what Confusion this Sight put me into, especially seeing them come on my Side the Island, and so near me too, but when observ'd their coming must be always with the Current of the Ebb, began afterwards to be more sedate in my Mind, being satisfy'd that might go abroad with Safety all the Time of the Tide of Flood, if they were not on Shore before And having made this Observation, went abroad about my Harvest-Work with the more Composure.

As I expected, so it proved ; for as soon as the Tide made to the *Westward*, I saw them all take Boat, and row (or paddle, as we call it) all away I should have observ'd that for an Hour and more before they went off, they went to dancing, and I could easily discern their Postures, and Gestures, by my Glasses . I could not perceive by my nicest Observation, but that they were stark naked, and had not the least Covering upon them , but whether they were Men or Women, that I could not distinguish .

As soon as I saw them shipped, and gone, I took two Guns upon my Shoulders, and two Pistols at my Girdle, and my great Sword by my Side, without a Scabbard, and with all the Speed I was able to make, I went away to the Hill, where I had discover'd the first Appearance of all , and as soon as I gat thither, which was not less than two hours, (for I could not go apace, being so loaded with Arms as I was) I perceiv'd there had been three *Canoes* more of Savages on that Place , and looking out farther, I saw they were all at Sea together, and making over for the Main.

This was a dreadful Sight to me, especially when going down to the Shore, I could see the Marks of Horror, which the dismal Work they had been about had left behind it, *viz* The Blood, the Bones, and Part of the Flesh of human Bodies, eaten and devour'd by those Wretches, with Merriment and Sport I was so filled with Indignation at the Sight, that I began now to premeditate the Destruction of the next that I saw there, let them be who or how many soever

It seemed evident to me, that the Visits which they thus make to this Island, are not very frequent ; for it was above fifteen Months before any more of them came on Shore there again , that is to say, I neither saw them, or any Footsteps, or Signals of them, in all that Time , for as to the rainy Seasons, then they are sure not to come abroad, at least not so far, yet all this while I lived uncomfortably, by Reason of the constant Apprehensions I was in of their coming upon me by Surprise , from whence I observe, that the Expectation of Evil is more bitter than the Suffering, especially if there is no room to shake off that Expectation, or those Apprehensions

During all this Time, I was in the murdering Humour ; and took up most of my Hours, which should have been better employ'd, in contriving how to circumvent, and fall upon them, the very next Time I should see them ; especially if they should be divided, as they were the last Time, into two Parties . nor did I consider at all, that if I

killed one Party, suppose Ten, or a Dozen, I was still the next Day, or Week, or Month, to kill another, and so another, even *ad infinitum*, till I should be at length no less a Murderer than they were in being Man-eaters, and perhaps much more so

I spent my Days now in great Perplexity, and Anxiety of Mind, expecting that I should one Day or other fall into the Hands of these merciless Creatures, and if I did at any Time venture abroad, it was not without looking round me with the greatest Care and Caution imaginable, and now I found to my great Comfort, how happy it was that I provided for a tame Flock or Herd of Goats, for I durst not upon any Account fire my Gun, especially near that Side of the Island where they usually came, lest I should alarm the Savages and if they had fled from me now, I was sure to have them come back again, with perhaps two or three hundred *Canoes* with them, in a few Days, and then I knew what to expect.

However, I wore out a Year and three Months more, before I ever saw any more of the Savages, and then I found them again, as I shall soon observe. It is true, they might have been there once, or twice, but either they made no Stay, or at least I did not hear them; but in the Month of *May*, as near as I could calculate, and in my four and twentieth Year, I had a very strange Encounter with them, of which in its Place

The Perturbation of my Mind, during this fifteen or sixteen Months Interval, was very great. I slept unquiet, dreamed always frightful Dreams, and often started out of my Sleep in the Night. In the Day great Troubles overwhelm'd my Mind, and in the Night I dreamed often of killing the Savages, and of the Reasons why I might justify the doing of it, but to waive all this for a while, it was in the middle of *May*, on the sixteenth Day I think, as well as my poor wooden Calendar would reckon, for I marked all upon the Post still, I say, it was the sixteenth of *May*, that it blew a very great Storm of Wind, all Day, with a great deal of Lightning, and Thunder, and a very foul Night it was after it, I know not what was the particular Occasion of it, but as I was reading in the Bible, and taken up with very serious Thoughts about my present Condition, I was surpris'd with a Noise of a Gun, as I thought fired at Sea.

This was to be sure a Surprise of a quite different Nature from any I had met with before, for the Notions this put into my Thoughts, were quite of another kind. I started up in the greatest haste in

aginable, and in a trice clapped my Ladder to the middle Place of the Rock, and pulled it after me, and mounting it the second Time, got to the Top of the Hill, the very Moment, that a Flash of Fire bid me listen for a second Gun, which accordingly, in about half a Minute, I heard, and by the sound, knew that it was from that Part of the Sea where I was driven down the Current in my Boat.

I immediately consider'd that this must be some Ship in Distress and that they had some Comrade, or some other Ship in Company, and fired these Guns for Signals of Distress, and to obtain Help I had this Presence of Mind at that Minute, as to think that though I could not help them, it may be they might help me; so I brought together all the dry Wood I could get at hand, and making a good handsome Pile, I set it on Fire upon the Hill, the Wood was dry, and blazed freely; and though the Wind blew very hard, yet it burnt fairly out, that I was certain, if there was any such Thing as a Ship, they must needs see it, and no doubt they did; for as soon as ever my Fire blazed up, I heard another Gun, and after that several others, all from the same Quarter I plied my Fire all Night long, until Day broke, and when it was broad Day, and the Air cleared up, I saw something at a great Distance at Sea, full *East* of the Island, whether a Sail, or a Hull, I could not distinguish, no not with my Glasses, the Distance was so great, and the Weather still something hazy also, at least it was so out at Sea.

I looked frequently at it all that Day, and soon perceiv'd that it did not move, so I presently concluded, that it was a Ship at an Anchor, and being eager, you may be sure, to be satisfied, I took my Gun in my Hand, and run toward the *South* Side of the Island, to the Rocks where I had formerly been carried away with the Current, and getting up there, the Weather by this Time being perfectly clear, I could plainly see to my great Sorrow, the Wreck of a Ship cast away in the Night, upon those concealed Rocks which I found, when I was out in my Boat, and which Rocks, as they checked the Violence of the Stream, and made a kind of Counter-stream, or Eddy, were the Occasion of my recovering from the most desperate hopeless Condition that ever I had been in in all my Life.

Thus what is one Man's Safety, is another Man's Destruction, for it seems these Men, whoever they were, being out of their Knowledge, and the Rocks being wholly under Water, had been driven upon them in the Night, the Wind blowing hard at *E* and *ENE* Had they

seen the Island, as I must necessarily suppose they, did not, they must, as I thought, have endeavour'd to have saved themselves on Shore by the Help of their Boat, but their firing of Guns for Help, especially when they saw, as I imagin'd, my Fire, filled me with many Thoughts, First, I imagin'd that upon seeing my Light, they might have put themselves into their Boat; and have endeavour'd to make the Shore, but that the Sea going very high, they might have been cast away, other Times I imagin'd, that they might have lost their Boat before, as might be the Case many Ways, as particularly by the Breaking of the Sea upon their Ship, which many Times obliges Men to stave, or take in Pieces their Boat, and sometimes to throw it overboard with their own Hands Other Times I imagin'd, they had some other Ship, or Ships in Company, who upon the Signals of Distress they had made, had taken them up, and carried them off Other whiles I fancied, they were all gone off to Sea in their Boat, and being hurried away by the Current that I had been formerly in, were carried out into the great Ocean, where there was nothing but Misery and Perishing, and that perhaps they might by this Time think of Starving, and of being in a Condition to eat one another

As all these were but Conjectures at best, so in the Condition I was in, I could do no more than look on upon the Misery of the poor Men, and pity them, which had still this good Effect on my Side, that it gave me more and more Cause to give Thanks to God who had so happily and comfortably provided for me in my desolate Condition; and that of two Ships' Companies who were now cast away upon this part of the World, not one Life should be spared but mine I learned here again to observe, that it is very rare that the Providence of God casts us into any Condition of Life so low, or any Misery so great, but we may see something or other to be thankful for, and may see others in worse Circumstances than our own

Such certainly was the Case of these Men, of whom I could not so much as see room to suppose any of them were saved, nothing could make it rational, so much as to wish, or expect that they did not all perish there, except the Possibility only of their being taken up by another Ship in Company, and this was but mere Possibility indeed, for I saw not the least Signal or Appearance of any such Thing

I cannot explain by any possible Energy of Words, what a strange longing or hankering of Desires I felt in my Soul upon this Sight, breaking out sometimes thus, O that there had been but one or two,

nay, or but one Soul saved out of this Ship, to have escap'd to me, that I might but have had one Companion, one Fellow Creature to have spoken to me, and to have convers'd with ! In all the Time of my solitary Life, I never felt so earnest, so strong a Desire after the Society of my Fellow Creatures, or so deep a Regret at the want of it.

There are some secret moving Springs in the Affections, which when they are set a going by some Object in view, or be it some Object, though not in view, yet rendered present to the Mind by the Power of Imagination, that Motion carries out the Soul by its Impetuosity to such violent eager Embracings of the Object, that the Absence of it is insupportable

Such were these earnest Wishings, That but one Man had been saved ! *O that it had been but One !* I believe I repeated the Words *O that it had been but One !* A thousand Times , and the Desires were so moved by it, that when I spoke the Words, my Hands would clinch together, and my Fingers press the Palms of my Hands, that if I had had any soft Thing in my Hand, it would have crushed it involuntarily , and my Teeth in my Head would strike together, and set against one another so strong, that for some Time I could not part them again

Let the Naturalists explain these Things, and the Reason and Manner of them ; all I can say to them is, to describe the Fact, which was even surprising to me when I found it , though I knew not from what it should proceed ; it was doubtless the effect of ardent Wishes, and of strong Ideas formed in my Mind, realizing the Comfort, which the Conversation of one of my Fellow-Christians would have been to me.

But it was not to be , either their Fate, or mine, or both, forbid it, or till the last Year of my being on this Island, I never knew whether any were saved out of that Ship or no , and had only the Affliction some Days after, to see the Corpse of a drowned Boy come on Shore, at the End of the Island which was next the Shipwreck He had on 10 Clothes, but a Seaman's Waistcoat, a Pair of open knee'd Linen Drawers, and a blue Linen Shirt , but nothing to direct me so much as to guess what Nation he was of He had nothing in his Pocket, but two Pieces of Eight, and a Tobacco Pipe , the last was to me of ten times more value than the first.

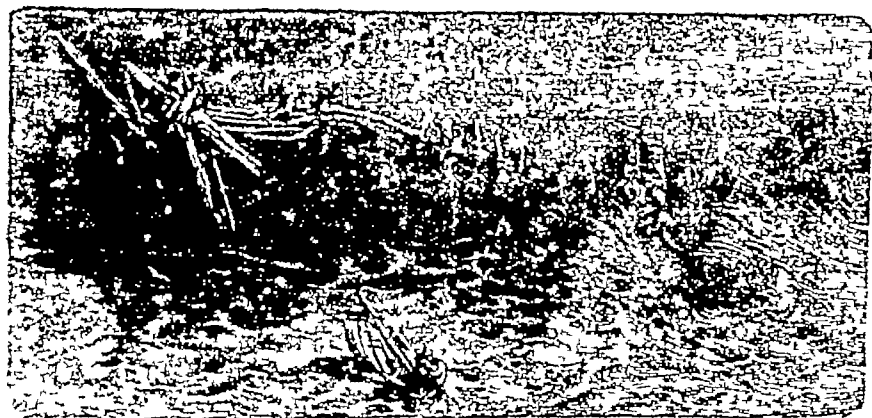
It was now calm, and I had a great mind to venture out in my

Boat, to this Wreck, not doubting but I might find something on board, that might be useful to me; but that did not altogether press me so much, as the Possibility that there might be yet some living Creature on board, whose Life I might not only save, but might by saving that Life, comfort my own to the last Degree, and this Thought clung so to my Heart, that I could not be quiet, Night or Day, but I must venture out in my Boat on board this Wreck, and committing the rest to God's Providence, I thought the Impression was so strong upon my Mind, that it could not be resisted, that it must come from some invisible Direction, and that I should be wanting to myself if I did not go.

Under the Power of this Impression, I hasten'd back to my Castle, prepar'd everything for my Voyage, took a Quantity of Bread, a great Pot for fresh Water, a Compass to steer by, a Bottle of Rum; for I had still a great deal of that left, a Basket full of Raisins. And thus loading myself with everything necessary, I went down to my Boat, got the Water out of her, and got her afloat, loaded all my Cargo in her, and then went Home again for more; my second Cargo was a great Bag full of Rice, the Umbrella to set up over my Head for Shade, another large Pot full of fresh Water, and about two Dozen of my small Loaves, or Barley Cakes, more than before, with a Bottle of Goat's Milk, and a Cheese, all which, with great Labour and Sweat, I brought to my Boat, and praying to God to direct my Voyage, I put out, and Rowing or Paddling the Canoe along the Shore, I came at last to the utmost Point of the Island on that Side (*viz*) NE. And now I was to launch out into the Ocean, and either to venture, or not to venture. I looked on the rapid Currents which ran constantly on both Sides of the Island, at a Distance, and which were very terrible to me, from the Remembrance of the Hazard I had been in before, and my Heart began to fail me, for I foresaw that if I was driven in to either of those Currents, I should be carried a vast Way out to Sea, and perhaps out of my Reach, or Sight of the Island again, and that then, as my Boat was but small, if any little Gale of Wind should rise, I should be inevitably lost.

These Thoughts so oppress'd my Mind, that I began to give over my Enterprise, and having hauled my Boat into a little Creek on the Shore, I stepped out, and sat me down upon a little rising bit of Ground, very pensive and anxious, between Fear and Desire about my Voyage, when as I was musing, I could perceive that the Tide

was turned and the Flood come on, upon which my going was for so many Hours impracticable, upon this presently it occur'd to me, that I should go up to the highest Piece of Ground I could find, and observe, if I could, how the Sets of the Tide, or Currents lay, when the Flood came in, that I might judge whether if I was driven one way out, I might not expect to be driven another way home, with the same Rapidness of the Currents. This Thought was no sooner in my Head, but I cast my Eye upon a little Hill, which sufficiently overlook'd the Sea both ways, and from whence I had a clear view, of the Currents, or Sets of the Tide, and which way I was to guide myself in my Return, here I found, that as the Current of the Ebb set out close by the South Point of the Island, so the Current of the



Flood set in close by the Shore of the North Side, and that I had nothing to do but to keep to the North of the Island in my Return, and I should do well enough

Encourag'd with this Observation, I resolv'd the next Morning to set out with the first of the Tide, and reposing myself for the Night in the Canoe, under the great Watch-coat, I mention'd, I launched out. I made first a little out to Sea full North, till I began to feel the Benefit of the Current, which set Eastward, and which carried me at a great rate, and yet did not so hurry me as the Southern Side Current had done before, and so as to take from me all Government of the Boat but having a strong Steerage with my Paddle, I went at a great rate, directly for the Wreck, and in less than two Hours I came up to it.



It was a dismal Sight to look at. The Ship, which by its building was *Spanish*, stuck fast, jammed in between two Rocks, all the Stern and Quarter of her was beaten to pieces, with the Sea, and as her Forecastle, which stuck in the Rocks, had run on with great Violence, her Mainmast and Foremast were brought by the Board, that is to say, broken short off, but her Bowsprit was sound, and the Head and Bow appear'd firm, when I came close to her, a Dog appear'd upon her, who seeing me coming, yelped and cried, and as soon as I called him, jumped into the Sea, to come to me, and I took him into the Boat, but found him almost dead for Hunger and Thirst I gave him a Cake of my Bread, and he eat it like a ravenous Wolf, that had been starving a Fortnight in the Snow I then gave the poor Creature some fresh Water, with which, if I would have let him, he would have burst himself.

After this I went on board, but the first Sight I met with, was two Men drowned, in the Cook-room, or Forecastle of the Ship, with their Arms fast about one another I concluded, as is indeed probable, that when the Ship struck, it being in a Storm, the Sea broke so high, and so continually over her, that the Men were not able to bear it, and were strangled with the constant rushing in of the Water, as much as it they had been under Water Besides the Dog, there was nothing left in the Ship that had Life, nor any Goods that I could see, but what were spoiled by the Water There were some Casks of Liquor, whether Wine or Brandy, I knew not, which lay lower in the Hold, and which, the Water being ebb'd out, I could see, but they were too big to meddle with I saw several Chests, which I believ'd belong'd to some of the Seamen, and I got two of them into the Boat, without examining what was in them

Had the Stern of the Ship been fixed, and the Forepart broken off, I am persuaded I might have made a good Voyage; for by what I found in these two Chests, I had room to suppose, the Ship had a great deal of Wealth on board, and if I may guess by the Course she steered, she must have been bound from the *Buenos Ayres*, or the *Rio de la Plata*, in the South Part of *America*, beyond the *Brasils*, to the *Havana*, in the Gulf of *Mexico*, and so perhaps to *Spain* She had, no doubt, a great Treasure in her, but of no use at that time to anybody, and what became of the rest of her People, I then knew not.

I found besides these Chests, a little Cask full of Liquor, of about

twenty Gallons, which I got into my Boat, with much Difficulty, there were several Muskets in a Cabin, and a great Powder-horn, with about 4 Pounds of Powder in it, as for the Muskets, I had no occasion for them, so I left them, but took the Powder-horn I took a Fire Shovel and Tongs, which I wanted extremely, as also two little Brass Kettles, a Copper Pot to make Chocolate, and a Gridiron, and with this Cargo, and the Dog, I came away, the Tide beginning to make home again, and the same Evening, about an Hour within Night, I reached the Island again, weary and fatigu'd to the last Degree.

I repos'd that Night in the Boat, and in the Morning I resolved to harbour what I had gotten in my new Cave, not to carry it home to my Castle After refreshing myself, I got all my Cargo on Shore, and began to examine the Particulars The Cask of Liquor I found to be a kind of Rum, but not such as we had at the *Brasils*, and in a Word, not at all good; but when I came to open the Chests, I found several Things, of great use to me For Example, I found in one, a fine Case of Bottles, of an extraordinary kind, and filled with Cordial Waters, fine, and very good, the Bottles held about three pints each, and were tipped with Silver I found two Pots of very good Succades, or Sweetmeats, so fastened also on top, that the Salt Water had not hurt them; and two more of the same, which the Water had spoiled. I found some very good Shirts, which were very welcome to me, and about a dozen and half of Linen white Handkerchiefs, and colour'd Neckcloths, the former were also very welcome, being exceeding refreshing to wipe my Face in a hot Day, besides this, when I came to the Till in the Chest, I found there three great Bags of Pieces of Eight, which held about eleven hundred Pieces in all, and in one of them, wrapt up in a Paper, six Doubloons of Gold, and some small Bars or Wedges of Gold; I suppose they might all weigh near a Pound

The other Chest I found had some Clothes in it, but of little Value, but by the Circumstances it must have belong'd to the Gunner's Mate, though there was no Powder in it, but about two Pound of fine glazed Powder, in three small Flasks, kept, I suppose, for charging their Fowling Pieres on occasion. Upon the whole, I got very little by this Voyage, that was of any use to me, for as to the Money, I had no manner of occasion for it It was to me as the Dirt under my Feet, and I would have given it all for three or four pair of *English* Shoes and Stockings, which were Things I greatly wanted, but had

not had on my Feet now for many Years I had indeed gotten two pair of Shoes now, which I took off of the Feet of the two drowned Men, who I saw in the Wreck, and I found two pair more in one of the Chests, which were very welcome to me, but they were, not like our *English* Shoes, either for Ease, or Service, being rather what we call Pumps, than Shoes I found in this Seaman's Chest, about fifty Pieces of Eight in Royals, but no Gold, I suppose this belong'd to a poorer Man than the other, which seemed to belong to some Officer

Well, however, I lugged this Money home to my Cave, and laid it up, as I had done that before, which I brought from our own Ship, but it was great Pity as I said, that the other Part of this Ship had not come to my Share, for I am satisfy'd I might have loaded my *Canoe* several Times over with Money, which if I had ever escap'd to *England*, would have lain here safe enough, till I might have come again and fetched it.

Having now brought all my Things on Shore, and secur'd them, I went back to my Boat, and rowed, or paddled her along the Shore, to her old Harbour, where I laid her up, and made the best of my way to my old Habitation, where I found everything safe and quiet, so I began to repose myself, live after my old fashion, and take care of my Family Affairs, and for a while, I lived easy enough, only that I was more vigilant than I used to be, looked out oftener, and did not go abroad so much, and if at any time I did stir with any Freedom, it was always to the *East* Part of the Island, where I was pretty well satisfy'd the Savages never came, and where I could go without so many Precautions, and such a Load of Arms and Ammunition, as I always carried with me, if I went the other way

I lived in this Condition near two Years more, but my unlucky Head, that was always to let me know it was born to make my Body miserable, was all this two Years filled with Projects and Designs, how, if it were possible, I might get away from this Island, for sometimes I was for making another Voyage to the Wreck, though my Reason told me that there was nothing left there, worth the Hazard of my Voyage Sometimes for a Ramble one way, sometimes another, and I believe verily, if I had had the Boat that I went from *Sallee* in, I should have ventur'd to Sea, bound anywhere, I knew not whither.

I had been in all my Circumstances a *Memento* to those who are touched with the general Plague of Mankind, whence, for ought I

know, one half of their Miseries flow, I mean, that of not being satisfy'd with the Station wherein God and Nature has placed them, for not to look back upon my primitive Condition, and the excellent Advice of my Father, the Opposition to which, was, *as I may call it*, my ORIGINAL SIN, my subsequent Mistakes of the same kind had been the Means of my coming into this miserable Condition, for had that Providence, which so happily had seated me at the *Brasils*, as a Planter, blessed me with confin'd Desires, and I could have been contented to have gone on gradually, I might have been by this Time, *I mean, in the Time of my being in this Island*, one of the most considerable Planters in the *Brasils*, nay, I am persuaded, that by the Improvements I had made, in that little Time I lived there, and the Increase I should probably have made, if I had stayed, I might have been worth an hundred thousand *Moidores*, and what Business had I to leave a settled Fortune, a well-stocked Plantation, improving and increasing, to turn *Super-Cargo* to *Guinea*, to fetch Negroes, when Patience and Time would have so increas'd our Stock at Home, that we could have bought them at our own Door, from those whose Business it was to fetch them, and though it had cost us something more, yet the Difference of that Price was by no Means worth saving, at so great a Hazard

But as this is ordinarily the Fate of young Heads, so Reflection upon the Folly of it, is as ordinarily the Exercise of more Years, or of the dear-bought Experience of Time, and so it was with me now, and yet so deep had the Mistake taken root in my Temper, that I could not satisfy myself in my Station, but was continually poring upon the Means, and Possibility of my Escape from this Place, and that I may with the greater Pleasure to the Reader, bring on the remaining Part of my Story, it may not be improper, to give some Account of my first Conceptions on the Subject of this foolish Scheme, for my Escape, and how, and upon what Foundation I acted

I am now to be suppos'd retir'd into my Castle, after my late Voyage to the Wreck, my Frigate laid up, and secur'd under Water, as usual, and my Condition restor'd to what it was before I had more Wealth indeed than I had before, but was not at all the richer, for I had no more use for it, than the *Indians* of *Peru* had, before the *Spaniards* came there

It was one of the Nights in the rainy Season in *March*, the four-and-twentieth Year, of my first setting Foot in this Island of Solitariness,

I was lying in my Bed, or Hammock, awake, very well in Health, had no Pain, no Distemper, no Uneasiness of Body, no, nor any Uncasiness of Mind, more than ordinary, but could by no means close my Eyes, that is, so as to sleep, no, not a Wink all Night long, otherwise that as follows

It is as impossible, as needless, to set down the innumerable Crowd of Thoughts that whirled through that great throughfare of the Brain; the Memory, in this Night's Time I ran over the whole History of my Life in Mimature, or by Abridgment, *as I may call it*, to my coming to this Island, and also of the Part of my Life, since I came to this Island In my Reflections upon the State of my Case, since I came on Shore on this Island, I was comparing the happy Posture of my Affairs, in the first Years of my Habitation here, compar'd to the Life of Anxiety, Fear and Care, which I had lived ever since I had seen the Print of a Foot in the Sand, not that I did not believe the Savages had frequented the Island even all the while, and might have been several Hundreds of them at Times on Shore there, but I had never known it, and was incapable of any Apprehensions about it, my Satisfaction was perfect, though my Danger was the same, and I was as happy in not knowing my Danger, as if I had never

been expos'd to it This furnish'd my Thoughts with many very profitable Reflections, and particularly this one, How infinitely Good that Providence is, which has provided in its Government of Mankind, such narrow bounds to his Sight and Knowledge of Things, and though he walks in the midst of so many thousand Dangers, the Sight of which, if discover'd to him, would distract his Mind, and sink his Spirits, he is kept serene, and calm, by having the Events of Things hid from his Eyes, and knowing nothing of the Dangers which surround him

After these Thoughts had for some Time entertain'd me, I came to reflect seriously upon the real Danger I had been in, for so many Years, in this very Island, and how I had walked about in the greatest Security, and with all possible Tranquillity, even when perhaps nothing but a Brow of a Hill, a great Tree, or the Casual Approach of Night, had been between me and the worst kind of Destruction, *viz* That of falling into the Hands of Cannibals, and Savages, who would have seized on me with the same View, as I did of a Goat, or a Turtle, and have thought it no more a Crime to kill and devour me, than I did of a Pigeon, or Curlew I would unjustly

glander myself, if I should say I was not sincerely thankful to my great Preserver, to whose singular Protection I acknowledg'd, with great Humility, that all these unknown Deliverances were due, and without which, I must inevitably have fallen into their merciless Hands

When these Thoughts were over, my Head was for some time taken up in considering the Nature of these wretched Creatures, I mean, the Savages, and how it came to pass in the World, that the wise Governor of all Things should give up any of his Creatures to such Inhumanity; nay, to something so much below, even Brutality itself as to devour its own kind, but as this ended in some (at that Time fruitless) Speculations, it occur'd to me to inquire, what Part of the World these Wretches lived in, how far off the Coast was from whence they came; what they ventur'd over so far from home for, what kind of Boats they had, and why I might not order myself, and my Business so, that I might be as able to go over thither, as they were to come to me

I never so much as troubled myself, to consider what I should do with myself, when I came thither, what would become of me, if I fell into the Hands of the Savages, or how I should escape from them, if they attempted me, no, nor so much as how it was possible for me to reach the Coast, and not be attempted by some or other of them, without any Possibility of delivering myself, and if I should not fall into their Hands, what I should do for Provision, or whither I should bend my Course, none of these Thoughts, I say, so much as came in my way, but my Mind was wholly bent upon the Notion of my passing over in my Boat, to the Main Land. I looked back upon my present Condition, as the most miserable that could possibly be, that I was not able to throw myself into anything but Death, that could be called worse, that if I reached the Shore of the Main, I might perhaps meet with Relief, or I might coast along, as I did on the Shore of *Africa*, till I came to some inhabited Country, and where I might find some Relief, and after all perhaps, I might fall in with some Christian Ship, that might take me in, and if the worse came to the worst, I could but die, which would put an end to all these Miseries at once. Pray note, all this was the fruit of a disturb'd Mind, an impatient Temper, made as it were desperate by the long Continuance of my Troubles, and the Disappointments I had met in the Wreck, I had been on board of, and where I had been so near the obtaining what I so earnestly longed for, *viz* Somebody to speak to, and to learn some

Knowledge from of the Place where I was, and of the probable Means of my Deliverance, I say, I was agitated wholly by these Thoughts. All my Calm of Mind in my Resignation to Providence, and waiting the Issue of the Dispositions of Heaven, seemed to be suspended, and I had, as it were, no Power to turn my Thoughts to anything, but to the Project of a Voyage to the Main, which came upon me with such Force, and such an Impetuosity of Desire, that it was not to be resisted

When this had agitated my Thoughts for two Hours, or more, with such Violence, that it set my very Blood into a Ferment, and my Pulse beat as high as if I had been in a Fever, merely with the extraordinary Fervour of my Mind about it, Nature, as if I had been fatigued and exhausted with the very Thought of it, threw me into a sound Sleep, one would have thought, I should have dreamed of it. But I did not, nor of anything relating to it, but I dreamed, that as I was going out in the Morning as usual from my Castle, I saw upon the Shore, two *Canoes*, and eleven Savages coming to Land, and that they brought with them another Savage, who they were going to kill, in Order to eat him, when on a sudden, the Savage, that they were going to kill, jumped away, and ran for his Life, and I thought in my Sleep, that he came running into my little thick Grove, before my Fortification, to hide himself, and that I seeing him alone, and not perceiving that the other sought him that Way, showed myself to him, and smiling upon him, encourag'd him, that he kneeled down to me, seeming to pray me to assist him, upon which I showed my Ladder, made him go up, and carried him into my Cave, and he became my Servant, and that as soon as I had gotten this Man, I said to myself, now I may certainly venture to the main Land, for this Fellow will serve me as a Pilot, and will tell me what to do, and whither to go for Provisions, and whither not to go for fear of being devoured, what Places to venture into, and what to escape. I waked with this Thought, and was under such inexpressible Impressions of Joy, at the Prospect of my Escape in my Dream, that the Disappointments which I felt upon coming to myself, and finding it was no more than a Dream, were equally extravagant the other Way, and threw me into a very great Dejection of Spirit.

Upon this however, I made this Conclusion, that my only Way to go about an Attempt for an Escape, was, if possible, to get a Savage into my Possession, and if possible, it should be one of their

Prisoners, who they had condemn'd to be eaten, and should bring thither to kill, but these Thoughts still were attended with this Difficulty, that it was impossible to effect this, without attacking a whole Caravan of them, and killing them all, and this was not only a very desperate Attempt, and might miscarry, but on the other Hand, I had greatly scrupled the Lawfulness of it to me, and my Heart trembled at the thoughts of shedding so much Blood, though it was for my Deliverance I need not repeat the Arguments which occur'd to me against this, they being the same mention'd before, but though I had other Reasons to offer now, (*viz*) that those Men were Enemies to my Life, and would devour me, if they could, that it was Self preservation in the highest Degree, to deliver myself from this Death of a Life, and was acting in my own Defence, as much as if they were actually assaulting me, and the like I say, though these Things argued for it, yet the Thoughts of shedding Human Blood for my Deliverance, were very Terrible to me, and such as I could by no Means reconcile myself to, a great while

However at last, after many secret Disputes with myself, and after great Perplexities about it, for all these Arguments one Way and another struggl'd in my Head a long Time, the eager prevailing Desire of Deliverance at length master'd all the rest, and I resolv'd, if possible, to get one of those Savages into my Hands, cost what it would My next Thing then was to contrive how to do it, and this indeed was very difficult to resolve on But as I could pitch upon no probable Means for it, so I resolv'd to put myself upon the Watch to see them when they came on Shore, and leave the rest to the Event, taking such Measures as the Opportunity should present, let be what would be.

With these Resolutions in my Thoughts, I set myself upon the Scout, as often as possible, and indeed so often till I was heartily tired of it, for it was above a Year and Half that I waited, and for great part of that Time went out to the *West* End, and to the *South West* Corner of the Island, almost every Day, to see for Canoes, but none appear'd This was very discouraging, and began to trouble me much, though I cannot say that it did in this Case, as it had done some time before that, (*viz*) wear off the Edge of my Desire to the Thing But the longer it seemed to be delay'd, the more eager I was for it, in a Word, I was not at first so careful to shun the



sight of these Savages, and avoid being seen by them, as I was now eager to be upon them.

Besides, I fancied myself able to manage One, nay, Two or Three Savages, if I had them so as to make them entirely Slaves to me, to do whatever I should direct them, and to prevent their being able at any time to do me any Hurt. It was a great while, that I pleased myself with this Affair, but nothing still presented, all my Fancies and Schemes came to nothing, for no Savages came near me for a great while

About a Year and half after I had entertain'd these Notions, and by long musing, had as it were resolved them all into nothing, for want of an Occasion to put them in Execution, I was surpris'd one Morning early, with seeing no less than five *Canoes* all on Shore together on my side the Island, and the People who belong'd to them all landed, and out of my sight. The Number of them broke all my Measures, for seeing so many, and knowing that they always came four or six, or sometimes more in a Boat, I could not tell what to think of it, or how to take my Measures, to attack Twenty or Thirty Men single-handed, so I lay still in my Castle, perplex'd and discomforted. However I put myself into all the same Postures for an Attack that I had formerly provided, and was just ready for Action, if anything had presented. Having waited a good while, listening to hear if they made any Noise, at length, being very impatient, I set my Guns at the Foot of my Ladder, and clamber'd up to the Top of the Hill, by my two Stages as usual, standing so however that my Head did not appear above the Hill, so that they could not perceive me by any Means, here I observ'd, by the help of my Perspective Glass, that they were no less than Thirty in Number, that they had a Fire kindled, that they had had Meat dressed. How they had cooked it, that I knew not, or what it was, but they were all Dancing in I know not how many barbarous Gestures and Figures, their own Way, round the Fire.

While I was thus looking on them, I perceived by my Perspective, two miserable Wretches dragged from their Boats, where it seems they were laid by, and were now brought out for the Slaughter. I perceived one of them immediately fell, being knocked down, I suppose with a Club or Wooden Sword, for that was their way, and two or three others were at work immediately cutting him open for their Cookery, while the other Victim was left standing by himself, till they

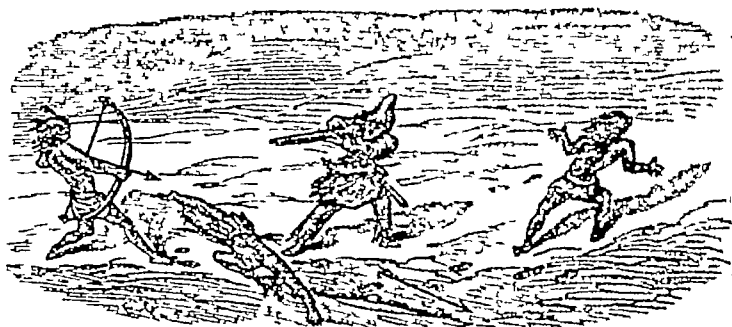
should be ready for him. In that very Moment this poor Wretch seeing himself a little at Liberty, Nature inspir'd him with Hopes of Life, and he started away from them, and ran with incredible Swift-ness along the Sands directly towards me, I mean towards that part of the Coast, where my Habitation was.

I was dreadfully frighted, (that I must acknowledge) when I perceived him to run my Way, and especially, when as I thought I saw him pursued by the whole Body, and now I expected that part of my Dream was coming to pass, and that he would certainly take shelter in my Grove; but I could not depend by any means upon my Dream for the rest of it, (72) that the other Savages would not pursue him thither, and find him there. However I kept my Station, and my Spirits began to recover, when I found that there was not above three Men that follow'd him, and still more was I encourag'd, when I found that he outstripp'd them exceedingly in running, and gained Ground of them, so that if he could but hold it for half an Hour, I saw easily he would fairly get away from them all.

There was between them and my Castle, the Creek which I mention'd often at the first part of my Story, when I landed my Cargoes out of the Ship, and thus I saw plainly, he must necessarily swim over, or the poor Wretch would be taken there. But when the Savage escaping came thither, he made nothing of it, though the Tide was then up, but plunging in, swam through in about Thirty Strokes or thereabouts, landed and ran on with exceeding Strength and Swift-ness; when the Three Persons came to the Creek, I found that Two of them could Swim, but the Third could not, and that standing on the other Side, he looked at the other, but went no further, and soon after went softly back again, which as it happen'd, was very well for him in the main.

I observ'd, that the two who swam, were yet more than twice as long swimming over the Creek, as the Fellow was, that fled from them. It came very warmly upon my Thoughts, and indeed irresistibly, that now was my Time to get me a Servant, and perhaps a Companion, or Assistant; and that I was called plainly by Providence to save this poor Creature's Life, I immediately run down the Ladders with all possible Expedition, fetches my two Guns, for they were both but at the Foot of the Ladders, as I observ'd above, and getting up again, with the same haste, to the Top of the Hill, I crossed toward the Sea; and having a very short Cut, and all down Hill,

clapped myself in the way, between the Pursuers, and the Pursu'd, hallowing aloud to him that fled, who looking back, was at first perhaps as much frighted at me, as at them; but I beckon'd with my Hand to him, to come back, and in the meantime, I slowly advanc'd towards the two that follow'd, then rushing at once upon the foremost, I knocked him down with the Stock of my Piece, I was loth to fire, because I would not have the rest hear, though at that distance, it would not have been easily heard, and being out of Sight of the Smoke too, they would not have easily known what to make of it. Having knocked this Fellow down, the other who pursu'd with him stopped, as if he had been frighted, and I advanc'd apace towards him, but as I came nearer, I perceiv'd presently, he had a Bow and Arrow, and was fitting it to shoot at me; so I was then necessitated to shoot at him first, which I did, and killed him at the



first Shot, the poor Savage who fled, but had stopped, though he saw both his Enemies fallen, and killed as he thought, yet was so frighted with the Fire, and Noise of my Piece, that he stood Stock still, and neither came forward or went backward, though he seem'd rather inclin'd to fly still, than to come on, I hallow'd again to him, and made Signs to come forward, which he easily understood, and came a little way, then stopped again, and then a little further, and stopped again, and I could then perceive that he stood trembling, as if he had been taken Prisoner, and had just been to be killed, as his two Enemies were, I beckon'd him again to come to me, and gave him all the Signs of Encouragement that I could think of, and he came nearer and nearer, kneeling down every Ten or Twelve steps in token of acknowledgment for my saving his Life. I smiled at him, and

looked pleasantly, and beckon'd him to come still nearer, at length he came close to me, and then he kneeled down again, kissed the Ground, and laid his Head upon the Ground, and taking me by the Foot, set my Foot upon his Head; this it seems was in token of swearing to be my Slave for ever; I took him up, and made much of him, and encourag'd him all I could. But there was more work to do yet, for I perceived the Savage whom I knocked down, was not killed, but stunned with the blow, and began to come to himself, so I pointed to him, and showing him the Savage, that he was not dead, upon this he spoke some Words to me, and though I could not understand them, yet I thought they were pleasant to hear, for they were the first sound of a Man's Voice that I had heard, *my own excepted*, for above Twenty-five Years. But there was no time for such Reflections now, the Savage who was knocked down recover'd himself so far, as to sit up upon the Ground, and I perceived that my Savage began to be afraid, but when I saw that, I presented my other Piece at the Man, as if I would shoot him, upon this my Savage, *for so I called him now*, made a Motion to me to lend him my Sword, which hung naked in a Belt by my side, so I did, he no sooner had it, but he runs to his Enemy, and at one blow cut off his Head as cleverly, no Executioner in *Germany*, could have done it sooner or better, which I thought very strange, for one who I had Reason to believe never saw a Sword in his Life before, except their own Wooden Swords, however it seems, as I learned afterwards, they make their Wooden Swords so sharp, so heavy, and the Wood is so hard, that they will cut off Heads even with them, aye and Arms, and that at one blow too, when he had done this, he comes laughing to me in Sign of Triumph, and brought me the Sword again, and with abundance of Gestures which I did not understand, laid it down with the Head of the Savage, that he had killed just before me.

- But that which astonish'd him most, was to know how I had killed the other Indian so far off, so pointing to him, he made Signs to me to let him go to him, so I bade him go, as well as I could, when he came to him, he stood like one amaz'd, looking at him, turned him first on one side, then on the other, looked at the Wound the Bullet had made, which it seems was just in his Breast, where it had made a Hole, and no great Quantity of Blood had follow'd, but he had bled inwardly, for he was quite dead. He took up his Bow and Arrows, and came back, so I turned to go away, and beckon'd to him

to follow me, making Signs to him, that more might come after them.

Upon this he signed to me, that he should bury them with Sand, that they might not be seen by the rest if they follow'd, and so I made Signs again to him to do so, he fell to Work, and in an instant he had scraped a Hole in the Sand, with his Hands, big enough to bury the first in, and then dragged him into it, and cover'd him, and did so also by the other, I believe he had buried them both in a Quarter of an Hour, then calling him away, I carry'd him not to my Castle, but quite away to my Cave, on the farther Part of the Island, so I did not let my Dream come to pass in that Part, *viz* That he came into my Grove for Shelter

Here I gave him Bread, and a Bunch of Raisins to eat, and a Draught of Water, which I found he was indeed in great Distress for, by his Running, and having refresh'd him, I made Signs for him to go lie down and sleep, pointing to a Place where I had laid a great Parcel of Rice Straw, and a Blanket upon it, which I used to sleep upon myself sometimes, so the poor Creature laid down, and went to sleep

He was a comely handsome Fellow, perfectly well made, with straight strong Limbs, not too large, tall and well shaped, and as I reckon, about twenty-six Years of Age. He had a very good Countenance, not a fierce and surly Aspect, but seemed to have something very manly in his Face, and yet he had all the Sweetness and Softness of an *European* in his Countenance too, especially when he smiled. His Hair was long and black, not curled like Wool, his Forehead very high, and large, and a great Vivacity and sparkling Sharpness in his Eyes. The Colour of his Skin was not quite black, but very tawny, and yet not of an ugly yellow nauseous tawny, as the *Brasilians*, and *Virginians*, and other Natives of *America* are, but of a bright kind of a dun olive Colour, that had in it something very agreeable, though not very easy to describe. His Face was round, and plump; his Nose small, not flat like the Negroes, a very good Mouth, thin Lips, and his fine Teeth well set, and white as Ivory. After he had slumber'd, rather than slept, about half an Hour, he waked again, and comes out of the Cave to me, for I had been milking my Goats, which I had in the Enclosure just by. When he espy'd me, he came running to me, laying himself down again upon the Ground, with all the possible Signs of a humble thankful Disposition, making a many

antic Gestures to show it: At last he lays his Head flat upon the Ground, close to my Foot, and sets my other Foot upon his Head, as he had done before; and after this, made all the Signs to me of Subjection, Servitude, and Submission imaginable, to let me know, how he would serve me as long as he lived; I understood him in many Things, and let him know, I was very well pleased with him, in a little Time I began to speak to him, and teach him to speak to me, and first, I made him know his Name should be *Friday*, which was the Day I saved his Life, I called him so for the Memory of the Time, I likewise taught him to say *Master*, and then let him know,



that was to be my Name, I likewise taught him to say Yes and No, and to know the Meaning of them; I gave him some Milk, in an earthen Pot, and let him see me Drink it before him, and sop my Bread in it, and I gave him a Cake of Bread, to do the like, which he quickly complied with, and made Signs that it was very good for him

I kept there with him all that Night; but as soon as it was Day, I beckon'd to him to come with me, and let him know, I would give him some Clothes, at which he seemed very glad, for he was stark naked As we went by the Place where he had buried the two Men,

he pointed exactly to the Place, and showed me the Marks that he had made to find them again, making Signs to me that we should dig them up again, and eat them, at this I appear'd very angry, express'd my Abhorrence of it, made as if I would vomit at the Thoughts of it, and beckon'd with my Hand to him to come awry, which he did immediately, with great Submission I then led him up to the Top of the Hill, to see if his Enemies were gone, and pulling out my Glass, I looked, and saw plainly the Place where they had been, but no appearance of them, or of their *Canoes*, so that it was plain they were gone, and had left their two Comrades behind them, without any search after them.

But I was not content with this Discovery, but having now more Courage, and consequently more Curiosity, I took my Man *Friday* with me, giving him the Sword in his Hand, with the Bow and Arrows at his Back, which I found he could use very dexterously, making him carry one Gun for me, and I two for myself, and away we marched to the Place, where these Creatures had been, for I had a Mind now to get some fuller Intelligence of them. When I came to the Place, my very Blood ran chill in my Veins, and my Heart sunk within me, at the Horror of the Spectacle. Indeed it was a dreadful Sight, at least it was so to me, though *Friday* made nothing of it. The Place was cover'd with human Bones, the Ground dyed with their Blood, great Pieces of Flesh left here and there, half eaten, mangled, and scorch'd, and in short, all the Tokens of the triumphant Feast they had been making there, after a Victory over their Enemies. I saw three Skulls, five Hands, and the Bones of three or four Legs and Feet, and abundance of other Parts of the Bodies, and *Friday*, by his Signs, made me understand, that they brought over four Prisoners to feast upon, that three of them were eaten up, and that he, pointing to himself, was the fourth. That there had been a great Battle between them, and their next King, whose Subjects it seems he had been one of, and that they had taken a great Number of Prisoners, all which were carry'd to several Places by those that had taken them in the Fight, in order to feast upon them, as was done here by these Wretches upon those they brought hither.

I caused *Friday* to gather all the Skulls, Bones, Flesh, and whatever remain'd, and lay them together on a Heap, and make a great Fire upon it, and burn them all to Ashes. I found *Friday* had still a hankering Stomach after some of the Flesh, and was still a Cannibal in

his Nature; but I discover'd so much Abhorrence at the very Thoughts of it, and at the least Appearance of it, that he durst not discover it, for I had by some Means let him know, that I would kill him if he offer'd it.

When we had done this, we came back to our Castle, and there I fell to work for my Man *Friday*; and first of all, I gave him a pair of Linen Drawers, which I had out of the poor Gunner's Chest I mention'd, and which I found in the Wreck; and which with a little Alteration fitted him very well, then I made him a Jerkin of Goat's-skin, as well as my Skill would allow, and I was now grown a tolerable good Tailor, and I gave him a Cap, which I had made of a Hare-skin, very convenient and fashionable enough, and thus he was clothed for the present, tolerably well, and was mighty well pleased to see himself almost as well clothed as his Master. It is true, he went awkwardly in these Things at first, wearing the Drawers was very awkward to him, and the Sleeves of the Waistcoat galled his Shoulders, and the inside of his Arms, but a little easing them where he complain'd they hurt him, and using himself to them, at length he took to them very well.

The next Day after I came home to my Hutch with him, I began to consider where I should lodge him, and that I might do well for him, and yet be perfectly easy myself, I made a little Tent for him in the vacant Place between my two Fortifications, in the inside of the last, and in the outside of the first and as there was a Door, or Entrance there into my Cave, I made a formal framed Door-case, and a Door to it of Boards, and set it up in the Passage, a little within the Entrance, and causing the Door to open on the inside, I barred it up in the Night, taking in my Ladders too, so that *Friday* could no way come at me in the inside of my innermost Wall, without making so much Noise in getting over, that it must needs waken me, for my first Wall had now a complete Roof over it of long Poles, covering all my Tent, and leaning up to the side of the Hill, which was again laid cross with smaller Sticks instead of Laths, and then thatched over a great Thickness, with the Rice Straw, which was strong like Reeds, and at the Hole or Place which was left to go in or out by the Ladder, I had placed a kind of Trap-door, which if it had been attempted on the outside, would not have opened at all, but would have fallen down, and made a great Noise, and as to Weapons, I took them all in to my Side every Night.



But I needed none of all this Precaution, for never Man had a more faithful, loving, sincere Servant, than *Friday* was to me, without Passions, Sullenness or Designs, perfectly oblig'd and engag'd, his very Affections were tied to me, like those of a Child to a Father, and I dare say, he would have sacrific'd his Life for the saving mine, upon any occasion whatsoever, the many Testimonies he gave me of this, put it out of doubt, and soon convinc'd me, that I needed to use no Precautions, as to my Safety on his Account.

This frequently gave me occasion to observe, and that with wonder, that however it had pleased God, in his Providence, and in the Government of the Works of his Hands, to take from so great a Part of the World of his Creatures, the best uses to which their Faculties, and the Powers of their Souls are adapted, yet that he has bestow'd upon them the same Powers, the same Reason, the same Affections, the same Sentiments of Kindness and Obligation, the same Passions and Resentments of Wrongs, the same Sense of Gratitude, Sincerity, Fidelity, and all the Capacities of doing Good, and receiving Good, that he has given to us, and that when he pleases to offer to them Occasions of exerting these, they are as ready, nay, more ready to apply them to the right Uses for which they were bestow'd, than we are, and this made me very melancholy sometimes, in reflecting, as the several Occasions presented, how mean a Use we make of all these, even though we have these Powers enlighten'd by the great Lamp of Instruction, the Spirit of God, and by the Knowledge of his Word, added to our Understanding, and why it has pleased God to hide the like saving Knowledge from so many Millions of Souls, who if I might judge by this poor Savage, would make a much better use of it than we did.

From hence, I sometimes was led too far to invade the Sovereignty of *Providence*, and as it were arraign the Justice of so arbitrary a Disposition of Things, that should hide that Light from some, and reveal it to others, and yet expect a like Duty from both. But I shut it up, and checked my Thoughts with this Conclusion, (1st.) That we did not know by what Light and Law these should be Condemn'd, but that as God was necessarily, and by the Nature of his Being, infinitely Holy and Just, so it could not be, but that if these Creatures were all sentenc'd to Absence from himself, it was on account of sinning against that Light which, as the Scripture says, was a Law to themselves, and by such Rules as their Consciences would acknowledge

to be just, though the Foundation was not discover'd to us. And, (and,) that still as we are all the Clay in the Hand of the Potter, no Vessel could say to him, Why hast thou formed me thus?

But to return to my New Companion; I was greatly delighted with him, and made it my Business to teach him everything, that was proper to make him useful, handy, and helpful, but especially to make him speak, and understand me when I spake, and he was the aptest Scholar that ever was, and particularly was so merry, so constantly diligent, and so pleas'd, when he could but understand me, or make me understand him, that it was very pleasant to me to talk to him, and now my Life began to be so easy, that I began to say to myself, that could I but have been safe from more Savages, I cared not, if I was never to remove from the place while I lived.

After I had been two or three Days return'd to my Castle, I thought that, in order to bring *Friday* off from his horrid way of feeding, and from the Relish of a Cannibal's Stomach, I ought to let him taste other Flesh, so I took him out with me one Morning to the Woods. I went indeed intending to kill a Kid out of my own Flock, and bring him home and dress it. But as I was going, I saw a She Goat lying down in the Shade and two young Kids sitting by her, I catch'd hold of *Friday*, hold, says I, stand still, and made Signs to him not to stir, immediately I presented my Piece, shot and killed one of the Kids. The poor Creature, who had at a Distance indeed seen me kill the Savage his Enemy, but did not know, or could imagine how it was done, was sensibly surpris'd, trembled, and shook, and looked so amaz'd, that I thought he would have sunk down. He did not see the Kid I had shot at, or perceive I had killed it, but ripped up his Waistcoat to feel if he was not wounded, and as I found, presently thought I was resolv'd to kill him, for he came and kneeled down to me, and embracing my Knees, said a great many Things I did not understand, but I could easily see that the meaning was to pray me not to kill him.

I soon found a way to convince him that I would do him no harm, and taking him up by the Hand laugh'd at him, and pointed to the Kid which I had killed, beckoned to him to run and fetch it, which he did; and while he was wondering and looking to see how the Creature was killed, I loaded my Gun again, and by-and-by I saw a great Fowl like a Hawk sit upon a Tree within Shot, so to let *Friday* understand a little what I would do, I called him to me again, pointed

at the Fowl which was indeed a Parrot, though I thought it had been a Hawk, I say pointing to the Parrot, and to my Gun, and to the Ground under the Parrot, to let him see I would make it fall, I made him understand that I would shoot and kill that Bird, accordingly I fired and bade him look, and immediately he saw the Parrot fall, he stood like one frightened again, notwithstanding all I had said to him, and I found he was the more amaz'd, because he did not see me put anything into the Gun, but thought that there must be some wonderful Fund of Death and Destruction in that Thing, able to kill Man, Beast, Bird, or anything, near or far off, and the Astonishment thus created in him was such, as could not wear off for a long Time, and I believe, if I would have let him, he would have worshipp'd me, and my Gun. As for the Gun itself, he would not so much as touch it for several Days after, but would speak to it, and talk to it, as if it had answer'd him, when he was by himself, which, as I afterwards learned of him, was to desire it not to kill him.

Well, after his Astonishment was a little over at this, I pointed to him to run and fetch the Bird I had shot, which he did, but stayed some Time, for the Parrot not being quite dead, was flutter'd away a good way off from the Place where she fell, however, he found her, took her up, and brought her to me, and as I had perceiv'd his Ignorance about the Gun before, I took this Advantage to charge the Gun again, and not let him see me do it, that I might be ready for any other Mark that might present, but nothing more offer'd at that Time, so I brought home the Kid, and the same Evening I took the Skin off, and cut it out as well as I could, and having a Pot for that purpose, I boiled or stewed some of the Flesh, and made some very good Broth, and after I had begun to eat some, I gave some to my Man, who seemed very glad of it, and liked it very well, but that which was strangest to him, was, to see me eat Salt with it, he made a Sign to me, that the Salt was not good to eat, and putting a little into his own Mouth, he seemed to nauseate it, and would spit and sputter at it, washing his Mouth with fresh Water after it, on the other hand, I took some Meat in my Mouth without Salt, and I pretended to spit and sputter for want of Salt, as fast as he had done at the Salt, but it would not do, he would never care for Salt with his Meat, or in his Broth, at least not a great while, and then but a very little

Having thus fed him with boiled Meat and Broth, I was resolv'd

to feast him the next Day with roasting a Piece of the Kid ; this I did by hanging it before the Fire, in a String, as I had seen many People do in *England*, setting two Poles up, one on each side the Fire, and one cross on the Top, and tying the String to the Cross-stick, letting the Meat turn continually This *Friday* admir'd very much, but when he came to taste the Flesh, he took so many ways to tell me how well he liked it ; that I could not but understand him ; and at last he told me he could never eat Man's Flesh any more, which I was very glad to hear.

The next Day I set him to work to beating some Corn out, and roasting it in the manner I used to do, as I observ'd before, and he soon understood how to do it as well as I, especially after he had seen what the Meaning of it was, and that it was to make Bread of, or after that I let him see me make my Bread, and bake it too, and in

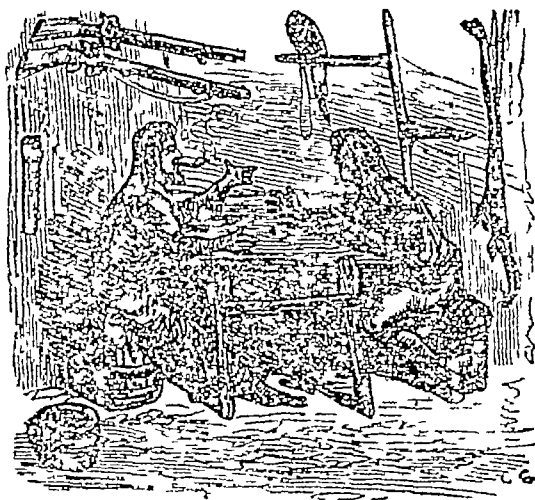
little Time *Friday* was able to do all the Work for me, as well as I could do it myself.

I began now to consider, that having two Mouths to feed, instead of one, I must provide more Ground for my Harvest, and plant a larger Quantity of Corn, than I used to do, so I marked out a larger Piece of Land, and began the Fence in the same Manner as before, which *Friday* not only worked very willingly and very hard, but did it very cheerfully, and I told him what it was for, that it was for Corn to make more Bread, because he was now with me, and that I



might have enough for him, and myself too. He appear'd very sensible of that Part, and let me know, that he thought I had much more Labour upon me on his Account, than I had for myself, and that he would work the harder for me, if I would tell him what to do.

This was the pleasantest Year of all the Life. I led in this Place; *Friday* began to talk pretty well, and understand the Names of almost everything I had occasion to call for, and of every Place I had to send him to, and talked a great deal to me, so that in short I began now to have some Use for my Tongue again, which indeed I had very little occasion for before, that is to say, *about Speech*, besides the Pleasure of talking to him, I had a singular Satisfaction in the Fellow himself, his simple unfeign'd Honesty appear'd to me more and more every Day, and I began really to love the Creature, and on his Side, I believe he loved me more than it was possible for him ever to love anything before.



I had a Mind once to try if he had any hankering Inclination to his own Country again, and having learned him *English* so well that he could answer me almost any Questions, I asked him, whether the Nation that he belong'd to never conquer'd in Battle, at which he smiled, and said, yes, yes, we always fight the better, that

is, he meant always get the better in Fight, and so we began the following Discourse. You always fight the better, said I, How came you to be taken Prisoner then, *Friday*?

*Friday*, My Nation beat much, for all that.

*Master*, How beat, if your Nation beat them, how come you to be taken?

*Friday*, They more many than my Nation in the Place where me

was; they take one, two, three, and me, my Nation over beat them in the yonder Place, where me no was, there my Nation take one, two, great Thousand.

*Master*, But why did not your Side recover you from the Hands of your Enemies then?

*Friday*, They run one, two, three, and me, and make go in the *Canoe*; my Nation have no *Canoe* that time

*Master*, Well, *Friday*, and What does your Nation do with the Men they take, do they carry them away, and eat them, as these did?

*Friday*, Yes, my Nation eat Mans too, eat all up.

*Master*, Where do they carry them?

*Friday*, Go to other Place where they think.

*Master*, Do they come hither?

*Friday*, Yes, yes, they come hither, come other else Place.

*Master*, Have you been here with them?

*Friday*, Yes, I been here, [*points to the N W Side of the Island*] which it seems was their Side

By this I understood, that my Man *Friday* had formerly been among the Savages, who used to come on Shore on the farther Part of the Island, on the same Man-eating Occasions that he was now brought for, and some time after, when I took the Courage to carry him to that Side, being the same I formerly mention'd, he presently knew the Place, and told me, he was there once when they eat up twenty Men, two Women, and one Child, he could not tell Twenty in *English*, but he numbered them by laying so many Stones on a Row, and pointing to me to tell them over

I have told this Passage, because it introduces what follows, that after I had had this Discourse with him, I asked him how far it was from our Island to the Shore, and whether the *Canoes* were not often lost, he told me there was no Danger, no *Canoes* ever lost, but that after a little way out to the Sea, there was a Current, and Wind, always one way in the Morning, the other in the Afternoon.

This I understood to be no more than the Sets of the Tide, as going out, or coming in, but I afterwards understood, it was occasion'd by the great Draft and Reflux of the mighty River *Oroonooko*, in the Mouth, or the Gulf of which River, as I found afterwards, our Island lay, and this Land which I perceiv'd to the *W* and *NW* was the great Island *Trinidad*, on the *North* Point of the Mouth of the River; I asked *Friday* a thousand Questions about the Country, the Inhabi-

tants, the Sea, the Coast, and what Nation were near, he told me & he knew with the greatest Openness imaginable, I asked him the Names of the several Nations of his Sort of People, but could get no other Name than *Caribs*, from whence I easily understood, that these were the *Caribbees*, which our Maps place on the Part of *America* which reaches from the Mouth of the River *Oroonoko* to *Guiana*, and onwards to *St Martha*. He told me that up a great way beyond the Moon, that was, beyond the Setting of the Moon, which must be 11 from their Country, there dwelt white-bearded Men, like me, and pointed to my great Whiskers, which I mention'd before, and that they had killed *much Mans*, that was his Word; by all which I understood, he meant the *Spaniards*, whose Cruelties in *America* had been spread over the whole Countries, and was remember'd by all the Nations from Father to Son.

I inquir'd if he could tell me how I might come from this Island, and get among those white Men, he told me, yes, yes, I might go in *two Canoe*, I could not understand what he meant, or make him describe to me what he meant by *two Canoe*, till at last with great Difficulty, I found he meant it must be in a large great Boat, as big as *two Canoes*.

This Part of *Friday's* Discourse began to relish with me very well, and from this Time I entertain'd some Hopes, that one Time or other, I might find an Opportunity to make my Escape from this Place, and that this poor Savage might be a Means to help me to do it.

During the long Time that *Friday* has now been with me, and that he began to speak to me, and understand me, I was not wanting to lay a Foundation of religious Knowledge in his Mind, particularly I asked him one Time who made him? The poor Creature did not understand me at all, but thought I had asked who was his Father, but I took it by another handle, and asked him who made the Sea, the Ground we walked on, and the Hills, and Woods, he told me it was one old *Benamuckee*, that lived beyond all. He could describe nothing of this great Person, but that he was very old; much older he said than the Sea, or the Land, than the Moon, or the Stars. I asked him then, if this old Person had made all Things, why did not all Things worship him, he look'd very grave, and with a perfect Look of Innocence, said, *All Things do say O to him*. I asked him, People who die in his Country went away anywhere, he said

yes, they all went to *Benamuckee*, then I asked him whether these they eat up went thither too, he said yes.

From these Things, I began to instruct him in the Knowledge of the true God I told him that the great Maker of all Things lived up there, pointing up towards Heaven That he governs the World by the same Power and Providence by which he had made it That he was omnipotent, could do everything for us, give everything to us, take everything from us, and thus by Degrees I open'd his Eyes He listened with great Attention, and receiv'd with Pleasure the Notion of *Jesus Christ* being sent to redeem us, and of the Manner of making our Prayers to God, and his being able to hear us, even into Heaven, he told me one Day, that if our God could hear us up beyond the Sun, he must needs be a greater God than their *Benamuckee*, who lived but a little way off, and yet could not hear, till they went up to the great Mountains where he dwelt, to speak to him, I asked him if ever he went thither, to speak to him, he said no, they never went that were young Men, none went thither but the old Men, who he called their *Oowocakee*, that is, as I made him explain it to me their Religious, or Clergy, and that they went to say *O*, (so he called saying Prayers) and then came back, and told them what *Benamuckee* said By this I observ'd, That there is *Priestcraft*, even amongst the most blinded ignorant Pagans in the World, and the Policy of making a secret Religion, in order to preserve the Veneration of the People to the Clergy, is not only to be found in the *Roman*, but perhaps among all Religions in the World, even among the most brutish and barbarous Savages

I endeavour'd to clear up this Fraud, to my Man *Friday*, and told him, that the Pretence of their old Men going up the Mountains, to say *O* to their God *Benamuckee*, was a Cheat, and their bringing Word from thence what he said, was much more so, that if they met with any Answer, or spake with any one there, it must be with an evil Spirit And then I enter'd into a long Discourse with him about the Devil, the Original of him, his Rebellion against God, his Enmity to Man, the Reason of it, his setting himself up in the dark Parts of the World to be Worshipp'd instead of God, and as God, and the many Stratagems he made use of to delude Mankind to his Ruin, how he had a secret access to our Passions, and to our Affections, to adapt his Snares so to our Inclinations, as to cause us even to be our own Tempters, and to run upon our Destruction by our own Choice.



I found it was not so easy to imprint right Notions in his Mind about the Devil, as it was about the Being of a God. Nature assisted all my Arguments to Evidence to him, even the Necessity of a great first Cause and over-ruling governing Power, a secret directing Providence and of the Equity, and Justice, of paying Homage to him that made us and the like. But there appeared nothing of all this in the Notion of an evil Spirit, of his Original, his Being, his Nature, and above all of his Inclination to do Evil, and to draw us in to do so too, and the poor Creature puzzled me once in such a Manner, by a Question merely natural and innocent, that I scarce knew what to say to him. I had been talking a great deal to him of the Power of God, his Omnipotence, his dreadful Antipathy to Sin, his being a consuming Fire to the Workers of Iniquity, how, as he had made us all, he could destroy us and all the World in a Moment, and he listen'd with great Seriousness to me all the while.

After this, I had been telling him how the Devil was God's Enemy in the Hearts of Men, and used all his Malice and Skill to defeat the good Designs of Providence, and to ruin the Kingdom of Christ in the World, and the like. Well, says *Friday*, but you say, God is so strong, so great, is he not much strong, much might as the Devil? Yes, yes, says I, *Friday*, God is stronger than the Devil, God is above the Devil, and therefore we pray to God to tread him down under our Feet, and enable us to resist his Temptations and quench his fiery Darts. But, says he again, *if God much strong, much might as the Devil, why God no kill the Devil, so make him no more do wicked?*

I was strangely surpris'd at his Question, and after all, though I was now an old Man, yet I was but a young Doctor, and ill enough qualified for a Casuist, or a Solver of Difficulties. And at first I could not tell what to say, so I pretended not to hear him, and asked him what he said? But he was too earnest for an Answer to forget his Question, so that he repeated it in the very same broken Words, as above. By this time I had recovered myself a little, and I said, *God will at last punish him severely, he is reserv'd for the Judgment, and is to be cast into the Bottomless Pit, to dwell with everlasting Fire.* This did not satisfy *Friday*, but he returns upon me, repeating my Words, RESERVE, AT LAST, *me no understand, but, Why not kill the Devil now, not kill great ago?* You may as well ask me, said I, Why God does not kill you and I when we do wicked Things here that

offend him? We are preserv'd to repent and be pardon'd He muses a while at this, *well, well*, says he, mighty affectionately, *that well, so you, I, Devil, all wicked, all preserve, repent, God pardon all* Here I was run down again by him to the last Degree, and it was a Testimony to me, how the mere Notions of Nature, though they will guide reasonable Creatures to the Knowledge of a God, and of a Worship or Homage due to the supreme Being, of God as the Consequence of our Nature, yet nothing but divine Revelation can form the Knowledge of *Jesus Christ*, and of a Redemption purchas'd for us, of a Mediator of the new Covenant, and of an Intercessor, at the Footstool of God's Throne, I say, nothing but a Revelation from Heaven, can form these in the Soul, and that therefore the Gospel of our Lord and Saviour *Jesus Christ*; I mean, the Word of God, and the Spirit of God promised for the Guide and Sanctifier of his People, are the absolutely necessary Instructors of the Souls of Men, in the saving Knowledge of God, and the Means of Salvation

I therefore diverted the present Discourse between me and my Man, rising up hastily, as upon some sudden Occasion of going out, then sending him for something a good way off, I seriously prayed to God that he would enable me to instruct savingly this poor Savage, assisting by his Spirit the Heart of the poor ignorant Creature, to receive the Light of the Knowledge of God in *Christ*, reconciling him to himself, and would guide me to 'speak so to him from the Word of God, as his Conscience might be convinc'd, his Eyes opened, and his Soul saved. When he came again to me, I enter'd into a long Discourse with him upon the Subject of the Redemption of Man by the Saviour of the World, and of the Doctrine of the Gospel preach'd from Heaven, *viz* of Repentance towards God, and Faith in our Blessed Lord *Jesus* I then explain'd to him, as well as I could, why our Blessed Redeemer took not on him the Nature of Angels, but the Seed of *Abraham*, and how for that Reason the fallen Angels had no Share in the Redemption, that he came only to the lost Sheep of the House of *Israel*, and the like

I had, *God knows*, more Sincerity than Knowledge, in all the Methods I took for this poor Creature's Instruction, and must acknowledge what I believe all that act upon the same Principle will find, That in laying Things open to him, I really inform'd and instructed myself in many Things, that either I did not know, or had not fully consider'd before, but which occur'd naturally to my Mind,

upon my searching into them, for the Information of this poor Savage, and I had more Affection in my Inquiry after Things upon this Occasion, than ever I felt before, so that whether this poor wild Wretch was the better for me, or no, I had great Reason to be thankful that ever he came to me. My Grief set lighter upon me, my Habitation grew comfortable to me beyond Measure; and when I reflected that in this solitary Life which I had been confin'd to, I had not only been moved myself to look up to Heaven, and to seek to the Hand that had brought me there, but was now to be made an Instrument under Providence to save the Life, and, *for ought I knew*, the Soul of a poor Savage, and bring him to the true Knowledge of Religion, and of the Christian Doctrine, that he might know Christ Jesus, *to know whom is Life eternal*, I say, When I reflected upon all these Things, a secret Joy run through every Part of my Soul, and I frequently rejoic'd that ever I was brought to this Place, which I had so often thought the most dreadful of all Afflictions that could possibly have befallen me.

In this thankful Frame I continu'd all the Remainder of my Time, and the Conversation which employ'd the Hours between *Friday* and I, was such, as made the three Years which we lived there together perfectly and completely happy, *if any such Thing as complete Happiness can be formed in a sublunary State*. The Savage was now a good Christian, a much better than I, though I have reason to hope, and bless God for it, that we were equally penitent, and comforted restor'd Penitents, we had here the Word of God to read, and no farther off from his Spirit to instruct, than if we had been in *England*.

I always apply'd myself in Reading the Scripture, to let him know, as well as I could, the Meaning of what I read, and he again, by his serious Inquiries and Questions, made me, *I said before*, a much better Scholar in the Scripture Knowledge, than I should ever have been by my own private mere Reading. Another thing I cannot refrain from observing here also from Experience, in this retir'd Part of my Life, *viz* How infinite and inexpressible a Blessing it is, that the Knowledge of God, and of the Doctrine of Salvation by *Christ Jesus*, is so plainly laid down in the Word of God, so easy to be receiv'd and understood. That as the bare reading the Scripture made me capable of understanding enough of my Duty, to carry me directly on to the great Work of sincere Repentance for my Sins, and laying hold of a Saviour for Life and Salvation. to a stated Reformation in

Practice, and Obedience to all God's commands, and this without any Teacher or Instructor, I mean, human, so the same plain Instruction sufficiently served to the enlightening this Savage Creature, and bringing him to be such a Christian, as I have known few equal to him in my Life

As to all the Disputes, Wranglings, Strife, and Contention, which has happen'd in the World about Religion, whether Niceties in Doctrines, or Schemes of Church Government, they were all perfectly useless to us, as for ought I can yet see, they have been to all the rest of the World We had the *sure Guide* to Heaven, *viz* The Word of God, and we had, *blessed be God*, comfortable Views of the Spirit of God teaching and instructing us by his Word, *leading us into all Truth*, and making us both willing and obedient to the Instruction of his Word, and I cannot see the least Use that the greatest Knowledge of the disputed Points in Religion which have made such Confusions in the World would have been to us, if we could have obtain'd it, but-I must go on with the Historical Part of Things, and take every Part in its Order

After *Friday* and I became more intimately acquainted, and that he could understand almost all I said to him, and speak fluently though in broken *English*, to me, I acquainted him with my own Story, or at least so much of it as related to my coming into the Place, how I had lived there, and how long I let him into the Mystery, for such it was to him, of Gunpowder and Bullet, and taught him how to shoot I gave him a Knife, which he was wonderfully delighted with, and I made him a Belt, with a Frog hanging to it, such as in *England* we wear Hangers in, and in the Frog, instead of a Hanger, I gave him a Hatchet, which was not only as good a Weapon in some Cases, but much more useful upon other Occasions

I describ'd to him the Country of *Europe*, and particularly *England*, which I came from, how we lived, how we worshipp'd God, how we behav'd to one another, and how we traded in Ships to all Parts of the World I gave him an Account of the Wreck which I had been on board of, and showed him as near as I could, the Place where she lay, but she was all beaten in Pieces before, and gone.

I showed him the Ruins of our Boat, which we lost when we escap'd, and which I could not stir with my whole Strength then, but was now fallen almost all to Pieces Upon seeing this Boat, *Friday* stood musing a great while, and said nothing, I asked him what it was he

studied upon, at last says he, *we see such Boat like come to Place at my Nation*

I did not understand him a good while, but at last, when I had examin'd farther into it, I understood by him, that a Boat, such as that had been, came on Shore upon the Country where he lived, that is, as he explain'd it, was driven thither by Stress of Weather I presently imagin'd, that some *European* Ship must have been cast away upon their Coast, and the Boat might get loose, and drive ashore, but was so dull, that I never once thought of Men making escape from a Wreck thither, much less whence they might come, so I only inquir'd after a Description of the Boat.

*Friday* describ'd the Boat to me well enough, but brought me better to understand him, when he added with some Warmth, *we save the white Mans from drown* Then I presently asked him, if there was any *white Mans*, as he called them, in the Boat, *yes*, he said, *the Boat full white Mans* I asked him how many, he told upon his Fingers seventeen I asked him then what become of them, he told me, *they live, they dwell at my Nation*

This put new Thoughts into my Head, for I presently imagin'd, that these might be the Men belonging to the Ship, that was cast away in Sight of *my Island*, as I now call it, and who after the Ship was struck on the Rock, and they saw her inevitably lost, had saved themselves in their Boat, and were landed upon that wild Shore among the Savages

Upon this, I inquir'd of him more critically, What was become of them? He assur'd me they lived still there, that they had been there about four Years, that the Savages let them alone, and gave them Victuals to live I asked him, How it came to pass they did not kill them and eat them? He said, *No, they make Brother with them*, that is, as I understood him, a Truce And then he added, *They no eat Mans but when make the War fight*, that is to say, they never eat any Men, but such as come to fight with them, and are taken in Battle.

It was after this some considerable Time, that being upon the Top of the Hill, at the *East Side* of the Island, from whence as I have said, I had in a clear Day discover'd the Main, or Continent of *America*, *Friday*, the Weather being very serene, looks very earnestly towards the main Land, and in a kind of Surprise, falls a jumping and dancing, and calls out to me for I was at some Distance from him I asked

him, What was the Matter? *O Joy!* says he, *O glad!* *There see my Country, there my Nation!*

I observ'd an extraordinary Sense of Pleasure appear'd in his Face, and his Eyes sparkled, and his Countenance discover'd a strange Eagerness, as if he had a Mind to be in his own Country again, and this Observation of mine, put a great many Thoughts into me, which made me at first not so easy about my new Man *Friday* as I was before, and I made no Doubt, but that if *Friday* could get back to his own Nation again, he would not only forget all his Religion, but all his Obligation to me; and would be forward enough to give his Countrymen an Account of me, and come back perhaps with a hundred or two of them, and make a Feast upon me, at which he might be as merry as he used to be with those of his Enemies, when they were taken in War

But I wronged the poor honest Creature very much, for which I was very sorry afterwards. However as my Jealousy increased, and held me some Weeks, I was a little more circumspect, and not so familiar and kind to him as before, in which I was certainly in the Wrong too, the honest grateful Creature having no thought about it, but what consisted with the best Principles, both as a religious Christian, and as a grateful Friend, as appeared afterwards to my full Satisfaction

While my Jealousy of him lasted, you may be sure I was every Day pumping him to see if he would discover any of the new Thoughts, which I suspected were in him, but I found everything he said was so Honest, and-so innocent, that I could find nothing to nourish my Suspicion, and in spite of all my Uneasiness he made me at last entirely his own again, nor did he in the least perceive that I was uneasy, and therefore I could not suspect him of Deceit

One Day walking up the same Hill, but the Weather being hazy at Sea, so that we could not see the Continent, I called to him, and said, *Friday*, do not you wish yourself in your own Country, your own Nation? Yes, he said, *he be much O glad to be at his own Nation.* What would you do there, said I, would you turn wild again, eat Men's Flesh again, and be a Savage as you were before. He looked full of Concern, and shaking his Head said, *No, no, Friday tell them to live good, tell them to pray God, tell them to eat Corn-bread, Cattle-flesh, Milk, no eat Man again.* Why then, said I to him, *They will kill you.* He looked grave at that, and then said, *No, they no kill me, they*

*willing love learn* He meant by this, they would would be willing to learn He added, they learnt much of the Bearded-Mans that come in the Boat Then I asked him if he would go back to them? He smiled at that, and told me he could not swim so far I told him I would make a Canoe for him He told me, *he would go if I would go with him* I go! says I, why, they will eat me if I come there? *No, no*, says he, *me make they no Eat you, me make they much Love you* He meant, he would tell them how I had killed his Enemies, and saved his Life, and so he would make them love me, then he told me as well as he could, how kind they were to seventeen White men, or Bearded-men, as he called them, who came on Shore there in Distress

From this time I confess I had a Mind to venture over, and see if I could possibly join with these Bearded-men, who I made no Doubt were *Spaniards* or *Portuguese*, not doubting but if I could we might find some Method to Escap<sup>r</sup> from thence, being upon the Continent, and a good Company together, better than I could from an Island 40 Miles off the Shore, and alone without Help So after some Days I took *Friday* to work again, by way of Discourse, and told him I would give him a Boat to go back to his own Nation, and accordingly I carried him to my Frigate which lay on the other Side of the Island, and having cleared it of Water, for I always kept it sunk in the Water, I brought it out, showed it him, and we both went into it.

I found he was a most dexterous Fellow at managing it, would make it go almost as swift and fast again as I could, so when he was in, I said to him, Well, now, *Friday*, shall we go to your Nation? He looked very dull at my saying so, which it seems was, because he thought the Boat too small to go so far I told him then I had a bigger, so the next Day I went to the Place where the first Boat lay which I had made, but which I could not get into Water He said that was big enough, but then as I had taken no Care of it, and it had lain two or three-and-twenty Years there, the Sun had split and dried it, that it was in a manner rotten. *Friday* told me such a Boat would do very well, and would carry *much enough Vittle, Drink, Bread*, that was his Way of Talking

Upon the whole, I was by this Time so fixed upon my Design of going over with him to the Continent, that I told him we would go and make one as big as that, and he should go home in it. He

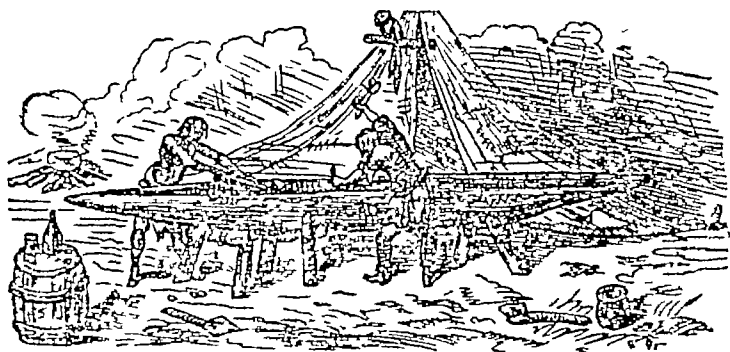
answer'd not one Word, but looked very grave and sad I asked him what was the matter with him? He asked me again thus, *Why, you angry mad with Friday, what me done?* I asked him what he meant, I told him I was not angry with him at all *No angry! No angry!* says he, repeating the Words several Times, *Why send Friday home away to my Nation?* Why (says I) *Friday*, did you not say you wished you were there? *Yes, yes*, says he, *wish we be both there, no wish Friday there, no Master there* In a Word, he would not think of going there without me, *I go thure!* Friday, (says I) *what shall I do there?* He turned very quick upon me at this *You do great deal much good*, says he, *you teach wild Mans be good sober tame Mans, you tell them know God, pray God, and live new Life* Alas! Friday, (says I) *thou knowest not what thou sayest, I am but an ignorant Man myself* *Yes, yes*, says he, *you teachee me Good, you teachee them Good* No, no, Friday, (says I) *you shall go without me, leave me here to live by myself, as I did before* He looked confus'd again at that Word, and running to one of the Hatchets which he used to wear, he takes it up hastily, comes and gives it me. *What must I do with this?* says I to him *You take, kill Friday* (says he.) *What must I kill you for?* said I again He returns very quick, *What you send Friday away for? take, kill Friday, no send Friday away* This he spoke so earnestly, that I saw Tears stand in his Eyes In a Word, I so plainly discover'd the utmost Affection in him to me, and a firm Resolution in him, that I told him then, and often after, that I would never send him away from me, if he was willing to stay with me.

Upon the whole, as I found by all his Discourse a settled Affection to me, and that nothing should part him from me, so I found all the Foundation of his Desire to go to his own Country, was laid in his ardent Affection to the People, and his Hopes of my doing them good, a Thing which as I had no Notion of myself, so I had not the least Thought or Intention, or Desire of undertaking it. But still I found a strong Inclination to my attempting an Escape as above, founded on the Supposition gather'd from the Discourse, (*viz*) That there were seventeen bearded Men there, and therefore, without any more Delay, I went to Work with *Friday* to find out a great Tree proper to fell, and make a large Periagua or Canoe to undertake the Voyage. There were Trees enough in the Island to have built a little Fleet, not of Periaguas and Canoes, but even of good large Vessels But the main Thing I looked at, was to get one so near the Water that we



might launch it when it was made, to avoid the Mistake I committed at first.

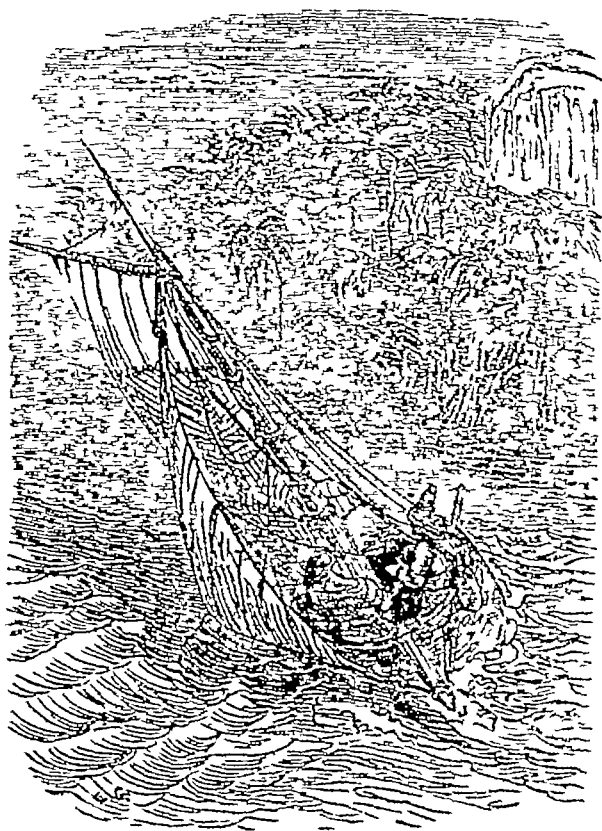
At last, *Friday* pitched upon a Tree, for I found he knew much better than I what kind of Wood was fittest for it, nor can I tell to this Day what Wood to call the Tree we cut down, except that it was very like the Tree we call *Fustic*, or between that and the *Nicaragua* Wood, for it was much of the same Colour and Smell. *Friday* was for burning the Hollow or Cavity of this Tree out to make it for a Boat. But I showed him how rather to cut it out with Tools, which, after I had showed him how to use, he did very handily, and in about a Month's hard Labour, we finished it, and made it very handsome, especially when with our Axes, which I showed him how to handle, we cut and hewed the outside into the true Shape of a



Boat, after this, however, it cost us near a Fortnight's Time to get her along as it were Inch by Inch upon great Rollers into the Water. But when she was in, she would have carried twenty Men with great Ease.

When she was in the Water, and though she was so big it amazed me to see with what Dexterity and how swift my Man *Friday* would manage her, turn her, and paddle her along, so I asked him if he would, and if we might venture over in her, *Yes*, he said, *he venture over in her very well, though great blow Wind*. However, I had a farther Design that he knew nothing of, and that was to make a Mast and Sail and to fit her with an Anchor and Cable. As to a Mast, that was easy enough to get, so I pitched upon a straight young Cedar-Tree, which I found near the Place, and which there was great

Plenty of in the Island, and I set *Friday* to Work to cut it down, and gave him Directions how to shape and order it. But as to the Sail, that was my particular Care; I knew I had old Sails, or rather Pieces of old Sails enough, but as I had had them now six-and-twenty Years by me, and had not been very careful to preserve them, not imagining that I should ever have this kind of Use for them, I did not doubt but they were all rotten, and indeed most of them were so, however, I found two Pieces which appear'd pretty good, and with these I went to Work, and, with a great deal of Pains, and awkward tedious stitching (you may be sure) for Want of Needles, I at length made a three Corner'd ugly Thing, like what we call in *England*, a Shoulder of Mutton Sail, to go with a Boommat bottom, and a little short Sprit at the Top, such as usually our Ship's Long-Boatssail with, and such as I best knew how to manage, because it was such a one as I had to the Boat, in which I made my Escape from *Barbary*, as related in the first Part of my Story



I was near two Months performing this last Work, *viz.* rigging and fitting my Mast and Sails, for I finish'd them very complete, making a small Stay, and a Sail, or Foresail to it, to assist, if we should turn to Windward, and which was more than all, I fix'd a Rudder to the Stern of her, to steer with, and though I was but a bungling Ship-

wright, yet as I knew the Usefulness, and even Necessity of such a Thing, I applied myself with so much Pains to do it, that at last I brought it to pass, though considering the many dull Contrivances I had for it that failed, I think it cost me almost as much Labour as making the Boat.

After all this was done too, I had my Man *Friday* to teach as to what belong'd to the Navigation of my Boat, for though he knew very well how to paddle a *Canoe*, he knew nothing what belong'd to a Sail and a Rudder, and was the most amaz'd, when he saw me work the Boat to and again in the Sea by the Rudder, and how the Sail gibbed, and filled this way or that way, as the Course we sailed changed, I say, when he saw this, he stood like one astonish'd and amaz'd. However, with a little Use, I made all these Things familiar to him, and he became an expert Sailor, except that as to the Compass, I could make him understand very little of that. On the other hand, as there was very little cloudy Weather, and seldom or never any Fogs in those Parts, there was the less occasion for a Compass, seeing the Stars were always to be seen by Night, and the Shore by Day, except in the rainy Seasons, and then nobody cared to stir abroad, either by Land or Sea.

I was now enter'd on the seven-and-twentieth Year of my Captivity in this Place, though the three last Years that I had this Creature with me, ought rather to be left out of the Account, my Habitation being quite of another kind than in all the rest of the Time. I kept the Anniversary of my Landing here with the same Thankfulness to God for his Mercies, as at first, and if I had such Cause of Acknowledgment at first, I had much more so now, having such additional Testimonies of the Care of Providence over me, and the great Hopes I had of being effectually, and speedily deliver'd, for I had an invincible Impression upon my Thoughts, that my Deliverance was at hand, and that I should not be another Year in this Place. However, I went on with my Husbandry, digging, planting, fencing, as usual, I gather'd and cured my Grapes, and did every necessary Thing as before.

The rainy Season was in the meantime upon me, when I kept more within Doors than at other Times, so I had stowed our new Vessel as secure as we could, bringing her up into the Creek, where as I said, in the Beginning I landed my Rafts from the Ship, and hauling her up to the Shore, at high Water mark, I made my Man

*Friday* dig a little Dock, just big enough to hold her, and just deep enough to give her Water enough to float in, and then when the Tide was out, we made a strong Dam cross the End of it, to keep the Water out, and so she lay dry, as to the Tide from the Sea, and to keep the Rain off, we laid a great many Boughs of Trees, so thick, that she was as well thatched as a House, and thus we waited for the Month of *November* and *December*, in which I design'd to make my Adventure.

When the settled Season began to come in, as the thought of my Design return'd with the fair Weather, I was preparing daily for the Voyage, and the first Thing I did, was to lay by a certain Quantity of Provisions, being the Stores for our Voyage, and intended in a Week or a Fortnight's Time, to open the Dock, and launch out our Boat. I was busy one Morning upon something of this kind, when I called to *Friday*, and bid him go to the Sea Shore, and see if he could find a Turtle, or Tortoise, a Thing which we generally got once a Week, for the Sake of the Eggs, as well as the Flesh. *Friday* had not been long gone, when he came running back, and flew over my outer Wall, or Fence, like one that felt not the Ground, or the Steps he set his Feet on, and before I had time to speak to him, he cries out to me, *O Master! O Master! O Sorrow! O bad!* What's the Matter, *Friday*, says I, *O yonder, there*, says he, *one, two, three Canoe! one, two, three!* By his way of speaking, I concluded there were six, but on inquiry, I found it was but three. Well, *Friday*, says I, do not be frighted, so I heartened him up as well as I could. However, I saw the poor Fellow was most terribly scared, for nothing ran in his Head but that they were come to look for him, and would cut him in Pieces, and eat him, and the poor Fellow trembled so, that I scarce knew what to do with him. I comforted him as well as I could, and told him I was in as much Danger as he, and that they would eat me as well as him, *but*, says I, *Friday*, *we must resolve to fight them*, *Can you fight*, *Friday?* *Me shoot*, says he, *but there come many great Number*. No matter for that, said I again, our Guns will fright them that we do not kill, so I asked him, Whether if I resolv'd to defend him, he would defend me, and stand by me, and do just as I bid him? He said, *Me die, when you bid die, Master*; so I went and fetched a good Dram of Rum, and gave him; for I had been so good a Husband of my Rum, that I had a great deal left: When he had drank it, I made him take the two Fowling-

Pieces, which we always carried, and load them with large Swan Shot, as big as small Pistol Bullets, then I took four Muskets, and loaded them with two Slugs, and five small Bullets each, and my two Pistols I loaded with a Brace of Bullets each, I hung my great Sword as usual, naked by my Side, and gave *Friday* his Hatchet

When I had thus prepar'd myself, I took my Perspective-Glass, and went up to the Side of the Hill, to see what I could discover; and I found quickly, by my Glass, that there were one-and-twenty Savages, three Prisoners, and three *Canoes*, and that their whole Business seemed to be the triumphant Banquet upon these three human Bodies, (a barbarous Feast indeed) but nothing more than as I had observ'd was usual with them

I observ'd also, that they were landed not where they had done, when *Friday* made his Escape, but nearer to my Creek, where the Shore was low, and where a thick Wood came close almost down to the Sea. This, with the Abhorrence of the inhuman Errand, these Wretches came about, filled me with such Indignation, that I came down again to *Friday*, and told him, I was resolv'd to go down to them, and kill them all, and asked him, If he would stand by me? He was now gotten over his Fright, and his Spirits being a little raised, with the Dram I had given him, he was very cheerful, and told me, as before, *he would die, when I b d die*

In this Fit of Fury, I took first and divided the Arms which I had charged, as before, between us. I gave *Friday* one Pistol to stick in his Girdle, and three Guns upon his Shoulder, and I took one Pistol, and the other three myself, and in this Posture we marched out. I took a small Bottle of Rum in my Pocket, and gave *Friday* a large Bag, with more Powder and Bullet, and as to Orders, I charged him to keep close behind me, and not to stir, or shoot, or do anything, till I bid him, and in the meantime, not to speak a Word. In this Posture I fetched a Compass to my Right-Hand, of near a Mile, as well to get over the Creek, as to get into the Wood, so that I might come within shot of them, before I should be discover'd, which I had seen by my Glass, it was easy to do.

While I was making this March, my former Thoughts returning, I began to abate my Resolution, I do not mean, that I entertain'd any Fear of their Number, for as they were naked, unarm'd Wretches; it is certain I was superior to them, nay, though I had been alone,

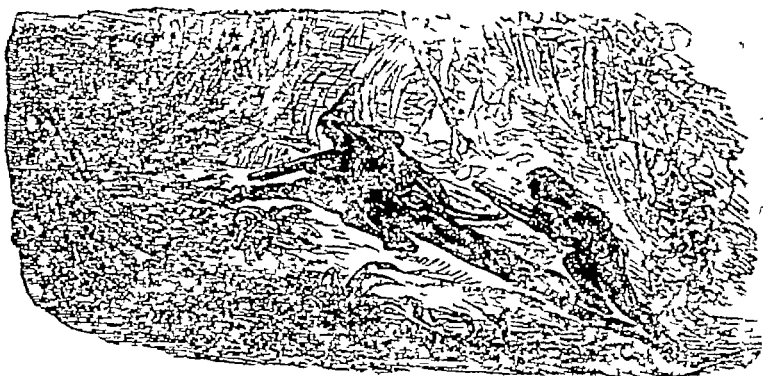
but it occur'd to my Thoughts, What Call? What Occasion? much less, What Necessity I was in to go and dip my Hands in Blood, to attack People, who had neither done, or intended me any Wrong? Who as to me were innocent, and whose barbarous Customs were their own Disaster, being in them a Token indeed of God's having left them, with the other Nations of that Part of the World, to such Stupidity, and to such inhuman Courses, but did not call me to take upon me to be a Judge of their Actions, much less an Executioner of his Justice, that whenever he thought fit, he would take the Cause into his own Hands, and by national Vengeance punish them as a People, for national Crimes, but that in the meantime, it was none of my Business, that it was true, *Friday* might justify it, because he was a declar'd Enemy, and in a State of War with those very particular People, and it was lawful for him to attack them, but I could not say the same with respect to me. These Things were so warmly pressed upon my Thoughts, all the way as I went, that I resolv'd I would only go and place myself near them, that I might observe their barbarous Feast, and that I would act then as God should direct; but that unless something offer'd that was more a Call to me than yet I knew of, I would not meddle with them.

With this Resolution I enter'd the Wood, and with all possible Wariness and Silence, *Friday* following close at my Heels, I marched till I came to the Skirt of the Wood, on the Side which was next to them, only that one Corner of the Wood lay between me and them, here I called softly to *Friday*, and showing him a great Tree, which was just at the Corner of the Wood, I bade him go to the Tree, and bring me Word if he could see there plainly what they were doing, he did so, and came immediately back to me, and told me they might be plainly view'd there, that they were all about their Fire, eating the Flesh of one of their Prisoners, and that another lay bound upon the Sand, a little from them, which he said they would kill next, and which fired all the very Soul within me, he told me it was not one of their Nation, but one of the bearded Men, who he had told me of, that came to their Country in the Boat, I was fill'd with Horror at the very naming the white-bearded Man, and going to the Tree, I saw plainly by my Glass, a white Man who lay upon the Beach of the Sea, with his Hands and his Feet tied, with Flags, or Things like Rushes, and that he was an *European*, and had Clothes on

There was another Tree, and a little Thicket beyond it, about

nity Yards nearer to them than the Place where I was, which by going a little way about, I saw I might come at undiscover'd, and that then I should be within half Shot of them, so I withheld my Passion though I was indeed enrag'd to the highest Degree, and going back about twenty Paces, I got behind some Bushes, which held all the way, till I came to the other Tree, and then I came to a little rising Ground, which gave me a full View of them, at the Distance of about eighty Yards

I had now not a Moment to lose, for nineteen of the dreadful Wretches sat upon the Ground, all close huddled together, and had just sent the other two to butcher the poor *Christian*, and bring him perhaps Limb by Limb to their Fire, and they were stooped down to



untie the Bands, at his Feet, I turned to *Friday*, now *Friday*, said I, do as I bid thee, *Friday* said he would, then *Friday*, says I, do exactly as you see me do, fail in nothing; so I set down one of the Muskets, and the Fowling Piece, upon the Ground, and *Friday* did the like by his, and with the other Musket, I took my aim at the Savages, bidding him do the like, then asking him, If he was ready? He said, yes, then fire at them, said I, and the same Moment I fired also

*Friday* took his Aim so much better than I, that on the Side that he shot, he killed two of them, and wounded three more; and on my Side, I killed one, and wounded two. They were, you may be sure, in a dreadful Consternation, and all of them, who were not hurt, jumped up upon their Feet, but did not immediately know

which way to run, or which way to look, for they knew not from whence their Destruction came *Friday* kept his Eyes close upon me, that as I had bid him, he might observe what I did, so as soon as the first Shot was made, I threw down the Piece, and took up the Fowling Piece, and *Friday* did the like, he see me cock, and present, he did the same again, Are you ready, *Friday*? said I, yes, says he, let fly then, says I, in the Name of God, and with that I fired again among the amaz'd Wretches, and so did *Friday*, and as our Pieces were now loaded with what I called Swan-Shot, or small Pistol Bullets, we found only two drop, but so many were wounded, that they ran about yelling, and screaming, like mad Creatures, all bloody, and miserably wounded, most of them, whereof three more fell quickly after, though not quite dead.

Now *Friday*, says I, laying down the discharg'd Pieces, and taking up the Musket, which was yet loaded; follow me, says I, which he did, with a great deal of Courage, upon which I rushed out of the Wood, and showed myself, and *Friday* close at my Foot, as soon as I perceiv'd they saw me, I shouted as loud as I could, and bade *Friday* do so too, and running as fast as I could, *which by the way, was not very fast, being laden with Arms as I was*, I made directly towards the poor Victim, who was, as I said, lying upon the beach, or Shore, between the Place where they sat, and the Sea, the two Butchers who were just going to work with him, had left him, at the Surprise of our first Fire, and fled in a terrible Fright, to the Sea Side, and had jumped into a *Canoe*, and three more of the rest made the same way, I turned to *Friday*, and bid him step forwards, and fire at them, he understood me immediately, and running about forty Yards, to be near them, he shot at them, and I thought he had killed them all; for I saw them all fall of a Heap into the Boat, though I saw two of them up again quickly. However, he killed two of them, and wounded the third, so that he lay down in the Bottom of the Boat, as if he had been dead.

While my Man *Friday* fired at them, I pulled out my Knife, and cut the Flags that bound the poor Victim, and loosing his Hands, and Feet, I lifted him up, and asked him in the *Portuguese* Tongue, What he was? He answer'd in Latin, *Christianus*, but was so weak, and faint, that he could scarce stand, or speak, I took my Bottle out of my Pocket, and gave it him, making Signs that he should drink, which he did; and I gave him a Piece of Bread, which he ate;



then I asked him, What Countryman he was? And he said *Espagnole*, and being a little recover'd, let me know by all the Signs he could possibly make, how much he was in my Debt for his Deliverance, *Signior*, said I, with as much *Spanish* as I could make up, we will talk afterwards, but we must fight now, if you have any Strength left, take this Pistol, and Sword, and lay about you, he took them very thankfully, and no sooner had he the Arms in his Hands, but as if they had put new Vigour into him, he flew upon his Murderers, like a Fury, and had cut two of them in Pieces, in an instant, for the Truth is, as the whole was a Surprise to them, so the poor Creatures were so much frighted with the Noise of our Pieces, that they fell down for mere Amazement, and Fear, and had no more Power to attempt their own Escape, than their Flesh had to resist our Shot, and that was the Case of those Five that *Friday* shot at in the Boat, for as three of them fell with the Hurt they receiv'd, so the other two fell with the Fright.

I kept my Piece in my Hand still, without firing, being willing to keep my Charge ready, because I had given the *Spaniard* my Pistol, and Sword, so I called to *Friday*, and bade him run up to the Tree, from whence we first fired, and fetch the Arms which lay there, that had been discharg'd, which he did with great Swiftness, and then giving him my Musket, I sat down myself to load all the rest again, and bade them come to me when they wanted. While I was loading these Pieces, there happen'd a fierce Engagement between the *Spaniard*, and one of the Savages, who made at him with one of their great wooden Swords, the same Weapon that was to have killed him before, if I had not prevented it. The *Spaniard*, who was as bold, and as brave as could be imagin'd, though weak, had fought this *Indian* a good while, and had cut him two great Wounds on his Head, but the Savage being a stout lusty Fellow, closing in with him, had thrown him down (being faint) and was wringing my Sword out of his Hand, when the *Spaniard*, though undermost, wisely quitting the Sword, drew the Pistol from his Girdle, shot the Savage through the Body, and killed him upon the Spot, before I, who was running to help him, could come near him.

*Friday* being now left to his Liberty, pursu'd the flying Wretches with no Weapon in his Hand, but his Hatchet, and with that he dispatch'd those three, who, as I said before, were wounded at first and fallen, and all the rest he could come up with, and the *Spaniard*

coming to me for a Gun, I gave him one of the Fowling Pieces, with which he pursu'd two of the Savages, and wounded them both, but as he was not able to run, they both got from him into the Wood, where *Friday* pursu'd them, and killed one of them, but the other was too nimble for him, and though he was wounded, yet had plunged himself into the Sea, and swam with all his might off to those two who were left in the *Canoe*, which three in the *Canoe*, with one wounded, who we know not whether he died or no, were all that escap'd our Hands of one-and-twenty. The Account of the Rest is as follows —

- 3 Killed at our first Shot from the Tree.
  - 2 Killed at the next Shot.
  - 2 Killed by *Friday* in the Boat.
  - 2 Killed by *Ditto*, of those at first wounded.
  - 1 Killed by *Ditto*, in the Wood.
  - 3 Killed by the *Spaniard*
  - 4 Killed, being found dropped here and there of their Wounds, or killed by *Friday* in his Chase of them
  - 4 Escap'd in the Boat, whereof one wounded if not dead.
- 
- 21 In all.
- 

Those that were in the *Canoe*, worked hard to get out of Gun-Shot, and though *Friday* made two or three Shots at them, I did not find that he hit any of them. *Friday* would fain have had me took one of their *Canoes*, and pursu'd them, and indeed I was very anxious about their Escape, lest carrying the News home to their People, they should come back perhaps with two or three hundred of their *Canoes*, and devour us by mere Multitude, so I consented to pursue them by Sea, and running to one of their *Canoes*, I jumped in, and bade *Friday* follow me, but when I was in the *Canoe*, I was surpris'd to find another poor Creature lie there alive, bound Hand and Foot, as the *Spaniard* was, for the Slaughter, and almost dead with Fear, not knowing what the Matter was, for he had not been able to look up over the Side of the Boat, he was tied so hard, Neck and Heels, and had been tied so long, that he had really but little Life in him.

I immediately cut the twisted Flags, or Rushes, which they had bound him with, and would have helped him up; but he could not stand,

or speak, but groaned most piteously, believing it seems still that he was only unbound in order to be killed

When *Friday* came to him, I bade him speak to him, and tell him of his Deliverance, and pulling out my Bottle, made him give the poor Wretch a Dram, which, with the News of his being deliver'd reviv'd him, and he sat up in the Boat, but when *Friday* came to hear him speak, and look in his Face, it would have moved any on to Tears, to have seen how *Friday* kissed him, embrac'd him, hugged him, cried, laughed, hollow'd, jumped about, danced, sung, then cried again, wrung his Hands, beat his own Face, and Head, and then sung, and jumped about again, like a distracted Creature. It was a good while before I could make him speak to me, or tell me

what was the Matter, but when he came a little to himself, he told me, that it was his Father

It is not easy for me to express how it moved me to see what Ecstasy and filial Affection had worked in this poor *Savage*, at the Sight of his Father, and of his being deliver'd from Death



nor indeed can I describe half the Extravagances of his Affection after this, for he went into the Boat, and out of the Boat a great many times. When he went in to him, he would sit down by him, open his Breast, and hold his Father's Head close to his Bosom, half an Hour together, to nourish it, then he took his Arms and Ankles, which were numbed and stiff with the Binding, and chafed and rubbed them with his Hands, and I perceiving what the Case was, gave him some Rum out of my Bottle, to rub them with, which did them great deal of Good

This Action put an End to our Pursuit of the Canoe, with the other *Savages*, who were now gotten almost out of Sight, and it was happy for us that we did not, for it blew so hard within two Hours

after, and before they could be gotten a Quarter of their Way, and continued blowing so hard all Night, and that from the *North-west* which was against them that I could not suppose their Boat could live, or that they ever reached to their own Coast.

But to return to *Friday*, he was so busy about his Father, that I could not find in my Heart to take him off for some time. But after I thought he could leave him a little, I called him to me, and he came jumping and laughing, and pleased to the highest Extreme, then I asked him, If he had given his Father any Bread? He shook his Head, and said, *None. Ugly Dog eat all up self*, so I gave him a Cake of Bread out of a little Pouch I carry'd on Purpose, I also gave him a Dram for himself, but he would not taste it, but carry'd it to his Father. I had in my Pocket also two or three Bunches of my Raisins, so I gave him a Handful of them for his Father. He had no sooner given his Father these Raisins, but I saw him come out of the Boat, and run away, as if he had been bewitch'd, he ran at such a Rate, for he was the swiftest Fellow of his Foot that ever I saw, I say, he ran at such a Rate, that he was out of Sight, as it were, in an instant, and though I called, and hollow'd too, after him, it was all one, away he went, and in a Quarter of an Hour, I saw him come back again, though not so fast as he went, and as he came nearer, I found his Pace was slacker, because he had something in his Hand.

When he came up to me, I found he had been quite Home for an Earthen Jug or Pot to bring his Father some fresh Water, and that he had got two more Cakes, or Loaves of Bread. The Bread he gave me, but the Water he carry'd to his Father. However, as I was very thirsty too, I took a little Sup of it. This Water reviv'd his Father more than all the Rum or Spirits I had given him, for he was just fainting with Thirst.

When his Father had drank, I called to him to know if there was any Water left, he said, yes, and I bade him give it to the poor *Spaniard*, who was in as much Want of it as his Father, and I sent one of the Cakes, that *Friday* brought, to the *Spaniard* too, who was indeed very weak, and was reposing himself upon a green Place under the Shade of a Tree, and whose Limbs were also very stiff, and very much swelled with the rude Bandage he had been tied with. When I saw that upon *Friday's* coming to him with the Water, he sat up and drank, and took the Bread, and began to eat, I went to him, and gave him a Handful of Raisins, he looked up in my Face

with all the Tokens of Gratitude and Thankfulness, that could appear in any Countenance, but was so weak, notwithstanding he had so exerted himself in the Fight, that he could not stand up upon his Feet he tried to do it two or three times, but was really not able, his Ankles were so swelled and so painful to him; so I bade him sit still and caused *Friday* to rub his Ankles, and bathe them with Rum, as he had done his Father's

I observ'd the poor affectionate Creature every two Minutes, or perhaps less, all the while he was here, turned his Head about, to see if his Father was in the same Place, and Posture, as he left him sitting, and at last he found he was not to be seen, at which he started up, and without speaking a Word, flew with that Swiftness to him, that one could scarce perceive his Feet to touch the Ground, as he went. But when he came, he only found he had laid himself down to ease his Limbs, so *Friday* came back to me presently, and I then spoke to the *Spaniard* to let *Friday* help him up if he could, and lead him to the Boat, and then he should carry him to our Dwelling, where I would take Care of him. But *Friday*, a lusty strong Fellow, took the *Spaniard* quite up upon his Back, and carry'd him away to the Boat, and set him down softly upon the Side or Gunnel of the Canoe, with his Feet in the inside of it, and then lifted him quite in, and set him close to his Father, and presently stepping out again, launched the Boat off, and paddled it along the Shore faster than I could walk, though the Wind blew pretty hard too, so he brought them both safe into our Creek, and leaving them in the Boat, runs away to fetch the other Canoe. As he passed me, I spoke to him, and asked him whither he went, he told me, *Go fetch more Boat*, so away he went like the Wind, for sure never Man or Horse run like him, and he had the other Canoe in the Creek, almost as soon as I got to it by Land so he wafted me over, and then went to help our new Guests out of the Boat, which he did, but they were neither of them able to walk; so that poor *Friday* knew not what to do

To remedy this, I went to Work in my Thought, and calling to *Friday* to bid them to sit down on the Bank while he came to me, soon made a Kind of Hand-Barrow to lay them on, and *Friday* and I carry'd them up both together upon it between us. But when we got them to the outside of our Wall or Fortification, we were at a worse Loss than before, for it was impossible to get them over, and I was resolv'd not to break it down. So I set to Work again, and

*Friday* and I, in about 2 Hours' time, made a very handsome Tent, cover'd with old Sails, and above that with Boughs of Trees, being in the Space without our outward Fence, and between that and the Grove of young Wood which I had planted And here we made them two Beds of such things as I had (*viz*) of good Rice-Straw, with Blankets laid upon it to lie on, and another to cover them on each Bed

My Island was now peopled, and I thought myself very rich in Subjects, and it was a merry Reflection which I frequently made, How like a King I looked. First of all, the whole Country was my own mere Property; so that I had an undoubted Right of Dominion *adly*, My People were perfectly subjected I was absolute Lord and Lawgiver, they all owed their Lives to me, and were ready to lay down their Lives, *if there had been Occasion of it*, for me. It was remarkable too, we had but three Subjects, and they were of three different Religions My Man *Friday* was a Protestant, his Father was a *Pagan* and a *Cannibal*, and the *Spaniard* was a Papist However, I allow'd Liberty of Conscience throughout my Dominions But this is by the Way.

As soon as I had secur'd my two weak rescued Prisoners, and given them Shelter, and a Place to rest them upon, I began to think of making some Provision for them And the first thing I did, I order'd *Friday* to take a yearling Goat, betwixt a Kid and a Goat, out of my particular Flock, to be killed, when I cut off the hinder Quarter, and chopping it into small Pieces, I set *Friday* to Work to boiling and stewing, and made them a very good Dish, I assure you, of Flesh and Broth, having put some Barley and Rice also into the Broth, and as I cooked it without Doors, for I made no Fire within my inner Wall, so I carry'd it all into the new Tent, and having set a Table there for them, I sat down and eat my own Dinner also with them, and, as well as I could, cheered them and encourag'd them, *Friday* being my Interpreter, especially to his Father, and indeed to the *Spaniard* too, for the *Spaniard* spoke the Language of the *Savages* pretty well

After we had dined, or rather supped, I order'd *Friday* to take one of the Canoes, and go and fetch our Muskets and other Firearms, which for Want of time we had left upon the Place of Battle, and the next Day I order'd him to go and bury the dead Bodies of the *Savages*, which lay open to the Sun, and would presently be offensive, and I also order'd him to bury the horrid Remains of their barbarous Feast, which I knew were pretty much, and which I could not think of doing

myself, nay, I could not bear to see them, if I went that Way All which he punctually performed, and defaced the very Appearance of the *Savages* being there, so that when I went again, I could scarce know where it was, otherwise than by the Corner of the Wood pointing to the Place.

I then began to enter into a little Conversation with my two new Subjects, and first I set *Friday* to inquire of his Father, what he thought of the Escape of the *Savages* in that Canoe, and whether we might expect a Return of them with a Power too great for us to resist His first Opinion was, that the *Savages* in the Boat never could live out the Storm which blew that Night they went off, but must of Necessity be drowned or driven *South* to those other Shores where they were as sure to be devoured as they were to be drowned if they were cast away, but as to what they would do if they came safe on Shore, he said he knew not, but it was his Opinion that they were so dreadfully frighted with the Manner of their being attack'd, the Noise and the Fire, that he believed they would tell their People, they were all killed by Thunder and Lightning, not by the Hand of Man, and that the two which appear'd, (*viz*) *Friday* and me, were two Heavenly Spirits or Furies, come down to destroy them, and not Men with Weapons This he said he knew, because he heard them all cry at so in their Language to one another, for it was impossible to them to conceive that a Man could dart Fire, and speak Thunder, and kill at a Distance without lifting up the Hand, as was done now And this old *Savage* was in the right, for, as I understood since by other Hands, the *Savages* never attempted to go over to the Island afterwards, they were so terrified with the Accounts given by those four Men, (for it seems they did escape the Sea) that they believ'd whoever went to that enchanted Island would be destroy'd with Fire from the Gods

This however I knew not, and therefore was under continual Apprehensions for a good while, and kept always upon my Guard, me and all my Army, for as we were now four of us, I would have ventur'd upon a hundred of them fairly in the open Field at any Time

In a little Time, however, no more Canoes appearing, the Fear of their Coming wore off, and I began to take my former Thoughts of a Voyage to the *Main* into Consideration, being likewise assur'd by *Friday's* Father, that I might depend on good Usage from their Nation on his Account, if I would go.

But my Thoughts were a little suspended, when I had a serious Discourse with the *Spaniard*, and when I understood that there were sixteen more of his Countrymen and *Portuguese*, who having been cast away, and made their Escape to that Side, lived there at Peace indeed with the Savages, but were very sore put to it for Necessaries, and indeed for Life. I asked him all the Particulars of their Voyage, and found they were a *Spanish* Ship bound from the *Rio de la Plata* to the *Havana*, being directed to leave their Lading there, which was chiefly Hides and Silver, and to bring back what *European* Goods they could meet with there, that they had five *Portuguese* Seamen on Board, whom they took out of another Wreck, that five of their own Men were drowned when the first Ship was lost, and that these escaped through infinite Dangers and Hazards, and arriv'd almost starved on the *Cannibal* Coast, where they expected to have been devour'd every Moment.

He told me, they had some Arms with them, but they were perfectly useless, for that they had neither Powder or Ball, the Washing of the Sea having spoiled all their Powder but a little, which they used at their first Landing to provide themselves some Food.

I asked him what he thought would become of them there, and if they had formed no Design of making any Escape? He said, They had many Consultations about it, but that having neither Vessel, or Tools to build one, or Provisions of any kind, their Councils always ended in Tears and Despair.

I asked him how he thought they would receive a Proposal from me, which might tend towards an Escape? And whether, if they were all here, it might not be done? I told him with Freedom, I feared mostly their Treachery and ill Usage of me, if I put my Life in their Hands, for that Gratitude was no inherent Virtue in the Nature of Man, nor did Men always square their Dealings by the Obligations they had receiv'd, so much as they did by the Advantages they expected. I told him it would be very hard, that I should be the Instrument of their Deliverance, and that they should afterwards make me their Prisoner in *New Spain*, where an *English* Man was certain to be made a Sacrifice, what Necessity, or what Accident soever, brought him thither. And that I had rather be deliver'd up to the *Savages*, and be devour'd alive, than fall into the merciless Claws of the Priests, and be carry'd into the *Inquisition*. I added, That otherwise I was persuaded, if they were all here, we might, with so many





of Providence, for my Support, and he saw evidently what Stock of Corn and Rice I had laid up, which as it was more than sufficient for myself, so it was not sufficient, at least without good Husbandry, for my Family; now it was increas'd to Number four But much less would it be sufficient, if his Countrymen, who were, as he said, fourteen still alive, should come over. And least of all should it be sufficient to victual our Vessel, if we should build one, for a Voyage to any of the Christian Colonies of *America* So he told me, he thought it would be more advisable, to let him and the two other, dig and cultivate some more Land, as much as I could spare Seed to sow, and that we should wait another Harvest, that we might have a Supply of Corn for his Countrymen when they should come, for Want might be a Temptation to them to disagree, or not to think themselves deliver'd, otherwise than out of one Difficulty into another You know, says he, the Children of *Israel*, though they rejoic'd at first for their being deliver'd out of *Egypt*, yet rebell'd even against God himself that deliver'd them, when they came to want Bread in the Wilderness

His Caution was so seasonable, and his Advice so good, that I could not but be very well pleased with his Proposal, as well as I was satisfy'd with his Fidelity So we fell to digging all four of us, as well as the Wooden Tools we were furnish'd with permitted, and in about a Month's time, by the End of which it was Seedtime, we had gotten as much Land cured and trimmed up, as we sowed 22 Bushels of Barley on, and 16 Jars of Rice, which was in short all the Seed we had to spare, nor indeed did we leave ourselves Barley sufficient for our own Food, for the six Months that we had to expect our Crop, that is to say, reckoning from the time we set our Seed aside for sowing, for it is not to be supposed it is six Months in the Ground in that Country.

Having now Society enough, and our Number being sufficient to put us out of Fear of the *Savages*, if they had come, unless their Number had been very great, we went freely all over the Island, wherever we found Occasion, and as here we had our Escape or Deliverance upon our Thoughts, it was impossible, *at least for me*, to have the Means of it out of mine, to this Purpose, I marked out several Trees which I thought fit for our Work; and I set *Friday* and his Father to cutting them down, and then I caused the *Spaniard*, to whom I imparted my Thought on that Affair, to oversee and direct their Work I showed them with what indefatigable Pains I had

hewed a large Tree into single Planks, and I caused them to do the like, till they had made about a Dozen large Planks of good Oak, near 2 Foot broad, 35 Foot long, and from 2 Inches to 4 Inches thick. What prodigious Labour it took up, any one may imagine.

At the same time I contriv'd to increase my little Flock of tame Goats as much as I could, and to this Purpose, I made *Friday* and the *Spaniard* go out one Day, and myself with *Friday* the next Day, for we took our Turns, and by this Means we got above 20 young Kids to breed up with the rest, for whenever we shot the Dam, we saved the Kids, and added them to our Flock. But above all, the Season for curing the Grapes coming on, I caused such a prodigious Quantity to be hung up in the Sun, that I believe, had we been at *Alicant*, where the Raisins of the Sun are cured, we could have filled 60 or 80 Barrels, and these with our Bread was a great Part of our Food, and very good living too, I assure you, for it is an exceeding nourishing Food.

It was now Harvest, and our Crop in good Order, it was not the most plentiful Increase I had seen in the Island, but however it was enough to answer our End, for from our 22 Bushels of Barley, we brought in and thrashed out above 220 Bushels, and the like in Proportion of the Rice, which was Store enough for our Food to the next Harvest, though all the 16 *Spaniards* had been on Shore with me, or if we had been ready for a Voyage, it would very plentifully have victualled our Ship, to have carry'd us to any Part of the World, that is to say, of *America*.

When we had thus housed and secur'd our Magazine of Corn, we fell to Work to make more Wicker Work, (*viz*) great Baskets in which we kept it, and the *Spaniard* was very handy and dexterous at this Part, and often blamed me that I did not make some things, for Defence, of this Kind of Work, but I saw no Need of it.

And now having a full Supply of Food for all the Guests I expected, I gave the *Spaniard* Leave to go over to the *Main*, to see what he could do with those he had left behind him there. I gave him a strict Charge in Writing, Not to bring any Man with him, who would not first swear in the Presence of himself and of the old *Savage*, That he would no way injure, fight with, or attack the Person he should find in the Island, who was so kind to send for them in order to their Deliverance, but that they would stand by and defend him against all such Attempts, and wherever they went, would be

entirely under and subjected by his Commands, and that this should be put in Writing, and signed with their Hands. How we were to have this done, when I knew they had neither Pen or Ink, that indeed was a Question which we never asked.

Under these Instructions, the *Spaniard*, and the old *Savage* the Father of *Friday*, went away in one of the Canoes, which they might be said to come in, or rather were brought in, when they came as Prisoners to be devour'd by the *Savages*.

I gave each of them a Musket with a Firelock on it, and about eight Charges of Powder and Ball, charging them to be very good Husbands of both, and not to use either of them but upon urgent Occasion.

This was a cheerful Work, being the first Measures used by me in View of my Deliverance for now 27 Years and some Days. I gave them Provisions of Bread, and of dried Grapes, sufficient for themselves for many Days, and sufficient for all their Countrymen for about eight Days' time, and wishing them a good Voyage, I saw them go, agreeing with them about a Signal they should hang out at their Return, by which I should know them again, when they came back, at a Distance, before they came on Shore.

They went away with a fair Gale on the Day that the Moon was at Full by my Account, in the Month of *October*. But as for an exact Reckoning of Days, after I had once lost it, I could never recover it again, nor had I kept even the Number of Years so punctually, as to be sure that I was right, though as it proved, when I afterwards examin'd my Account, I found I had kept a true Reckoning of Years.

It was no less than eight Days I had waited for them, when a strange and unforeseen Accident interven'd, of which the like has not perhaps been heard of in History. I was fast asleep in my Hutch one Morning, when my Man *Friday* came running in to me, and called aloud, Master, Master, they are come, they are come.

I jumped up, and regardless of Danger, I went out, as soon as I could get my Clothes on, through my little Grove, which by the Way was by this time grown to be a very thick Wood, I say, regardless of Danger, I went without my Arms, which was not my Custom to do. But I was surpris'd, when turning my Eyes to the Sea, I presently saw a Boat at about a League and half's Distance, standing in for the Shore, with a *Shoulder of Mutton Sail*, as they call it, and the Wind blowing pretty fair to bring them in, also I observ'd presently,

that they did not come from that Side which the Shore lay on, but from the Southernmost End of the Island Upon this I called *Friday* in, and bid him lie close, for these were not the People we looked for, and that we might not know yet whether they were Friends or Enemies.

In the next Place, I went in to fetch my Perspective Glass, to see what I could make of them, and having taken the Ladder out, I climbed up to the Top of the Hill, as I used to do when I was apprehensive of anything, and to take my View the plainer without being discover'd.

I had scarce set my Foot on the Hill, when my Eye plainly discover'd a Ship lying at an Anchor, at about two Leagues and a half's Distance from me South-south-east, but not above a League and a half from the Shore By my Observation it appear'd plainly to be an *English* Ship, and the Boat appear'd to be an *English* Longboat.

I cannot express the Confusion I was in, though the Joy of seeing a Ship, and one who I had Reason to believe was Manned by my own Countrymen, and consequently Friends, was such as I cannot describe, but yet I had some secret Doubts hung about me, I cannot tell from whence they came, bidding me keep upon my Guard. In the first Place, it occur'd to me to consider what Business an *English* Ship could have in that Part of the World, since it was not the Way to or from any Part of the World, where the *English* had any Traffic, and I knew there had been no Storms to drive them in there, as in Distress, and that if they were *English* really, it was most probable that they were here upon no good Design, and that I had better continue as I was, than fall into the Hands of Thieves and Murderers

Let no Man despise the secret Hints and Notices of Danger, which sometimes are given him, when he may think there is no Possibility of its being real That such Hints and Notices are given us, I believe few that have made any Observations of things, can deny, that they are certain Discoveries of an invisible World, and a Converse of Spirits, we cannot doubt, and if the Tendency of them seems to be to warn us of Danger, why should we not suppose they are from some friendly Agent, whether supreme, or inferior, and subordinate, is not the Question, and that they are given for our Good?

The present Question abundantly confirms me in the Justice of this Reasoning, for had I not been made cautious by this secret Admonition, come it from whence it will, I had been undone

inevitably. and in a far worse Condition than before, as you will see presently.

I had not kept myself long in this Posture, but I saw the Boat draw near the Shore, as if they looked for a Creek to thrust in at for the Convenience of Landing, however, as they did not come quite far enough, they did not see the little Inlet where I formerly landed my Rafts, but run their Boat on Shore upon the Beach, at about half a Mile from me, which was very happy for me, for otherwise they would have landed just as I may say at my Door, and would soon have beaten me out of my Castle, and perhaps have plunder'd me of all I had.

When they were on Shore, I was fully satisfy'd that they were *English Men*, at least, most of them, one or two I thought were



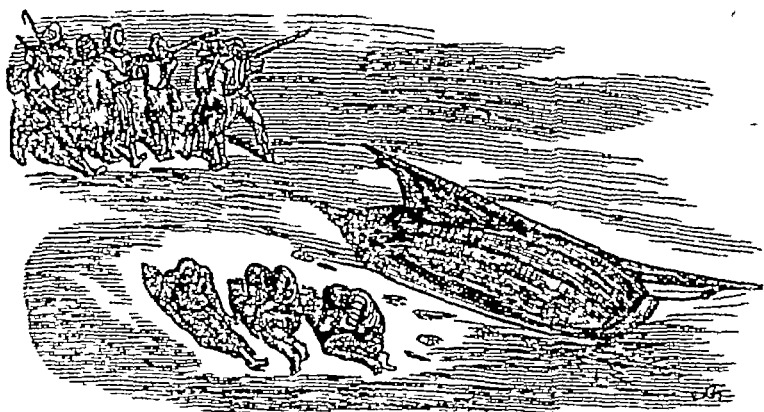
*Dutch*, but it did not prove so. There were in all eleven Men, whereof three of them I found were unarm'd, and as I thought, bound; and when the first four or five of them were jumped on Shore, they took those three out of the Boat as Prisoners. One of the three I could perceive using the most passionate Gestures of Entreaty, Affliction and Despair, even to a kind of Extravagance, the other two I could perceive lifted up their Hands sometimes, and appear'd concern'd indeed, but not to such a Degree as the first.

I was perfectly confounded at the Sight, and knew not what the Meaning of it should be. *Friday* called out to me in *English*, as well as he could, O Master! You see *English Mans eat Prisoner as well as Savage Mans*. Why, says I, *Friday*, Do you think they are

a going to eat them then? Yes, says Friday, *They will eat them* No, no, says I, Friday, *I am afraid they will murder them indeed, but you may be sure they will not eat them*

All this while I had no thought of what the Matter really was; but stood trembling with the Horror of the Sight, expecting every Moment when the three Prisoners should be killed, nay, once I saw one of the Villains lift up his Arm with a great Cutlass, as the Seamen call it, or Sword, to strike one of the poor Men, and I expected to see him fall every Moment, at which all the Blood in my Body seemed to run chill in my Veins

I wished heartily now for my *Spaniard*, and the *Savage* that was gone with him, or that I had any way to have come undiscover'd



within shot of them, that I might have rescu'd the three Men, for I saw no Fire Arms they had among them, but it fell out to my Mind another way

After I had observ'd the outrageous Usage of the three Men, by the insolent Seamen, I observ'd the Fellows run scattering about the Land, as if they wanted to see the Country I observ'd that the three other Men had Liberty to go also where they pleased, but they sat down all three upon the Ground, very pensive, and looked like Men in Despair

This put me in Mind of the first Time when I came on Shore, and began to look about me How I gave myself over for lost How wild I looked round me What dreadful Apprehensions I had

And how I lodged in the Tree all Night for fear of being devour'd by wild Beasts.

As I knew nothing that Night of the Supply I was to receive by the providential Driving of the Ship nearer the Land, by the Storms and Tide, by which I have since been so long nourish'd and supported; so these three poor desolate Men knew nothing how certain of Deliverance and Supply they were, how near it was to them, and now effectually and really they were in a Condition of Safety, at the same Time that they thought themselves lost, and their Case desperate

So little do we see before us in the World, and so much reason have we to depend cheerfully upon the great Maker of the World, that he does not leave his Creatures so absolutely destitute, but that in the worst Circumstances they have always something to be thankful for, and sometimes are nearer their Deliverance than they imagine, nay, are even brought to their Deliverance by the Means by which they seem to be brought to their Destruction

It was just at the Top of High-Water when these People came on Shore, and while partly they stood parleying with the Prisoners they brought, and partly while they rambled about to see what kind of a Place they were in; they had carelessly stay'd till the Tide was spent, and the Water was ebb'd considerably away, leaving their Boat a-ground

They had left two Men in the Boat, who as I found afterwards, having drank a little too much Brandy, fell asleep, however, one of them waking sooner than the other, and finding the Boat too fast a-ground for him to stir it, hollow'd for the rest who were straggling about, upon which they all soon came to the Boat, but it was past all their Strength to launch her, the Boat being very heavy, and the Shore on that Side being a soft oozy Sand, almost like a Quick-sand.

In this Condition, like true Seamen who are perhaps the least of all Mankind given to forethought, they gave it over, and away they strolled about the Country again, and I heard one of them say aloud to another, calling them off from the Boat, *Why let her alone, Jack, can't ye, she will float next Tide*, by which I was fully confirm'd in the main Inquiry, of what Countrymen they were

All this while I kept myself very close, not once daring to stir out of my Castle any farther than to my Place of Observation, near the



Top of the Hill, and very glad I was, to think how well it was fortify'd I knew it was no less than ten Hours before the Boat could be on float again, and by that Time it would be dark, and I might be at more Liberty to see their Motions, and to hear their Discourse; if they had any

In the meantime, I fitted myself up for a Battle, as before, though with more Caution, knowing I had to do with another kind of Enemy than I had at first I order'd *Friday* also, who I had made an excellent Marksman with his Gun, to load himself with Arms I took myself two Fowling Pieces, and I gave him three Muskets, my Figure indeed was very fierce, I had my formidable Goat-Skin Coat on, with the great Cap I have mention'd, a naked Sword by my Side, two Pistols in my Belt, and a Gun upon each Shoulder

It was my Design, as I said above, not to have made any Attempt till it was Dark But about Two o'Clock, being the Heat of the Day, I found that in short they were all gone straggling into the Woods, and as I thought were laid down to Sleep The three poor distressed Men, too anxious for their Condition to get any Sleep, were however set down under the Shelter of a great Tree, at about a quarter of a Mile from me, and as I thought out of sight of any of the rest

Upon this I resolv'd to discover myself to them, and learn something of their Condition Immediately I marched in the Figure as above, my Man *Friday* at a good Distance behind me, as formidable for his Arms as I, but not making quite so staring a *Spectre-like* Figure as I did.

I came as near them undiscover'd as I could, and then before any of them saw me, I called aloud to them in *Spanish*, *What are ye Gentlemen?*

They started up at the Noise, but were ten times more confounded, when they saw me, and the uncouth Figure that I made They made no Answer at all, but I thought I perceiv'd them just going to fly from me, when I spoke to them in *English*, Gentlemen, said I, do not be surpris'd at me, perhaps you may have a Friend near you when you did not expect it. He must be sent directly from Heaven then, said one of them very gravely to me, and pulling off his hat at the same time to me, for our Condition is past the Help of Man All Help is from Heaven, Sir, said I But can you put a Stranger in the way how to help you, for you seem to me to be in some great Distress? I saw you when you landed, and when you seem'd to make Applications to

the Brutes that came with you, I saw one of them lift up his Sword to kill you

The poor Man with Tears running down his Face, and trembling, looking like one astonish'd, return'd, *Am I talking to God, or Man? Is it a real Man, or an Angel?* Be in no fear about that, Sir, said I, if God had sent an Angel to relieve you, he would have come better Clothed, and Armed after another manner than you see me in, pray lay aside your Fears, I am a Man, an *Englishman*, and dispos'd to assist you, you see; I have one Servant only, we have Arms and Ammunition, tell us freely, Can we serve you?—What is your Case?

Our Case, said he, Sir, is too long to tell you, while our Murderers are so near, but in short, Sir, I was Commander of that Ship, my Men have Mutinied against me, they have been hardly prevail'd on not to Murder me, and at last have set me on Shore in this desolate Place, with these two Men with me, one my Mate, the other a Passenger, where we expected to Perish, believing the Place to be uninhabited, and know not yet what to think of it

Where are those Brutes, your Enemies, said I, do you know where they are gone? *There they lie, Sir*, said he, pointing to a Thicket of Trees, *my Heart trembles, for fear they have seen us, and heard you speak, if they have, they will certainly Murder us all*

Have they any Fire-Arms, said I, He answered they had only two Pieces, and one which they left in the Boat. Well then, said I, leave the rest to me, I see they are all asleep, it is an easy thing to kill them all, but shall we rather take them Prisoners? He told me there were two desperate Villains among them, that it was scarce safe to show any Mercy to, but if they were secur'd, he believ'd all the rest would return to their Duty. I asked him, which they were? He told me he could not at that distance describe them, but he would obey my Orders in anything I would direct. Well, says I, let us retreat out of their View or Hearing, lest they awake, and we will resolve further; so they willingly went back with me, till the Woods cover'd us from them.

Look you, Sir, said I, if I venture upon your Deliverance, are you willing to make two Conditions with me, he anticipated my Proposals, by telling me, that both he and the Ship, if recover'd, should be wholly Directed and Commanded by me in everything, and if the Ship was not recover'd, he would live and die with me in what Part

of the World soever I would send him , and the two other Men said the same.

*Well*, says I, *my Conditions are but two* 1. That while you stay on this Island with me, you will not pretend to any Authority here , and if I put Arms into your Hands, you will upon all Occasions give them up to me, and do no Prejudice to me or mine, upon this Island, and in the meantime be govern'd by my Orders.

2 That if the Ship is, or may be recover'd, you will carry me and my Man to *England* Passage free.

He gave me all the Assurances that the Invention and Faith of Man could devise, that he would comply with these most reasonable Demands, and besides would owe his Life to me, and acknowledge it upon all Occasions as long as he lived.

*Well then*, said I, here are three Muskets for you, with Powder and Ball , tell me next what you think is proper to be done. He showed all the Testimony of his Gratitude that he was able , but offer'd to be wholly guided by me. I told him I thought it was hard venturing anything , but the best Method I could think of was to fire upon them at once, as they lay , and if any was not killed at the first Volley, and offered to submit, we might save them, and so put it wholly upon God's Providence to direct the shot.

He said very modestly, that he was loth to kill them, if he could help it, but that those two were incorrigible Villains, and had been the Authors of all the Mutiny in the Ship, and if they escaped, we should be all undone still , for they would go on Board, and bring the whole Ship's Company, and destroy us all. *Well then*, says I, *Necessity* legitimates my Advice , for it is the only Way to save our Lives. However, seeing him still cautious of shedding Blood, I told him they should go themselves, and manage as they found convenient.

In the Middle of this Discourse, we heard some of them awake, and soon after, we saw two of them on their Feet, I asked him, if either of them were of the Men who he had said were the Heads of the Mutiny? He said, *No* . *Well then*, said I, you may let them escape, and Providence seems to have waken'd them on Purpose to save themselves. Now, says I, if the rest escape you, *it is your Fault*

Animated with this, he took the Musket, I had given him, in his Hand, and a Pistol in his Belt, and his two Comrades with him, with

each Man a Piece in his Hand. The two Men who were with him, going first, made some Noise, at which one of the Seamen who was awake, turned about, and seeing them coming, cried out to the rest, but it was too late then, for the Moment he cried out, they fired, *I mean the two Men*, the Captain wisely reserving his own Piece. They had so well aimed their Shot at the Men they knew, that one of them was killed on the Spot, and the other very much wounded, but not being dead, he started up upon his Feet, and called eagerly for help to the other; but the Captain stepping to him, told him, it was too late to cry for help, he should call upon God to forgive his Villany, and with that Word knocked him down with the Stock of his Musket, so that he never spoke more. There were three more in the Company, and one of them was also slightly wounded. By this Time I was come, and when they saw their Danger, and that it was in vain to resist, they begged for Mercy. The Captain told them, he would spare their Lives, if they would give him any Assurance of their Abhorrence of the Treachery they had been guilty of, and would swear to be faithful to him in recovering the Ship, and afterwards in carrying her back to *Jamaica*, from whence they came. They gave him all the Protestations of their Sincerity that could be desir'd, and he was willing to believe them, and spare their Lives, which I was not against, only that I oblig'd him to keep them bound Hand and Foot while they were upon the Island.

While this was doing, I sent *Friday* with the Captain's Mate to the Boat, with Orders to secure her, and bring away the Oars, and Sail, which they did, and by and by, three straggling Men that were (happily for them) parted from the rest, came back upon hearing the Guns fired, and seeing their Captain, who before was their Prisoner, now their Conqueror, they submitted to be bound also, and so our Victory was complete.

It now remain'd, that the Captain and I should inquire into one another's Circumstances. I began first, and told him my whole History, which he heard with an Attention even to Amazement, and particularly, at the wonderful Manner of my being furnish'd with Provisions and Ammunition, and indeed, as my Story is a whole Collection of Wonders, it affected him deeply, but when he reflected from thence upon himself, and how I seemed to have been preserv'd there, on purpose to save his Life, the Tears ran down his Face, and he could not speak a Word more.

After this Communication was at an End, I carry'd him and his two Men into my Apartment, leading them in, just where I came out, *viz* At the Top of the House, where I refresh'd them with such Provisions as I had, and showed them all the Contrivances I had made, during my long, long inhabiting that Place

All I showed them, all I said to them, was perfectly amazing, but above all, the Captain admir'd my Fortification, and how perfectly I had conceal'd my Retreat with a Grove of Trees, which having been now planted near twenty Years, and the Trees growing much faster than in *England*, was become a little Wood, and so thick, that it was unpassable in any Part of it, but at that one Side, where I had reserv'd my little winding Passage into it I told him, this was my Castle, and my Residence, but that I had a Seat in the Country, as most Princes have, whither I could retreat upon Occasion, and I would show him that too another Time, but at present, our Business was to consider how to recover the Ship He agreed with me as to that, but told me, he was perfectly at a Loss what Measures to take, for that there were still six-and-twenty Hands on board, who having enter'd into a curs'd Conspiracy, by which they had all forfeited their Lives to the Law, would be harden'd in it now by Desperation, and would carry it on, knowing that if they were reduc'd, they should be brought to the Gallows, as soon as they came to *England*, or to any of the *English* Colonies, and that therefore there would be no attacking them, with so small a Number as we were

I mused for some Time upon what he had said, and found it was a very rational Conclusion, and that therefore something was to be resolv'd on very speedily, as well to draw the Men on board into some Snare for their Surprise, as to prevent their Landing upon us, and destroying us, upon this it presently occur'd to me, that in a little while the Ship's Crew wondering what was become of their Comrades, and of the Boat, would certainly come on Shore in their other Boat, to see for them, and that then perhaps they might come armed, and be too strong for us, this he allow'd was rational.

Upon this, I told him the first Thing we had to do, was to stave the Boat, which lay upon the Beach, so that they might not carry her off, and taking everything out of her, leave her so far useless as not to be fit to swim, accordingly we went on board, took the Arms which were left on-board, out of her, and whatever else we found there, which was a Bottle of Brandy, and another of Rum, a few

Biscuit Cakes, a Horn of Powder, and a great Lump of Sugar, in a Piece of Canvas, the Sugar was five or six Pounds, all which was very welcome to me, especially the Brandy, and Sugar, of which I had none left for many Years

When we had carry'd all these Things on Shore (the Oars, Mast, Sail, and Rudder of the Boat, were carry'd away before, as above) we knock'd a great Hole in her Bottom, that if they had come strong enough to master us, yet they could not carry off the Boat.

Indeed, it was not much in my Thoughts, that we could be able to recover the Ship, but my View was that if they went away without the Boat, I did not much question to make her fit again, to carry us away to the *Leward* Islands, and call upon our Friends, the *Spaniards*, in my way, for I had them still in my Thoughts

While we were thus preparing our Designs, and had first, by main Strength heaved the Boat up upon the Beach, so high that the Tide would not float her off at High-Water-Mark, and besides, had broke a Hole in her Bottom, too big to be quickly stopped, and were sat down musing what we should do, we heard the Ship fire a Gun, and saw her make a Waft with her Ancient, as a Signal for the Boat to come on board, but no Boat stirr'd, and they fired several Times, making other Signals for the Boat.

At last, when all their Signals and Firings proved fruitless, and they found the Boat did not stir, we saw them by the Help of my Glasses, hoist another Boat out, and row towards the Shore, and we found as they approach'd, that there were no less than ten Men in her, and that they had Firearms with them

As the Ship lay almost two Leagues from the Shore, we had a full View of them as they came, and a plain Sight of the Men even of their Faces, because the Tide having set them a little to the *East* of the other Boat, they rowed up under Shore, to come to the same Place, where the other had landed, and where the Boat lay

By this Means, I say, we had a full View of them, and the Captain knew the Persons and Characters of all the Men in the Boat, of whom he said, that there were three very honest Fellows, who he was sure were led into this Conspiracy by the rest, being overpower'd and frighted.

But that as for the Boatswain, who it seems was the chief Officer

among them, and all the rest, they were as outrageous as any of the Ship's Crew, and were no doubt made desperate in their new Enterprise, and terribly apprehensive he was, that they would be too powerful for us

I smiled at him, and told him, that Men in our Circumstances were past the Operation of Fear That seeing almost every Condition that could be, was better than that which we were suppos'd to be in, we ought to expect that the Consequence, whether Death or Life, would be sure to be a Deliverance I asked him, What he thought of the Circumstances of my Life? And, Whether a Deliverance were not worth venturing for? And where, Sir, said I, is your Belief of my being preserv'd here on purpose to save your Life, which elevated you a little while ago? For my Part, said I, there seems to be but one Thing amiss in all the Prospect of it, *What's that?* Says he, why, said I, it is, that as you say, there are three or four honest Fellows among them, which should be spared, had they been all of the wicked Part of the Crew, I should have thought God's Providence had singled them out to deliver them into your Hands, for depend upon it, every Man of them that comes ashore are our own, and shall die, or live, as they behave to us

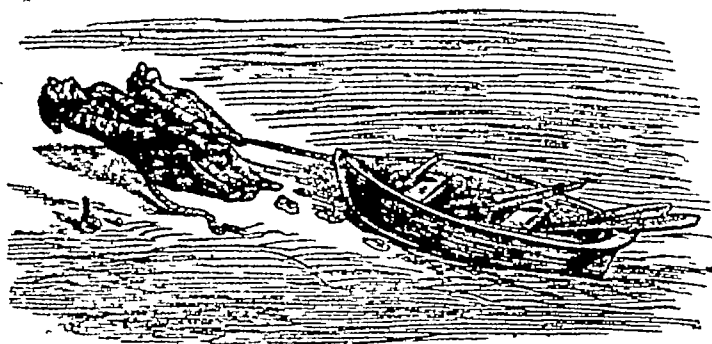
As I spoke this with a raised Voice and cheerful Countenance, I found it greatly encourag'd him, so we set vigorously to our Business We had upon the first Appearance of the Boat's coming from the Ship, consider'd of separating our Prisoners, and had indeed secur'd them effectually

Two of them, of whom the Captain was less assur'd than ordinary, I sent with *Friday*, and one of the three (deliver'd Men) to my Cave, where they were remote enough, and out of Danger of being heard or discover'd, or of finding their way out of the Woods, if they could have deliver'd themselves Here they left them bound, but gave them Provisions, and promis'd them if they continu'd there quietly, to give them their Liberty in a Day or two, but that if they attempted their Escape, they should be put to Death without Mercy They promis'd faithfully to bear their Confinement with Patience, and were very thankful that they had such good Usage, as to have Provisions, and a Light left them, for *Friday* gave them Candles (such as we made ourselves) for their Comfort, and they did not know but that he stood Sentinel over them at the Entrance

The other Prisoners had better Usage, two of them were kept

pinion'd indeed, because the Captain was not free to trust them, but the other two were taken into my Service upon their Captain's Recommendation, and upon their solemnly engaging to live and die with us, so with them and the three honest Men, we were seven Men, well armed, and I made no doubt we should be able to deal well enough with the Ten that were a coming, considering that the Captain had said, there were three or four honest Men among them also

As soon as they got to the Place where their other Boat lay, they run their Boat into the Beach, and came all on Shore, hauling the Boat up after them, which I was glad to see, for I was afraid they would rather have left the Boat at an Anchor, some Distance from the Shore, with some Hands in her, to guard her, and so we should not be able to seize the Boat.



Being on Shore, the first Thing they did, they ran all to their other Boat, and it was easy to see that they were under a great Surprise, to find her stripped as above, of all that was in her, and a great hole in her Bottom

After they had mused a while upon this, they set up two or three great Shouts, hollowing with all their might, to try if they could make their Companions hear, but all was to no purpose. Then they came all close in a Ring, and fired a Volley of their small Arms, which indeed we heard, and the Echoes made the Woods ring, but it was all one, those in the Cave we were sure could not hear, and those in our keeping, though they heard it well enough, yet durst give no Answer to them

They were so astonish'd at the Surprise of this, that as they told us afterwards, they resolv'd to go all on board again to their Ship, and



let them know that the Men were all murder'd, and the Long-Boat staved, accordingly they immediately launched their Boat again and gat all of them on board

The Captain was terribly amaz'd, and even confounded at this, believing they would go on board the Ship again, and set Sail, giving their Comrades for lost, and so he should still lose the Ship, which he was in Hopes we should have recover'd, but he was quickly as much frighted the other way

They had not been long put off with the Boat, but we perceiv'd them all coming on Shore again, but with this new Measure in their Conduct, which it seems they consulted together upon, *viz* To leave three Men in the Boat, and the rest go on Shore, and go up into the Country to look for their Fellows.

This was a great Disappointment to us, for now we were at a Loss what to do, for our seizing those seven Men on Shore would be no Ad-



vantage to us, if we let the Boat escape, because they would then row away to the Ship, and then the rest of them would be sure to weigh and set Sail, and so our recovering the Ship would be lost.

However, we had no Remedy, but to wait and see what the Issue of Things might present, the seven Men came on Shore, and the three who remain'd in the Boat, put her off to a good Distance from the Shore, and came to an Anchor to wait for them, so that it was impossible for us to come at them in the Boat

Those that came on Shore, kept close together, marching towards the Top of the little Hill, under which my Habitation lay, and we could see them plainly, though they could not perceive us. We could have been very glad they would have come nearer to us, so that we

might have fired at them, or that they would have gone father off, that we might have come abroad.

But when they were come to the Brow of the Hill, where they could see a great way into the Valleys and Woods, which lay towards the *North-East* Part, and where the Island lay lowest, they shouted, and hollow'd, till they were weary, and not caring it seems to venture far from the Shore, nor far from one another, they sat down together under a Tree, to consider of it. Had they thought fit to have gone to sleep there, as the other Party of them had done, they had done the Job for us: but they were too full of Apprehensions of Danger, to venture to go to sleep, though they could not tell what the Danger was they had to fear neither.

The Captain made a very just Proposal to me, upon this Consultation of theirs, *viz* That perhaps they would all fire a Volley again, to endeavour to make their Fellows hear, and that we should all Sally upon them, just at the Juncture when their Pieces were all discharg'd, and they would certainly yield, and we should have them without Bloodshed. I liked the Proposal, provided it was done while we were near enough to come up to them, before they could load their Pieces again.

But this Event did not happen, and we lay still a long Time, very irresolute what Course to take, at length I told them, there would be nothing to be done in my Opinion till Night, and then if they did not return to the Boat, perhaps we might find a way to get between them, and the Shore, and so might use some Stratagem with them in the Boat, to get them on Shore.

We waited a great while, though very impatient for their removing, and were very uneasy, when after long Consultations, we saw them start all up, and march down toward the Sea. It seems they had such dreadful Apprehensions upon them, of the Danger of the Place, that they resolv'd to go on board the Ship again, give their Companions over for lost, and so go on with their intended Voyage with the Ship.

As soon as I perceiv'd them go towards the Shore, I imagin'd it to be as it really was, That they had given over their Search, and were for going back again, and the Captain, as soon as I told him my Thoughts, was ready to sink at the Apprehensions of it, but I presently thought of a Stratagem to fetch them back again, and which answer'd my End to a Tittle.

I order'd *Friday*, and the Captain's Mate, to go over the little Creek *Westward*, towards the Place where the *Savages* came on Shore, when *Friday* was rescu'd, and as soon as they came to a little rising Ground, at about half a Mile Distance, I bade them holl low, as loud as they could, and wait till they found the Seamen heard them, that as soon as ever they heard the Seamen answer them, they should return it again, and then keeping out-of Sight, take a round, always answering when the other hollow'd, to draw them as far into the Island, and among the Woods, as possible, and then wheel about again to me, by such ways as I directed them

They were just going into the Boat, when *Friday* and the Mate hollow'd, and they presently heard them, and answering, run along the Shore *Westward*, towards the Voice they heard, when they were presently stopped by the Creek, where the Water being up, they could not get over, and called for the Boat to come up, and set them over, as indeed I expected

When they had set themselves over, I observ'd, that the Boat being gone up a good way into the Creek, and as it were, in a Harbour within the Land, they took one of the three Men out of her to go along with them, and left only two in the Boat, having fastened her to the Stump of a little Tree on the Shore.

This was what I wished for, and immediately leaving *Friday* and the Captain's Mate to their Business, I took the rest with me, and crossing the Creek out of their Sight, we surpris'd the two Men before they were aware, one of them lying on Shore, and the other being in the Boat, the Fellow on Shore, was between sleeping and waking, and going to start up, the Captain who was foremost, ran in upon him, and knocked him down, and then called out to him in the Boat, to yield, or he was a dead Man

There needed very few Arguments to persuade a single Man to yield, when he saw five Men upon him, and his Comrade knocked down, besides, this was it seems one of the three who were not so hearty in the Mutiny as the rest of the Crew, and therefore was easily persuaded, not only to yield, but afterwards to join very sincere with us

In the meantime, *Friday* and the Captain's Mate so well manag'd their Business with the rest, that they drew them by hollowing and answering, from one Hill to another, and from one Wood to another, till they not only heartily tired them, but left them, where they were

very sure they could not reach back to the Boat, before it was dark, and indeed they were heartily tired themselves also by the Time they came back to us

We had nothing now to do, but to watch for them, in the Dark, and fall upon them, so as to make sure work with them

It was several Hours after *Friday* came back to me, before they came back to their Boat, and we could hear the foremost of them long before they came quite up, calling to those behind to come along, and could also hear them answer and complain, how lame and tired they were, and not able to come any faster, which was very welcome News to us

At length they came up to the Boat, But it is impossible to express their Confusion, when they found the Boat fast aground in the Creek, the Tide ebbed out, and their two Men gone We could hear them call to one another in a most lamentable Manner, telling one another, they were gotten into an enchanted Island, that either there were Inhabitants in it, and they should all be murder'd, or else there were Devils and Spirits in it, and they should be all carry'd away, and devour'd

They hallow'd again, and called their two Comrades by their Names, a great many times, but no Answer. After some time, we could see them, by the little Light there was, run about wringing their Hands like Men in Despair; and that sometimes they would go and sit down in the Boat to rest themselves, then come ashore again, and walk about again, and so over the same thing again

My Men would fain have me given them Leave to fall upon them at once in the Dark; but I was willing to take them at some Advantage, so to spare them, and kill as few of them as I could, and especially I was unwilling to hazard the killing any of our own Men, knowing the other were very well armed I resolved to wait to see if they did not separate, and therefore to make sure of them, I drew my Ambuscade nearer, and order'd *Friday* and the Captain, to creep upon their Hands and Feet as close to the Ground as they could, that they might not be discover'd, and get as near them as they could possibly, before they offered to fire

They had not been long in that Posture, but that the Boatswain, who was the principal Ringleader of the Mutiny, and had now shown himself the most dejected and dispirited of all the rest, came walking towards them with two more of their Crew, the Captain was so eager,

as having this principal Rogue so much in his Power, that he could hardly have Patience to let him come so near, as to be sure of him, for they only heard his Tongue before But when they came nearer, the Captain and *Friday* starting up on their Feet, let fly at them

The Boatswain was killed upon the Spot, the next Man was shot into the Body, and fell just by him, though he did not die till an Hour or two after, and the third run for it.

At the Noise of the Fire, I immediately advanc'd with my whole Army, which was now 8 Men, viz myself *Generalissimo*, *Friday* my Lieutenant-General, the Captain and his two Men, and the three Prisoners of War, whom we had trusted with Arms

We came upon them indeed in the Dark, so that they could not see our Number, and I made the Man we had left in the Boat, who was now one of us, call to them by Name, to try if I could bring them to a Parley, and so might perhaps reduce them to Terms, which fell out just as we desir'd For indeed it was easy to think, as their Condition then was, they would be very willing to capitulate, so he call'd out as loud as he could, to one of them, *Tom Smith, Tom Smith*, *Tom Smith* answered immediately, *Who's that*, Robinson? for it seems he knew his Voice The other answered *Ay, ay, for God's sake*, *Tom Smith, throw down your Arms, and yield, or you are all dead Men this Moment*

*Who must we yield to? where are they?* (says *Smith* again,) *Here they are*, says he, here's our Captain, and fifty Men with him, have been hunting you this two Hours, the Boatswain is killed, *Will Frye* is wounded, and I am a Prisoner, and if you do not yield, you are all lost.

Will they give us Quarter then, (says *Tom Smith*) and we will yield? *I'll go and ask, if you promise to yield*, says *Robinson*, so he asked the Captain, and the Captain then calls himself out, *You Smith, you know my Voice, if you lay down your Arms immediately, and submit, you shall have your Lives all but Will Atkins*

Upon this, *Will Atkins* cried out, *For God's sake, Captain, give me Quarter, what have I done? They have been all as bad as I*, which by the Way was not true neither, for it seems this *Will Atkins* was the first Man that laid hold of the Captain, when they first mutiny'd, and used him barbarously, in tying his Hands, and giving him injurious Language. However, the Captain told him he must lay down his

Arms at Discretion, and trust to the Governor's Mercy, by which he meant me, for they all called me Governor.

In a Word, they all laid down their Arms, and begged their Lives, and I sent the Man that had parley'd with them, and two more, who bound them all; and then my Great Army of 50 Men, which particularly with those three, were all but eight, came up and seized upon them all and upon their Boat, only that I kept myself and one more out of Sight, for Reasons of State.

Our next Work was to repair the Boat, and think of seizing the Ship; and as for the Captain, now he had Leisure to parley with them. He expostulated with them upon the Villany of their Practices with him, and at length upon the farther Wickedness of their Design, and how certainly it must bring them to Misery and Distress in the End, and perhaps to the Gallows.

They all appear'd very penitent, and begg'd hard for their Lives, as for that, he told them, they were none of his Prisoners, but the Commander of the Island, that they thought they had set him on Shore in a barren uninhabited Island, but it had pleased God so to direct them, that the Island was inhabited, and that the Governor was an *English* Man, that He might hang them all there, if he pleased, but as he had given them all Quarter, he supposed he would send them to *England* to be dealt with there, as Justice requir'd, except *Akins*, who he was commanded by the Governor to advise to prepare for Death, for that he would be hang'd in the Morning.

Though this was all a Fiction of his own, yet it had its desired Effect; *Akins* fell upon his Knees to beg the Captain to intercede with the Governor for his Life, and all the rest begged of him for God's sake, that they might not be sent to *England*.

It now occur'd to me that the time of our Deliverance was come, and that it would be a most easy thing to bring these Fellows in, to be hearty in getting Possession of the Ship, so I retir'd in the Dark from them, that they might not see what Kind of a Governor they had, and called the Captain to me, when I called, as at a good Distance, one of the Men was order'd to speak again, and say to the Captain, *Captain, the Commander calls for you*, and presently the Captain reply'd, *Tell his Excellency, I am just a coming*. This more perfectly amused them, and they all believed that the Commander was just by with his fifty Men.

Upon the Captain's coming to me, I told him my Project for seiz-

ing the Ship, which he liked of wonderfully well, and resolv'd to put it in Execution the next Morning

But in Order to execute it with more Art, and secure of Success, I told him, we must divide the Prisoners, and that he should go and take *Atkins* and two more of the worst of them, and send them pinion'd to the Cave where the others lay: This was committed to *Friday* and the two Men who came on Shore with the Captain.

They convey'd them to the Cave, as to a Prison, and it was indeed a dismal Place, especially to Men in their Condition

The other I order'd to my *Bower*, as I called it, of which I have given a full Description, and as it was fenced in, and they pinion'd, the Place was secure enough, considering they were upon their Behaviour

To these in the Morning I sent the Captain, who was to enter into a Parley with them, in a Word to try them, and tell me, whether he thought they might be trusted or no, to go on Board and surprise the Ship. He talked to them of the Injury done him, of the Condition they were brought to, and that though the Governor had given them Quarter for their Lives, as to the present Action, yet that if they were sent to *England*, they would all be hanged in Chains, to be sure, but that if they would join in so just an Attempt, as to recover the Ship, he would have the Governor's Engagement for their Pardon.

Any one may guess how readily such a Proposal would be accepted by Men in their Condition, they fell down on their Knees to the Captain, and promised with the deepest Imprecations, that they would be faithful to him to the last Drop, and that they should owe their Lives to him, and would go with him all over the World, that they would own him for a Father to them as long as they lived.

Well, says the Captain, I must go and tell the Governor what you say, and see what I can do to bring him to consent to it. So he brought me an Account of the Temper he found them in, and that he verily believ'd they would be faithful.

However, that we might be very secure, I told him he should go back again, and choose out those five, and tell them, they might see that he did not want Men, that he would take out those five to be his Assistants, and that the Governor would keep the other two, and the three that were sent Prisoners to the Castle, (*my Cave*) as Hostages, for the Fidelity of those five, and that if they proved unfaithful in the Execution, the five Hostages should be hanged in Chains alive upon the Shore.

This looked severe, and convinc'd them that the Governor was in Earnest; however they had no Way left them, but to accept it, and it was now the Business of the Prisoners, as much as of the Captain, to persuade the other five to do their Duty

Our Strength was now thus ordered for the Expedition 1 The Captain, his Mate, and Passenger 2 Then the two Prisoners of the first Gang, to whom having their Characters from the Captain, I had given their Liberty, and trusted them with Arms 3 The other two whom I had kept till now, in my Bower, pinion'd, but upon the Captain's Motion, had now releas'd 4. These five releas'd at last So that they were twelve in all, besides five we kept Prisoners in the Cave, for Hostages

I asked the Captain, if he was willing to venture with these Hands on Board the Ship, for as for me and my Man *Friday*, I did not think it was proper for us to stir, having seven Men left behind, and it was Employment enough for us to keep them asunder, and supply them with Victuals

As to the five in the Cave, I resolv'd to keep them fast, but *Friday* went in twice a Day to them, to supply them with Necessaries; and I made the other two carry Provisions to a certain Distance, where *Friday* was to take it.

When I showed myself to the two Hostages, it was with the Captain, who told them, I was the Person the Governor had order'd to look after them, and that it was the Governor's Pleasure they should not stir anywhere, but by my Direction, that if they did, they should be fetched into the Castle, and be laid in Irons, so that as we never suffered them to see me as Governor, so I now appear'd as another Person, and spoke of the Governor, the Garrison, the Castle, and the like, upon all Occasions

The Captain now had no Difficulty before him, but to furnish his two Boats, stop the Breach of one, and Man them He made his Passenger Captain of one, with four other Men, and himself, and his Mate, and five more, went in the other: And they contriv'd their Business very well; for they came up to the Ship about Midnight As soon as they came within Call of the Ship, he made *Robinson* hail them, and tell them they had brought off the Men and the Boat, but that it was a long time before they had found them, and the like, holding them in a Chat till they came to the Ship's Side; when the Captain and the Mate entering first with their Arms,



immediately knocked down the second Mate and Carpenter, with the Butt-end of their Muskets, being very faithfully seconded by their Men, they secur'd all the rest that were upon the Main and Quarter Decks, and began to fasten the Hatches to keep them down who were below, when the other Boat and their Men entering at the fore Chains, secur'd the Forecastle of the Ship, and the Scuttle which went down into the Cook-Room, making three Men they found there, Prisoners

When this was done, and all safe upon Deck, the Captain order'd the Mate with three Men to break into the Round-House where the new Rebel Captain lay, and having taken the Alarm, was gotten up, and with two Men and a Boy had gotten Fire Arms in their Hands, and when the Mate with a Crow split open the Door, the new Captain and his Men fired boldly among them, and wounded the Mate with a Musket Ball, which broke his Arm, and wounded two more of the Men but killed nobody

The Mate calling for Help, rushed however into the Round-House, wounded as he was, and with his Pistol shot the new Captain through the Head, the Bullet entering at his Mouth, and came out again behind one of his Ears, so that he never spoke a Word, upon which the rest yielded, and the Ship was taken effectually, without any more Lives lost.

As soon as the Ship was thus secur'd, the Captain order'd seven Guns to be fired, which was the Signal agreed upon with me, to give me Notice of his Success, which you may be sure I was very glad to hear, having sat watching upon the Shore for it till near two o'Clock in the Morning

Having thus heard the Signal plainly, I laid me down, and it having been a Day of great Fatigue to me, I slept very sound, till I was something surpris'd with the Noise of a Gun, and presently starting up, I heard a Man call me by the Name of Governor, and presently I knew the Captain's Voice, when climbing up to the Top of the Hill, there he stood, and pointing to the Ship, he embrac'd me in his Arms, *My dear Friend and Deliverer*, says he, *there's your Ship, for she is all yours, and so are we and all that belong to her*. I cast my Eyes to the Ship, and there she rode within little more than half a Mile of the Shore; for they had weigh'd her Anchor as soon as they were Masters of her, and the Weather being fair, had brought her to an Anchor just against the Mouth of the little Creek, and the

Tide being up, the Captain had brought the Pinnace in near the Place where I at first landed my Rafts, and so landed just at my Door

I was at first ready to sink down with the Surprise For I saw my Deliverance indeed visibly put into my Hands, all things easy, and a large Ship just ready to carry me away whither I pleased to go At first, for some time, I was not able to answer him one Word, but as he had taken me in his Arms, I held fast by him, or I should have fallen to the Ground

He perceived the Surprise, and immediately pulls a Bottle out of his Pocket, and gave me a Dram of Cordial, which he had brought on Purpose for me, after I had drank it, I sat down upon the Ground, and though it brought me to myself, yet it was a good while before I could speak a Word to him

All this while the poor Man was in as great an Ecstasy as I, only not under any Surprise, as I was, and he said a thousand kind tender things to me, to compose me and bring me to myself, but such was the Flood of Joy in my Breast, that it put all my Spirits into Confusion, at last it broke out into Tears, and in a little while after, I recovered my Speech

Then I took my Turn, and embrac'd him as my Deliverer, and we rejoic'd together I told him, I looked upon him as a Man sent from Heaven to deliver me, and that the whole Transaction seemed to be a Chain of Wonders, that such things as these were the Testimonies we had of a secret Hand of Providence governing the World, and an Evidence, that the Eyes of an infinite Power could search into the remotest Corner of the World, and send Help to the Miserable whenever he pleased

I forgot not to lift up my Heart in Thankfulness to Heaven, and what Heart could forbear to bless him, who had not only in a miraculous Manner provided for one in such a Wilderness, and in such a desolate Condition, but from whom every Deliverance must always be acknowledged to proceed.

When we had talked a while, the Captain told me, he had brought me some little Refreshment, such as the Ship afforded, and such as the Wretches that had been so long his Masters had not plunder'd him of Upon this he called aloud to the Boat, and bid his Men bring the things ashore that were for the Governor, and indeed it was a Present, as if I had been one not that was to be carry'd away

along with them, but as if I had been to dwell upon the Island still and they were to go without me.

First he had brought me a Case of Bottles full of excellent Cordia Waters, six large Bottles of *Madira* Wine, the Bottles held two Quarts apiece, two Pound of excellent good Tobacco, twelve good Pieces of the Ship's Beef, and six Pieces of Pork, with a Bag of Pease, and about a hundred Weight of Biscuit.

He brought me also a Box of Sugar, a Box of Flour, a Bag full of Lemons, and two Bottles of Lime-juice, and Abundance of other things. But besides these, and what was a thousand times more useful to me, he brought me six clean new Shirts, six very good Neckcloths, two Pair of Gloves, one Pair of Shoes, a Hat, and one Pair of Stockings, and a very good Suit of Clothes of his own, which had been worn but very little. In a Word, he clothed me from Head to Foot.

It was a very kind and agreeable Present, as any one may imagine to one in my Circumstances. But never was anything in the World of that Kind so unpleasant, awkward, and uneasy, as it was to me to wear such Clothes at their first putting on.

After these Ceremonies past, and after all his good things were brought to my little Apartment, we began to consult what was to be done with the Prisoners we had, for it was worth considering whether we might venture to take them away with us or no, especially two of them, who we knew to be incorrigible and refractory to the last Degree, and the Captain said, he knew they were such Rogues that there was no obliging them, and if he did carry them away, they must be in Irons, as Malefactors to be delivered over to Justice at the first *English* Colony he could come at, and I found that the Captain himself was very anxious about it.

Upon this, I told him, that if he desir'd it, I durst undertake to bring the two Men he spoke of, to make it their own Request that he should leave them upon the Island. *I should be very glad of that* says the Captain, *with all my Heart*.

Well, says I, I will send for them up, and talk with them for you so I caused *Friday* and the two Hostages, for they were now discharged, their Comrades having perform'd their Promise, I say, caused them to go to the Cave, and bring up the five Men prison'd as they were, to the Bower, and keep them there till I came.

After some time, I came thither dressed in my new Habit, and

now I was called Governor again, being all met, and the Captain with me, I caused the Men to be brought before me, and I told them, I had had a full Account of their villanous Behaviour to the Captain, and how they had run away with the Ship, and were preparing to commit farther Robberies, but that Providence had ensnar'd them in their own Ways, and that they were fallen into the Pit which they had digged for others

I let them know, that by my Direction the Ship had been seized, that she lay now in the Road, and they might see by and by, that their new Captain had receiv'd the Reward of his Villany, for that they might see him hanging at the Yard-arm

That as to them, I wanted to know what they had to say, why I should not execute them as Pirates taken in the Fact, as by my Commission they could not doubt I had Authority to do

One of them answer'd in the Name of the rest, That they had nothing to say but this, That when they were taken, the Captain promis'd them their Lives, and they humbly implor'd my Mercy, But I told them, I knew not what Mercy to show them, for as for myself, I had resolv'd to quit the Island with all my Men, and had taken Passage with the Captain to go for *England* And as for the Captain, he could not carry them to *England*, other than as Prisoners in Irons to be tried for Mutiny, and running away with the Ship, the Consequence of which, they must needs know, would be the Gallows, so that I could not tell which was best for them, unless they had a Mind to take their Fate in the Island, if they desir'd, that I did not care, as I had Liberty to leave it, I had some Inclination to give them their Lives, if they thought they could shift on Shore

They seem'd very thankful for it, said they would much rather venture to stay there, than to be carry'd to *England* to be hanged; so I left it on that Issue.

However, the Captain seem'd to make some Difficulty of it, as if he durst not leave them there Upon this I seem'd a little angry with the Captain, and told him, That they were my Prisoners, not his, and that seeing I had offer'd them so much Favour, I would be as good as my Word, and that if he did not think fit to consent to it, I would set them at Liberty, as I found them, and if he did not like it, he might take them again if he could catch them.

Upon this they appear'd very thankful, and I accordingly set them at Liberty, and bade them retire into the Woods to the Place whence

they came, and I would leave them some Fire Arms, some Ammunition, and some Directions how they should live very well, if they thought fit.

Upon this I prepar'd to go on Board the Ship, but told the Captain, that I would stay that Night to prepare my things, and desir'd him to go on Board in the meantime, and keep all right in the Ship, and send the Boat on Shore the next Day for me, ordering him in the meantime to cause the new Captain who was killed, to be hanged at the Yard-arm that these Men might see him.

When the Captain was gone, I sent for the Men up to me to my Apartment, and entered seriously into Discourse with them of their Circumstances, I told them, I thought they had made a right Choice, that if the Captain carry'd them away, they would certainly be hanged. I showed them the new Captain, hanging at the Yard-arm of the Ship, and told them they had nothing less to expect.

When they had all declar'd their Willingness to stay, I then told them, I would let them into the Story of my living there, and put them into the Way of making it easy to them. Accordingly I gave them the whole History of the Place, and of my coming to it, showed them my Fortifications, the Way I made my Bread, planted my Corn, cured my Grapes, and in a Word, all that was necessary to make them easy. I told them the Story also of the sixteen *Spaniards* that were to be expected, for whom I left a Letter, and made them promise to treat them in common with themselves.

I left them my Fire Arms, *viz* Five Muskets, three Fowling Pieces, and three Swords. I had above a Barrel and half of Powder left, for after the first Year or two, I used but little, and wasted none. I gave them a Description of the Way I manag'd the Goats, and Directions to milk and fatten them, and to make both Butter and Cheese.

In a Word, I gave them every Part of my own Story, and I told them, I would prevail with the Captain to leave them two Barrels of Gunpowder more, and some Garden-Seeds, which I told them I would have been very glad of, also I gave them the Bag of Pease which the Captain had brought me to eat, and bade them be sure to sow and increase them.

Having done all this, I left them the next Day, and went on Board the Ship. We prepared immediately to sail, but did not weigh that Night. The next Morning early, two of the five Men came

swimming to the Ship's Side, and making a most lamentable Complaint of the other three, begged to be taken into the Ship, for God's Sake, for they should be murdered, and begged the Captain to take them on Board, though he hanged them immediately

Upon this the Captain pretended to have no Power without me, But after some Difficulty, and after their solemn Promises of Amendment, they were taken on Board, and were some time after soundly whipped and pickled; after which, they proved very honest and quiet Fellows

Some time after this, the Boat was order'd on Shore, the Tide being up, with the things promised to the Men, to which the Captain at my Intercession caused their Chests and Clothes to be added, which they took, and were very thankful for; I also encourag'd them, by telling them, that if it lay in my Way to send any Vessel to take them in, I would not forget them

When I took leave of this Island, I carry'd on board for Relics, the great Goat's-Skin-Cap I had made, my Umbrella, and my Parrot, also I forgot not to take the Money I formerly mention'd, which had lain by me so long useless, that it was grown rusty, or tarnish'd, and could hardly pass for Silver, till it had been a little rubbed, and handled; as also the Money I found in the Wreck of the *Spanish Ship*

And thus I left the Island, the Nineteenth of *December*, as I found by the Ship's Account, in the Year 1686, after I had been upon it eight-and-twenty Years, two Months, and 19 Days, being deliver'd from this second Captivity, the same Day of the Month, that I first made my Escape in the *Barco-Longo*, from among the *Moors of Sallée*

In this Vessel, after a long Voyage, I arriv'd in *England*, the Eleventh of *June*, in the Year 1687, having been thirty-and-five Years absent.

When I came to *England*, I was as perfect a Stranger to all the World, as if I had never been known there. My Benefactor and faithful Steward, who I had left in Trust with my Money, was alive; but had had great Misfortunes in the World; was become a Widow the second Time, and very low in the World. I made her easy as to what she owed me, assuring her, I would give her no Trouble; but on the contrary, in Gratitude to her former Care and Faithfulness to me, I reliev'd her, as my little Stock would afford, which at that

Time would indeed allow me to do but little for her; but I assur'd her, I would never forget her former Kindness to me, nor did I forget her, when I had sufficient to help her, as shall be observ'd in its Place.

I went down afterwards into *Yorkshire*, but my Father was dead, and my Mother, and all the Family extinct, except that I found two Sisters, and two of the Children of one of my Brothers, and as I had been long given over for dead, there had been no Provision made for me, so that in a Word, I found nothing to relieve, or assist me; and that little Money I had, would not do much for me, as to settling in the World

I met with one Piece of Gratitude indeed, which I did not expect; and this was, That the Master of the Ship, who I had so happily deliver'd, and by the same Means saved the Ship and Cargo, having given a very handsome Account to the Owners, of the Manner how I had saved the Lives of the Men, and the Ship, they invited me to meet them, and some Merchants concern'd, and all together they made me a very handsome Compliment upon the Subject, and a Present of almost two hundred Pounds Sterling

But after making several Reflections upon the Circumstances of my Life, and how little way this would go towards settling me in the World, I resolv'd to go to *Lisbon*, and see if I might not come by some Information of the State of my Plantation in the *Brasils*, and of what was become of my Partner, who I had reason to suppose had some Years now given me over for dead.

With this View I took Shipping for *Lisbon*, where I arrived in *April* following, my Man *Friday* accompanying me very honestly in all Ramblings, and proving a most faithful Servant upon all Occasions

When I came to *Lisbon*, I found out by Inquiry, and to my particular Satisfaction, my old Friend the Captain of the Ship, who first took me up at Sea, off of the Shore of *Africa*. He was now grown old, and had left off the Sea, having put his Son, who was far from a young Man, into his Ship, and who still used the *Brasil* Trade. The old Man did not know me, and indeed, I hardly knew him, but I soon brought him to my Remembrance, and as soon brought myself to his Remembrance, when I told him who I was

After some passionate Expressions of the old Acquaintance, I inquir'd, you may be sure, after my Plantation and my Partner. The

old Man told me he had not been in the *Brasils* for about nine Years, but that he could assure me, that when he came away, my Partner was living, but the Trustees, who I had joined with him to take Cognizance of my Part, were both dead, that however, he believ'd that I would have a very good Account of the Improvement of the Plantation, for that upon the general Belief of my being cast away, and drown'd, my Trustees had given in the Account of the Produce of my Part of the Plantation, to the Procurator Fiscal, who had appropriated it, in Case I never came to claim it, one Third to the King, and two Thirds to the Monastery of *St. Augustine*, to be expended for the Benefit of the Poor, and for the Conversion of the *Indians* to the Catholic Faith, but that if I appear'd, or any one for me, to claim the Inheritance, it should be restor'd, only that the Improvement, or Annual Production, being distributed to charitable Uses, could not be restor'd, but he assur'd me, that the Steward of the King's Revenue (from Lands) and the Proviedore, or Steward of the Monastery, had taken great Care all along, that the Incumbent, that is to say my Partner, gave every Year a faithful Account of the Produce, of which they receiv'd duly my Moiety.

I asked him if he knew to what height of Improvement he had brought the Plantation? And, Whether he thought it might be worth looking after? Or, Whether on my going thither, I should meet with no Obstruction to my Possessing my just Right in the Moiety?

He told me, he could not tell exactly, to what Degree the Plantation was improv'd, but this he knew, that my Partner was grown exceeding Rich upon the enjoying but one half of it; and that to the best of his Remembrance, he had heard, that the King's Third of my Part, which was it seems granted away to some other Monastery, or Religious House, amounted to above two hundred Moidores a Year, that as to my being restor'd to a quiet Possession of it, there was no question to be made of that, my Partner being alive to witness my Title, and my Name being also enroll'd in the Register of the Country, also he told me, That the Survivors of my two Trustees, were very fair honest People, and very Wealthy, and he believ'd I would not only have their Assistance for putting me in Possession, but would find a very considerable Sum of Money in their Hands, for my Account, being the Produce of the Farm while their Fathers held the Trust, and before it was given up as above, which as he remember'd, was for about twelve Years



I showed myself a little concern'd, and uneasy at this Account, and inquir'd of the old Captain, How it came to pass, that the Trustees should thus dispose my Effects, when he knew that I had made my Will, and had made him, the *Portuguese* Captain, my universal Heir, &c.

He told me, that was true, but that as there was no Proof of my being dead, he could not act as Executor, until some certain Account should come of my Death, and that besides, he was not willing to intermeddle with a thing so remote, that it was true he had registered my Will, and put in his Claim, and could he have given any Account of my being dead or alive, he would have acted by Procuration, and taken Possession of the *Ingenio*, so they called the Sugar-House, and had given his Son, who was now at the *Brasils*, Order to do it.

But, says the old Man, I have one Piece of News to tell you, which perhaps may not be so acceptable to you as the rest, and that is, That believing you were lost, and all the World believing so also, your Partner and Trustees did offer to account to me in your Name, for six or eight of the first Years of Profits, which I receiv'd, but there being at that time, says he, great Disbursements for increasing the Works, building an *Ingenio*, and buying Slaves, it did not amount to near so much as afterwards it produced. However, says the old Man, I shall give you a true Account of what I have received in all, and how I have disposed of it.

After a few Days' farther Conference with this ancient Friend, he brought me an Account of the six first Years' Income of my Plantation, signed by my Partner and the Merchants Trustees, being always deliver'd in Goods, *viz* Tobacco in Roll, and Sugar in Chests, besides Rum, Molasses, &c. which is the Consequence of a Sugar Work, and I found by this Account, that every Year the Income considerably increased, but as above, the Disbursement being large, the Sum at first was small. However, the old Man let me see, that he was Debtor to me 470 Moïdores of Gold, besides 60 Chests of Sugar, and 15 double Rolls of Tobacco which were lost in his Ship, he having been Shipwreck'd coming Home to *Lisbon* about 11 Years after my leaving the Place.

The good Man then began to complain of his Misfortunes, and how he had been obliged to make Use of my Money to recover his Losses, and buy him a Share in a new Ship. However, my old Friend, says he, you shall not want a Supply in your Necessity, and as soon as my Son returns, you shall be fully satisfy'd.

Upon this, he pulls out an old Pouch, and gives me 160 *Portugal* Moldores in Gold, and giving me the Writing of his Title to the Ship, which his Son was gone to the *Brasils* in, of which he was a Quarter Part Owner, and his Son another, he puts them both into my Hands for Security of the rest.

I was too much moved with the Honesty and Kindness of the poor Man, to be able to bear this, and remembering what he had done for me, how he had taken me up at Sea, and how generously he had used me on all Occasions, and particularly, how sincere a Friend he was now to me, I could hardly refrain Weeping at what he said to me. Therefore, first I asked him, if his Circumstances admitted him to spare so much Money at that time, and if it would not straiten him? He told me, he could not say but it might straiten him a little, but however it was my Money, and I might want it more than he.

Everything the good Man said was full of Affection, and I could hardly refrain from Tears while he spoke. In short, I took 100 of the Moldores, and called for a Pen and Ink to give him a Receipt for them; then I returned him the rest, and told him, if ever I had Possession of the Plantation, I would return the other to him also, as indeed I afterwards did, and that as to the Bill of Sale of his Part in his Son's Ship, I would not take it by any Means, but that if I wanted the Money, I found he was honest enough to pay me, and if I did not, but came to receive what he gave me reason to expect, I would never have a Penny more from him.

When this was passed, the old Man began to ask me, If he should put me into a Method to make my Claim to my Plantation? I told him, I thought to go over to it myself. He said, I might do so if I pleased; but that if I did not, there were Ways enough to secure my Right, and immediately to appropriate the Profits to my Use, and as there were Ships in the River of *Lisbon*, just ready to go away to *Brasil*, he made me enter my Name in a Public Register, with his Affidavit, affirming upon Oath that I was alive, and that I was the same Person who took up the Land for the Planting the said Plantation at first.

This being regularly attested by a Notary, and a Procuration affix'd, he directed me to send it with a Letter of his Writing, to a Merchant of his Acquaintance at the Place, and then propos'd my staying with him till an Account came of the Return.

Never anything was more honourable, than the Proceedings upon

this Procuration, for in less than seven Months, I receiv'd a large Packet from the Survivors of my Trustees the Merchants, for whose Account I went to Sea, in which were the following particular Letters and Papers enclos'd.

*First*, There was the Account Current of the Produce of my Farm, or Plantation, from the Year when their Fathers had balanc'd with my old *Portugal* Captain, being for six Years, the Balance appear'd to be 1174 Moidores in my Favour

*Secondly*, There was the Account of four Years more while they kept the Effects in their Hands, before the Government claimed the Administration, as being the Effects of a Person not to be found, which they call *Civil Death*, and the Balance of this, the Value of the Plantation increasing, amounted to 3241 Moidores

*Thirdly*, There was the Prior of the *Augustines'* Account, who had receiv'd the Profits for above fourteen Years, but not being to account for what was dispos'd to the Hospital, very honestly declar'd he had 872 Moidores not distributed, which he acknowledged to my Account, as to the King's Part, that refunded nothing

There was a Letter of my Partner's, congratulating me very affectionately upon my being alive, giving me an Account how the Estate was improv'd, and what it produced a Year, with a Particular of the Number of Squares or Acres that it contained, how planted, how many Slaves there were upon it, and making two-and-twenty Crosses for Blessings, told me he had said so many *Ave Marias* to thank the Blessed Virgin that I was alive, inviting me very passionately to come over and take Possession of my own and in the meantime to give him Orders to whom he should deliver my Effects, if I did not come myself, concluding with a hearty Tender of his Friendship, and that of his Family, and sent me, as a Present, seven fine Leopards' Skins, which he had it seems received from *Africa*, by some other Ship which he had sent thither, and who it seems had made a better Voyage than I He sent me also five Chests of excellent Sweetmeats, and a hundred Pieces of Gold uncoin'd, not quite so large as Moidores

By the same Fleet, my two Merchant Trustees shipped me 1200 Chests of Sugar, 800 Rolls of Tobacco, and the rest of the whole Account in Gold.

I might well say, now indeed, That the latter end of *Job* was better than the Beginning It is impossible to express here the Flutterings of my very Heart, when I looked over these Letters, and especially when

I found all my Wealth about me ; for as the *Brasil* Ships come all in Fleets, the same Ships which brought my Letters, brought my Goods , and the Effects were safe in the River before the Letters came to my Hand In a Word, I turned pale, and grew sick , and had not the old Man run and fetched me a Cordial, I believe the sudden Surprise of Joy had upset Nature, and I had died upon the Spot.

Nay after that, I continu'd very ill, and was so some Hours, till a Physician being sent for, and something of the real Cause of my Illness being known, he order'd me to be let Blood , after which, I had Relief, and grew well But I verily believe, if it had not been eased by a Vent given in that Manner, to the Spirits, I should have died

I was now Master, all on a Sudden, of above 5000*l* *Sterling* in Money, and had an Estate, as I might well call it, in the *Brasils*, of above a thousand Pounds a Year, as sure as an Estate of Lands in *England* And in a Word, I was in a Condition which I scarce knew how to understand, or how to compose myself, for the Enjoyment of it.

The first thing I did, was to recompense my original Benefactor, my good old Captain, who had been first charitable to me in my Distress, kind to me in my Beginning, and honest to me at the End I showed him all that was sent me, I told him, that next to the Providence of Heaven, which disposes all things, it was owing to him , and that it now lay on me to reward him, which I would do a hundred-fold So I first return'd to him the hundred Moidores I had receiv'd of him, then I sent for a Notary, and caused him to draw up a general Release or Discharge for the 470 Moidores, which he had acknowledg'd he owed me in the fullest and firmest Manner possible , after which, I caused a Procuration to be drawn, empowering him to be my Receiver of the annual Profits of my Plantation, and appointing my Partner to account to him, and make the Returns by the usual Fleets to him in my Name , and a Clause in the End, being a Grant of 100 Moidores a Year to him, during his Life, out of the Effects, and 50 Moidores a Year to his Son after him, for his Life And thus I requited my old Man

I was now to consider which Way to steer my Course next, and what to do with the Estate that Providence had thus put into my Hands ; and indeed I had more Care upon my Head now, than I had in my silent State of Life in the Island, where I wanted nothing

but what I had, and had nothing but what I wanted Whereas I had now a great Charge upon me, and my Business was how to secure it. I had ne'er a Cave now to hide my Money in, or a Place where it might lie without Lock or Key, till it grew mouldy and tarnish'd before anybody would meddle with it. On the contrary, I knew not where to put it, or who to trust with it. My old Patron, the Captain, indeed was honest, and that was the only Refuge I had

In the next Place, my Interest in the *Brasils* seemed to summon me thither, but now I could not tell, how to think of going thither, till I had settled my Affairs, and left my Effects in some safe Hands behind me. At first I thought of my old Friend the Widow, who I knew was honest, and would be just to me, but then she was in Years, and but poor, and for ought I knew, might be in Debt, so that in a Word, I had no Way but to go back to *England* myself, and take my Effects with me.

It was some Months however before I resolved upon this, and therefore, as I had rewarded the old Captain fully, and to his Satisfaction, who had been my former Benefactor, so I began to think of my poor Widow, whose Husband had been my first Benefactor, and she, while it was in her Power, my faithful Steward and Instructor. So the first thing I did, I got a Merchant in *Lisbon* to write to his Correspondent in *London*, not only to pay a Bill, but to go find her out, and carry her in Money a hundred Pounds from me, and to talk with her, and comfort her in her Poverty, by telling her she should, if I lived, have a further Supply. At the same time I sent my two Sisters in the Country, each of them a Hundred Pounds, they being though not in Want, yet not in very good Circumstances, one having been marry'd and left a Widow, and the other having a Husband not so kind to her as he should be.

But among all my Relations, or Acquaintances, I could not yet pitch upon one, to whom I durst commit the Gross of my Stock, that I might go away to the *Brasils*, and leave things safe behind me, and this greatly perplex'd me.

I had once a Mind to have gone to the *Brasils*, and have settled myself there, for I was, as it were, naturaliz'd to the Place, but I had some little Scruple in my Mind about Religion, which insensibly drew me back, of which I shall say more presently. However, it was not Religion that kept me from going there for the present, and as I had made no Scruple of being openly of the Religion of the Country, all

the while I was among them, so neither did I yet, only that now and then having of late thought more of it, (than formerly) when I began to think of living and dying among them, I began to regret my having profess'd myself a Papist, and thought it might not be the best Religion to die with.

But as I have said, this was not the main thing that kept me from going to the *Brasils*, but that really I did not know with whom to leave my Effects behind me, so I resolv'd at last to go to *England* with it, where, if I arrived, I concluded I should make some Acquaintance, or find some Relations that would be faithful to me, and according I prepar'd to go for *England* with all my Wealth

In order to prepare things for my going Home, I first, the *Brasil* Fleet being just going away, resolved to give Answers suitable to the just and faithful Account of things I had from thence, and first to the Prior of St. *Augustine* I wrote a Letter full of Thanks for their just Dealings, and the Offer of the 872 Moidores, which was undisposed of, which I desir'd might be given 500 to the Monastery, and 372 to the Poor, as the Prior should direct, desiring the good *Padres* Prayers for me, and the like

I wrote next a Letter of Thanks to my two Trustees, with all the Acknowledgment that so much Justice and Honesty called for, as for sending them any Present, they were far above having any Occasion of it.

Lastly, I wrote to my Partner, acknowledging his Industry in the Improving the Plantation, and his Integrity in increasing the Stock of the Works, giving him Instructions for his future Government of my Part, according to the Powers I had left with my old Patron, to whom I desir'd him to send whatever became due to me, till he should hear from me more particularly, assuring him that it was my Intention, not only to come to him, but to settle myself there for the Remainder of my Life To this I added a very handsome Present of some *Italian* Silks for his Wife, and two Daughters, for such the Captain's Son inform'd me he had, with two Pieces of fine *English* broad Cloth, the best I could get in *Lisbon*, five Pieces of black Baise, and some *Flanders* Lace of a good Value.

Having thus settled my Affairs, sold my Cargo, and turned all my Effects into good Bills of Exchange, my next Difficulty was, which Way to go to *England* I had been accusom'd enough to the Sea, and yet I had a strange Aversion to going to *England* by Sea

at that time, and though I could give no Reason for it, yet the Difficulty increas'd upon me so much, that though I had once shipped my Baggage, in order to go, yet I alter'd my Mind, and that not once, but two or three times

It is true, I had been very unfortunate by Sea, and this might be some of the Reason But let no Man slight the strong Impulses of his own Thoughts in Cases of such Moment Two of the Ships which I had singled out to go in, I mean, more particularly singled out than any other, that is to say, so as in one of them to put my things on Board, and in the other to have agreed with the Captain, I say, two of these Ships miscarry'd, *viz* One was taken by the *Algerine*, and the other was cast away on the *Start* near *Torbay*, and all the People drowned except three, so that in either of those Vessels I had been made miserable, and in which most, it was hard to say

Having been thus harass'd in my Thoughts, my old Pilot, to whom I communicated everything, pressed me earnestly not to go by Sea, but either to go by Land to the *Groyne*, and cross over the Bay of *Biscay* to *Rochelle*, from whence it was but an easy and safe Journey by Land to *Paris*, and so to *Calais* and *Dover*, or to go up to *Madrid*, and so all the Way by Land through *France*

In a Word, I was so prepossess'd against my going by Sea at all, except from *Calais* to *Dover*, that I resolv'd to travel all the Way by Land, which as I was not in Haste, and did not value the Charge, was by much the pleasanter Way, and to make it more so, my old Captain brought an *English* Gentleman, the Son of a Merchant in *Lisbon*, who was willing to travel with me After which, we picked up two more *English* Merchants also, and two young *Portuguese* Gentlemen, the last going to *Paris* only, so that we were in all six of us, and five Servants, the two Merchants and the two *Portuguese*, contenting themselves with one Servant, between two, to save the Charge, and as for me, I got an *English* Sailor to travel with me as a Servant, besides my Man *Friday*, who was too much a Stranger to be capable of supplying the Place of a Servant on the Road.

In this Manner I set out from *Lisbon*, and our Company being all very well mounted and armed, we made a little Troop, whereof they did me the Honour to call me Captain, as well because I was the oldest Man, as because I had two Servants, and indeed was the Original of the whole Journey

As I have troubled you with none of my Sea-Journals, so I shall trouble you now with none of my Land-Journal But some Adventures that happen'd to us in this tedious and difficult Journey, I must not omit.

When we came to *Madrid*, we being all of us Strangers to *Spain*, were willing to stay some time to see the Court of *Spain*, and to see what was worth observing, but it being the latter Part of the Summer, we hasten'd away, and set out from *Madrid* about the Middle of *October*. But when we came to the Edge of *Navarre*, we were alarm'd at several Towns on the Way, with an Account, that so much Snow was fallen on the *French* Side of the Mountains, that several Travellers were obliged to come back to *Pampeluna*, after having attempted, at an extreme Hazard, to pass on.

When we came to *Pampeluna* itself, we found it so indeed, and to me that had been always used to a hot Climate, and indeed to Countries where we could scarce bear any Clothes on, the Cold was insufferable, nor indeed was it more painful than it was surprising, to come but ten Days before out of the *Old Castile*, where the Weather was not only warm but very hot, and immediately to feel a Wind from the *Pyrenean* Mountains, so very keen, so severely cold, as to be intolerable, and to endanger benumbing and perishing of our Fingers and Toes

Poor *Friday* was really frighted when he saw the Mountains all cover'd with Snow, and felt cold Weather, which he had never seen or felt before in his Life.

To mend the Matter, when we came to *Pampeluna*, it continued snowing with so much Violence, and so long, that the People said, Winter was come before its time, and the Roads which were difficult before, were now quite impassable For in a Word, the Snow lay in some Places too thick for us to travel, and being not hard frozen, as is the Case in Northern Countries There was no going without being in Danger of being buried alive every Step We stayed no less than twenty Days at *Pampeluna*, when seeing the Winter coming on, and no Likelihood of its being better, for it was the severest Winter all over *Europe* that had been known in the Memory of Man, I propos'd that we should all go away to *Fontarabia*, and there take Shipping for *Bordeaux*, which was a very little Voyage.

But while we were considering this, there came in four *French* Gentlemen, who having been stopped on the *French* Side of the Passes,



as we were on the *Spanish*, had found out a Guide, who traversing the Country near the Head of *Languedoc*, had brought them over the Mountains by such Ways, that they were not much incommoded with the Snow, and where they met with Snow in any Quantity, they said it was frozen hard enough to bear them and their Horses

We sent for this Guide, who told us, he would undertake to carry us the same Way with no Hazard from the Snow, provided we were armed sufficiently to protect ourselves from wild Beasts, for he said, upon these great Snows, it was frequent for some Wolves to show themselves at the Foot of the Mountains, being made ravenous for Want of Food, the Ground being covered with Snow We told him, we were well enough prepar'd for such Creatures as they were, if he would ensure us from a Kind of two-legged Wolves, which we were told, we were in most Danger from, especially on the *French* Side of the Mountains

He satisfy'd us there was no Danger of that kind in the Way that we were to go, so we readily agreed to follow him, as did also twelve other Gentlemen, with their Servants, some *French*, some *Spanish*, who, as I said had attempted to go, and were oblig'd to come back again

Accordingly, we all set out from *Pampeluna*, with our Guide, on the fifteenth of *November*, and indeed, I was surpris'd, when instead of going forward, he came directly back with us, on the same Road that we came from *Madrid*, above twenty Miles, when being passed two Rivers, and come into the plain Country, we found ourselves in a warm Climate again, where the Country was pleasant, and no Snow to be seen, but on a sudden, turning to his left, he approach'd the Mountains another Way, and though it is true, the Hills and Precipices looked dreadful, yet he made so many Tours, such Meanders, and led us by such winding Ways, that we were insensibly passed the Height of the Mountains, without being much incumber'd with the Snow, and all on a sudden, he showed us the pleasant fruitful Provinces of *Languedoc* and *Gascoign*, all green and flourishing; though indeed it was at a great Distance, and we had some rough Way to pass yet.

We were a little uneasy however, when we found it snowed one whole Day, and a Night, so fast, that we could not travel, but he bid us be easy, we should soon be past it all We found indeed, that we began to descend every Day, and to come more *North* than before; and so depending upon our Guide, we went on.

It was about two Hours before Night, when our Guide being some-

thing before us, and not just in Sight, out rushed three monstrous Wolves, and after them a Bear, out of a hollow Way, adjoining to a thick Wood, two of the Wolves flew upon the Guide, and had he been half a Mile before us, he had been devour'd indeed, before we could have helped him. One of them fastened upon his Horse, and the other attack'd the Man with that Violence, that he had not Time, or not Presence of Mind enough to draw his Pistol, but hollow'd and cried out to us most lustily, my Man *Friday* being next me, I bid him ride up, and see what was the Matter, as soon as *Friday* came in Sight of the Man, he hollow'd as loud as the other, *O Master! O Master!* But like a bold Fellow, rode directly up to the poor Man, and with his Pistol shot the Wolf that attack'd him into the Head.



It was happy for the poor Man, that it was my Man *Friday*, for he having been used to that kind of Creature in his Country, had no Fear upon him, but went close up to him, and shot him as above, whereas any of us, would have fired at a farther Distance, and have perhaps either missed the Wolf, or endanger'd shooting the Man.

But it was enough to have terrify'd a bolder Man than I, and indeed it alarm'd all our Company, when with the Noise of *Friday's* Pistol, we heard on both Sides the dismallest Howling of Wolves, and the Noise redoubled by the Echo of the Mountains, that it was to us as if there had been a prodigious Multitude of them, and perhaps indeed there were not such a Few, as that we had no cause of Apprehensions

However, as *Friday* had killed this Wolf, the other that had

fastened upon the Horse, left him immediately, and fled, having happily fastened upon his Head, where the Bosses of the Bridle had stuck in his teeth, so that he had not done him much Hurt. The Man indeed was most hurt, for the raging Creature had bit him twice, once on the Arm, and the other Time a little above his Knee; and he was just as it were tumbling down by the Disorder of his Horse, when *Friday* came up and shot the Wolf.

It is easy to suppose, that at the Noise of *Friday's* Pistol, we all mended our Pace, and rid up as fast as the Way (which was very difficult) would give us leave, to see what was the Matter, as soon as we came clear of the Trees, which blinded us before, we saw clearly what had been the Case, and how *Friday* had disengag'd the poor Guide, though we did not presently discern what kind of Creature it was he had killed.

But never was a Fight manag'd so hardily, and in such a surprising Manner, as that which follow'd between *Friday* and the Bear, which gave us all (though at first we were surpris'd and afraid for him) the greatest Diversion imaginable. As the Bear is a heavy, clumsy Creature, and does not gallop as the Wolf does, who is swift, and light, so he has two particular Qualities, which generally are the Rule of his Actions, First, As to Men, who are not his proper Prey, I say, not his proper Prey, because though I cannot say what excessive Hunger might do, which was now their Case, the Ground being all cover'd with Snow; but as to Men, he does not usually attempt them, unless they first attack him. On the contrary, if you meet him in the Woods, if you don't meddle with him, he won't meddle with you, but then you must take Care to be very Civil to him, and give him the Road, for he is a very nice Gentleman, he won't go a Step out of his Way for a Prince, nay, if you are really afraid, your best way is to look another Way, and keep going on, for sometimes if you stop, and stand still, and look steadily at him, he takes it for an Affront, but if you throw or toss anything at him, and it hits him, though it were but a bit of Stick, as big as your Finger, he takes it for an Affront, and sets all his other Business aside to pursue his Revenge, for he will have Satisfaction in Point of Honour, that is his first Quality. The next is, That if he be once affronted, he will never leave you, Night or Day, till he has his Revenge, but follows at a good round rate, till he overtakes you.

My Man *Friday* had deliver'd our Guide, and when we came up

to him, he was helping him off from his Horse, for the Man was both hurt and frighted, and indeed, the last more than the first, when on the sudden, we spied the Bear come out of the Wood, and a vast monstrous One it was, the biggest by far that ever I saw. We were all a little surpris'd, when we saw him, but when *Friday* saw him, it was easy to see Joy and Courage in the Fellow's Countenance, *O! O! O!* Says *Friday*, three Times, pointing to him, *O Master! You give me te Leave! Me shakee te Hand with him Me make you good laugh*

I was surpris'd to see the Fellow so pleased, *You Fool you*, says I, *he will eat you up! Eatce me up! Eatce me up!* Says *Friday*, twice over again, *Me eatce him up Me make you good laugh. You all stay here, me show you good laugh;* so down he sits, and gets his Boots off in a Moment, and put on a pair of Pumps (as we call the flat Shoes they wear) and which he had in his Pocket, gives my other Servant his Horse, and with his Gun away he flew swift like the Wind

The Bear was walking softly on, and offer'd to meddle with nobody, till *Friday* coming pretty near, calls to him, as if the Bear could understand him, *Hark ye, hark ye*, says *Friday*, *me speakee wit you* We follow'd at a Distance; for now being come down on the *Gascoign* side of the Mountains, we were enter'd a vast great Forest, where the Country was plain, and pretty open, though many Trees in it scatter'd here and here

*Friday*, who had as we say, the Heels of the Bear, came up with him quickly, and takes up a great Stone, and throws at him, and hit him just on the Head, but did him no more harm, than if he had thrown it against a Wall, but it answer'd *Friday's* End, for the Rogue was so void of Fear, that he did it purely to make the Bear follow him, and show us some Laugh as he called it.

As soon as the Bear felt the Stone, and saw him, he turns about, and comes after him, taking Devilish long Strides, and shuffling along at a strange Rate, so as would have put a Horse to a muddling Gallop, away runs *Friday*, and takes his Course, as if he ran towards us for Help, so we all resolv'd to fire at once upon the Bear, and deliver my Man, though I was angry at him heartily, for bringing the Bear back upon us, when he was going about his own Business another Way, and especially I was angry that he had turned the Bear back upon us, and then run away, and I called out, *You Dog*, said I, *is this your making us laugh? Come away, and take*

*your Horse, that we may shoot the Creature,* he hears me, and cries out, *No shoot, no shoot, stand still, you get much Laugh* And as the nimble Creature ran two Foot for the Beast's one, he turned on a sudden, on one side of us, and seeing a great Oak-Tree, fit for his Purpose, he beckon'd to us to follow, and doubling his Pace, he gets nimbly up the Tree, laying his Gun down upon the Ground, at about five or six Yards from the Bottom of the Tree.

The Bear soon came to the Tree, and we follow'd at a Distance, the first Thing he did, he stopped at the Gun, smelt to it, but let it lie, and up he scrambles into the Tree, climbing like a Cat, though so monstrously heavy I was amaz'd at the Folly, as I thought it, of my Man, and could not for my Life see anything to laugh at yet, till seeing the Bear get up the Tree, we all rode nearer to him

When we came to the Tree, there was *Friday* got out to the small End of a large Limb of the Tree, and the Bear got about half way to him, as soon as the Bear got out to that part where the Limb of the Tree was weaker, *Ha*, says he to us, *now you see me teachee the Bear dance*, so he falls a jumping and shaking the Bough, at which the Bear began to totter, but stood still, and began to look behind him, to see how he should get back, then indeed we did laugh heartily But *Friday* had not done with him by a great deal, when he sees him stand still, he calls out to him again, as if he had suppos'd the Bear could speak *English*, *What, you no come farther, pray you come farther*, so he left jumping and shaking the Tree, and the Bear, just as if he had understood what he said, did come a little further, then he fell a jumping again, and the Bear stopped again.

We thought now was a good time to knock him on the Head, and I call'd to *Friday* to stand still, and we would shoot the Bear, but he cried out earnestly, *O pray! O pray! No shoot, me shoot, by and then*, he would have said, *By and by*, However, to shorten the Story, *Friday* danced so much, and the Bear stood so ticklish, that we had laughing enough indeed, but still could not imagine what the Fellow would do, for first we thought he depended upon shaking the Bear off, and we found the Bear was too cunning for that too, for he would not go out far enough to be thrown down, but clings fast with his great broad Claws and Feet, so that we could not imagine what would be the End of it, and where the Jest would be at last.

But *Friday* put us out of doubt quickly, for seeing the Bear cling fast to the Bough, and that he would not be persuaded to come any

farther; *Well, well*, says *Friday*, *you no come farther, me go, me go; you no come to me, me go come to you*, and upon this, he goes out to the smallest End of the Bough, where it would bend with his Weight, and gently lets himself down by it, sliding down the Bough, till he came near enough to jump down on his Feet, and away he run to his Gun, takes it up, and stands still

Well, said I to him, *Friday*, What will you do now? Why don't you shoot him? *No shoot*, says *Friday*, *no yet, me shoot now, me no kill, me stay, give you one more laugh*, and indeed so he did, as you will see presently, for when the Bear see his Enemy gone, he comes back from the Bough where he stood, but did it mighty leisurely, looking behind him every Step, and coming backward till he got into the Body of the Tree; then with the same hinder End foremost, he came down the Tree, grasping it with his Claws, and moving one Foot at a Time, very leisurely, at this Juncture, and just before he could set his hind Feet upon the Ground, *Friday* stepped up close to him, clapt the Muzzle of his Piece into his Ear, and shot him dead as a Stone

Then the Rogue turned about, to see if we did not laugh, and when he saw we were pleased by our Looks, he falls a laughing himself very loud, *so we kill Bear in my Country*, says *Friday*, so you kill them, says I, Why you have no Guns *No*, says he, *no Gun, but shoot, great much long Arrow*

This was indeed a good Diversion to us, but we were still in a wild Place, and our Guide very much hurt, and what to do we hardly knew, the Howling of Wolves ran much in my Head, and indeed, except the Noise I once heard on the Shore of *Africa*, of which I have said something already, I never heard anything that filled me with so much Horror

These things, and the Approach of Night, called us off, or else, as *Friday* would have had us, we should certainly have taken the Skin of this monstrous Creature off, which was worth saving, but we had three Leagues to go, and our Guide hasten'd us, so we left him, and went forward on our Journey

The Ground was still cover'd with Snow, though not so deep and dangerous as on the Mountains, and the ravenous Creatures, as we heard afterwards, were come down into the Forest and plain Country, pressed by Hunger to seek for Food, and had done a great deal of Mischief in the Villages, where they surpris'd the Country People, killed a great many of their Sheep and Horses, and some People too

We had one dangerous Place to pass, which our Guide told us, if there were any more Wolves in the Country, we should find them there, and this was in a small Plain, surrounded with Woods on every Side, and a long narrow Defile or Lane, which we were to pass to get through the Wood, and then we should come to the Village where we were to lodge.

It was within half an Hour of Sunset when we enter'd the first Wood, and a little after Sunset when we came into the Plain, we met with nothing in the first Wood, except, that in a little Plain within the Wood, which was not above two Furlongs over, we saw five great Wolves cross the Road, full Speed one after another, as if they had been in Chase of some Prey, and had it in View, they took no Notice of us, and were gone, and out of our Sight in a few Moments

Upon this our Guide, who by the Way was a wretched saint-hearted Fellow, bid us keep in a ready Posture, for he believed there were more Wolves a coming

We kept our Arms ready, and our Eyes about us, but we saw no more Wolves, till we came through that Wood, which was near half a League, and enter'd the Plain, as soon as we came into the Plain we had Occasion enough to look about us The first Object we met with, was a dead Horse, that is to say, a poor Horse which the Wolves had killed, and at least a Dozen of them at Work, we could not say eating of him, but picking of his Bones rather, for they had eaten up all the Flesh before.

We did not think fit to disturb them at their Feast, neither did they take much Notice of us *Friday* would have let fly at them, but I would not suffer him by any Means, for I found we were like to have more Business upon our Hands than we were aware of We were not gone half over the Plain, but we began to hear the Wolves howl in the Wood on our Left, in a frightful Manner, and presently after we saw about a hundred coming on directly towards us, all in a Body, and most of them in a Line, as regularly as an Army drawn up by experienced Officers I scarce knew in what Manner to receive them, but found to draw ourselves in a close Line was the only Way so we formed in a Moment But that we might not have too much Interval, I order'd that only every other Man should fire, and that the others who had not fired should stand ready to give them a second Volley immediately, if they continued to advance upon us, and that then those who had fired at first, should not pretend to load their Fuses again, but stand ready with every one a Pistol, for we were all armed with a

Fusce, and a Pair of Pistols each Man, so we were by this Method able to fire six Volleys, half of us at a Time, however, at present we had no Necessity, for upon firing the first Volley, the Enemy made a full Stop, being terrify'd as well with the Noise, as with the Fire, four of them being shot into the Head, dropped, several others were wounded, and went bleeding off, as we could see by the Snow I found they stopped, but did not immediately retreat, whereupon remembering that I had been told, that the fiercest Creatures were terrify'd at the Voice of a Man, I caused all our Company to hollow as loud as we could, and I found the Notion not altogether mistaken, for upon our Shout, they began to retire, and turn about, then I order'd a second Volley to be fired, in their Rear, which put them to the Gallop, and away they went to the Woods

This gave us leisure to charge our Pieces again, and that we might lose no Time, we kept going, but we had but little more than loaded our Fuses, and put ourselves into a Readiness, when we heard a terrible Noise in the same Wood, on our Left, only that it was farther onward the same Way we were to go

The Night was coming on, and the Light began to be dusky, which made it worse on our Side, but the Noise increasing, we could easily perceive that it was the Howling and Yelling of those hellish Creatures, and on a sudden, we perceiv'd 2 or 3 Troops of Wolves, one on our Left, one behind us, and one on our Front, so that we seemed to be surrounded with them, however, as they did not fall upon us, we kept our Way forward, as fast as we could make our Horses go, which the Way being very rough, was only a good large Trot, and in this Manner we came in View of the Entrance of a Wood, through which we were to pass, at the farther Side of the Plain, but we were greatly surpris'd, when coming nearer the Lane, or Pass, we saw a confus'd Number of Wolves standing just at the Entrance.

On a sudden, at another opening of the Wood, we heard the Noise of a Gun, and looking that Way, out rushed a Horse, with a Saddle, and a Bridle on him, flying like the Wind, and sixteen or seventeen Wolves after him, full Speed, indeed, the Horse had the Heels of them, but as we suppos'd that he could not hold it at that rate, we doubted not but they would get up with him at last, and no question but they did

But here we had a most horrible Sight, for riding up to the Entrance where the Horse came out, we found the Carcass of another Horse, and of two Men, devour'd by the ravenous Creatures, and one



of the Men was no doubt the same who we heard fired the Gun, for there lay a Gun just by him, fired off, but as to the Man, his Head and the upper Part of his Body was eaten up

This filled us with Horror, and we knew not what Course to take but the Creatures resolv'd us soon, for they gather'd about us presently, in hopes of Prey, and I verily believe there were three hundred of them. It happen'd very much to our Advantage, that at the Entrance into the Wood, but at a little Way from it, there lay some large Timber Trees, which had been cut down the Summer before, and I suppose lay there for Carriage, I drew my little Troop in among those Trees, and placing ourselves in a Line, behind one long Tree, I advis'd them all to light, and keeping that Tree



before us, for a Breast-Work, to stand in a Triangle, or three Fronts, enclosing our Horses in the Centre.

We did so, and it was well we did, for never was a more furious Charge than the Creatures made upon us in the Place, they came on us with a growling kind of a Noise (and mounted the Piece of Timber, which as I said was our Breast-Work) as if they were only rushing upon their Prey, and this Fury of theirs, it seems, was principally occasion'd by their seeing our Horses behind us, which was the Prey they aimed at. I order'd our Men to fire as before, every other Man, and they took their Aim so sure, that indeed they killed several of the Wolves at the first Volley, but there was a Necessity to keep a continual Firing, for they came on like Devils, those behind pushing on those before.

When we had fired our second Volley of our Fusees, we thought they stopped a little, and I hoped they would have gone off, but it was but a Moment, for others came forward again, so we fired two Volleys of our Pistols, and I believe in these four Firings, we had killed seventeen or eighteen of them, and lamed twice as many, yet they came on again.

I was loth to spend our last Shot too hastily, so I called my Servant, not my Man *Friday*, for he was better employ'd, for with the greatest Dexterity imaginable, he had charged my Fusee, and his own, while we were engag'd, but as I said, I called my other Man, and giving him a Horn of Powder, I bade him lay a Train, all along the Piece of Timber, and let it be a large Train, he did so, and had but just Time to get away, when the Wolves came up to it, and some were got up upon it, when I snapping an uncharg'd Pistol, close to the Powder, set it on fire, those that were upon the Timber were scorched with it, and six or seven of them fell, or rather jumped in among us, with the Force and Fright of the Fire, we dispatch'd these in an Instant, and the rest were so frightened with the Light, which the Night, for it was now very near Dark, made more terrible, that they drew back a little

Upon which I order'd our last Pistol to be fired off in one Volley, and after that we gave a Shout, upon this, the Wolves turned Tail, and we sally'd immediately upon near twenty lame Ones, who we found struggling on the Ground, and fell a cutting them with our Swords, which answer'd our Expectation, for the Crying and Howling they made, was better understood by their Fellows, so that they all fled and left us

We had, first and last, killed about three Score of them, and had it been Daylight, we had killed many more. The Field of Battle being thus cleared, we made forward again, for we had still near a League to go. We heard the ravenous Creatures howl and yell in the Woods as we went, several Times, and sometimes we fancy'd we saw some of them, but the Snow dazzling our Eyes, we were not certain, so in about an Hour more, we came to the Town, where we were to lodge, which we found in a terrible Fright, and all in Arms, for it seems, that the Night before, the Wolves and some Bears had broke into the Village in the Night, and put them in a terrible Fright, and they were oblig'd to keep Guard Night and Day, but especially in the Night, to preserve their Cattle, and indeed their People

The next Morning our Guide was so ill, and his Limbs swelled with the rankling of his two Wounds, that he could go no farther, so we were oblig'd to take a new Guide there, and go to *Thoulouse*, where we found a warm Climate, a fruitful pleasant Country, and no Snow, no Wolves, or anything like them, but when we told our Story at *Thoulouse*, they told us it was nothing but what was ordinary in the great Forest at the Foot of the Mountains, especially when the Snow lay on the Ground. But they inquir'd much what kind of a Guide we had gotten, that would venture to bring us that Way in such a severe Season, and told us, it was very much we were not all devour'd. When we told them how we placed ourselves, and the Horses in the Middle, they blamed us exceedingly, and told us it was fifty to one but we had been all destroy'd, for it was the Sight of the Horses which made the Wolves so furious, seeing their Prey, and that at other Times they are really afraid of a Gun, but they being excessive Hungry, and raging on that Account, the Eagerness to come at the Horses had made them senseless of Danger, and that if we had not by the continu'd Fire, and at last by the Stratagem of the Train of Powder, master'd them, it had been great Odds but that we had been torn to Pieces, whereas had we been content to have sat still on Horseback, and fired as Horsemen, they would not have taken the Horses for so much their own, when Men were on their Backs, as otherwise, and withal they told us, that at last, if we had stood altogether, and left our Horses, they would have been so eager to have devour'd them, that we might have come off safe, especially having our Fire Arms in our Hands, and being so many in Number.

For my Part, I was never so sensible of Danger in my Life; for seeing above three hundred Devils come roaring and opened mouthed to devour us, and having nothing to shelter us, or retreat to, I gave myself over for lost, and as it was, I believe, I shall never care to cross those Mountains again, I think I would much rather go a thousand Leagues by Sea, though I were sure to meet with a Storm once a Week.

I have nothing uncommon to take Notice of, in my Passage through *France*, nothing but what other Travellers have given an Account of, with much more Advantage than I can. I travell'd from *Thoulouse* to *Paris*, and without any considerable Stay, came to *Calais*, and landed safe at *Dover*, the fourteenth of *January*, after having had a severely cold Season to travel in.

I was now come to the Centre of my Travels, and had in a little Time all my new discover'd Estate safe about me, the Bills of Exchange which I brought with me having been very currently paid

My principal Guide, and Privy Counsellor, was my good ancient Widow, who in Gratitude for the Money I had sent her, thought no Pains too much, or Care too great, to employ for me, and I trusted her so entirely with everything, that I was perfectly easy as to the Security of my Effects; and indeed, I was very happy from my Beginning, and now to the End, in the unspotted Integrity of this good Gentlewoman

And now I began to think of leaving my Effects with this Woman, and setting out for *Lisbon*, and so to the *Brasils*, but now another Scruple came in my Way, and that was Religion, for as I had entertain'd some Doubts about the *Roman* Religion, even while I was abroad, especially in my State of Solitude, so I knew there was no going to the *Brasils* for me, much less going to settle there, unless I resolv'd to embrace the *Roman* Catholic Religion, without any Reserve, unless on the other hand, I resolv'd to be a Sacrifice to my Principles, be a Martyr for Religion, and die in the Inquisition, so I resolv'd to stay at Home, and if I could find Means for it, to dispose of my Plantation.

To this Purpose I wrote to my old Friend at *Lisbon*, who in Return gave me Notice, that he could easily dispose of it there But that if I thought fit to give him Leave to offer it in my Name to the two Merchants, the Survivors of my Trustees, who lived in the *Brasils*, who must fully understand the Value of it, who lived just upon the Spot, and who I knew were very rich, so that he believ'd they would be fond of buying it, he did not doubt, but I should make 4 or 5000 Pieces of Eight, the more of it.

Accordingly I agreed, gave him Order to offer it to them, and he did so, and in about 8 Months more, the Ship being then return'd, he sent me an Account, that they had accepted the Offer, and had remitted 33,000 Pieces of Eight, to a Correspondent of theirs at *Lisbon*, to pay for it.

In Return, I signed the Instrument of Sale in the Form which they sent from *Lisbon*, and sent it to my old Man, who sent me Bills of Exchange for 32,800 Pieces of Eight to me, for the Estate, reserving the Payment of 100 Moidores a Year to him, the old Man, during his Life, and 50 Moidores afterwards to his Son for his Life,

which I had promised them, which the Plantation was to make good as a Rentcharge And thus I have given the first Part of a Life of Fortune and Adventure, a Life of Providence's Chequer-work, and of a Variety which the World will seldom be able to show the like of Beginning foolishly, but closing much more happily than any Part of it ever gave me Leave so much as to hope for

Any one would think, that in this State of complicated good Fortune, I was past running any more Hazards, and so indeed I had been, if other Circumstances had concurr'd, but I was inur'd to a wandering Life, had no Family, not many Relations, nor however rich had I contracted much Acquaintance, and though I had sold my Estate in the *Brasils*, yet I could not keep the Country out of my Head, and had a great Mind to be upon the Wing again, especially I could not resist the strong Inclination I had to see my Island, and to know if the poor *Spaniards* were in Being there, and how the Rogues I left there had used them

My true Friend, the Widow, earnestly dissuaded me from it, and so far prevail'd with me, that for almost seven Years she prevented my running Abroad, during which time, I took my two Nephews, the Children of one of my Brothers, into my Care The eldest having something of his own, I bred up as a Gentleman, and gave him a Settlement of some Addition to his Estate, after my Deccase; the other I put out to a Captain of a Ship, and after five Years, finding him a sensible bold enterprising young Fellow, I put him into a good Ship, and sent him to Sea And this young Fellow afterwards drew me in, as old as I was, to farther Adventures myself

In the meantime, I in Part settled myself here, for first of all I marry'd, and that not either to my Disadvantage or Dissatisfaction, and had three Children, two Sons and one Daughter But my Wife dying, and my Nephew coming Home with good Success from a Voyage to *Spain*, my Inclination to go Abroad, and his Importunity prevailed and engag'd me to go in his Ship, as a private Trader to the *East Indies* This was in the Year 1694.

In this Voyage I visited my new Colony in the Island, saw my Successors the *Spaniards*, had the whole Story of their Lives, and of the Villains I left there, how at first they insulted the poor *Spaniards* how they afterwards agreed, disagreed, united, separated, and how at last the *Spaniards* were oblig'd to use Violence with them, how they were subjected to the *Spaniards*, how honestly the *Spaniards* used

them; a History, if it were enter'd into, as full of Variety and wonderful Accidents, as my own Part, particularly also as to their Battles with the *Caribbeans*, who landed several times upon the Island, and as to the Improvements they made upon the Island itself, and how five of them made an Attempt upon the main Land, and brought away eleven Men and five Women Prisoners, by which at my coming, I found about twenty young Children on the Island.

Here I stayed about 20 Days, left them Supplies of all necessary things, and particularly of Arms, Powder, Shot, Clothes, Tools, and two Workmen, which I brought from *England* with me, *viz* a Carpenter and a Smith.

Besides this, I shared the Island into Parts with them, and reserv'd to myself the Property of the whole, but gave them such Parts respectively as they agreed on, and having settled all things with them, and engaged them not to leave the Place, I left them there.

From thence I touch'd at the *Brasils*, from whence I sent a Bark, which I bought there, with more People to the Island, and in it, besides other Supplies, I sent seven Women, being such as I found proper for Service, or for Wives to such as would take them. As to the *English* Men, I promis'd them to send them some Women from *England*, with a good Cargo of Necessaries, if they would apply themselves to Planting, which I afterwards perform'd. And the Fellows proved very honest and diligent after they were master'd, and had their Properties set apart for them. I sent them also from the *Brasils* five Cows, three of them being big with Calf, some Sheep, and some Hogs, which, when I came again, were considerably increas'd.

But all these things, with an Account how 300 *Caribbes* came and invaded them, and ruin'd their Plantations, and how they fought with that whole Number twice, and were at first defeated, and three of them killed, but at last a Storm destroying their Enemies' Canoes, they famish'd or destroy'd almost all the rest, and renew'd and recover'd the Possession of their Plantation, and still lived upon the Island.

All these things, with some very surprising Incidents in some new Adventures of my own, for ten Years more, I may perhaps give a farther Account of hereafter.



THE  
FARTHER ADVENTURES  
OF  
ROBINSON CRUSOE.







## THE PREFACE.



*HE Success the former Part of this Work has met with in the World, has yet been no other than is acknowledg'd to be due to the surprising Variety of the Subject, and to the agreeable Manner of the Performance*

*All the Endeavours of envious People to reproach it with being a Romance, to search it for Errors in Geography, Inconsistency in the Relation, and Contradictions in the Fact, have proved abortive, and as impotent as malicious*

*The just Application of every Incident, the religious and useful Inferences drawn from every Part, are so many Testimonies to the good Design of making it public, and must legitimate all the Part that may be called Invention, or Parable in the Story*

*The Second Part, if the Editor's Opinion may pass, is (contrary to the Usage of Second Parts,) every Way as entertaining as the First, contains as strange and surprising Incidents, and as great a Variety of them, nor is the Application less serious, or suitable, and doubtless will, to the sober, as well as ingenious Reader, be every way as profitable and diverting, and this makes the abridging this Work, as scandalous, as it is knavish and ridiculous, seeing, while to shorten the Book, that they may seem to reduce the Value, they strip it of all those Reflections, as*

*well religious as moral, which are not only the greatest Beauties of the Work, but are calculated for the infinite Advantage of the Reader.*

*By this they leave the Work naked of its brightest Ornaments, and if they would, at the same Time pretend, that the Author has supply'd the Story out of his Invention, they take from it the Improvement, which alone recommends that Invention to wise and good Men*

*The Injury these Men do the Proprietor of this Work, is a Practice all honest Men abhor, and he believes he may challenge them to shew the Difference between that and Robbing on the Highway, or Breaking open a House.*

*If they can't shew any Difference in the Crime, they will find it hard to shew why there should be any Difference in the Punishment And he will answer for it, that nothing shall be wanting on his Part, to do them Justice.*





THE  
FARTHER ADVENTURES  
OF  
ROBINSON CRUSOE, &c.



**T**HAT homely Proverb used on so many Occasions in *England, viz That what is bred in the Bone will not go out of the Flesh*, was never more verisfy'd, than in the Story of my Life Any one would think, that after thirty-five Years' Affliction, and a Variety of unhappy Circumstances, which few Men, if any ever, went through before, and after near seven Years of Peace and Enjoyment in the Fulness of all Things, grown old, and when, *if ever*, it might be allowed me to have had experience of every State of middle Life, and to know which was most adapted to make a Man completely happy I say, after all this, any one would have thought that the native Propensity to rambling, which I gave an Account of in my first Setting out into the World, to have been so predominate in my Thoughts, should be worn out, the volatile Part be fully evacuated, or at least condens'd, and I might at 61 Years of Age have been a little inclin'd to stay at Home, and have done venturing Life and Fortune any more

Nay farther, the common Motive of foreign Adventures was taken away in me, for I had no Fortune to make, I had nothing to seek. If I had gained ten thousand Pound, I had been no richer, for I had already sufficient for me, and for those I had to leave it to, and that I had was visibly increasing, for having no great Family, I could not spend the Income of what I had, unless I would set up for an expensive Way of Living, such as a great Family, Servants, Equipage, Gaiety, and *the like*, which were Things I had no Notion of, or Inclination to, so that I had nothing indeed to do, but to sit still, and fully enjoy what I had got, and see it increase daily upon my Hands.

Yet all these Things had no Effect upon me, or at least, not enough to resist the strong Inclination I had to go Abroad again, which hung about me like a chronical Distemper, particularly the Desire of seeing my new Plantation in the Island, and the Colony I left there, run in my Head continually. I dreamed of it all Night, and my Imagination run upon it all Day, it was uppermost in all my Thoughts, and my Fancy worked so steadily and strongly upon it, that I talked of it out of Sleep, in short, nothing could remove it out of my Mind, it even broke so violently into all my Discourses, that it made my Conversation tiresome, for I could talk of nothing else, all my Discourse run into it, even to Impertinence, and I saw it myself.

I have often heard Persons of good Judgment say, That all the Stir People make in the World about Ghosts and Apparitions, is owing to the Strength of Imagination, and the powerful Operation of Fancy in their Minds, that there is no such Thing as a Spirit appearing, or a Ghost walking, *and the like*. That People's poring affectionately upon the past Conversation of their deceas'd Friends, so realizes it to them, that they are capable of fancying upon some extraordinary Circumstances, that they see them, talk to them, and are answered by them, when, in Truth, there is nothing but Shadow and Vapour in the Thing, and they really know nothing of the Matter.

For my Part, I know not to this Hour, whether there are any such Things as real Apparitions, Spectres, or walking of People after they are dead, or whether there is anything in the Stories they tell us of that Kind, more than the Product of Vapours, sick Minds, and wandering Fancies, But this I know, that my Imagination worked up to

such a Height, and brought me into such Ecstasies of Vapours, or what else I may call it, that I actually suppos'd myself, often-times upon the Spot, at my old Castle behind the Trees, saw my old *Spaniard*, *Friday's* Father, and the reprobate Sailors I left upon the Island, nay, I fancy'd I talked with them, and looked at them so steadily, though I was broad awake, as at Persons just before me, and this I did till I often frighted myself with the Images my Fancy represented to me. One Time in my Sleep I had the Villany of the 3 Pirate Sailors so lively related to me by the first *Spaniard* and *Friday's* Father, that it was surprising, they told me how they barbarously attempted to murder all the *Spaniards*, and that they set Fire to the Provisions they had laid up, on Purpose to distress and starve them, Things that I had never heard of, and that indeed were never all of them true in Fact: But it was so warm in my Imagination, and so realiz'd to me, that to the Hour I saw them, I could not be persuaded, but that it was or would be true, also how I resented it, when the *Spaniard* complain'd to me, and how I brought them to Justice, tried them before me, and order'd them all three to be hanged. What there was really in this, shall be seen in its Place. For however I came to form such Things in my Dream, and what secret Converse of Spirits injected it, yet there was very much of it true. I say, I own that this Dream had nothing in it literally and specifically true. But the general Part was so true, the base villanous Behaviour of these three harden'd Rogues was such, and had been so much worse than all I can describe, that the Dream had too much Similitude of the Fact, and as I would afterwards have punished them severely, so if I had hanged them all, I had been much in the Right; and should have been justifiable both by the Laws of God and Man.

But to return to my Story, in this Kind of Temper I had lived some Years, I had no Enjoyment of my Life, no pleasant Hours, no agreeable Diversion but what had something or other of this in it, so that my Wife, who saw my Mind so wholly bent upon it, told me very seriously one Night, That she believ'd there was some secret powerful Impulse of Providence upon me, which had determin'd me to go thither again, and that she found nothing hindered my going, but my being engag'd to a Wife and Children. She told me that it was true she could not think of parting with me, but as she was assur'd, that if she was dead, it would be the first Thing I would do.

So as it seem'd to her, that the Thing was determin'd above, she would not be the only Obstruction for if I thought fit, and resolv'd to go—here she found me very intent upon her Words, and that I look'd very earnestly at her, so that it a little disorder'd her, and she stopp'd. I asked her, Why she did not go on, and say out what she was going to say? But I perceiv'd her Heart was too full, and some Tears stood in her Eyes Speak out, my Dear, said I. Are you willing I should go? No, *says she very affectionately*, I am far from willing. But if you are resolv'd to go, says she, and rather than I will be the only Hindrance, I will go with you, for though I think it a most preposterous Thing for one of your Years, and in your Condition, yet if it must be, said she, again weeping, I won't leave you, for if it be of Heaven, you must do it. There is no resisting it, and if Heaven makes it your Duty to go, he will also make it mine to go with you, or otherwise dispose of me, that I may not obstruct it.

This affectionate Behaviour of my Wife's brought me a little out of the Vapours, and I began to consider what I was a doing, I corrected my wandering Fancy, and began to argue with myself sedately, what Business I had after threescore Years, and after such a Life of tedious Sufferings and Disasters, and closed in so happy and easy a Manner, I say, what Business I had to rush into new Hazards, and put myself upon Adventures, fit only for Youth and Poverty to run into.

With those Thoughts, I considered my new Engagement, that I had a Wife, one Child born, and my Wife then great with Child of another, that I had all the World could give me, and had no Need to seek Hazards for Gain, that I was declining in Years, and ought to think rather of leaving what I had gain'd, than of seeking to increase it, that as to what my Wife had said, of its being an Impulse from Heaven, and that it should be my Duty to go, I had no Notion of that, so after many of these Cogitations, I struggled with the Power of my Imagination, reason'd myself out of it, *as I believe People may always do in like Cases, if they will*, and, in a Word, I conquer'd it, compos'd myself with such Arguments as occur'd to my Thought, and which my present Condition furnish'd me plentifully with, and particularly, as the most effectual Method, I resolv'd to divert myself with other Things, and to engage in some Business that might effectually tie me up from any more Excursions of this Kind, for I found that Thing return upon me chiefly when I was idle, had nothing to do, or anything of Moment immediately before me.

To this Purpose I bought a little Farm in the County of *Bedford*, and resolv'd to remove myself thither. I had a little convenient House upon it, and the Land about it I found was capable of great Improvement, and that it was many Ways suited to my Inclination which delighted in Cultivating, Managing, Planting, and Improving of Land, and particularly, being an Inland Country, I was remov'd from conversing among Ships, Sailors, and Things relating to the remote Part of the World.

In a Word, I went down to my Farm, settled my Family, bought me Ploughs, Harrows, a Cart, Waggon, Horses, Cows, Sheep, and setting seriously to Work, became in one half Year, a mere Country Gentleman, my Thoughts were entirely taken up in managing my Servants, cultivating the Ground, Enclosing, Planting, &c. and I lived, as I thought, the most agreeable Life that Nature was capable of directing, or that a Man always bred to Misfortunes was capable of being retreated to.

I farmed upon my own Land, I had no Rent to pay, was limited by no Articles, I could pull up or cut down as I pleased. What I planted, was for myself, and what I unproved, was for my Family, and having thus left off the Thoughts of Wandering, I had not the least Discomfort in any Part of Life, as to this World. Now I thought indeed, that I enjoy'd the middle State of Life, that my Father so earnestly recommended to me, and lived a kind of heavenly Life, something like what is described by the Poet upon the Subject of a Country Life.

*Free from Fices, free from Care,  
Age has no Pain, and Youth no Snare*

But in 'the Middle of all this Felicity, one Blow from unforeseen Providence unhing'd me at once, and not only made a Breach upon me inevitable and incurable, but drove me, by its Consequences, into a deep Relapse into the wandering Disposition, which, as I may say, being born in my very Blood, soon recover'd its hold of me, and like the Returns of a violent Distemper, came on with an irresistible Force upon me, so that nothing could make any more Impression upon me. This Blow was the Loss of my Wife.

It is not my Business here to write an Elegy upon my Wife, give a Character of her particular Virtues, and make my Court to the Sex by the Flattery of a Funeral Sermon. She was, in a few Words, the



Stay of all my Affairs, the Centre of all my Enterprises, the Engine, that by her Prudence reduc'd me to that happy Compass I was in, from the most extravagant and ruinous Project that flutter'd in my Head, as above, and did more to guide my rambling Genius, than a Mother's Tears, a Father's Instructions, a Friend's Counsel, or all my own reasoning Powers could do. I was happy in listening to her Tears, and in being moved by her Entreaties, and to the last Degree desolate and dislocated in the World by the Loss of her

When she was gone, the World looked awkwardly round me, I was as much a Stranger in it, in my Thoughts, as I was in the *Brasils*, when I went first on Shore there, and as much alone, except as to the Assistance of Servants, as I was in my Island. I knew neither what to do, or what not to do. I saw the World busy round me, one Part labouring for Bread, and the other Part squandering in vile Excesses or empty Pleasures, equally miserable, because the End they propos'd still fled from them, for the Man of Pleasure every Day surfeited of his Vice, and heaped up Work for Sorrow and Repentance, and the Men of Labour spent their Strength in daily Strugglings for Bread to maintain the vital Strength they labour'd with, so living in a daily Circulation of Sorrow, living but to work, and working but to live, as if daily Bread were the only End of wearisome Life, and a wearisome Life the only Occasion of daily Bread.

This put me in Mind of the Life, I lived in my Kingdom, the Island, where I suffer'd no more Corn to grow, because I did not want it, and bred no more Goats, because I had no more Use for them. Where the Money lay in the Drawer till it grew mouldy, and had scarce the Favour to be looked upon in 20 Years.

All these Things, had I improv'd them as I ought to have done, and as Reason and Religion had dictated to me, would have taught to me to search farther than human Enjoyments for a full Felicity, and that there was something which certainly was the Reason and End of Life, superior to all these Things, and which was either to be possess'd, or at least hoped for on this Side the Grave.

But my Sage Counsellor was gone, I was like a Ship without a Pilot, that could only run afore the Wind. My Thoughts ran all away again into the old Affair, my Head quite was turned with the Whimsies of foreign Adventures, and all the pleasant innocent Amusements of my Farm, and my Garden, my Cattle, and my Family, which before entirely possess'd me, were nothing to me, had

no Relish, and were like Music to one that has no Ear, or Food to one that has no Taste In a Word, I resolv'd to leave off House keeping, let my Farm, and return to *London*, and in a few Months after, I did so

When I came to *London*, I was still as uneasy as I was before, I had no Relish to the Place, no Employment in it, nothing to do but to saunter about like an idle Person, of whom it may be said, he is perfectly useless in God's Creation, and it is not one Farthing Matter to the rest of his Kind, whether he be dead or alive This also was the Life, which of all Circumstances of Life was the most my Aversion, who had been all my Days used to an active Life, and I would often say to myself, *A State of Idleness is the very Dregs of Life*, and indeed I thought I was much more suitably employ'd, when I was 26 Days making me a Deal Board

It was now the Beginning of the Year 1693, when my Nephew, whom as I had observ'd before I had brought up to the Sea, and had made him Commander of a Ship, was come Home from a short Voyage to *Bilboa*, being the first he had made, and he came to me, and told me, that some Merchants of his Acquaintance had been proposing to him to go a Voyage for them to the *East Indies* and to *China*, as private Traders And now Uncle, says he, if you will go to Sea with me, I'll engage to land you upon your old Habitation in the Island, for we are to touch at the *Brasils*

Nothing can be a greater Demonstration of a future State, and of the Existence of an invisible World, than the Concurrence of second Causes, with the Iders of Things, which we form in our Minds, perfectly reserv'd, and not communicated to any in the World.

My Nephew knew nothing how far my Distemper of wandering was return'd upon me, and I knew nothing of what he had in his Thoughts to say, when that very Morning before he came to me, I had a great deal of Confusion of Thought, and revolving every Part of my Circumstances in my Mind, came to this Resolution, *viz* That I would go to *Lisbon*, and consult with my old Sea-Captain, and so if it was rational and practicable, I would go and see the Island again, and see what was become of my People there I had pleased myself with the Thoughts of peopling the Place, and carrying Inhabitants from hence, getting a Patent for the Possession, and I know not what, when in the Middle of all this, in comes my Nephew, as I have said, with his Project of carrying me thither, in his Way to the *East-Indies*.

I paused a while at his Words, and looking steadily at him, *What Devil*, said I, *sent you of this unlucky Errand?* My Nephew startled as if he had been frighted at first, but perceiving I was not much displeas'd with the Proposal, he recover'd himself I hope it may not be an unlucky Proposal, Sir, says he, I daresay you would be pleased to see your new Colony there, where you once reigned with more Felicity, than most of your Brother Monarchs in the World

In a Word, the Scheme hit so exactly with my Temper, that is to say, the Prepossession I was under, and of which I have said so much, that I told him in few Words, if he agreed with the Merchants, I would go with him But I told him, I would not promise to go any farther than my own Island. Why Sir, says he, you don't want to be left there again, I hope? Why, said I, can you not take me up again in your Return? He told me, it could not be possible, that the Merchants would allow him to come that Way with a loaded Ship of such value, it being a Month's Sail out of his Way, and might be three or four Besides, Sir, if I should miscarry, said he, and not return at all, then you would be just reduced to the Condition you were in before

This was very rational, but we both found out a Remedy for it, which was to carry a framed Sloop on board the Ship, which being taken in Pieces, and shipped on board the Ship, might by the Help of some Carpenters, whom we agreed to carry with us, be set up again in the Island, and finish'd, fit to go to Sea in a few Days

I was not long resolving, for indeed the Importunities of my Nephew joined in so effectually with my Inclination, that nothing could oppose me On the other Hand, my Wife being dead, I had nobody concern'd themselves so much for me, as to persuade me one way or other, except my ancient good Friend the Widow, who earnestly struggled with me to consider my Years, my easy Circumstances, and the needless Hazards of a long Voyage, and above all, my young Children But it was all to no Purpose, I had an irresistible Decree to the Voyage, and I told her, I thought there was something so uncommon in the Impressions I had upon my Mind for the Voyage, that it would be a kind of resisting Providence, if I should attempt to stay at Home, after which, she ceased her Expostulations, and joined with me, not only in making Provision for my Voyage, but also in settling my Family Affairs for my Absence, and providing for the Education of my Children

In Order to this, I made my Will, and settled the Estate I had, in such a Manner for my Children, and placed in such Hands, that I was perfectly easy and satisfy'd they would have Justice done them, whatever might befall me, and for their Education, I left it wholly to my Widow, with a sufficient Maintenance to herself for her Care All which she richly deserv'd, for no Mother could have taken more Care in their Education, or understood it better, and as she lived till I came Home, I also lived to thank her for it.

My Nephew was ready to sail about the Beginning of *January* 1694-5, and I with my Man *Friday* went on board in the *Downs* the 8th, having besides that Sloop which I mention'd above, a very considerable Cargo of all Kinds of necessary Things for my Colony, which if I did not find in good Condition, I resolv'd to leave so

First, I carry'd with me some Servants, whom I purpos'd to place there, as Inhabitants, or at least to set on Work there upon my own Account while I stay'd, and either to leave them there, or carry them forward as they should appear willing, particularly, I carry'd two Carpenters, a Smith, and a very handy ingenious Fellow, who was a Cooper by Trade but was also a general Mechanic, for he was dexterous at making Wheels, and Hand-Mills to grind Corn, was a good Turner, and a good Pot-Maker, he also made anything that was proper to make of Earth, or of Wood, in a Word, we call'd him *Our Jack of all Trades*

With these I carry'd a Tailor, who had offer'd himself to go Passenger to the *East Indies* with my Nephew, but afterwards consented to stay on our New Plantation, and prov'd a most necessary handy Fellow, as could be desir'd, in many other Businesses, besides that of his Trade, for as I observ'd formerly, Necessity arms us for all Employments

My Cargo, as near as I can collect, for I have not kept an Account of the Particulars, consisted of a sufficient Quantity of Linen, and some thin *English* Stuffs for clothing the *Spaniards* that I expected to find there, and enough of them, as by my Calculation might comfortably supply them for seven Years, If I remember right, the Materials I carried for clothing them with, Gloves, Hats, Shoes, Stockings, and all such Things as they could want for wearing, amounted to above 200 Pounds, including some Beds, Bedding, and Household Stuff, particularly Kitchen Utensils, with Pots, Kettles, Pewter, Brass, &c and near a hundred Pound more in Ironwork,

Nails, Tools of every Kind, Staples, Hooks, Hinges, and every necessary Thing I could think of

I carry'd also an hundred spare Arms, Muskets, and Fuzees, besides some Pistols, a considerable Quantity of Shot of all Sizes, and two Pieces of Brass Cannon, and because I knew not what Time, and what Extremities I was providing for, I carry'd an hundred Barrels of Powder, besides Swords, Cutlasses, and the Iron Part of some Pikes, and Halberts, so that in short we had a large Magazine of all Sorts of Stores, and I made my Nephew carry two small Quarter-Deck Guns more than he wanted for his Ship, to leave behind, if there was Occasion, that when we came there, we might build a Fort, and man it against all Sorts of Enemies. And indeed, I at first thought there was Need enough for it all, and much more, if we hoped to maintain our Possession of the Island, as shall be seen in the Course of that Story

I had not such bad Luck in this Voyage as I had been used to meet with, and therefore shall have the less Occasion to interrupt the Reader, who perhaps may be impatient to hear how Matters went with my Colony, yet some odd Accidents, cross Winds, and bad Weather happen'd, on this first setting out, which made the Voyage longer than I expected it at first, and I who had never made but one Voyage, (*viz*) my first Voyage to *Guinea*, in which I might be said to come back again, as the Voyage was at first design'd, began to think the same ill Fate still attended me, and that I was born to be never contented with being on Shore, and yet to be always unfortunate at Sea.

Contrary Winds first put us to the Northward, and we were oblig'd to put in at *Galway* in *Ireland*, where we lay Wind-bound two and twenty Days, but we had this Satisfaction with the Disaster, that Provisions were here exceeding cheap, and in the utmost Plenty; so that while we lay here, never touch'd the Ship's Stores, but rather added to them, here also I took in several live Hogs, and two Cows, and Calves, which I resolv'd, if I had a good Passage, to put on Shore in my Island, but we found Occasion to dispose otherwise of them.

We set out the 5th of *February* from *Ireland* and had a very fair Gale of Wind for some Days, as I remember, it might be about the 20th of *February* in the Evening late, when the Mate having the Watch, came into the Round-house, and told us, he saw a Flash of Fire, and heard a Gun fired, and while he was telling us of it, a Boy came and told us the Boatman heard another. This made us all

run out upon the Quarter-Deck, where for a while we heard nothing, but in a few Minutes we saw a very great Light, and found that there was some very terrible Fire at a Distance, immediately we had Recourse to our Reckonings, in which we all agreed, that there could be no Land that Way, in which the Fire shewed itself, no not for 500 Leagues, for it appear'd at W.N.W. Upon this we concluded it must be some Ship on Fire at Sea, and as by our hearing the Noise of Guns just before, we concluded it could not be far off. We stood directly towards it, and were presently satisfy'd we should discover it, because the farther we sailed, the greater the Light appear'd, though the Weather being hazy, we could not perceive anything but the Light for a while, in about half an Hour's Sailing, the Wind being fair for us, though not much of it, and the Weather clearing up a little, we could plainly discern that it was a great Ship on Fire in the Middle of the Sea.

I was most sensibly touched with this Disaster, though not at all acquainted with the Persons engag'd in it, I presently recollected my former Circumstances, and in what Condition I was in, when taken up by the *Portugal* Captain, and how much more deplorable the Circumstances of the poor Creatures belonging to this Ship must be, if they had no other Ship in Company with them. Upon this, I immediately order'd, that five Guns should be fired, one soon after another, that, if possible, we might give Notice to them, that there was Help for them at hand, and that they might endeavour to save themselves in their Boat, for though we could see the Flame of the Ship, yet they, it being Night, could see nothing of us.

We lay by some Time upon this, only driving as the burning Ship drove, waiting for Daylight, when, on a sudden, to our great Terror, though we had Reason to expect it, the Ship blew up in the Air, and immediately, that is to say, in a few Minutes, all the Fire was out, that is to say, the rest of the Ship sunk. This was a terrible, and indeed an afflicting Sight, for the Sake of the poor Men, who, I concluded, must be either all destroy'd in the Ship, or be in the utmost Distress in their Boat in the Middle of the Ocean, which at present, by Reason it was dark, I could not see. However, to direct them as well as I could, I caused Lights to be hung out in all the Parts of the Ship where we could, and which we had Lanterns for, and kept firing Guns all the Night long, letting them know by this, that there was a Ship not far off.

About 8 o'Clock in the Morning we discover'd the Ship's Boat by the Help of our Perspective Glasses, and found there were two of them, both thronged with People, and deep in the Water. We perceiv'd they rowed, the Wind being against them, that they saw our Ship, and did their utmost to make us see them

We immediately spread our Ancient to let them know we saw them, and hung a Waft out as a Signal for them to come on Board, and then made more Sail, standing directly to them. In little more than half an Hour we came up with them, and, in a word, took them all in, being no less than sixty-four Men, Women, and Children, for there were a great many Passengers

Upon the whole, we found it was a *French* Merchant Ship of 300 Ton, homeward bound from *Quebec*, in the River of *Canada*. The Master gave us a long Account of the Distress of his Ship, how the Fire began in the Steerage by the Negligence of the Steersman, but on his crying out for Help, was, as everybody thought, entirely put out, when they found that some Sparks of the first Fire had gotten into some Part of the Ship, so difficult to come at, that they could not effectually quench it, till getting in between the Timbers, and within the Ceiling of the Ship, it proceeded into the Hold, and master'd all the Skill, and all the Application they were able to exert.

They had no more to do then, but to get into their Boats, which to their great Comfort were pretty large, being their Longboat, and a great Shallop, besides a small Skiff which was of no great Service to them, other than to get some fresh Water and Provisions into her, after they had secur'd their Lives from the Fire. They had indeed small Hope of their Lives by getting into these Boats at that Distance from any Land, only as they said well, that they were escap'd from the Fire, and had a Possibility that some Ship might happen to be at Sea, and might take them in. They had Sails, Oars, and a Compass, and were preparing to make the best of their Way back to *Newfoundland*, the Wind blowing pretty fair, for it blew an easy Gale at S E. by E. They had as much Provisions and Water, as with sparing it so as to be next door to starving, might support them about 12 Days, in which, if they had no bad Weather, and no contrary Winds, the Captain said, he hoped he might get the Banks of *Newfoundland*, and might perhaps take some Fish to sustain them till they might go on Shore. But there were so many Chances against them in all these

Cases ; such as, Storms to overset and founder them, Rains and Cold to benumb and perish their Lambs, contrary Winds to keep them out and starve them, that it must have been next to miraculous if they had escap'd

In the midst of their Consultations, every one being hopeless, and ready to despair, the Captain with Tears in his Eyes told me, they were on a sudden surpris'd with the Joy of hearing a Gun fire, and after that four more, these were the five Guns which I caused to be fired at first seeing the Light This reviv'd their Hearts, and gave them the Notice, which, *as above*, I desir'd it should, (*viz*) that there was a Ship at hand for their Help

It was upon the hearing these Guns, that they took down their Masts and Sails, the Sound coming from the Windward, they resolv'd to lie by till Morning Some Time after this, hearing no more Guns, they fired three Muskets, one a considerable While after another, but these, the Wind being contrary, we never heard

Some Time after that again, they were still more agreeably surpris'd with seeing our Lights, and hearing the Guns, which, as I have said, I caused to be fired all the rest of the Night, this set them to work with their Oars, to keep their Boats a-head, at least, that we might the sooner come up with them, and at last, to their inexpressible Joy, they found we saw them

It is impossible for me to express the several Gestures, the strange Ecstasies, the Variety of Postures which these poor deliver'd People run into, to express the Joy of their Souls at so unexpected a Deliverance, Grief and Fear are easily described, Sighs, Tears, Groans, and a very few Motions of the Head and Hands make up the Sum of its Variety But an Excess of Joy, a Surprise of Joy, has a Thousand Extravagances in it, there were some in Tears, some raging, and tearing themselves, as if they had been in the greatest Agonies of Sorrow, some stark-raving and downright lunatic, some ran about the Ship stamping with their Feet, others wringing their Hands, some were dancing, some singing, some laughing, more crying, many quite dumb, not able to speak a Word, others sick and vomiting, several swooning, and ready to faint, and a few were crossing themselves, and giving God Thanks

I would not wrong them neither, there might be many that were thankful afterward, but the Passion was too strong for them at first, and they were not able to master it, they were thrown into Ecstasies



and a Kind of Frenzy, and it was but a very few that were compos'd and serious in their Joy

Perhaps the Case may have some Addition to it from the particular Circumstance of that Nation they belong'd to, I mean the *French*, whose Temper is allow'd to be more volatile, more passionate, and more sprightly, and their Spirits more fluid than in other Nations. I am not Philosopher enough to determine the Cause, but nothing I had ever seen before came up to it. The Ecstasies poor *Friday*, my trusty *Savage*, was in when he found his Father in the Boat, came the nearest to it, and the Surprise of the Master and his two Companions, whom I deliver'd from the Villains that set them on Shore in the Island, came a little Way towards it, but nothing was to compare to this either that I saw in *Friday*, or anywhere else in my Life.

It is further observable, that these Extravagancies did not show themselves in that different Manner I have mention'd in different Persons only. But all the Variety would appear in a short Succession of Moments in one and the same Person. A Man that we saw the Minute dumb, and as it were stupid and confounded, should the next Minute be dancing and hallooing like an Antic, and the next Moment be tearing his Hair, or pulling his Clothes to Pieces, and stamping them under his Feet, like a Madman, and a few Moments after that we should have him all in Tears, then sick, then swooning, and had not immediate Help been had, would, in a few Moments more have been dead, and thus it was not with one or two; or ten or twenty but with the greatest Part of them, and if I remember right, our Surgeon was oblig'd to let above thirty of them Blood.

There were two Priests among them, one an old Man, and the other a young Man, and that which was strangest was, that the oldest Man was the worst. As soon as he set his Foot on board our Ship and saw himself safe, he dropped down stone-dead, not the least Sign of Life could be perceiv'd in him, our Surgeon immediately apply'd proper Remedies to recover him, and was the only Man in the Ship that believ'd he was not dead. At length he opened a Vein in his Arm, having first chafed and rubbed the Part so as to warm it as much as possible. Upon this the Blood which only dropped at first flow'd something freely, in three Minutes after, the Man open'd his Eyes, and about a quarter of an Hour after that he spoke, grew better, and quite well, after the Blood was stopp'd, he walk'd about, told us he was perfectly well, took a Dram of Cordia

which the Surgeon gave him, and was what we called, *Come to himself*; about a quarter of an Hour after they came running into the Cabin to the Surgeon, who was bleeding a *French* Woman, that had fainted, and told him, the Priest was gone stark mad, it seems he had begun to revolve the Change of his Circumstance, and again this put him into an Ecstasy of Joy, his Spirits whirled about faster than the Vessels could convey them, the Blood grew hot and feverish, and the Man was as fit for *Bedlam*, as any Creature that ever was in it, the Surgeon would not bleed him again in that Condition, but gave him something to doze and put him to sleep, which after some Time operated upon him, and he waked the next Morning perfectly compos'd, and well

The younger Priest behav'd with great Command of his Passion, and was really an Example of a serious well-govern'd Mind, at his first coming on board the Ship, he threw himself flat on his Face, prostrating himself in Thankfulness for his Deliverance, in which I unhappily and unseasonably disturb'd him, really thinking he had been in a Swoon; but he spake calmly, thanked me, told me, he was giving God Thanks for his Deliverance, and begged me to leave him a few Moments, and that next to his Maker he would give me Thanks also

I was heartily sorry, that I disturb'd him, and not only left him, but kept others from interrupting him also, he continued in that Posture about three Minutes, or little more, after I left him, then came to me, as he had said he would, and with a great deal of Seriousness and Affection, but with Tears in his Eyes, thanked me that had under God, given him and so many miserable Creatures their Lives I told him, I had no Room to move him to thank God for it, rather than me But I added, That it was nothing but what Reason and Humanity dictated to all Men, and that we had as much Reason as he to give thanks to God, who had blessed us so far as to make us the Instruments of his Mercy to so many of his Creatures

After this, the young Priest apply'd himself to his Country-Folks, labour'd to compose them, persuaded, entreated, argued, reason'd with them, and did his utmost to keep them within the Exercise of their Reason, and with some he had Success, though others were for Time out of all Government of themselves

I cannot help committing this to Writing, as perhaps it may be useful to those into whose Hands it may fall, for the guiding them-

selves in all the Extravagances of their Passions, for if an Excess of Joy can carry Men out to such a length beyond the Reach of their Reason, what will not the Extravagances of Anger, Rage, and a provok'd Mind, carry us to? and indeed here I saw Reason for keeping an exceeding Watch over our Passions of every Kind, as well those of Joy and Satisfaction, as those of Sorrow and Anger

We were something disordered by these Extravagances among our new Guests for the first Day, but when they had been retired, Lodgings provided for them as well as our Ship would allow, and they had slept heartily, as most of them did, they were quite another Sort of People the next Day

Nothing of good Manners or civil Acknowledgments for the Kindness shown them was wanting, the *French*, it is known, are naturally apt to exceed that Way. The Captain and one of the Priests came to me the next Day, and desiring to speak with me and my Nephew, the Commander, began to consult with us what should be done with them, and first they told us, that as we had saved their Lives, so all they had was little enough for a Return to us for that Kindness received. The Captain said, they had saved some Money and some Things of Value in their Boats, caught hastily out of the Flames, and if we would accept it, they were ordered to make an Offer of it all to us, they only desired to be set on Shore somewhere in our Way, where if possible they might get Passage to *France*

My Nephew was for accepting their Money at first Word, and to consider what to do with them afterwards, but I overrul'd him in that Part, for I knew what it was to be set on Shore in a strange Country, and if the *Portugal* Captain that took me up at Sea had served me so, and took all I had for my Deliverance, I must have starved, or have been as much a Slave at the *Brasils* as I had been in *Barbary*, the mere being sold to a *Mahometan* excepted, and perhaps a *Portuguese* is not much a better Master than a *Turk*, if not in some Cases a much worse.

I therefore told the *French* Captain that we had taken them up in their Distress, it was true, but that it was our Duty to do so as we were Fellow-Creatures, and as we would desire to be so deliver'd if we were in the like or any other Extremity; that we had done nothing for them but what we believed they would have done for us, if we had been in their Case, and they in ours, but that we took them up to save them, not to plunder them, and it would be a most

barbarous thing to take that little from them which they saved out of the Fire, and then set them on Shore and leave them, that this would be first to save them from Death, and then kill them ourselves, save them from drowning, and abandon them to starving, and therefore I would not let the least thing be taken from them. As to setting them on Shore, I told them indeed that was an exceeding Difficulty to us, for that the Ship was bound to the *East Indies*, and though we were driven out of our Course to the Westward a very great Way, and perhaps were directed by Heaven on Purpose for their Deliverance, yet it was impossible for us wilfully to change our Voyage on this particular Account, nor could my Nephew, the Captain, answer it to the Freighters, with whom he was under Charter-Party to pursue his Voyage by the Way of *Brasil*, and all I knew we could do for them, was to put ourselves in the Way of meeting with other Ships homeward bound from the *West Indies*, and get them Passage, if possible, to *England* or *France*.

The first Part of the Proposal was so generous and kind, they could not but be very thankful for it, but they were in a very great Consternation, especially the Passengers, at the Notion of being carry'd away to the *East Indies*, and they then entreated me, that seeing I was driven so far to the Westward, before I met with them, I would at least keep on the same Course to the Banks of *Newfoundland*, where it was probable I might meet with some Ship or Sloop that they might hire to carry them back to *Canada*, from whence they came.

I thought this was but a reasonable Request on their Part, and therefore I inclin'd to agree to it, for indeed I consider'd, that to carry this whole Company to the *East Indies*, would not only be an intolerable Severity upon the poor People, but would be ruining our whole Voyage by devouring all our Provisions, so I thought it no Breach of Charter-Party, but what an unforeseen Accident made absolutely necessary to us, and in which no one could say we were to blame, for the Laws of God and Nature would have forbid that we should refuse to take up two Boats full of People in such a distress'd Condition, and the Nature of the Thing as well respecting ourselves as the poor People, oblig'd us to set them on Shore somewhere or other for their Deliverance, so I consented that we would carry them to *Newfoundland*, if Wind and Weather would permit, and if not, that I would carry them to *Martinico* in the *West Indies*.

The Wind continued fresh Easterly, but the Weather pretty good, and as the Winds had continued in the Points between N E and S E. a long time, we missed séveral Opportunities of sending them to *France*, for we met several Ships bound to *Europe*, whereof two were *French* from *St. Christopher's*, but they had been so long beating up against the Wind, that they durst take in no Passengers for fear of wanting Provisions for the Voyage, as well for themselves as for those they should take in; so we were obliged to go on. It was about a Week after this that we made the Banks of *Newfoundland*, where to shorten my Story, we put all our *French* People on Board a Bark, which they hired at Sea there, to put them on Shore, and afterwards to carry them to *France* if they could get Provision to victual themselves with. When, I say, all the *French* went on Shore, I should remember that the young Priest I spoke of, hearing we were bound to the *East Indies*, desired to go the Voyage with us, and to be set on Shore on the Coast of *Coromandel*, which I readily agreed to, for I wonderfully liked the Man, and had very good Reason, as will appear afterwards, also four of the Seamen entered themselves on our Ship, and proved very useful fellows.

From hence we directed our Course for the *West Indies*, steering away S and S by E for about twenty Days together, sometimes little or no Wind at all, when we met with another Subject for our Humanity to work upon, almost as deplorable as that before.

It was in the Latitude of 27 Degrees 5 Minutes North, and the 19th Day of *March* 1694-5, when we spied a Sail, our Course S E and by S. We soon perceiv'd it was a large Vessel, and that she bore up to us, but could not at first know what to make of her, till after coming a little nearer, we found she had lost her Maintop-mast, Fore mast and Boltsprit, and presently she fired a Gun as a Signal of Distress, the Weather was pretty good, Wind at N N W. a fresh Gale, and we soon came to speak with her.

We found her a Ship of *Bristol*, bound home from *Barbadoes*, but had been blown out of the Road at *Barbadoes* a few Days before she was ready to sail; by a terrible Hurricane, while the Captain and Chief Mate were both gone on Shore, so that beside the Terror of the Storm, they were but in an indifferent Case for good Artists to bring the Ship home. They had been already nine Weeks at Sea and had met with another terrible Storm after the Hurricane was over which had blown them quite out of their Knowledge to the Westward.

and in which they lost their Masts, as above, they told us they expected to have seen the *Bahama* Islands, but were then driven away again to the South-East by a strong Gale of Wind at N N W the same that blew now, and having no Sails to work the Ship with but a main Course, and a kind of square Sail upon a Jury Foremast, which they had set up, they could not be near the Wind, but were endeavouring to stand away for the *Canaries*

But that which was worst of all, was, that they were almost starved for want of Provisions, besides the Fatigues they had undergone, their Bread and Flesh was quite gone, they had not one Ounce left in the Ship, and had had none for eleven Days, the only Relief they had, was, their Water was not all spent, and they had about half a Barrel of Flour left; they had Sugar enough, some Succades or Sweet-meats they had at first, but they were devour'd, and they had seven Casks of Rum

There was a Youth and his Mother and a Maid-Servant on Board, who were going Passengers, and thinking the Ship was ready to sail, unhappily came on Board the Evening before the Hurricane began, and having no Provisions of their own left, they were in a more deplorable Condition than the rest, for the Seamen being reduced to such an extreme Necessity themselves, had no Compassion, we may be sure, for the poor Passengers, and they were indeed in a Condition that their Misery is very hard to describe.

I had, perhaps, not known this Part, if my Curiosity had not led me, the Weather being fair and the Wind abated, to go on Board the Ship. The Second Mate who upon this Occasion commanded the Ship, had been on Board our Ship, and he told me indeed they had three Passengers in the great Cabin, that were in a deplorable Condition; nay, says he, I believe they are dead, for I have heard nothing of them for above two Days, and I was afraid to inquire after them, said he, for I had nothing to relieve them with.

We immediately apply'd ourselves to give them what Relief we could spare, and indeed I had so far overruled Things with my Nephew, that I would have victuall'd them, though we had gone away to *Virginia*, or any Part of the Coast of *America*, to have supply'd ourselves, but there was no Necessity for that.

But now they were in a new Danger, for they were afraid of eating too much, even of that little we gave them, the Mate or Commander brought six Men with him in his Boat, but these poor

Wretches looked like Skeletons, and were so weak, they could hardly sit to their Oars. The Mate himself was very ill, and half starved; for he declar'd he had reserv'd nothing from the Men, and went Share and Share alike with them in every Bit they eat.

I caution'd him to eat sparingly, but set Meat before him immediately, and he had not eaten three Mouthfuls before he began to be Sick, and out of Order, so he stopped a while, and our Surgeon mix'd him up something with some Broth, which he said would be to him both Food and Physic, and after he had taken it, he grew better. In the meantime, I forgot not the Men, I order'd Victuals to be given them, and the poor Creatures rather devour'd than eat it, they were so exceeding hungry, that they were in a kind ravenous, and had no Command of themselves, and two of them eat with so much Greediness, that they were in Danger of their Lives the next Morning.

The Sight of these People's Distress was very moving to me, and brought to Mind what I had a terrible Prospect of at my first coming on Shore in the Island, where I had neither the least Mouthful of Food, or any Prospect of procuring any, besides the hourly Apprehension I had of being made the Food of other Creatures. But all the while the Mate was thus relating to me the miserable Condition of the Ship's Company, I could not put out of my Thought the Story he had told me of the three poor Creatures in the Great Cabin, (*viz*) the Mother, her Son, and the Maid-servant, whom he had heard nothing of for two or three Days, and whom he seem'd to confess they had wholly neglected, their own Extremities being so great, by which I understood, that they had really given them no Food at all, and that therefore they must be perish'd, and be all lying dead perhaps on the Floor, or Deck of the Cabin.

As I therefore kept the Mate, whom we then called Captain, on board with his Men to refresh them, so I also forgot not the starving Crew that were left on board, but order'd my own Boat to go on board the Ship, and with my Mate and twelve Men to carry them a Sack of Bread, and four or five Pieces of Beef to boil. Our Surgeon charg'd the Men to cause the Meat to be boiled while they stay'd, and to keep Guard in the Cook-Room, to prevent the Men taking it to eat raw, or taking it out of the Pot before it was well boiled, and then to give every Man but a very little at a Time, and by this Caution he preserv'd the Men,

who would otherwise have killed themselves with that very Food that was given them on Purpose to save their Lives.

At the same Time, I order'd the Mate to go into the Great Cabin, and see what Condition the poor Passengers were in, and if they were alive, to comfort them, and give them what Refreshment was proper, and the Surgeon gave him a large Pitcher with some of the prepar'd Broth which he had given the Mate that was on board, and which he did not question would restore them gradually

I was not satisfy'd with this, but as I said above, having a great Mind to see the Scene of Misery, which I knew the Ship itself would present me with, in a more lively Manner than I could have it by Report, I took the Captain of the Ship, as we now called him, with me, and went myself a little after in their Boat.

I found the poor Men on board almost in a Tumult to get the Victuals out of the Boiler before it was ready But my Mate observ'd his Order, and kept a good Guard at the Cook-Room Door, and the Man he placed there, after using all possible Persuasion to have Patience, kept them off by Force However, he caused some Biscuit Cakes to be dipped in the Pot, and soften'd with the Liquor of the Meat, which they call Brews, and gave them every one, one, to stay their Stomachs, and told them it was for their own Safety that he was oblig'd to give them but a little at Time But it was all in vain, and had I not come on board, and their own Commander and Officers with me, and with good Words, and some Threats also of giving them so more, I believe they would have broke into the Cook-Room by Force, and tore the Meat out of the Furnace For Words are indeed of very small Force to a hungry Belly However, we pacify'd them, and fed them gradually and cautiously for the first Time, and the next Time gave them more, and at last filled their Bellies, and the Men did well enough.

But the Misery of the poor Passengers in the Cabin, was of another Nature, and far beyond the rest, for as first the Ship's Company had so little for themselves, it was but too true that they had at first kept them very low, and at last totally neglected them, so that for six or seven Days, it might be said, they had really had no Food at all, and for several Days before very little. The poor Mother, who as the Men reported, was a Woman of good Sense and good Breeding, had spared all she could get, so affectionately for her Son, that



at last she entirely sunk under it And when the Mate of our Ship went in, she sat upon the Floor or Deck, with her Back up-against the Sides, between two Chairs, which were lashed fast, and her Head sunk in between her Shoulders, like a Corpse, though not quite dead. My Mate said all he could to revive and encourage her, and with a Spoon put some Broth into her Mouth, she open'd her Lips, and lifted up one Hand, but could not speak, yet she understood what he said, and made Signs to him, intimating, that it was too late for her, but pointed to her Child, as if she would have said, they should take Care of him

However, the Mate, who was exceedingly moved with the Sight, endeavour'd to get some of the Broth into her Mouth, and as he said, got two or three Spoonfuls down, though I question whether he could be sure of it or not But it was too late, and she died the same Night.

The Youth, who was preserved at the Price of his most affectionate Mother's Life, was not so far gone, yet he lay in a Cabin-bed as one stretched out, with hardly any Life left in him, he had a Piece of an old Glove in his Mouth, having caten up the rest of it, however, being young, and having more Strength than his Mother, the Mate got something down his Throat, and he began sensibly to revive, though by giving him some time after but two or three Spoonfuls extraordinary, he was very sick, and brought it up again.

But the next Care was the poor Maid, she lay all along upon the Deck hard by her Mistress, and just like one that had fallen down with an Apoplexy and struggled for Life Her Limbs were distorted, one of her Hands was clasped round the Frame of a Chair, and she gnuped it so hard, that we could not easily make her let go, her other Arm lay over her Head, and her Feet lay both together set fast against the Frame of the Cabin Table, in short, she lay just like one in the last Agonies of Death, and yet she was alive too

The poor Creature was not only starved with Hunger, and terrify'd with the Thoughts of Death, but as the Men told us afterwards, was broken-hearted for her Mistress, whom she saw dying for two or three Days before, and whom she loved most tenderly

We knew not what to do with this poor Girl, or when our Surgeon, who was a Man of very great Knowledge and Experience, had with great Application recover'd her as to Life; he had her upon his Hand

as to her Senses, for she was little less than distracted for a considerable Time after, as shall appear presently

Whoever shall read these *Memorandums* must be desir'd to consider, that Visits at Sea are not like a Journey into the Country, where sometimes People stay a Week or a Fortnight at a Place Our Business was to relieve this distressed Ship's Crew, but not to lie by for them, and though they were willing to steer the same Course with us for some Days, yet we could carry no Sail to keep Pace with a Ship that had no Masts, however, as their Captain begged of us to help him to set up a Mantop-mast, and a Kind of a Top-mast to his Jury Fore-mast. We did, as it were, lie by him for three or four Days, and then having given him five Barrels of Beef, a Barrel of Pork, two Hogsheads of Biscuit, and a Proportion of Peas, Flour, and what other Things we could spare, and taking three Casks of Sugar, some Rum, and some Pieces of Eight of them for Satisfaction, we left them, taking on board with us, at their own earnest Request, the Priest, the Youth, and the Maid, and all their Goods

The young Lad was about seventeen Years of Age, a pretty, well-bred, modest, and sensible Youth, greatly dejected with the Loss of his Mother, and as it seems had lost his Father but a few Months before at *Barbadoes*. He begged of the Surgeon to speak to me to take him out of the Ship, for he said the cruel Fellows had murder'd his Mother, *and indeed so they had*, that is to say *passively*, for they might have spared a small Sustenance to the poor helpless Widow, that might have preserved her Life, though it had been but just to keep her alive. But Hunger knows no Friend, no Relation, no Justice, no Right, and therefore is remorseless, and capable of no Compassion

The Surgeon told him how far we were going, and how it would carry him away from all his Friends, and put him perhaps in as bad Circumstances almost as those we found him in, that is to say, starving in the World. He said it matter'd not whither he went, if he was but delivered from the terrible Crew he was among. That the Captam (by which he meant me, for he could know nothing of my Nephew) had saved his Life, and he was sure would not hurt him, and as for the Maid, he was sure, if she came to herself, she would be very thankful for it, let us carry them where we would. The Surgeon represented the Case so affectionately to me, that I yielded, and we took them both on board with all their Goods, except eleven Hogsheads of Sugar, which could not be removed, or come at, and as the

Youth had a Bill of Lading for them, I made his Commander sign a Writing, obliging himself to go as soon as he came to *Bristol*, to one Mr *Rogers* a Merchant there, to whom the Youth said he was related, and to deliver a Letter which I wrote to him, and all the Goods he had belonging to the deceased Widow, which I suppose was not done, for I could never learn that the Ship came to *Bristol*, but was, as is most probable, lost at Sea, being in so disabled a Condition and so far from any Land, that I am of Opinion, the first Storm she met with afterwards, she might founder in the Sea, for she was leaky, and had Damage in her Hold when we met with her

I was now in the Latitude of 19 Deg 32 Min and had hitherto had a tolerable Voyage as to Weather, though at first the Winds had been contrary I shall trouble nobody with the little Incidents of Wind, Weather, Currents, &c. on the rest of our Voyage, but shortening my Story for the sake of what is to follow, shall observe that I came to my old Habitation, the Island, on the 10th of *April* 1695. It was with no small Difficulty that I found the Place, for as I came to it, and went from it before, on the South and East Side of the Island, as coming from the *Brasils*, so now coming in between the Main and the Island, and having no Chart for the Coast, nor any Landmark, I did not know it when I saw it, or know whether I saw it or no

We beat about a great while, and went on Shore on several Islands in the Mouth of the great River *Oronooque*, but none for my Purpose. Only this I learned by my Coasting the Shore, that I was under one great Mistake before, *viz* that the Continent which I thought I saw, from the Island I lived in, was really no Continent, but a long Island, or rather a Ridge of Islands, reaching from one to the other Side of the extended Mouth of that great River, and that the Savages who came to my Island, were not properly those which we call *Caribbees*, but Islanders, and other Barbarians of the same Kind, who inhabited something nearer to our Side than the rest.

In short, I visited several of these Islands to no Purpose, some I found were inhabited, and some were not. On one of them I found some *Spaniards*, and thought they had lived there, but speaking with them, found they had a Sloop lay in a Creek hard by, and they came thither to make Salt, and to catch some Pearl Mussels if they could, but that they belong'd to the *Isle de Trinidad*, which lay farther North in the Latitude of 10 and 11 Degrees

But at last coasting from one Island to another, sometimes with the Ship, sometimes with the *French Man's* Shallop, which we had found a convenient Boat, and therefore kept her with their very good Will, at length I came fair on the South Side of my Island, and I presently knew the very Countenance of the Place, so I brought the Ship safe to an Anchor, Broadside with the little Creek where was my old Habitation.

As soon as I saw the Place, I called for *Friday*, and asked him if he knew where he was? He looked about a little, and presently clapping his Hands, cried, *O yes, O there, O yes, O there*, pointing to our old Habitation, and fell a dancing and capering like a mad Fellow, and I had much ado to keep him from jumping into the Sea, to swim ashore to the Place.

Well, *Friday*, says I, do you think we shall find anybody here or no? And what do you think, shall we see your Father? The Fellow stood mute as a Stock a good while, but when I named his Father, the poor affectionate Creature looked dejected, and I could see the Tears run down his Face very plentifully. What is the Matter, *Friday*, says I? Are you troubled because you may see your Father? No, no, says he, shaking his Head, no see him more, no ever more see again, *why so*, said I, *Friday*, how do you know that? O no, O no, says *Friday*, he long ago die, long ago, he much old Man Well, well, says I, *Friday*, you don't know, but shall we see any one else then? The Fellow, it seems, had better Eyes than I, and he points just to the Hill above my old House, and though we lay half a League off, he cries out, we see! we see! yes, we see much Men there, and there, and there. I looked, but I could see nobody, no not with

Perspective Glass, which was, I suppose, because I could not hit the Place, for the Fellow was right, as I found upon Enquiry the next Day, and there was five or six Men altogether, stood to look at the ship, not knowing what to think of us

As soon as *Friday* had told me he saw People, I caused the *English* Ancient to be spread, and fired three Guns, to give them Notice we were Friends, and in about half a Quarter of an Hour after, we perceiv'd a Smoke rise from the Side of the Creek, so I immediately order'd a Boat out, taking *Friday* with me, and hanging out a white Flag, or Flag of Truce, I went directly on Shore, taking with me the young Friar I mention'd, to whom I had told the whole Story of my living there, and the manner of it, and every Particular both of

myself, and those I left there, and who was on that Account extremely desirous to go with me. We had besides about sixteen Men very well armed, if we had found any new Guests there which we did not know of, but we had no Need of Weapons.

As we went on Shore upon the Tide of Flood, near high Water we rowed directly into the Creek, and the first Man I fixed my Eye upon, was the *Spaniard* whose Life I had saved, and whom I knew by his Face perfectly well, as to his Habit I shall describe it afterwards. I order'd nobody to go on Shore at first but myself, for there was no keeping *Friday* in the Boat, for the affection.



My Creature had spied his Father at a Distance, a good Way off of the *Spaniards*, where indeed I saw nothing of him, and if they had not let him go on Shore, he would have jumped into the Sea. He was no sooner on Shore, but he flew away to his Father like an Arrow out of a Bow. It would have made any Man have shed Tears in Spite of the firmest Resolution, to have seen the first Transports of this poor Fellow's Joy when he came to his Father, how he embrac'd him, kissed him, stroked his Face, took him up in his Arms, set him down upon a Tree, and lay down by him, then stood and looked at him, as any one would look at a strange Picture for a Quarter of an

Hour together ; then lie down on the Ground, and stroke his Legs, and kiss them, and then get up again, and stare at him, one would have thought the Fellow bewitch'd But it would have made a Dog laugh to see how the next Day his Passion run out another Way In the Morning he walked along the Shore, to and again, with his Father several Hours, always leading him by the Hand, as if he had been a Lady, and every now and then he would come to fetch something or other for him to the Boat, either a Lump of Sugar, or a Dram, a Biscuit Cake, or something or other that was good. In the Afternoon his Frolics run another Way, for then he would set the old Man down upon the Ground, and dance about him, and



make a Thousand antic Postures and Gestures, and all the while he did this, he would be talking to him, and telling him one Story or another of his Travels, and of what had happen'd to him Abroad, to divert him. In short, if the same filial Affection was to be found in Christians to their Parents, in our Part of the World, one would be tempted to say, there would hardly have been any Need of the fifth Commandment.

But this is a Digression, I return to my Landing It would be endless to take Notice of all the Ceremonies and Civilities that the *Spaniards* receiv'd me with The first *Spaniard* whom, as I said, I

knew very well, was he whose Life I had saved, he came towards the Boat, attended by one more, carrying a Flag of Truce also, and he did not only not know me at first, but he had no Thoughts, no Notion of its being me that was come, till I spoke to him. Seignor, said I in *Portuguese*, Do you not know me? At which he spoke not a Word, but giving his Musket to the Man that was with him, threw his Arms abroad, and saying something in *Spanish*, that I did not perfectly hear, comes forward, and embrac'd me, telling me he was inexcusable, not to know that Face again, that he had once seen, as of an Angel from Heaven sent to save his Life. He said Abundance of very handsome Things, as a well-bred *Spaniard* always knows how, and then beckoning to the Person that attended him, bade him go and call out his Comrades. He then asked me, if I would walk to my old Habitation, where he would give me Possession of my own House again, and where I should see there had been but mean Improvements, so I walked along with him, but alas I could no more find the Place again, than if I had never been there, for they had planted so many Trees, and placed them in such a Posture, so thick and close to one another, and in ten Years' Time they were grown so big, that *in short* the Place was inaccessible, except by such Windings and blind Ways, as they themselves only, who made them, could find.

I asked them what put them upon all these Fortifications? He told me, I would say there was Need enough of it, when they had given me an Account how they had passed their Time since their Arriving in the Island, especially after they had the Misfortune to find that I was gone. He told me, he could not but have some Satisfaction in my good Fortune, when he heard that I was gone away in a good Ship, and to my Satisfaction, and that he had often times a strong Persuasion, that one Time or other he should see me again. But nothing that ever befel him in his Life, he said, was so surprising and afflicting to him at first, as the Disappointment he was under when he came back to the Island, and found I was not there.

As to the three *Barbarians* (so he called them) that were left behind, and of whom he said he had a long Story to tell me, the *Spaniards* all thought themselves much better among the Savages, only that their Number was so small. And, says he, had they been strong enough, we had been all long ago in Purgatory, and with

that he crossed himself on the Breast But Sir, says he, I hope you will not be displeas'd, when I shall tell you how forced by Necessity we were oblig'd, for our own Preservation to disarm them, and make them our Subjects, who would not be content with being moderately our Masters, but would be our Murderers I answer'd, I was heartily afraid of it when I left them there, and nothing troubled me at my parting from the Island, but that they were not come back, that I might have put them in Possession of everything first, and left the other in a State of Subjection, as they deserv'd But if they had reduc'd them to it, I was very glad, and should be very far from finding any Fault with it, for I knew they were a Parcel of refractory, ungovern'd Villains, and were fit for any Manner of Mischief

While I was saying this, came the Man whom he had sent back, and with him eleven Men more In the Dress they were in, it was impossible to guess what Nation they were of But he made all clear both to them and to me First he turned to me, and pointing to them, said, These, Sir, are some of the Gentlemen who owe their Lives to you, and then turning to them, and pointing to me, he let them know who I was, upon which they all came up one by one, not as if they had been Sailors and ordinary Fellows, and I the like, but really, as if they had been Ambassadors or Noblemen, and I a Monarch or a great Conqueror; their Behaviour was to the last Degree obliging and courteous, and yet mix'd with a Manly, Majestic Gravity, which very well became them, and in short, they had so much more Manners than I, that I scarce knew how to receive their Civilities, much less how to return them in Kind

The History of their coming to, and Conduct in the Island, after my going away, is so very remarkable, and has so many Incidents, which the former Part of my Relation will help to understand, and which will in most of the Particulars, refer to that Account I have already given, that I cannot but commit them with great Delight to the reading of those that come after me

I shall no longer trouble the Story with a Relation in the first Person, which will put me to the Expense of ten Thousand *said I's*, and *said he's*, and he *told me's*, and I *told him's*, and the like, but I shall collect the Facts Historically, as near as I can gather them out of my Memory from what they related to me, and from what I met with in my conversing with them and with the Place

In order to do this succinctly, and as intelligibly as I can, I must



go back to the Circumstance in which I left the Island, and in which the Persons were of whom I am to speak. And first it is necessary to repeat, that I had sent away *Friday's* Father and the *Spaniard*, the two whose Lives I had rescued from the Savages, I say, I had sent them away in a large Canoe to the Main, *as I then thought it*, to fetch over the *Spaniard's* Companions who he had left behind him, in order to save them from the like Calamity that he had been in, and in order to succour them for the present, and that if possible, we might together find some Way for our Deliverance afterward.

When I sent them away, I had no visible Appearance of, or the least Room to hope for my own Deliverance any more than I had twenty Years before, much less had I any Fore-knowledge of what afterwards happened, I mean of an *English* Ship coming on Shore there to fetch me off and it could but be a very great Surprise to them when they came back, not only to find that I was gone, but to find three Strangers left on the Spot, possess'd of all that I had left behind me, which would otherwise have been their own.

The first Thing, however, which I inquir'd into, that I might begin where I left off, was of their own Part, and I desir'd he would give me a particular Account of his Voyage back to his Countrymen with the Boat, when I sent him to fetch them over. He told me there was little Variety in that Part, for nothing remarkable happen'd to them on the Way, they having very calm Weather, and a smooth Sea, for his Countrymen it could not be doubted, he said, but that they were overjoy'd to see him (It seems he was the principal Man among them, the Captain of the Vessel they had been shipwreck'd in, having been dead some Time) they were, *he said*, the more surpris'd to see him, because they knew that he was fallen into the Hands of the Savages, who, they were satisfy'd, would devour him as they did all the rest of the Prisoners, that when he told them the Story of his Deliverance, and in what Manner he was furnish'd for carrying them away, it was like a Dream to them; and their Astonishment, they said, was something like that of *Joseph's* Brethren, when he told them who he was, and told them the Story of his Exaltation in *Pharaoh's* Court. But when he showed them the Arms, the Powder, the Ball, and the Provisions that he brought them for their Journey or Voyage, they were restor'd to themselves, took a just Share of the Joy of their Deliverance, and immediately prepar'd to come away with him.

Their first Business was to get Canoes, and in this they were obliged not to stick so much upon the honest Part of it, but to trespass upon their friendly Savages, and to borrow two large Canoes, or Penaguas, on Pretence of going out a Fishing, or for Pleasure.

In these they came away the next Morning, it seems they wanted no Time to get themselves ready, for they had no Baggage, neither Clothes or Provisions, or anything in the World, but what they had on them, and a few Roots to eat, of which they used to make their Bread.

They were in all three Weeks absent, and in that Time, unluckily for them, I had the Occasion offer'd for my Escape, as I mention'd in my other Part, and to get off from the Island, leaving three of the



most impudent, harden'd, ungovern'd, disagreeable Villains behind me, that any Man could desire to meet with, to the poor *Spaniards'* great Grief and Disappointment, you may be sure.

The only just Thing the Rogues did, was, That when the *Spaniards* came on Shore, they gave my Letter to them, and gave them Provisions and other Relief, as I had ordered them to do, also they gave them the long Paper of Directions which I had left with them, containing the particular Methods which I took for managing every Part of my Life there, the Way how I baked my Bread, bred up tame Goats, and planted my Corn, how I cured my Grapes, made my Pots, and, in a Word, everything I did, all this being written down, they gave to the *Spaniards*, two of whom understood *English* well enough;

nor did they refuse to accommodate the *Spaniards* with everything else, for they agreed very well for some Time, they gave them an equal Admission into the House, or Cave, and they began to live very sociably, and the Head *Spaniard*, who had seen pretty much of my Methods, and *Friday's* Father together, manag'd all their Affairs, for, as for the *Englishmen*, they did nothing but ramble about the Island, shoot Parrots, and catch Tortoises, and when they came home at Night, the *Spaniards* provided their Suppers for them

The *Spaniards* would have been satisfy'd with this, would the other but have let them alone, which, however, they could not find in their Hearts to do long, but like the Dog in the Manger, they would not eat themselves, and would not let others eat neither The Differences, nevertheless, were at first but trivial, and such as are not worth relating, but at last it broke out into open War, and it begun with all the Rudeness and Insolence that can be imagin'd, without Reason, without Provocation, contrary to Nature, and indeed, to common Sense, and though it is true the first Relation of it came from the *Spaniards* themselves, whom I may call the Accusers, yet when I came to examine the Fellows, they could not deny a Word of it.

But before I come to the Particulars of this Part, I must supply a Defect in my former Relation, and this was, that I forgot to set down among the rest, that just as we were weighing the Anchor to set Sail, there happen'd a little Quarrel on board our Ship, which I was afraid once would have turned to a second Mutiny, nor was it appeas'd, till the Captain rousing up his Courage, and taking us all to his Assistance, parted them by Force, and making two of the most refractory Fellows Prisoners, he laid them in Irons, and as they had been active in the former Disorders, and let fall some ugly dangerous Words the second Time, he threaten'd to carry them in Irons to *England*, and have them hanged there for Mutiny, and running away with the Ship

This it seems, though the Captain did not intend to do it, frighted some other Men in the Ship, and some of them had put it into the Heads of the rest, that the Captain only gave them good Words for the present, till they should come to some *English* Port, and that then they should be all put into Jail, and tried for their Lives

The Mate got Intelligence of this, and acquainted us with it, upon which it was desir'd, that I, who still passed for a great Man among them, should go down with the Mate, and satisfy the Men, and tell

them, that they might be assur'd, if they behav'd well the rest of the Voyage, all they had done for the Time past should be pardon'd So I went, and after passing *my Honour's* Word to them, they appear'd easy, and the more so, when I caused the two Men, who were in Irons, to be released and forgiven.

But this Mutiny had brought us to an Anchor for that Night, the Wind also falling calm, next Morning we found, that our two Men who had been laid in Irons, had stole each of them a Musket, and some other Weapons, what Powder or Shot they had, we know not, and had taken the Ship's Pinnace, which was not yet hauled up, and ran away with her to their Companions in Roguery on Shore

As soon as we found this, I order'd the Long-Boat on Shore, with twelve Men and the Mate, and away they went to seek the Rogues, but they could neither find them, nor any of the rest, for they all fled into the Woods when they saw the Boat coming on Shore The Mate was once resolv'd, in Justice to their Roguery, to have destroy'd their Plantations, burnt all their Household-Stuff and Furniture, and left them to shift without it, but having no Order, he let it all alone, left everything as they found it, and bringing the Pinnace away, came on board without them

These two Men made their Number five, but the other three Villains were so much wickedder than these, that after they had been two or three Days together, they turned their two New Comers out of Doors to shift for themselves, and would have nothing to do with them, nor could they for a good while be persuaded to give them any Food, as for the *Spaniards* they were not yet come.

When the *Spaniards* came first on Shore, the Business began to go forward, the *Spaniards* would have persuaded the three *English* Brutes to have taken in their two Countrymen again, that, as they said, they might be all one Family, but they would not hear of it. So the two poor Fellows lived by themselves, and finding nothing but Industry and Application would make them live comfortably, they pitched their Tents on the *North* Shore of the Island, but a little more on the *West*, to be out of the Danger of the Savages, who always landed on the *East* Parts of the Island.

Here they built them two Huts, one to lodge in, and the other to lay up their Magazines and Stores in, and the *Spaniards* having given them some Corn for Seed, and especially some of the Peas which I had

left them, they dug, and planted, and enclosed, after the Pattern I had set for them all, and began to live pretty well, their first Crop of Corn was on the Ground, and though it was but a little Bit of Land which they had dug up at first, having had but a little Time, yet it was enough to relieve them, and find them with Bread and other Eatables, and one of the Fellows being the Cook's Mate of the Ship, was very ready at making Soup, Puddings, and other such Preparations, as the Rice, and the Milk, and such little Flesh as they got, furnish'd him to do

They were going on in this little thriving Posture, when the three unnatural Rogues, their own Countrymen too, in mere Humour, and to insult them, came and bully'd them, and told them, the Island was theirs, that the Governor, meaning me, had given them Possession of it, and nobody else had any Right to it, and damn them, they should build no Houses upon their Ground, unless they would pay them Rent for them

The two Men thought they had jested at first, asked them to come in and sit down, and see what fine Houses they were that they had built, and tell them what Rent they demanded, and one of them merrily told them, if they were Ground Landlords, he hoped, if they built Tenements upon their Land, and made Improvements, they would, according to the Custom of Landlords, grant them a long Lease, and bid them go fetch a Scrivener to draw the Writings. One of the three damning and raging, told them they should see they were not in Jest, and going to a little Place at a Distance, where the honest Mer had made a Fire to dress their Victuals, he takes a Firebrand, and claps it to the Outside of their Hut, and very fairly set it on Fire, and it would have been all burnt down in a few Minutes, if one of the two had not run to the Fellow, thrust him away, and trod the Fire out with his Feet, and that not without some Difficulty too

The Fellow was in such a Rage at the honest Man's thrusting him away, that he return'd upon him with a Pole he had in his Hand, and had not the Man avoided the Blow very nimbly, and run into the Hut, he had ended his Days at once, his Comrade seeing the Danger they were both in, ran in after him, and immediately they came both out with their Muskets, and the Man that was first struck at with the Pole, knocked the Fellow down that begun the Quarrel with the Stock of his Musket, and that before the other two could come to help him, and then seeing the rest come at them, they stood

together, and presenting the other Ends of their Pieces to them, bid 'em stand off

The other had Firearms with them too, but one of the two honest Men, bolder than his Comrade, and made desperate by his Danger, told them, if they offer'd to move Hand or Foot they were dead Men, and boldly commanded them to lay down their Arms. They did not indeed lay down their Arms, but seeing him so resolute, it brought them to a Parley, and they consented to take their wounded Man with them, and be gone, and indeed it seems the Fellow was wounded sufficiently with the Blow, however, they were much in the wrong, since they had the Advantage, that they did not disarm them effectually, as they might have done, and have gone immediately to the *Spaniards*, and given them an Account how the Rogues had treated them, for the three Villains studied nothing but Revenge, and every Day gave them some Intimation that they did so.

But not to crowd this Part with an Account of the lesser Part of their Rogueries, such as treading down their Corn, shooting three young Kids, and a She-Goat, which the poor Men had got to breed up tame for their Store, and, in a Word, plaguing them Night and Day in this Manner, it forced the two Men to such a Desperation, that they resolv'd to fight them all three the first Time they had a fair Opportunity; in Order to this they resolv'd to go to the Castle, as they called it, that was my old Dwelling, where the three Rogues and the *Spaniards* all lived together, at that Time intending to have a fair Battle, and the *Spaniards* should stand by to see fair Play, so they got up in the Morning before Day, and came to the Place, and called the *Englishmen* by their Names, telling a *Spaniard*, that answer'd, that they wanted to speak with them

It happen'd, that the Day before two of the *Spaniards* having been in the Woods, had seen one of the two *Englishmen*, whom, for Distinction, I call the *Honest Men*, and he had made a sad Complaint to the *Spaniards* of the barbarous Usage they had met with from their three Countrymen, and how they had run'd their Plantation, and destroy'd their Corn, that they had labour'd so hard to bring forward, and killed the Milch-Goat and their three Kids, which was all they had provided for their Sustenance, and that if he and his Friends, meaning the *Spaniards*, did not assist them again, they should be starved. When the *Spaniards* came home at Night, and they were all at Supper, he took the Freedom to reprove the three *Englishmen*,

though in very gentle and mannerly Terms, and asked them, How they could be so cruel, they being harmless inoffensive Fellows, and that they were only putting themselves in a way to subsist by their Labour, and that it had cost them a great deal of Pains to bring things to such Perfection as they had?

One of the *Englishmen* return'd very briskly, what had they to do there? That they came on Shore without Leave, and they should not Plant or Build upon the Island, it was none of their Ground. Why, says the *Spaniard* very calmly, Signior Inglese, *they must not starve*. The *Englishman* reply'd like a true rough-hewn Tarpaulin, they might Starve and be Damned, they should not Plant nor Build. But what must they do then, Signior? said the *Spaniard*. Another of the Brutes return'd, Do! D—n them, they should be Servants, and work for them. But how can you expect that of them? says the *Spaniard*, they are not bought with your Money, you have no Right to make them Servants. The *Englishman* answer'd, the Island was theirs, the Governor had given it to them, and no Man had anything to do there but themselves, and with that swore by his Maker, that they would go and burn all their new Huts, they should build none upon their Land.

Why, Signior, says the *Spaniard*, by the same Rule we must be your Servants too. Ah, says the bold Dog, and so you shall too, before we have done with you, mixing two or three G—d Damme's in the proper Intervals of his Speech, the *Spaniard* only smiled at that, and made him no Answer. However, this little Discourse had heated them, and starting up, one says to the other, I think it was he they called *Will Atkins*, Come, *Jack*, let us go and have t'other Brush with them, we'll demolish their Castle, I'll warrant you, they shall plant no Colony in our Dominions.

Upon this, they went all Trooping away, with every Man a Gun, a Pistol, and a Sword, and mutter'd some insolent Things among themselves, of what they would do to the *Spaniards* too, when Opportunity offer'd, but the *Spaniards* it seems did not so perfectly understand them, as to know all the Particulars, only, that in general, they threatened them hard for taking the two *Englishmen's* Part.

Whether they went, or how they bestow'd their time that Evening, the *Spaniards* said, they did not know, but it seems they wandered about the Country, Part of the Night, and then lying down in the Place which I used to call my Bower, they were weary, and overslept

themselves The case was this, they had resolv'd to stay till Midnight, and so to take the two poor Men when they were asleep, and as they acknowledg'd afterwards, intended to set Fire to their Huts while they were in them, and either burn them in them, or murder them as they came out, and as Malice seldom sleeps very sound, it was very strange they should not have been kept waking.

However, as the two Men had also a Design upon them, as I have said, though a much fairer one than that of Burning and Murdering, it happen'd, and very luckily for them all, that they were up and gone abroad, before the bloody-minded Rogues came to their Huts

When they came there and found the Men gone, *Atkins*, who it seems was the forwardest Man, called out to his Comrades, Ha! *Jack*,

here's the Nest, but

D—n 'em the Birds

are flown, they

mused a while to

think what should

be the Occasion of

their being gone

abroad so soon, and

suggested presently,

that the *Spaniards*

had given them

Notice of it, and

with that they shook

Hands, and swore to

one another that they would be reveng'd of the *Spaniards* As soon as

they had made this bloody Bargain they fell to work with the poor

Men's Habitation, they did not set Fire indeed to anything, but

they pulled down both their little Houses, and pulled them so Limb

from Limb, that they left not the least Stick standing, or scarce any

Sign on the Ground where they stood, they tore all their little collected

Household Stuff in Pieces, and threw everything about in such

a manner, that the poor Men afterwards found some of their Things

a Mile off of their Habitation

When they had done this, they pulled up all the young Trees the poor Men had planted, pulled up an Enclosure they had made to secure their Cattle and their Corn, and in a word, sacked and plunder'd everything as completely as a Horde of *Tartars* would have done.





The two Men were at this Juncture gone to find them out, and had resolved to fight them wherever they had been, though they were but two to three. So that had they met, there certainly would have been Bloodshed among them, for they were all very stout resolute Fellows, to give them their due.

But Providence took more Care to keep them asunder, than they themselves could do to meet, for, as if they had dodged one another, when the three were gone thither, the two were here, and afterwards when the two went back to find them, the three were come to the old Habitation again, we shall see their differing Conduct presently. When the three came back like furious Creatures flushed with the Rage which the Work they had been about had put them into, they came up to the *Spaniards*, and told them what they had done, by way of Scoff and Bravado, and one of them stepping up to one of the *Spaniards*, as if they had been a Couple of Boys at Play, takes hold of his Hat, as it was upon his Head, and giving it a Twirl about, sneering in his Face, says he to him, *And yet, Seignior Jack Spaniard, shall have the same Sauce, if you do not mend your Manners.* The *Spaniard*, who though a quiet civil Man, was as brave as a Man could be desir'd to be, and withal a strong well-made Man, looked steadily at him for a good while, and then having no Weapon in his Hand, stepped gravely up to him, and with one Blow of his Fist knocked him down, as an Ox is felled with a Pole-Axe, at which one of the Rogues, insolent at the first, fired his Pistol at the *Spaniard* immediately. He missed his Body indeed, for the Bullets went through his Hair, but one of them touched the Tip of his Ear, and he bled pretty much. The Blood made the *Spaniard* believe, he was more hurt than he really was, and that put him into some Heat, for before, he acted all in a perfect Calm, but now resolving to go through with his Work, he stooped to take the Fellow's Musket whom he had knocked down, and was just going to shoot the Man, and had fired at him, when the rest of the *Spaniards* being in the Cave came out, and calling to him not to shoot, they stepped in, secur'd the other two, and took their Arms from them.

When they were thus disarm'd, and found they had made all the *Spaniards* their Enemies, as well as their own Countrymen, they began to cool, and giving the *Spaniards* better Words, would have had their Arms again, but the *Spaniards* considering the Feud that was between them and the other two *Englishmen*, and that it would be the best

Method they could take to keep them from one another, told them, they would do them no harm, and if they would live peaceably, they would be very willing to assist and sociate with them, as they did before; but that they could not think of giving them their Arms again, while they appear'd so resolv'd to do Mischief with them to their own Countrymen, and had even threatened them all, to make them their Servants

The Rogues were now no more capable to hear Reason, than to act Reason, and being refus'd their Arms, they went raving away and raging like Madmen, threatening what they would do, though they had no Firearms. But the *Spaniards*, despising their Threatening, told them they should take Care how they offer'd any Injury to their Plantation or Cattle, for if they did, they would shoot them as they would do ravenous Beasts, wherever they found them, and if they fell into their Hands alive, they should certainly be hanged. However, this was far from cooling them, but away they went raging and swearing like Furies of Hell. As soon as they were gone, came back the two Men, in Passion and Rage enough also, though of another Kind, for having been at their Plantation, and finding it all demolish'd and destroy'd, as above, it will easily be suppos'd they had Provocation enough, they could scarce have Room to tell their Tale, the *Spaniards* were so eager to tell them theirs, and it was strange enough to find three Men thus bully nineteen, and receive no Punishment at all.

The *Spaniards* indeed despised them, and especially having thus disarm'd them, made light of all their Threatenings, but the two *Englishmen* resolv'd to have their Remedy against them, what Pain soever it cost to find them out

But the *Spaniards* interpos'd here too, and told them, that as they had disarm'd them, they could not consent that they (the Two) should pursue them with Firearms, and perhaps kill them, but, said the grave *Spaniard*, who was their Governor, we will endeavour to make them do you Justice if you will leave it to us, for as there is no doubt but they will come to us again when their Passion is over, being not able to subsist without our Assistance, we promise you to make no Peace with them, without having a full Satisfaction for you, upon this Condition we hope you will promise to use no Violence with them, other than in your own Defence

The two *Englishmen* yielded to this very awkwardly, and with great

Reluctance, but the *Spaniards* protested, they did it only to keep them from Bloodshed, and to make all easy at last, for, said they, we are not so many of us, here is Room enough for us all, and it is great Pity we should not be all good Friends, at length they did consent, and waited for the Issue of the Thing, living for some Days with the *Spaniards*, for their own Habitation was destroyed

In about five Days' Time the three Vagrants, tired with wandering and almost starved with Hunger, having chiefly lived on Turtles Eggs all that while, came back to the Grove, and finding my *Spaniard*, who, as I have said, was the Governor, and two more with him walking by the Side of the Creek, they came up in a very submissive humble Manner, and begged to be receiv'd again into the Family The *Spaniards* used them civilly, but told them, they had acted so unnau-



rally by their Countrymen, and so very grossly by them (the *Spaniards*) that they could not come to any Conclusion, without consulting the two *Englishmen* and the rest, but however, they would go to them and discourse about it, and they should know in half an Hour. It may be guessed, that they were very hard put to it, for it seems, as they were to wait this half Hour for an Answer, they begged they would send them out some Bread in the meantime, which he did, and sent them at the same Time a large Piece of Goat's Flesh, and a broiled Parrot, which they eat very heartily, for they were hungry enough

After half an Hour's Consultation they were called in, and a long Debate had among them, their two Countrymen charging them with the Ruin of all their Labour, and a Design to murder them, all which they owned before, and therefore could not deny now, upon the whole, the *Spaniard* acted the Moderator between them, and as they

had obliged the two *Englishmen* not to hurt the three while they were naked and unarmed, so they now obliged the three to go and build their Fellows two Huts, one of the same, and the other of larger Dimensions, than they were before, to fence their Ground again, where they had pulled up the Fences, plant Trees in the Room of those pulled up, dig up the Land again for planting Corn, where they had spoiled it and in a Word, to restore everything in the same State as they found it, as near as they could, for entirely it could not be, the Season for the Corn, and the Growth of the Trees, and Hedges, not being possible to be recovered

Well, they submitted to all this, and as they had Plenty of Provisions given them all the while, they grew very orderly, and the whole Society began to live pleasantly and agreeably together, only that these three Fellows could never be persuaded to work, I mean for themselves, except now and then a little, just as they pleased, however, the *Spaniards* told them plainly, that if they would but live sociably and friendly together, and study in the whole the Good of the Plantation, they would be content to work for them, and let them walk about and be as idle as they pleased, and thus having lived pretty well together for a Month or two, the *Spaniards* gave them Arms again, and gave them Liberty to go abroad with them as before.

It was not above a Week after they had these Arms, and went abroad, but the ungrateful Creatures began to be as insolent and troublesome as before, but however, an Accident happening presently upon this, which endanger'd the Safety of them all, they were oblig'd to lay by all private Resentments, and look to the Preservation of their Lives

It happen'd one Night, that the *Spaniard* Governor, as I call him, that is to say, the *Spaniard*, whose Life I had saved, who was now the Captain, or Leader, or Governor of the rest, found himself very uneasy in the Night, and could by no Means get any Sleep, he was perfectly well in Body, as he told me the Story, only found his Thoughts tumultuous, his Mind run upon Men fighting and killing of one another, but was broad awake, and could not by any Means get any Sleep, in short, he lay a great while, but growing more and more uneasy, he resolv'd to rise As they lay, being so many of them, upon Goat-skins, laid thick upon such Couches and Pads, as they made for themselves, not in Hammocks and Ship Beds, as I did, who

was but one, so they had little to do, when they were willing to rise, but to get up upon their Feet, and perhaps put on a Coat, such as it was, and their Pumps, and they were ready for going any Way that their Thoughts guided them

Being thus gotten up, he looked out, but being dark, he could see little or nothing, and besides, the Trees which I had planted, as in my former Account is described, and which were now grown tall, intercepted his Sight, so that he could only look up, and see that it was a clear Starlight Night, and hearing no Noise, he return'd and laid him down again, but it was all one, he could not sleep, nor could he compose himself to anything like Rest, but his Thoughts were to the last Degree uneasy, and yet he knew not for what.

Having made some Noise with rising and walking about, going out and coming in, another of them waked, and calling, asked, who it was that was up? The Governor told him, how it had been with him. Say you so, says the other *Spaniard*, such Things are not to be shghted, I assure you, there is certainly some Mischief working, says he, near us, and presently he asked him, where are the *Englishmen*? They are all in their Huts, says he, safe enough. It seems, the *Spaniards* had kept Possession of the main Apartment, and had made a Place where the three *Englishmen*, since their last Mutiny always quarter'd by themselves, and could not come at the rest. Well, says the *Spaniard*, there is something in it, I am persuaded from my own Experience, I am satisfy'd our Spirits embodied have a Conversation with, and receive Intelligence from the Spirits unembodied and inhabiting the invisible World, and this friendly Notice is given for our Advantage, if we know how to make Use of it. Come, says he, let us go out and look abroad, and if we find nothing at all in it to justify the Trouble, I'll tell you a Story to the Purpose, that shall convince you of the Justice of my proposing it.

In a Word, they went out to go to the Top of the Hill, where used to go, but they being strong and in good Company, not alone as I was, used none of my Cautions, to go up by the Ladder, and then pulling it up after them, to go up a second Stage to the Top but were going round through the Grove unconcern'd and unwary when they were surpris'd with seeing a Light, as of Fire, a very little Way off from them, and hearing the Voices of Men, not of one, or two but of a great Number

In all the Discoveries I had made of the Savages landing on the

Island, it was my constant Care to prevent them making the least Discovery of there being any Inhabitant upon the Place, and when by any Occasion they came to know it, they felt it so effectually, that they that got away, were scarce able to give any Account of it, for we disappear'd as soon as possible, nor did ever any that had seen me, escape to tell any one else, except it were the three Savages in our last Encounter, who jumped into the Boat, of whom I mention'd, that I was afraid they should go Home and bring more Help

Whether it was the Consequence of the Escape of those Men, that so great a Number came now together, or whether they came ignorantly, and by Accident on their usual bloody Errand, they could not it seems understand, but whatever it was, it had been their Business, either to have conceal'd themselves, as not to have seen them at all, much less to have let the Savages have seen that there were any Inhabitants in the Place, or to have fallen upon them so effectually, as that not a Man of them should have escap'd, which could only have been by getting in between them and their Boats, but this Presence of Mind was wanting to them, which was the Ruin of their Tranquillity for a great while.

We need not doubt, but that the Governor and the Man with him, surpris'd with this Sight ran back immediately, and raised their Fellows, giving them an Account of the imminent Danger they were all in; and they again as readily took the Alarm, but it was impossible to persuade them to stay close within where they were, but that they must run all out to see how Things stood.

While it was dark indeed, they were well enough, and they had Opportunity enough for some Hours to view them by the Light of three Fires they had made at a Distance from one another, what they were doing they knew not, and what to do themselves they knew not. For, first, the Enemy were too many, and secondly, they did not keep together, but were divided into several Parties, and were on Shore in several Places.

The *Spaniards* were in no small Consternation at this Sight, and as they found that the Fellows ran stragglng all over the Shore, they made no Doubt, but first or last, some of them would chop in upon their Habitation, or upon some other Place, where they would see the Token of Inhabitants, and they were in great Perplexity also for fear of their Flock of Goats, which would have been little less than starving them, if they should have been destroy'd, so the first Thing they

resolv'd upon, was to despatch three Men away before it was light. *viz.* two *Spaniards* and one *Englishman*, to drive all the Goats away to the great Valley where the Cave was, and if Need were, to drive them into the very Cave itself

Could they have seen the Savages altogether in one Body, and at any Distance from their Canoes, they resolv'd, if they had been an hundred of them, to have attack'd them, but that could not be obtain'd, for they were some of them two Miles off from the other, and, as it appear'd afterwards, were of two different Nations

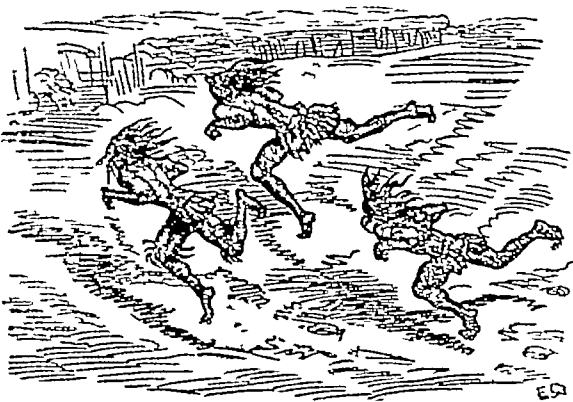
After having mused a great while on the Course they should take, and beaten their Brains in considering their present Circumstances, they resolv'd at last, while it was dark, to send the old Savage, *Friday's* Father, out as a Spy, to learn, if possible, something concerning them, what they came for, and what they intended to do, the old Man readily undertook it, and stripping himself quite naked, as most of the Savages were, away he went After he had been gone an Hour or two, he brings Word, that he had been among them undiscover'd, that he found they were two Parties, and of two several Nations who had War with one another, and had had a great Battle in their own Country, and that both Sides having had several Prisoners taken in the Fight, they were by mere Chance landed all in the same Island, for the devouring their Prisoners, and making merry; but their coming so by Chance to the same Place had spoiled all their Mirth, that they were in a great Rage at one another, and that they were so near, that he believ'd they would fight again as soon as Daylight began to appear, but he did not perceive that they had any Notion of anybody's being on the Island but themselves He had hardly made an End of telling his Story, when they could perceive, by the unusual Noise they made, that the two little Armies were engag'd in a bloody Fight

*Friday's* Father used all the Arguments he could to persuade our people to lie close, and not be seen, he told them their Safety consisted in it, and that they had nothing to do but lie still, and the Savages would kill one another to their Hands, and then the rest would go away, and it was so to a Tittle. But it was impossible to prevail, especially upon the *Englishmen*, their Curiosity was so importunate upon their Prudentials, that they must run out and see the Battle However, they used some Caution too, (*viz.*) they did not go openly, just by their own Dwelling, but went farther into the Woods,

and placed themselves to Advantage, where they might securely see them manage the Fight, and, as they thought, not to be seen by them, but it seems the Savages did see them, as we shall find hereafter.

The Battle was very fierce, and if I might believe the *Englishmen*, one of them said, he could perceive, that some of them were Men of great Bravery, of invincible Spirits, and of great Policy in guiding the Fight. The Battle, they said, held two Hours, before they could guess which Party would be beaten, but then that Party which was nearest our People's Habitation began to appear weakest, and after some Time more, some of them began to fly, and this put our Men again into a great Consternation, lest any of those that fled should run into the Grove, before their Dwelling, for Shelter, and thereby involuntarily discover the Place, and that by Consequence the Pursuers should do the like in Search for them. Upon this they resolv'd that they would stand armed within the Wall, and whoever came into the Grove, they should sally out over the Wall and kill them, so that, if possible, not one should return to give an Account of it, they order'd also, that it should be done with their Swords, or by knocking them down with the Stock of the Musket, but not by shooting them, for fear of the Noise.

As they expected, it fell out, three of the routed Army fled for Life, and, crossing the Creek, ran directly into the Place, not in



the least knowing whither they went, but running as into a thick Wood for Shelter, the Scout they kept to look Abroad, gave Notice of this within, with this Addition, to our Men's great Satisfaction (*viz*) That the Conquerors had not pursued them, or seen which Way they were gone, upon this, the *Spaniard* Governor, a Man of Humanity, would not suffer them to kill the three Fugitives, but sending three Men out by the Top of the Hill, order'd them to go round and come



in behind them, surprise and take them Prisoners, which was done; the Residue of the conquer'd People fled to their Canoes and got off to Sea, the Victors retr'd, and made no Pursuit or very little, but drawing themselves into a Body together, gave two great screaming Shouts, which they suppos'd was by way of Triumph, and so the Fight ended. And the same Day, about three o'Clock in the Afternoon, they also marched to their Canoes. And thus the *Spaniards* had their Island again free to themselves, their Fright was over, and they saw no Savages in several Years after.

After they were all gone, the *Spaniards* came out of their Den, and viewing the Field of Battle, they found about two-and-thirty dead Men upon the Spot, some were killed with great long Arrows, some of which were found sticking in their Bodies, but most of them were killed with their great wooden Swords, sixteen or seventeen of which they found in the Field of Battle, and as many Bows, with a great many Arrows. These Swords were strange great unwieldy Things, and they must be very strong Men that used them. Most of those Men that were killed with them, had their Heads mashed to pieces, as we may say, or as we call it in *English*, their Brains knocked out; and several their Arms and Legs broken, so that it is evident they fight with inexpressible Rage and Fury. We found not one wounded Man that was not stone dead, for either they stay by their Enemy till they have quite killed him, or they carry all the wounded Men, that are not quite dead, away with them.

This Deliverance tamed our *Englishmen* for a great while; the Sight had filled them with Horror, and the Consequences appear'd terrible to the last Degree, even to them, if ever they should fall into the Hands of those Creatures, who would not only kill them as Enemies, but kill them for Food, as we kill our Cattle. And they profess'd to me, that the Thoughts of being eaten up like Beef or Mutton, though it was suppos'd it was not to be till they were dead, had something in it so horrible, that it nauseated their very Stomachs, made them sick when they thought of it, and filled their Minds with such unusual Terror, that they were not themselves for some Weeks after.

This, as I said, tamed even the three *English* Brutes I have been speaking of, and for a great while after they were very tractable, and went about the common Business of their whole Society well enough, planted, sowed, reaped, and began to be all naturaliz'd to the Coun-

ry But sometime after this, they fell all into such Measures which brought them into a great deal of Trouble.

They had taken three Prisoners, as I had observ'd, and these three being lusty stout young Fellows, they made them Servants, and taught them to work for them, and, as Slaves, they did well enough, but they did not take their Measures with them as I did by my Man *Friday*, viz. to begin with them upon the Principle of having saved their Lives, and then instruct them in the rational Principles of Life, much less of Religion, civilizing and reducing them by kind Usage and affectionate Arguings; but as they gave them their Food every Day, so they gave them their Work too, and kept them fully employ'd in Drudgery enough, but they failed in this, by it, that they never had them to assist them and fight for them, as I had my Man *Friday*, who was as true to me as the very Flesh upon my Bones.

But to come to the Family Part, being all now good Friends, for common Danger, as I said above, had effectually reconcil'd them, they began to consider their general Circumstances, and the first Thing that came under their Consideration was, Whether, seeing the Savages particularly haunted that Side of the Island, and that there were more remote and retir'd Parts of it equally adapted to their Way of Living, and manifestly to their Advantage, they should not rather remove their Habitation, and plant in some more proper Place for their Safety, and especially for the Security of their Cattle and Corn?

Upon this, after long Debate, it was concluded, That they would not remove their Habitation, because, that sometime or other they thought they might hear from their Governor again, meaning me, and if I should send any one to seek them, I should be sure to direct them to that Side, where, if they should find the Place demolish'd, they would conclude the Savages had killed us all, and we were gone and so our Supply would go too

But as to their Corn and Cattle, they agreed to remove them into the Valley where my Cave was, where the Land was as proper for both, and where indeed there was Land enough. However, upon second Thought, they alter'd one Part of that Resolution too, and resolv'd only to remove Part of their Cattle thither, and plant Part of their Corn there, and so if one Part was destroy'd the other might be saved. And one Part of Prudence they used, which it was very well they did, viz. That they never trusted those three Savages, which

they had Prisoners, with knowing anything of the Plantation they had made in that Valley, or of any Cattle they had there, much less of the Cave there, which they kept, in Case of Necessity, as a safe Retreat, and whither they carry'd also the two Barrels of Powder, which I had sent them at my coming away

But however they resolv'd not to change their Habitation, yet they agreed, that as I had carefully cover'd it first with a Wall or Fortification, and then with a Grove of Trees, so, seeing their Safety consisted entirely in their being conceal'd, of which they were now fully convinc'd, they set to Work to cover and conceal the Place yet more effectually than before To this Purpose, as I had planted Trees, (or rather thrust in Stakes, which in Time all grew up to be Trees) for some good Distance before the Entrance into my Apartment, they went on in the same Manner, and filled up the rest of that whole Space of Ground, from the Trees I had set, quite down to the Side of the Creek, where, as I said, I landed my Floats, and ever into the very Ooze where the Tide flowed, not so much as leaving any Place to land, or any Sign that there had been any Landing there about These Stakes also, being of a Wood very forward to grow, as I have noted formerly, they took Care to have generally very much larger and taller than those which I had planted, and as they grew apace, so they planted them so very thick and close together, that when they had been three or four Years grown, there was no piercing with the Eye any considerable Way into the Plantation. And as for that Part which I had planted, the Trees were grown as thick as a Man's Thigh, and among them they placed so many other shorter ones, and so thick, that, in a Word, it stood like a Pallisado, a quarter of a Mile thick, and it was next to impossible to penetrate it but with a little Army to cut it all down, for a little Dog could hardly get between the Trees, they stood so close.

But this was not all, for they did the same by all the Ground to the right Hand, and to the Left, and round even to the Top of the Hill leaving no Way, not so much as for themselves to come out, but by the Ladder placed up to the Side of the Hill, and then lifted up, and placed again from the first Stage up to the Top, which Ladder when it was taken down, nothing but what had Wings or Witchcraft to assist it, could come at them

This was excellently well contriv'd Nor was it less than what they afterwards found Occasion for, which served to convince me, that a

human Prudence has the Authority of Providence to justify it, so it has, doubtless, the Direction of Providence to set it to Work, and would we listen carefully to the Voice of it, I am fully persuaded we might prevent many of the Disasters which our Lives are now, by our Negligence, subjected to But this by the Way

I return to the Story. They lived two Years after this in perfect Retirement, and had no more Visits from the Savages They had, indeed, an Alarm given them one Morning, which put them into a great Consternation, for some of the *Spaniards* being out early one Morning on the West Side, or rather the End of the Island, which, by the Way, was that End where I never went, for fear of being discover'd, they were surpris'd with seeing above twenty Canoes of *Indians*, just coming on Shore.

They made the best of their Way Home, in Hurry enough, and, giving the Alarm to their Comrades, they kept close all that Day and the next, going out only at Night, to make Observation But they had the good Luck to be mistaken, for, wherever the Savages went, they did not land at that Time on the Island, but pursued some other Design.

And now they had another Broil with the three *Englishmen*, one of which, a most turbulent Fellow, being in a Rage at one of the three Slaves, which I mention'd they had taken, because the Fellow had not done something right which he bid him do, and seemed a little intractable in his showing him, drew a Hatchet out of a Frog Belt in which he wore it by his Side, and fell upon the poor Savage, not to correct him, but to kill him One of the *Spaniards*, who was by, seeing him give the Fellow a barbarous Cut with the Hatchet, which he aimed at his Head, but struck into his Shoulder, so that he thought he had cut the poor Creature's Arm off, ran to him, and entreating him not to murder the poor Man, clapt in between him and the Savage, to prevent the Mischief

The Fellow being enrag'd the more at this, struck at the *Spaniard* with his Hatchet, and swore he would serve him as he intended to serve the Savage, which the *Spaniard* perceiving, avoided the Blow, and with a Shovel which he had in his Hand, (for they were all working in the Field about their Corn-Land) knocked the Brute down Another of the *Englishmen* running at the same Time to help his Comrade, knocked the *Spaniard* down, and then two *Spaniards* more came in to help their Man, and a third *Englishman* fell in upon

them. They had none of them any Firearms, or any other Weapons but Hatchets and other Tools, except this third *Englishman*, he had one of my old rusty Cutlasses, with which he made at the two last *Spaniards*, and wounded them both. This Fray set the whole Family in an Uproar, and more Help coming in, they took the three *Englishmen* Prisoners. The next Question was, What should be done with them, they had been so often mutinous, and were so furious, so desperate, and so idle withal, that they knew not what Course to take with them, for they were mischievous to the highest Degree, and valued not what Hurt they did to any man, so that, in short, it was not safe to live with them.

The *Spaniard*, who was Governor, told them in so many Words, That if they had been of his own Country, he would have hanged them, for all Laws and all Governors were to preserve Society, and those who were dangerous to the Society, ought to be expell'd out of it, but as they were *Englishmen*, and that it was to the generous kindness of an *Englishman* that they all owed their Preservation and Deliverance, he would use them with all possible Lenity, and would leave them to the Judgment of the other two *Englishmen*, who were their Countrymen.

One of the two honest *Englishmen* stood up, and said, they desir'd it might not be left to them, for, says he, I am sure we ought to sentence them to the Gallows, and with that gives an Account how *Will Atkins*, one of the three, had proposed to have all the five *Englishmen* join together, and murder all the *Spaniards* when they were in their Sleep.

When the *Spanish* Governor heard this, he calls to *William Atkins*, How, Seignior *Atkins*, says he, would you murder us all? What have you to say to that? That harden'd Villain was so far from denying it, that he said it was true, and G—d d—m him they would do it still before they had done with them. Well, but Seignior *Atkins*, says the *Spaniard*, What have we done to you, that you would kill us? And what would you get by killing us? And what must we do to prevent your killing us? Must we kill you, or you will kill us? Why will you put us to the Necessity of this, Seignior *Atkins*? says the *Spaniard* very calmly and smiling.

Seignior *Atkins* was in such a Rage at the *Spaniard's* making a Jest of it, that had he not been held by three Men, and withal had no Weapons with him, it was thought he would have attempted to have killed the *Spaniard* in the Middle of all the Company.

This hail-rain'd Carriage oblig'd them to consider seriously what was to be done. The two *Frenchmen* and the *Spaniard* who saved the poor Savage, was of the Opinion, they should hang one of the three for an Example to the rest, and that, particularly, it should be he that had twice attempted to commit Murder with his Hatchet: and indeed there was some Reason to believe he had done it, for the poor Savage was in such a miserable Condition with the Wound he had receiv'd, that it was thought he could not live.

But the Governor *Spaniard* still said No, it was an *Englishman* that had saved all their Lives, and he would never consent to put an *Englishman* to Death, though he had murder'd half of them, nay, he said, if he had been killed himself by an *Englishman*, and had Time left to speak, it should be, that they should pardon him.

This was so powerfully insisted on by the Governor *Spaniard*, that there was no gaining it; and as merciful Councils are most apt to prevail where they are so earnestly pressed, so they all came into it, but then it was to be consider'd, what should be done to keep them from doing the Mischief they design'd, for all agreed, Governor and all, that Means were to be used for preserving the Society from Danger; after a long Debate it was agreed, First, That they should be disarm'd, and not permitted to have either Gun, or Powder, or Shot, or Sword, or any Weapon, and should be turned out of the Society, and left to live where they would, and how they would, by themselves, but that none of the rest, either *Spaniards* or *English*, should converse with them, speak with them, or have anything to do with them, that they should be forbid to come within a certain Distance of the Place where the rest dwelt, and that if they offer'd to commit any Disorder, so as to spoil, burn, kill, or destroy any of the Corn, Plantings, Buildings, Fences, or Cattle belonging to the Society, they should die without Mercy, and they would shoot them wherever they could find them.

The Governor, a Man of Great Humanity, musing upon the Sentence, consider'd a little upon it, and turning to the two honest *Englishmen*, said, Hold, you must reflect, that it will be long e'er they can raise Corn and Cattle of their own, and they must not starve. We must therefore allow them Provisions, so he caused to be added, That they should have a Proportion of Corn given them to last them eight Months, and for Seed to sow, by which Time they might be suppos'd to raise some of their own, that they should have six

Milch-Goats, four He-Goats, and six Kids given them, as well for present Subsistence, as for a Store, and that they should have Tools given them for their Work in the Fields, such as, six Hatchets, an Axe, a Saw, and the like. But they should have none of these Tools, or Provisions, unless they would swear solemnly, that they would not hurt or injure any of the *Spaniards* with them, or of their Fellow *Englishmen*

Thus they dismiss'd them the Society, and turned them out to shift for themselves. They went away sullen and refractory, as neither contented to go away, or to stay, but, as there was no Remedy, they went, pretending to go and choose a Place where they would settle themselves to plant and live by themselves, and some Provisions were given them, but no Weapons

About four or five Days after, they came again for Victuals, and gave the Governor an Account where they had pitched their Tents and marked themselves out a Habitation and Plantation, and it was a very convenient Place indeed, on the remotest Part of the Island N E, much about the Place where I landed in my first Voyage, when I was driven out to Sea, the Lord knows whither, in my Attempt to surround the Island

Here they built themselves two handsome Huts and contriv'd them, in a Manner, like my first Habitation, being close under the Side of a Hill, having some Trees growing already on three Sides of it so that by planting others it would be very easily cover'd from the Sight, unless narrowly searched for, they desir'd some dried Goat skins for Beds and Covering, which were given them, and upon giving their Words, that they would not disturb the rest, or injure any of their Plantations, they gave them Hatchets, and what other Tool they could spare, some Peas, Barley and Rice, for sowing, and, in Word, anything they wanted, but Arms and Ammunition

They lived in this separate Condition about six Months, and had gotten in their first Harvest, though the Quantity was but small, the Parcel of Land they had planted being but little, for indeed, having all their Plantation to form, they had a great deal of Work upon the Hands, and when they came to make Boards, and Pots, and such Things, they were quite out of their Element, and could make nothing of it; and when the rainy Season came on, for want of a Cave in the Earth, they could not keep their Grain dry, and it was in great Danger of spoiling. And this humbled them much, so they came

and begged the *Spaniards* to help them, which they very readily did, and in four Days worked a great Hole in the Side of the Hill for them, big enough to secure their Corn, and other Things from the Rain, but it was but a poor Place, at best, compar'd to mine, and especially as mine was then, for the *Spaniards* had greatly enlarg'd it, and made several new Apartments in it.

About three Quarters of a Year after this Separation, a new Frolic took these Rogues, which, together with the former Villainy they had committed, brought Mischief enough upon them, and had very near been the Ruin of the whole Colony. The three new Sociates began, it seems, to be weary of the laborious Life they led, and that without Hope of bettering their Circumstances; and a Whim took them, that they would make a Voyage to the Continent from whence the Savages came, and would try if they could not seize upon some Prisoners among the Natives there, and bring them Home, so to make them do the laborious Part of their Work for them.

The Project was not so preposterous, if they had gone no farther, but they did nothing, and propos'd nothing, but had either Mischief in the Design, or Mischief in the Event. And if I may give my Opinion, they seemed to be under a Blast from Heaven, for if we will not allow a visible Curse to pursue visible Crimes, how shall we reconcile the Events of Things with the Divine Justice? It was certainly an apparent Vengeance on their Crime of Mutiny and Piracy, that brought them to the State they were in, and as they showed not the least Remorse for the Crime, but added new Villanies to it, such as, particularly, the Piece of monstrous Cruelty of wounding a poor Slave, because he did not, or perhaps could not, understand to do what he was directed; and to wound him in such a Manner, as, no Question, made him a Cripple all his Life, and in a Place where no Surgeon or Medicine could be had for his Cure, and what was still worse, the murderous Intent, or, to do Justice to the Crime, the intentional Murder, for such to be sure it was, as was afterwards the formed Design they all laid, to murder the *Spaniards* in cold Blood, and in their Sleep.

But I leave observing, and return to the Story. The three Fellows came down to the *Spaniards* one Morning, and in very humble Terms desir'd to be admitted to Speak with them. The *Spaniards* very readily heard what they had to say, which was this, That they were tired of living in the Manner they did, that they were not handy



enough to make the Necessaries they wanted, and that having no Help, they found they should be starved. But if the *Spaniards* would give them Leave to take one of the Canoes which they came over in, and give them Arms and Ammunition, proportion'd for their Defence, they would go over to the Main, and seek their Fortune, and so deliver them from the Trouble of supplying them with any other Provisions.

The *Spaniards* were glad enough to be rid of them, but yet very honestly represented to them the certain Destruction they were running into, told them they had suffer'd such Hardships upon that very Spot, that they could, without any Spirit of Prophecy, tell them that they would be starved, or be murder'd, and bade them consider of it.

The Men reply'd audaciously, they should be starved if they stay'd here, for they could not work, and would not work, and they could but be starved Abroad, and if they were murder'd, there was an End of them, they had no Wives or Children to cry after them, and in short, insisted importunately upon their Demand, declaring that they would go, whether they would give them any Arms or no.



The *Spaniards* told them, with great Kindness, that, if they were resolv'd to go, they should not go like naked Men, and be in no Condition to defend themselves, and that though they could ill spare their Fire-arms, having not enough for themselves, yet they would let them have

two Muskets, a Pistol, and a Cutlass, and each Man a Hatchet, which they thought was sufficient for them.

In a Word, they accepted the Offer, and having baked them Bread enough to serve them a Month, and given them as much Goats-Flesh as they could eat while it was sweet, and a great Basket full of dried

Grapes, a Pot full of fresh Water, and a young Kid alive to kill, they boldly set out in a Canoe for a Voyage over the Sea, where it was at least 40 Miles broad

The Boat was indeed a large one, and would have very well carry'd fifteen or twenty Men, and, therefore, was rather too big for them to manage. But as they had a fair Breeze, and the Flood-Tide with them, they did well enough. They had made a Mast of a long Pole, and a Sail of four large Goat-Skins dried, which they had sewed or laced together, and away they went merrily enough, the *Spaniards* called after them, *Bon Veyajo*, and no Man ever thought of seeing them any more.

The *Spaniards* would often say to one another, and to the two honest *Englishmen* who remain'd behind, how quietly and comfortably they lived now those three turbulent Fellows were gone, as for their ever coming again, that was the remotest Thing from their Thoughts that could be imagin'd, when behold, after two-and-twenty Days' Absence, one of the *Englishmen* being abroad upon his Planting-Work, sees three strange Men coming towards him at a Distance, with Guns upon their Shoulders

Away runs the *Englishman*, as if he was bewitch'd, comes frighted and amaz'd to the Governor *Spaniard*, and tells him they were all undone, for there were Strangers landed upon the Island, he could not tell who. The *Spaniard*, pausing awhile, says to him, How do you mean, you cannot tell who? They are the Savages to be sure. No, no, says the *Englishman*, they are Men in Clothes with Arms. Nay, then, says the *Spaniard*, Why are you concern'd? If they are not Savages they must be Friends, for there is no Christian Nation upon Earth-but will not do us Good rather than Harm

While they were debating thus, comes the three *Englishmen*, and standing without the Wood, which was new planted, hallow'd to them; they presently knew their Voices, and so all the Wonder of that kind ceased. But now the Admiration was turned upon another Question, (*viz*) what could be the Matter, and what made them come back again?

It was not long before they brought the Men in, and inquiring where they had been, and what they had been doing, they gave them a full Account of their Voyage in a few Words, (*viz*) That they reached the Land in two Days, or something less, but finding the People alarm'd at their coming, and preparing with Bows and Arrows

to fight them, they durst not go on Shore, but sailed on to the Northward six or seven Hours, till they came to a great Opening, by which they perceiv'd that the Land they saw from our Island was not the Main, but an Island, that entering that Opening of the Sea, they saw another Island on the Right-Hand North, and several more West, and being resolv'd to land somewhere, they put over to one of the Islands which lay West, and went boldly on Shore, that they found the People very courteous and friendly to them, and that they gave them several Roots and some dried Fish, and appear'd very sociable, and the Women, as well as the Men, were very forward to supply them with anything they could get for them to eat, and brought it to them a great Way upon their Heads.

They continu'd here four Days, and inquir'd as well as they could of them by Signs, what Nations were this Way and that Way, and were told of several fierce and terrible People that lived almost every Way, who, as they made signs to them, used to eat Men. But as for themselves, they said, that they never eat Men or Women, except only such as they took in the Wars, and then they owned that they made a great Feast, and eat their Prisoners.

The *Englishmen* inquir'd when they had a Feast of that Kind, and they told them about two Moons ago, pointing to the Moon, and then to two Fingers, and that their great King had two hundred Prisoners now, which he had taken in his War, and they were feeding them to make them fat for the next Feast. The *Englishmen* seem'd mighty desirous to see those Prisoners, but the other mistaking them, thought they were desirous to have some of them to carry away for their own eating. So they beckon'd to them, pointing to the setting of the Sun, and then to the rising, which was to signify, that the next Morning at Sunrising they would bring some for them, and accordingly the next Morning they brought down five Women and eleven Men, and gave them to the *Englishmen*, to carry with them on their Voyage, just as we would bring so many Cows and Oxen down to a Seaport Town, to victual a Ship.

As brutish and barbarous as these Fellows were at Home, their Stomachs turn'd at this Sight, and they did not know what to do, to refuse the Prisoners, would have been the highest Affront to the Savage Gentry that offer'd them, and what to do with them they knew not, however, upon some Debates, they resolv'd to accept of them, and in Return they gave the Savages that brought them one

of their Hatchets, an old Key, a Knife, and six or seven of their Bullets, which, though they did not understand, they seemed extremely pleased with. And then tying the poor Creatures' Hands behind them, they (the People) dragged the poor Prisoners into the Boat for our Men.

The *Englishmen* were oblig'd to come away as soon as they had them, or else they that gave them this noble Present would certainly have expected that they should have gone to work with them, have killed two or three of them the next Morning, and perhaps have invited the Donors to Dinner.

But having taken their Leave with all the Respects and Thanks that could well pass between People, where on either Side they understood not one Word they could say, they put off with their Boat, and came back towards the first Island, where, when they arriv'd, they set eight of their Prisoners at Liberty, there being too many of them for their Occasion.

In their Voyage, they endeavour'd to have some Communication with their Prisoners, but it was impossible to make them understand anything, nothing they could say to them, or give them, or do for them, but was looked upon as going about to murder them. They first of all unbound them, but the poor Creatures screamed at that, especially the Women, as if they had just felt the Knife at their Throats; for they immediately concluded they were unbound on purpose to be killed.

If they gave them anything to eat, it was the same Thing, then they concluded it was for fear they should sink in Flesh, and so not be fat enough to kill. If they looked at one of them more particularly, the Party presently concluded, it was to see whether he or she was fattest and fittest to kill. Nay, after they had brought them quite over, and began to use them kindly, and treat them well, still they expected every Day to make a Dinner or a Supper for their new Masters.

When the three Wanderers had given this unaccountable History or Journal of their Voyage, the *Spaniard* asked them, Where their new Family was? and being told that they had brought them on Shore, and put them into one of their Huts, and were come up to beg some Victuals for them; they (the *Spaniards*) and the other two *Englishmen*, that is to say, the whole Colony, resolv'd to go all down to the Place and see them, and did so, and *Friday's* Father with them.

When they came into the Hut, *there they sat* all bound, for when they had brought them on Shore, they bound their Hands that they might not take the Boat and make their Escape. There, I say, they sat, all of them stark naked. *First*, There were three Men, lusty comely Fellows, well shaped, straight and fair Limbs, about thirty to thirty-five Years of Age, and five Women, whereof two might be from thirty to forty, two more not above four or five-and-twenty, and the fifth, a tall comely Maiden about sixteen or seventeen. The Women were well favour'd agreeable Persons both in Shape and Features, only tawny, and two of them, had they been perfect White, would have passed for very handsome Women even in *London* itself, having pleasant agreeable Countenances and of a very modest Behaviour, especially when they came afterwards to be clothed, and dressed, as they called it, though the Dress was very indifferent it must be confess'd, of which hereafter

The Sight, you may be sure, was something uncouth to our *Spaniards*, who were (to give them a just Character) Men of the best Behaviour, of the most calm, sedate Tempers, and perfect Good humour that ever I met with, and in particular, of the most Modesty, as will presently appear. I say, the Sight was very uncouth, to see two naked Men and five naked Women, all together bound, and in the most miserable Circumstances that Human Nature could be suppos'd to be, (*viz*) to be expecting every Moment to be dragged out, and have their Brains knocked out, and then to be eaten up like a Calf that is killed for a Dainty.

The first Thing they did, was to cause the old *Indian, Friday's* Father, to go in and see first if he knew any of them, and then if he understood any of their Speech. As soon as the old Man came in, he looked seriously at them, but knew none of them, neither could any of them understand a Word he said, or a Sign he could make, except one of the Women.

However, this was enough to answer the End, which was to satisfy them, that the Men into whose Hands they were fallen, were Christians, that they abhorr'd eating of Men or Women, and that they might be sure they would not be killed. As soon as they were assur'd of this, they discover'd such a Joy, and by such awkward, and several Ways, as is hard to describe, for it seems they were of several Nations.

The Woman, who was their Interpreter, was bid in the next Place to ask them, if they were willing to be Servants, and to work for the

Men who had brought them away, to save their Lives; at which they all fell a Dancing, and presently one fell to taking up this, and another that, anything that lay next, to carry on their Shoulders, to intimate that they were willing to work.

The Governor, who found, that the having Women among them would presently be attended with some Inconvenience, and might occasion some Strife, and perhaps Blood, asked the three Men, what they intended to do with these Women, and how they intended to use them; whether as Servants, or as Women? One of the *Englishmen* answer'd very boldly and readily, That they would use them as both. To which the Governor said, I am not going to restrain you from it, you are your own Masters as to that. But this I think is but just, for avoiding Disorders and Quarrels among you, and I desire it of you, for that Reason only, *viz* That you will all engage, that if any of you take any of these Women, as a Woman or Wife, that he shall take but one, and that having taken one, none else should touch her, for though we cannot marry any of you, yet it is but reasonable, that while you stay here, the Woman any of you takes, should be maintain'd by the Man that takes her, and should be his Wife, I mean, says he, while he continues here, and that none else shall have anything to do with her. All this appear'd so just, that every one agreed to it without any Difficulty.

Then the *Englishmen* asked the *Spaniards*, if they design'd to take any of them? But every one of them answer'd, NO. Some of them said, they had Wives in *Spain*, and the others did not like Women that were not Christians, and all together declar'd, that they would not touch one of them, which was an Instance of such Virtue, as I have not met with in all my Travels. On the other Hand, to be short, the five *Englishmen* took them every one a Wife, that is to say, a temporary Wife, and so they set up a new Form of Living, for the *Spaniards* and *Frida's* Father lived in my old Habitation, which they had enlarg'd exceedingly within. The three Servants which were taken in the late Battle of the Savages, lived with them, and these carry'd on the main Part of the Colony, supplying all the rest with Food, and assisting them in anything as they could, or as they found Necessity requir'd.

But the Wonder of this Story was, how five such refractory ill-match'd Fellows should agree about these Women, and that two of them should not pitch upon the same Woman, especially seeing two

or three of them were, without Comparison, more agreeable than the other. But they took a good Way enough to prevent quarrelling among themselves, for they set the five Women by themselves in one of their Huts, and they went all into the other Hut, and drew Lots among them, who should choose first.

He that drew to choose first, went away by himself to the Hut where the poor naked Creatures were, and fetched out her he chose, and it was worth observing, that he that chose first took her that was reckon'd the homeliest, and the oldest of the five, which made Mirth enough among the rest, and even the *Spaniards* laughed at it. But the Fellow consider'd better than any of them, that it was Application and Business that they were to expect Assistance in, as much as anything else, and she proved the best Wife of all the Parcel.

When the poor Women saw themselves set in a Row thus, and fetched out one by one, the Terrors of their Condition return'd upon them again, and they firmly believ'd that they were now agoing to be devour'd, accordingly, when the *English* Sailor came in and fetched out one of them, the rest set up a most lamentable Cry, and hung about her, and took their Leave of her with such Agonies and such Affection, as would have grieved the hardest Heart in the World, nor was it possible for the *Englishmen* to satisfy them, that they were not to be immediately murdered, till they fetched the old Man, *Friday's* Father, who immediately let them know that the five Men, who had fetched them out one by one, had chosen them for their Wives.

When they had done, and the Fright the Women were in was a little over, the Men went to Work, and the *Spaniards* came and helped them, and in a few Hours they had built them every one a new Hut, or Tent for their Lodging apart, for those they had already, were crowded with their Tools, Household-Stuff, and Provision. The three wicked Ones had pitched farthest off, and the two honest Ones nearer, but both on the North Shore of the Island, so that they continu'd separate as before. And thus my Island was peopled in three Places, and, as I might say, three Towns were begun to be planted.

And here it is very well worth observing, That as it often happens in the World (what the wise Ends of God's Providence are in such a Disposition of Things, I cannot say) the two honest Fellows had the two worst Wives, and the three Reprobates, that were scarce worth hanging, that were fit for nothing, and neither seem'd born to do themselves Good, or any one else, had three clever, diligent, careful

and ingenious Wives, not that the two first were ill Wives, as to their Temper or Humour, for all the five were most willing, quiet, passive, and subjected Creatures, rather like Slaves than Wives, but my Meaning is, they were not alike capable, ingenious, or industrious, or alike cleanly and neat.

Another Observation I must make, to the Honour of a diligent Application on one Hand, and to the Disgrace of a slothful, negligent, idle Temper, on the other, that when I came to the Place, and view'd the several Improvements, Plantings, and Management of the several little Colonies, the two Men had so far outgone the three, that there was no Comparison. They had indeed both of them as much Ground laid out for Cōrn as they wanted, and the Reason was, because, according to my Rule, Nature dictated that it was to no Purpose to sow more Corn than they wanted, but the Difference of the Cultivation, of the Planting, of the Fences, and indeed of everything else, was easy to be seen at first View.

The two Men had innumerable young Trees planted about their Huts, that when you came to the Place, nothing was to be seen but a Wood, and though they had twice had their Plantation demolish'd, once by their own Countrymen, and once by the Enemy, as shall be shown in its Place, yet they had restor'd all again, and everything was thriving and flourishing about them, they had Grapes planted in Order, and manag'd like a Vineyard, though they had themselves never seen anything of that Kind, and by their good ordering their Vines, their Grapes were as good again as any of the others. They had also found themselves out a Retreat in the thickest Part of the Woods, where, though there was not a natural Cave, as I had found, yet they made one with incessant Labour of their Hands, and where when the Mischief which follow'd happen'd, they secur'd their Wives and Children, so as they could never be found, they having by sticking innumerable Stakes and Poles of the Wood, which, as I said, grew so easily, made the Wood unpassable, except in some Places, where they climbed up to get over the outside Part, and then went on by Ways of their own leaving.

As to the three Reprobates, as I justly call them, though they were much civiliz'd by their new Settlement, compar'd to what they were before, and were not so quarrelsome, having not the same Opportunity, yet one of the certain Companions of a profligate Mind never left them, and that was their Idleness. It is true, they planted



Corn, and made Fences, but *Solomon's Words* were never better verify'd than in them *I went by the Vineyard of the Slothful, and it was all overgrown with Thorns*, for when the *Spaniards* came to view their Crop, they could not see it in some Places for Weeds, the Hedge had several Gaps in it, where the wild Goats had gotten in, and eaten up the Corn, perhaps, here and there, a dead Bush was crammed in, to stop them out for the Present, but it was only shutting the Stable door after the Steed was stolen. Whereas, when they looked on the Colony of the other two, there was the very Face of Industry and Success upon all they did, there was not a Weed to be seen in all their Corn, or a Gap in any of their Hedges. And they, on the other Hand, verify'd *Solomon's Words* in another Place, *That the diligent Hand makes rich*, for everything grew and thrived, and they had Plenty within and without, they had more tame Cattle than the other, more Utensils and Necessaries within Doors, and yet more Pleasure and Diversion too.

It is true, the Wives of the three were very handy and cleanly within Doors, and having learned the *English Ways* of Dressing and Cooking from one of the other *Englishmen*, who, as I said, was Cook's-mate on board the Ship, they dressed their Husbands' Victuals very nicely and well, whereas the other could not be brought to understand it, but then the Husband, who, as I say, had been Cook's-mate, did it himself, but as for the Husbands of the three Wives, they loiter'd about, fetched Turtles' Eggs, and caught Fish and Birds, in a Word, anything but Labour, and they fared accordingly. The Diligent lived well and comfortably, and the Slothful lived hard and beggarly, and so I believe, generally speaking, it is all over the World.

But now I come to a Scene, different from all that had happen'd before, either to them, or to me, and the Original of the Story was this.

Early one Morning there came on Shore five or six Canoes of *Indians*, or *Savages*, call them which you please, and there is no Room to doubt that they came upon the old Errand of feeding upon their Slaves. But that Part was now so familiar to the *Spaniards*, and to our Men too, that they did not concern themselves about it, as I did; but having been made sensible by their Experience, that their only Business was to lie conceal'd, and that if they were not seen by any of the Savages, they would go off again quietly when their Business

was done, having as yet not the least Notion of there being any Inhabitants in the Island, I say, having been made sensible of this, they had nothing to do but to give Notice to all the three Plantations, to keep within Doors, and not show themselves, only placing a Scout in a proper Place, to give Notice when the Boats went to Sea again.

This was without doubt very right, but a Disaster spoilt all these Measures, and made it known among the Savages, that there were Inhabitants there, which was in the End the Desolation of almost the whole Colony, after the Canoes with the Savages were gone off, the *Spaniards* peeped abroad again, and some of them had the Curiosity to go to the Place where they had been, to see what they had been doing. Here, to their great Surprise, they found three Savages left behind, and lying fast asleep upon the Ground, it was suppos'd, they had either been so gorged with their inhuman Feast, that, like Beasts, they were asleep, and would not stir when the others went, or they were wander'd into the Woods, and did not come back in time to be taken in.

The *Spaniards* were greatly surpris'd at this Sight, and perfectly at a Loss what to do; the *Spaniard* Governor, as it happen'd, was with them, and his Advice was asked, but he profess'd he knew not what to do, as for Slaves, they had enough already, and as to killing them, they were none of them inclin'd to that, the *Spaniard* Governor told me, they could not think of shedding innocent Blood, for as to them, the poor Creatures had done them no Wrong, invaded none of their Property, and they thought they had no just Quarrel against them, to take away their Lives.

And here I must, in Justice to these *Spaniards*, observe, that let the Accounts of *Spanish Cruelty in Mexico and Peru* be what they will, I never met with seventeen Men of any Nation whatsoever, in any foreign Country, who were so universally Modest, Temperate, Virtuous, so very Good-humour'd, and so Courteous as these *Spaniards*, and as to Cruelty, they had nothing of it in their very Nature, no Inhumanity, no Barbarity, no outrageous Passions, and yet all of them Men of great Courage and Spirit.

Their Temper and Calmness had appear'd in their bearing the unsufferable Usage of the three *Englishmen*, and their Justice and Humanity appear'd now in the Case of the Savages, as above. After some Consultation, they resolv'd upon this, that they would lie still a longer, till, if possible, these three Men might be gone, but

then the Governor *Spaniard* recollected, that the three Savages had no Boat, and that if they were left to rove about the Island, they would certainly discover that there were Inhabitants in it, and so they should be undone that Way

Upon this, they went back again, and there lay the Fellows fast asleep still, so they resolv'd to waken them, and take them Prisoners, and they did so, the poor Fellows were strangely frighted when they were seiz'd upon and bound, and afraid, like the Women, that they should be murder'd and eaten, for it seems those People think all the World does as they do, eating Men's Flesh, but they were soon made easy as to that, and away they carry'd them

It was very happy to them that they did not carry them Home to their Castle, I mean to my Palace under the Hill, but they carry'd them first to the Bower, where was the chief of their Country-work, such as the keeping the Goats, the planting the Corn, &c. and afterwards, they carry'd them to the Habitation of the two *Englishmen*

Here they were set to work, though it was not much they had for them to do, and whether it was by Negligence in guarding them, or that they thought the Fellows could not mend themselves, I know not, but one of them run away, and taking into the Woods, they could never hear of him more.

They had good Reason to believe he got Home again soon after in some other Boats or Canoes of Savages, who came on Shore three or four Weeks afterwards, and who, carrying on their Revels as usual, went off again in two Days' time. This Thought terrify'd them exceedingly, for they concluded, and that not without good Cause indeed, that if this Fellow came safe Home among his Comrades, he would certainly give them an Account, that there were People in the Island, as also how few and weak they were, for this Savage, as observ'd before, had never been told, and it was very happy he had not, how many they were, or where they lived, nor had he ever seen or heard the Fire of any of their Guns, much less had they show him any of their other retir'd Places, such as the Cave in the Valley or the new Retreat which the two *Englishmen* had made, *as the like.*

The first Testimony they had that this Fellow had given Intelligence of them, was, that about two Months after this, six Canoes

Savages, with about seven, or eight, or ten Men in a Canoe, came rowing along the North Side of the Island, where they never used to come before, and landed about an Hour after Sunrise, at a convenient Place, about a Mile from the Habitation of the two *Englishmen* where this escap'd Man had been kept. As the *Spaniard* Governor said, had they been all there, the Damage would not have been so much, for not a Man of them would have escap'd, but the Case differ'd now very much, for two Men to fifty was too much odds. The two Men had the Happiness to discover them about a League off, so that it was above an Hour before they landed, and as they landed a Mile from their Huts, it was some time before they could come at them. Now having great Reason to believe that they were betray'd, the first Thing they did, was to bind the two Slaves which were left, and cause two of the three Men, whom they brought with the Women, who it seems proved very faithful to them, to lead them with their two Wives, and whatever they could carry away with them, to their retir'd Place in the Woods, which I have spoken of above, and there to bind the two Fellows Hand and Foot till they heard farther.

In the next Place, seeing the Savages were all come on Shore, and that they bent their Course directly that Way, they opened the Fences where their Milch-Goats were kept, and drove them all out, leaving their Goats to straggle into the Wood, whither they pleased, that the Savages might think they were all bred wild, but the Rogue who came with them was too cunning for that, and gave them an Account of it all, for they went directly to the Place.

When the two poor frighted Men had secur'd their Wives and Goods, they sent the other Slave they had of the three, who came with the Women, and who was at their Place by Accident, away to the *Spaniard*, with all Speed, to give them the Alarm, and desire speedy Help, and in the meantime they took their Arms, and what Ammunition they had, and retreated towards the Place in the Wood, where their Wives were sent, keeping at a Distance, yet so that they might see, if possible, which Way the Savages took.

They had not gone far, but that, from a rising Ground, they could see the little Army of their Enemies come on directly to their Habitation, and in a Moment more could see all their Huts and Household-Stuff flaming up together, to their great Grief

and Mortification; for they had a very great Loss, to them irretrievable, at least for some Time. They kept their Station for a while, till they found the Savages, like wild Beasts, spread themselves all over the Place, rummaging every Way and every Place they could think of, in Search for Prey, and in particular for the People, of whom it now plainly appear'd they had Intelligence.

The two *Englishmen* seeing this, thinking themselves not secure where they stood, because as it was likely some of the wild People might come that Way, so they might come too many together, thought it proper to make another Retreat about half a Mile farther, believing, as it afterwards happen'd, that the farther they strolled, the fewer would be together.

The next Halt was at the Entrance into a very thick grown Part of the Woods, and where an old Trunk of a Tree stood, which was hollow and vastly large, and in this Tree they both took their Standing, resolving to see there what might offer.

They had not stood there long, but two of the Savages appear'd running directly that Way, as if they had already had Notice where they stood, and were coming up to attack them; and a little Way farther, they spied three more coming after them, and five more beyond them, all coming the same Way, besides which, they saw seven or eight more at a Distance, running another Way, for in a Word, they ran every Way like Sportsmen beating for their Game.

The poor Men were now in great Perplexity, whether they should stand and keep their Posture, or fly. But after a very short Debate with themselves, they consider'd, that if the Savages rang'd the Country thus before Help came, they might perhaps find out their Retreat in the Woods, then all would be lost, so they resolv'd to stand them there, and if they were too many to deal with, then they would get up to the Top of the Tree, from whence they doubted not to defend themselves, *Fire excepted*, as long as their Ammunition lasted, though all the Savages that were landed, which was near fifty, were to attack them.

Having resolv'd upon this, they next consider'd whether they should fire at the first two, or wait for the three, and so take the middle Party, by which the two and the five that follow'd would be separated, and they resolv'd to let the two first pass by, unless they should spy them in the Tree, and come to attack them. The two first Savages also confirm'd them in this Regulation, by turning a

little from them towards another Part of the Wood, but the three, and the five after them, came forwards directly to the Tree, as if they had known the *Englishmen* were there

Seeing them come so straight towards them, they resolv'd to take them in a Line, as they came, and as they resolv'd to fire but one at a Time, perhaps the first Shot might hit them all three, to which Purpose, the Man who was to fire put three or four Bullets into his Piece, and having a fair Loop-hole, as it were, from a broken Hole in the Tree, he took a sure Aim, without being seen, waiting till they were within about thirty Yards of the Tree, so that he could not miss

While they were thus waiting, and the Savages came on, they plainly saw that one of the three was the Runaway Savage that had escap'd from them, and they both knew him distinctly, and resolv'd that, if possible, he should not escape, though they should both fire, so the other stood ready with his Piece, that if he did not drop at the first Shot, he should be sure to have a second

But the first was too good a Marksman to miss his Aim, for as the Savages kept near one another, a little behind in a Line, in a Word, he fired, and hit two of them directly The foremost was killed outright, being shot in the Head The second, which was the run-away *Indian*, was shot through the Body, and fell, but was not quite dead And the third had a little Scratch in the Shoulder, perhaps by the same Ball that went through the Body of the second, and being dreadfully frighted, though not much hurt, sat down upon the Ground, screaming and yelling in a hideous manner

The five that were behind, more frighted with the Noise than sensible of the Danger, stood still at first, for the Woods made the Sound a thousand Times bigger than it really was, the Echoes rattling from one Side to another, and the Fowls rising from all Parts, screaming and making, every Sort, a several Kind of Noise according to their Kind, just as it was when I fired the first Gun that perhaps was ever shot off in that Place since it was an Island.

However, all being silent again, and they not knowing what the Matter was, came on unconcern'd, till they came to the Place where their Companions lay in a Condition miserable enough And here the poor ignorant Creatures, not sensible that they were within Reach of the same Mischief, stood all of a Huddle over the wounded Man, asking, and, as may be suppos'd, inquiring of him, how he came to

be hurt, and who, it is very rational to believe, told them, that a Flash of Fire first, and immediately after that, Thunder from their Gods, had killed those two, and wounded him. This, I say, is rational; for nothing is more certain than that, as they saw no Man near them, so they had never heard a Gun in all their Lives, or so much as heard of a Gun, neither knew they anything of killing or wounding, at a Distance, with Fire and Bullets, if they had, one might reasonably believe, they would not have stood so unconcern'd, in viewing the Fate of their Fellows, without some Apprehension of their own.

Our two Men, though as they confess'd to me it grieved them to be oblig'd to kill so many poor Creatures, who, at the same Time, had no Notion of their Danger, yet having them all thus in their Power, and the first having loaded his Piece again, resolv'd to let fly both together among them, and singling out, by Agreement, which to aim at, they shot together, and killed or very much wounded four of them, the fifth, frighted even to Death, though not hurt, fell with the rest, so that our Men seeing them all fall together, thought they had killed them all.

The Belief that the Savages were all killed, made our two Men come boldly out of the Tree before they had charged their Guns again, which was a wrong Step, and they were under some Surprise when they came to the Place, and found no less than four of the Men alive, and of them two very little hurt, and one not at all. This oblig'd them to fall upon them with the Stocks of their Muskets, and first they made sure of the run-away Savage, that had been the Cause of all the Mischief, and of another that was hurt in his Knee, and put them out of their Pain, then the Man that was not hurt at all, came and kneeled down to them, with his two Hands held up, and made piteous Moans to them by Gestures and Signs, for his Life, but could not say one Word to them that they could understand.

However, they signed to him to sit down at the Foot of a Tree thereby, and one of the *Englishmen*, with a Piece of Rope-Twine which he had, by great Chance, in his Pocket, tied his two Feet fast together, and his two Hands behind him, and there they left him, and, with what Speed they could, made after the other two, which were gone before, fearing they, or any more of them, should find the Way to their cover'd Place in the Woods, where their Wives, and the few Goods they had left, lay. They came once in Sight of the two

Men, but it was at a great Distance, however, they had the Satisfaction to see them cross over a Valley towards the Sea, the quite contrary Way from that which led to their Retreat, which they were afraid of; and being satisfy'd with that, they went back to the Tree, where they left their Prisoner, who, as they suppos'd, was deliver'd by his Comrades, for he was gone, and the two Pieces of Rope-Yarn, with which they had bound him, lay just at the Foot of the Tree.

They were now in as great a Concern as before, not knowing what Course to take, or how near the Enemy might be, or in what Numbers, so they resolv'd to go away to the Place where their Wives were, to see if all was well there, and to make them easy, who were in Fright enough to be sure, for though the Savages were their own Country Folk, yet they were most terribly afraid of them, and perhaps the more, for the Knowledge they had of them.

When they came there, they found the Savages had been in the Wood, and very near that Place, but had not found it, for it was indeed inaccessible, by the Trees standing so thick, *as before*, had not the Persons seeking it been directed by those that knew it, which these did not, they found therefore everything very safe, only the Women in a terrible Fright. While they were here, they had the Comfort to have seven of the *Spaniards* come to their Assistance, the other ten, with their Servants, and old *Friday*, I mean *Friday's* Father, were gone in a Body to defend their Bower, and the Corn, and Cattle that was kept there, in Case the Savages should have roved over to that Side of the Country, but they did not spread so far. With the seven *Spaniards* came one of the three Savages, who, as I said, were their Prisoners formerly, and with them also came the Savage, whom the *Englishmen* had left bound Hand and Foot at the Tree, for it seems they came that Way, saw the Slaughter of the seven Men, and unbound the eighth, and brought him along with them, where, however, they were oblig'd to bind him again, as they had the two others, who were left when the third run away.

The Prisoners began now to be a Burden to them, and they were so afraid of their escaping, that they were once resolving to kill them all, believing they were under an absolute Necessity to do so, for their own Preservation. However, the *Spaniard* Governor would not consent to it, but order'd for the present that they should be sent out of the Way to my old Cave in the Valley, and be kept there with



two *Spaniards* to guard them, and give them Food for their Subsistence, which was done, and they were bound there Hand and Foot for that Night.

When the *Spaniards* came, the two *Englishmen* were so encourag'd that they could not satisfy themselves to stay any longer there, but taking five of the *Spaniards*, and themselves, with four Muskets and a Pistol among them, and two stout Quarter-Staves, away they went in Quest of the Savages. And first they came to the Tree where the Men lay that had been killed, but it was easy to see that some more of the Savages had been there, for they had attempted to carry their dead Men away, and had dragged two of them a good Way, but had given it over. From thence they advanc'd to the first rising Ground, where they stood, and saw their Camp destroy'd, and where they had the Mortification still to see some of the Smoke, but neither could they here see any of the Savages. Then they resolv'd, though, with all possible Caution, to go forward towards their ruin'd Plantation. But a little before they came thither, coming in Sight of the Sea Shore, they saw plainly the Savages all embarking again in their Canoes, in order to be gone.

- They seem'd sorry at first, and there was no Way to come at them, to give them a parting Blow. But upon the whole, were very well satisfy'd to be rid of them.

The poor *Englishmen* being now twice ruin'd, and all their Improvement destroy'd, the rest all agreed to come and help them rebuild, and to assist them with needful Supplies. Their three Countrymen, who were not yet noted for having the least Inclination to do any Good, yet as soon as they heard of it (for they living remote Eastward, knew nothing of the Matter till all was over) came and offer'd their Help and Assistance, and did very friendly work for several Days, to restore their Habitation, and make Necessaries for them. And thus, in a little Time, they were set upon their Legs again.

About two Days after this, they had the farther Satisfaction of seeing three of the Savages' Canoes come driving on Shore, and at some Distance from them, two drowned Men, by which they had Reason to believe, that they had met with a Storm at Sea, and had overset some of them, for it had blown very hard the very Night after they went off.

However, as some might miscarry, so on the other Hand, enough

of them escap'd to inform the rest, as well of what they had done, as of what had happen'd to them, and to whet them on to another Enterprise of the same Nature, which they, it seems, resolv'd to attempt, with sufficient Force to carry all before them, for except what the first Man had told them of Inhabitants, they could say little to it of their own Knowledge, for they never saw one Man, and the Fellow being killed that had affirm'd it, they had no other Witness to confirm it to them.

It was five or six Months after this before they heard any more of the Savages, in which Time our Men were in Hopes they had either forgot their former bad Luck, or given over the Hopes of better, when on a sudden they were invaded with a most formidable Fleet, of no less than eight-and-twenty Canoes full of Savages, armed with Bows and Arrows, great Clubs, wooden Swords, and such like Engines of War, and they brought such Numbers with them, that, in short, it put all our People into the utmost Consternation.

As they came on Shore in the Evening, and at the Easternmost Side of the Island, our Men had that Night to consult and consider what to do, and, in the first Place, knowing that their being entirely conceal'd was their only Safety before, and would much more be so now, while the Number of their Enemies was so great, they therefore resolv'd first of all to take down the Huts which were built for the two *Englishmen*, and drive away their Goats to the old Cave, because they suppos'd the Savages would go directly thither, as soon as it was Day, to play the old Game over again, though they did not now land within two Leagues of it.

In the next Place, they drove away all the Flock of Goats they had at the old Bower, as I called it, which belong'd to the *Spaniards*, and in short, left as little Appearance of Inhabitants anywhere as was possible, and the next Morning early they posted themselves with all their Force at the Plantation of the two Men, waiting for their Coming. As they guessed, so it happen'd, these new Invaders leaving their Canoes at the East End of the Island, came ranging along the Shore directly towards the Place, to the Number of two-hundred-and-fifty, as near as our Men could judge. Our Army was but small indeed, but that which was worse, they had not Arms for all their Number neither. The whole Account, it seems, stood thus First, as to the men.

- 7 *Spaniards*
- 5 *Englishmen*
- 1 Old *Friday*, or *Friday's* Father
- 3 The three Slaves taken with the Women, who proved very faithful
- 3 Other Slaves who lived with the *Spaniards*.

*To arm these, they I ad,*

- 11 Muskets.
- 5 Pistols
- 3 Fowling Pieces
- 5 Muskets or Fowling Pieces, which were taken by me from the mutinous Seamen, whom I reduc'd.
- 2 Swords, 3 old Halberds.

To their Slaves they did not give either Musket or Fusée, but they had every one a Halberd, or a long Staff, like a Quarter-Staff, with a great Spike of Iron fasten'd into each End of it, and by his Side a Hatchet, also every one of our Men had Hatchets. Two of the Women could not be prevail'd upon but they would come into the Fight, and they had Bows and Arrows, which the *Spaniards* had taken from the Savages, when the first Action happen'd, which I have spoil'd of, where the *Indians* fought with one another, and the Women Hatchets too

The *Spaniard* Governor, whom I have describ'd so often, commanded the whole, and *William Atkins*, who though a dreadful Fellow for Wickedness, was a most daring bold Fellow, commanded under him. The Savages came forward like Lions, and our Men, which was the worst of their Fate, had no Advantage in their Situation, only that *Will Atkins*, who now proved a very useful Fellow, with six Men, was planted just behind a small Thicket of Bushes, as an advanc'd Guard, with Orders to let the first of them pass by, and then fire into the Middle of them, and, as soon as he had fired, to make his Retreat as nimble as he could round a Part of the Wood, and so come in behind the *Spaniards* where they stood, having a Thicket of Trees all before them.

When the Savages came on, they ran straggling about every Way in Heaps, out of all manner of Order, and *W Atkins* let about

fifty of them pass by him, then seeing the rest come in a very thick Throng, he orders three of his Men to fire, having loaded their Muskets with six or seven Bullets apiece, about as big as large Pistol Bullets. How many they killed or wounded they knew not, but the Consternation and Surprise was inexpressible among the Savages, they were frighted to the last Degree, to hear such a dreadful Noise, and see their Men killed, and others hurt, but see nobody that did it, when in the Middle of their Fright, *W Atkins* and his other three let fly again among the thickest of them, and in less than a Minute the first three, being loaded again, gave them a third Volley.

Had *W Atkins* and his Men retir'd immediately, as soon as they had fired, as they were order'd to do, or had the rest of the Body been at Hand to have poured in their Shot continually, the Savages had been effectually routed, for the Terror that was among them came principally from this, (*viz*) That they were killed by the Gods with Thunder and Lightning, and could see nobody that hurt them, but *W Atkins* staying to load again, discover'd the Cheat. Some of the Savages who were at a Distance, spying them, came upon them behind, and though *Atkins* and his Men fired at them also, two or three Times, and killed above twenty, retiring as fast as they could, yet they wounded *Atkins* himself, and killed one of his Fellow *Englishmen* with their Arrows, as they did afterwards one *Spaniard*, and one of the *Indian* Slaves who came with the Women, this Slave was a most gallant Fellow, and fought most desperately, killing five of them with his own Hand, having no Weapon, but one of the armed Staves and a Hatchet.

Our Men being thus hard laid at, *Atkins* wounded, and two other Men killed, retreated to a rising Ground in the Wood, and the *Spaniards* after firing three Volleys upon them retreated also, for their Number was so great, and they were so desperate, that though above fifty of them were killed, and more than so many wounded, yet they came on in the Teeth of our Men, fearless of Danger, and shot their Arrows like a Cloud, and it was observ'd that their wounded Men, who were not quite disabled, were made outrageous by their Wounds, and fought like Madmen.

When our Men retreated, they left the *Spaniard* and the *Englishman* that was killed behind them, and the Savages, when they came up to them, killed them over again in a wretched Manner, breaking

the Arms, Legs, and Heads with their Clubs and wooden Swords, like true Savages. But finding our Men were gone, they did not seem to pursue them, but drew themselves up in a kind of a Ring, which is, it seems, their Custom, and shouted twice in Token of their Victory. After which, they had the Mortification to see several of their wounded Men fall, dying with the mere Loss of Blood.

The *Spaniard* Governor having drawn his little Body up together upon a rising Ground, *Atkins*, though he was wounded, would have had him march, and charge them again all together at once. But the *Spaniard* reply'd, Seignior *Atkins*, you see how their wounded Men fight, let them alone till Morning, all these wounded Men will be stiff and sore with their Wounds, and faint with the Loss of Blood; and so we shall have the fewer to engage.

The Advice was good. But *Will Atkins* reply'd merrily, That's true, Seignior, and so shall I too, and that's the Reason I would go on while I am warm. Well, Seignior *Atkins*, says the *Spaniard*, you have behav'd gallantly, and done your Part, we will fight for you, if you cannot come on, but I think it best to stay till Morning, so they waited.

But as it was a clear Moonlight Night, and they found the Savages in great Disorder about their dead and wounded Men, and a great Hurry and Noise among them where they lay, they afterwards resolv'd to fall upon them in the Night, especially if they could come to give them but one Volley before they were discover'd, which they had a fair Opportunity to do, for one of the two *Englishmen*, in whose Quarter it was where the Fight began, led them round between the Woods and Seaside Westward, and then turning short South, they came so near where the thickest of them lay, that before they were seen or heard, eight of them fired in among them, and did dreadful Execution upon them, in half a Minute more, eight others fired after them, pouring in their small Shot in such a Quantity, that Abundance were killed and wounded, and all this while they were not able to see who hurt them, or which Way to fly.

The *Spaniards* charged again with the utmost Expedition, and then divided themselves into three Bodies, and resolv'd to fall in among them all together. They had in each Body eight Persons, that is to say 24, whereof were 22 Men, and the 2 Women, who by the Way fought desperately.

They divided the Firearms equally in each Party, and so of the

Halberds and Staves They would have had the Women keep back, but they said they were resolv'd to die with their Husbands Having thus formed their little Army they marched out from among the Trees, and they came up to the Teeth of the Enemy, shouting and hallowing as loud as they could, the Savages stood all together, but were in the utmost Confusion, hearing the Noise of our Men shouting from three Quarters together ; they would have fought if they had seen us And as soon as we came near enough to be seen, some Arrows were shot, and poor old *Friday* was wounded, though not dangerously But our Men gave them no Time, but running up to them, fired among them three Ways, and then fell in with the Butt-ends of their Muskets, their Swords, armed Staves, and Hatchets, and laid about them so well, that, in a Word, they set up a dismal Screaming and Howling, flying to save their Lives which Way soever they could.



Our Men were tired with the Execution, and killed, or mortally wounded, in the two Fights, about 180 of them, the rest, being frightened out of their Wits, scoured through the Woods, and over the Hills, with all the Speed and Fear that nimble Feet could help them to do, and as we did not trouble ourselves much to pursue them, they got all together to the Seaside, where they landed, and where their Canoes lay But their Disaster was not at an End yet, for it blew a terrible Storm of Wind that Evening from the Seaward, so that it was impossible for them to go off, nay, the Storm continuing all Night, when the Tide came up, their Canoes were most of them driven by the Surge of the Sea so high upon the Shore, that it requir'd infinite Toul to get them off, and some of them were even dashed to Pieces against the Beach, or against one another

Our Men, though glad of their Victory, yet got little Rest that

Night, but having refresh'd themselves as well as they could, they resolv'd to march to that Part of the Island where the Savages were fled, and see what Posture they were in. This necessarily led them over the Place where the Fight had been, and where they found several of the poor Creatures not quite dead, and yet past recovering Life, a Sight disagreeable enough to generous Minds; for a truly great Man, though obliged by the Law of Battle to destroy his Enemy, takes no Delight in his Misery.

However, there was no Need to give any Orders in this Case; for their own Savages, who were their Servants, dispatch'd those poor Creatures with their Hatchets.

At length they came in View of the Place where the more miserable Remains of the Savages' Army lay, where there appear'd about an hundred still, their Posture was generally sitting upon the Ground, with their Knees up towards their Mouth, and the Head put between the two Hands, leaning down upon the Knees.

When our Men came within two Musket Shot of them, the *Spartan* Governor ordered two Muskets to be fired without Ball, to alarm them, this he did, that by their Countenance he might know what to expect, *viz* Whether they were still in Heart to fight, or were so heartily beaten, as to be dispirited and discourag'd, and so he might manage accordingly.

This Stratagem took, for, as soon as the Savages heard the first Gun, and saw the Flash of the Second, they started up upon their Feet in the greatest Consternation imaginable, and as our Men advanc'd swiftly towards them, they all ran screaming and yawling away, with a Kind of a howling Noise, which our Men did not understand, and had never heard before, and thus they ran up the Hills into the Country.

At first, our Men had much rather the Weather had been calm, and they had all gone away to Sea. But they did not then consider that this might probably have been the Occasion of their coming again in such Multitudes, as not to be resisted, or, at least, to come so many and so often, as would quite desolate the Island, and starve them. *Will Atkins* therefore, who, notwithstanding his Wound, kept always with them, proved the best Counsellor in this Case. His Advice was, to take the Advantage that offer'd, and clap in between them and their Boats, and so deprive them of the Capacity of ever returning any more to plague the Island.

They consulted long about this, and some were against it, for fear of making the Wretches fly to the Woods, and live there desperate, and so they should have them to hunt like wild Beasts, be afraid to stir out about their Business, and have their Plantations continually rifled, and their tame Goats destroy'd, and, in short, be reduc'd to a Life of continual Distress

*Will Atkins* told them they had better have to do with a hundred Men, than with a hundred Nations That as they must destroy their Boats, so they must destroy the Men, or be all of them destroy'd themselves In a Word, he showed them the Necessity of it so plainly, that they all came into it, so they went to work immediately with the Boats, and getting some dry Wood together from a dead Tree, they tried to set some of them on Fire, but they were so wet, that they would not burn; however, the Fire so burned the upper Part, that it soon made them unfit for swimming in the Sea as Boats When the *Indians* saw what they were about, some of them came running out of the Woods, and coming as near as they could to our Men, kneeled down, and cried, *Oa, Oa, Waramokoa*, and some other Words of their Language, which none of the others understood any thing of; but as they made pitiful Gestures, and strange Noises, it was easy to understand, they begged to have their Boats spared, and that they would be gone, and never come there again

But our Men were now satisfy'd, that they had no Way to preserve themselves, or to save the Colony, but effectually to prevent any of these People from ever going Home again, depending upon this, that if ever so much as one of them got back into their Country to tell the Story, the Colony was undone, so that letting them know that they should not have any Mercy, they fell to work with their Canoes, and destroy'd them every one, that the Storm had not destroy'd before, at the Sight of which, the Savages raised a hideous Cry in the Woods which our People heard plain enough, after which, they ran about the Island like distracted Men, so that, in a Word, our Men did not really know at first what to do with them.

Nor did the *Spaniards*, with all their Prudence, consider, that while they made those People thus desperate, they ought to have kept good Guard at the same Time upon their Plantations, for though it is true, they had driven away their Cattle, and the *Indians* did not find out their main Retreat, I mean my old Castle at the Hill, nor the Cave in the Valley, yet they found out my Plantation at the



Bower, and pulled it all to Pieces, and all the Fences and Planting about it, trod all the Corn under Foot, tore up the Vines and Grapes, being just then almost ripe, and did to our men an inestimable Damage, though to themselves not one Farthing's worth of Service

Though our Men were able to fight them upon all Occasions, yet they were in no Condition to pursue them, or hunt them up and down, for as they were too nimble of Foot for our Men, when they found them single, so our Men durst not go about single, for fear of being surrounded with their Numbers. The best was, they had no Weapons, for though they had Bows they had no Arrows left, nor any Materials to make any, nor had they any edged Tool or Weapon among them.

The Extremity and Distress they were reduc'd to was great, and indeed deplorable, but at the same Time, our Men were also brought to very bad Circumstances by them, for though their Retreats were preserv'd, yet their Provision was destroy'd, and their Harvest spoil'd, and what to do, or which Way to turn themselves, they knew not. The only Refuge they had now, was the Stock of Cattle they had in the Valley by the Cave, and some little Corn which grew there, and the Plantation of the three *Englishmen*, *William Atkins* and his Comrades, who were now reduc'd to two, one of them being killed by an Arrow which struck him on the Side of his Head, just under the Temple, so that he never spoke more, and it was very remarkable, that this was the same barbarous Fellow who cut the poor Savage Slave with his Hatchet, and who afterwards intended to have murder'd all the *Spaniards*.

I looked upon their Case to have been worse at this Time, than mine was at any Time, after I first discover'd the Grains of Barley and Rice, and got into the Manner of planting and raising my Corn, and my tame Cattle, for now they had, as I may say, a hundred Wolves upon the Island, which would devour everything they could come at, yet could very hardly be come at themselves.

The first Thing they concluded, when they saw what their Circumstances were, was, that they would, if possible, drive them up to the farther Part of the Island, South-West, that if any more Savages came on Shore, they might not find one another. Then, that they would daily hunt and harass them, and kill as many of them as they could come at, till they had reduc'd their Number, and if they could at last tame them, and bring them to anything, they would give them Corn, and teach them how to plant and live upon their daily Labour.

In order to this, they so follow'd them, and so terrify'd them with their Guns, that in a few Days, if any of them fired a Gun at an *Ind'an*, if he did not hit him, yet he would fall down for Fear; and so dreadfully frightened they were, that they kept out of Sight farther and farther, till at last our Men following them, and every Day almost killing and wounding some of them, they kept up in the Woods and hollow Places so much, that it reduc'd them to the utmost Misery for want of Food, and many were afterwards found dead in the Woods, without any Hurt, but merely starved to Death.

When our Men found this, it made their Hearts relent, and Pity moved them, especially the *Spaniard* Governor, who was the most gentlemanly, generous-minded Man that ever I met with in my Life, and he propos'd, if possible, to take one of them alive, and bring him to understand what they meant, so far as to be able to act as Interpreter, and to go among them, and see if they might be brought to some Conditions that might be depended upon, to save their Lives and to do us no Spoil.

It was some while before any of them could be taken, but being weak and half starved, one of them was at last surpris'd and made a Prisoner, he was sullen at first, and would neither eat or drink, but finding himself kindly used, and Victuals given him, and no Violence offer'd him, he at last grew tractable, and came to himself.

They brought old *Friday* to him, who talked often with him, and told him how kind the others would be to them all, that they would not only save their Lives, but would give them a Part of the Island to live in, provided they would give Satisfaction that they would keep in their own Bounds, and not come beyond it, to injure or prejudice others, and that they should have Corn given them, to plant and make it grow for their Bread, and some Bread given them for their present Subsistence, and old *Friday* had the Fellow go and talk with the rest of his Countrymen, and see what they said to it, assuring them, that if they did not agree immediately, they should be all destroy'd.

The poor Wretches, thoroughly humbled, and reduc'd in Number to about thirty-seven, closed with the Proposal at the first Offer, and begged to have some Food given them; upon which, twelve *Spaniards* and two *Englishmen*, well armed, with three *Indian* Slaves, and old *Friday*, marched to the Place where they were, the three *Indian*

Slaves carry'd them a large Quantity of Bread , some Rice boiled up to Cakes, and dried in the Sun, and three live Goats ; and they were order'd to go to the Side of a Hill, where they sat down, eat the Provisions very thankfully, and were the most faithful Fellows to their Words that could be thought of , for except when they came to beg Victuals and Directions, they never came out of their Bounds , and there they lived when I came to the Island, and I went to see them

They had taught them both to plant Corn, make Bread, breed tame Goats and milk them , they wanted nothing but Wives, and they soon would have been a Nation They were confin'd to a Neck of Land, surrounded with high Rocks behind them, and lying plain towards the Sea before them, on the South-East Corner of the Island They had Land enough, and it was very good and fruitful , they had a Piece of Land about a Mile and half broad, and three or four Mile in Length.

Our Men taught them to make wooden Spades, such as I made for myself, and gave them among them twelve Hatchets and three or four Knives , and there they lived the most subjected innocent Creatures that ever were heard of

After this, the Colony enjoy'd a perfect Tranquillity with Respect to the Savages, till I came to revisit them, which was above two Years Not but that now and then some Canoes of Savages came on Shore for their triumphal unnatural Feasts, but as they were of several Nations, and perhaps had never heard of those that came before, or the Reason of it, they did not make any Search or Inquiry after their Countrymen , and if they had, it would have been very hard to have found them out.

Thus, I think, I have given a full Account of all that happen'd to them, to my Return, at least that was worth Notice The *Indians* or Savages were wonderfully civiliz'd by them, and they frequently went among them, but forbid, on Pain of Death, any one of the *Indians* coming to them, because they would not have their Settlement betray'd again

One Thing was very remarkable, *viz* that they taught the Savages to make Wickerwork, or Baskets , but they soon outdid their Masters , for they made abundance of most ingenious Things in Wickerwork , particularly, all Sorts of Baskets, Sieves, Bird-Cages, Cupboards, &c, as also Chairs to sit on, Stools, Beds, Couches and

abundance of other Things, being very ingenious at such Work, when they were once put in the Way of it

My coming was a particular Relief to these People, because we furnish'd them with Knives, Scissors, Spades, Shovels, Pick-axes, and all Things of that Kind which they could want.

With the Help of these Tools they were so very handy, that they came at last to build up their Huts, or our Houses, very handsomely, raddling or working it up like Basket-work all the way round, which was a very extraordinary Piece of Ingenuity, and looked very odd, but was an exceeding good Fence, as well against Heat, as against all Sorts of Vermin, and our Men were so taken with it, that they got the wild Savages to come and do the like for them, so that when I came to see the two *Englishmen's* Colonies, they looked, at a Distance, as if they lived all like Bees in a Hive, and as for *Will Atkins*, who was now become a very industrious, necessary, and sober Fellow, he had made himself such a Tent of Basket-work as I believe was never seen, it was 120 Paces round in the Outside, as I measur'd by my Steps, the Walls were as close worked as a Basket, in Panels or Squares of 32 in Number, and very strong, standing about seven Foot high; in the middle was another not above 22 Paces round, but built stronger, being Eight-square in its Form, and in the eight Corners stood eight very strong Posts, round the Top of which he laid strong Pieces pinned together with wooden Pins, from which he raised a Pyramid for the Roof of eight Rafters, very handsome, I assure you, and joined together very well, though he had no Nails, and only a few iron Spikes, which he made himself too, out of the old Iron that I had left there, and indeed this Fellow showed abundance of Ingenuity in several Things which he had no Knowledge of, he made him a Forge, with a Pair of wooden Bellows to blow the Fire, he made himself Charcoal for his Work, and he formed out of one of the Iron Crows a middling good Anvil to hammer upon, in this Manner he made many Things, but especially Hooks, Staples and Spikes, Bolts and Hinges. But to return to the House, after he had pitched the Roof of his innermost Tent, he worked it up between the Rafters with Basket-work so firm, and thatched that over again so ingeniously with Rice-straw, and over that a large Leaf of a Tree, which cover'd the Top, that his House was as dry as if it had been tiled or slated. Indeed he had made the Basket-work for him

The outer Circuit was cover'd, as a Lean to, all round this inner Apartment, and long Rafter's lay from the two and-thirty Angles to the top Posts of the inner House, being about twenty Foot Distance, so that there was a Space like a Walk within the outer wicker Wall, and without the inner, near twenty Foot wide.

The inner Place he partition'd off with the same Wickerwork, but much fairer, and divided it into six Apartments, so that he had six Rooms on a Floor, and out of every one of these there was a Door, first into the Entry or Coming into the main Tent, and another Door into the Space or Walk that was round it, so that Walk was also divided into six equal Parts, which served not only for Retreat, but to store up any Necessaries which the Family had Occasion for. These six Spaces not taking up the whole Circumference, what other Apartments the outer Circle had were thus order'd. As soon as you were in at the Door of the outer Circle, you had a short Passage straight before you to the Door of the inner House, but on either side was a Wicker Partition, and a Door in it, by which you went, first into a large Room or Storehouse, twenty Foot wide and about thirty Foot long, and through that into another not quite so long, so that in the outer Circle was ten handsome Rooms, six of which were only to be come at through the Apartment of the inner Tent, and served as Closets or retiring Rooms to the respective Chambers of the inner Circle, and four large Warehouse or Barns, or what you please to call them, which went in through one another, two on either Hand of the Passage that led through the outer Door to the inner Tent.

Such a Piece of Basket-work, I believe, was never seen in the World, nor a House, or Tent, so neatly contriv'd, much less, built. In this great Beehive lived the three Families, that is to say *Will Atkins* and his Companion, the third was killed, but his Wife remain'd with three Children, for she was, it seems, big with Child when he died, and the other two were not at all backward to give the Widow her full Share of everything, I mean, as to their Corn, Mill Grapes, &c, and when they killed a Kid, or found a Turtle on the Shore, so that they all lived well enough, though it was true the were not so industrious as the other two, as has been observ'd a ready

One Thing, however, cannot be omitted, *viz* That as for Religion, I don't know that there was anything of that Kind among them;

they pretty often indeed put one another in Mind that there was a God, by the very common Method of Seamen, *viz* Swearing by his Name: Nor were their poor ignorant savage Wives much the better for having been marry'd to Christians, as we must call them, for as they knew very little of God themselves, so they were utterly incapable of entering into any Discourse with their Wives about a God, or to talk anything to them concerning Religion

The utmost of all the Improvement which I can say the Wives had made from them was, that they had taught them to speak *English* pretty well, and all the Children they had, which were near 20 in all, were taught to speak *English* too, from their first learning to speak, though they at first spoke it in a very broken Manner, like their Mothers. There were none of these Children above six years old when I came thither, for it was not much above seven Years that they had fetched these five savage Ladies over, but they had all been pretty fruitful, for they had all Children, more or less. I think the Cook's Mate's Wife was big of her sixth Child, and the Mothers were all a good Sort of well-govern'd, quiet, laborious Women, modest and decent, helpful to one another, mighty observant and subject to their Masters, I cannot call them Husbands, and wanted nothing but to be well instructed in the Christian Religion, and to be legally marry'd, both which were happily brought about afterwards by my Means, or, at least, in Consequence of my Coming among them

Having thus given an Account of the Colony in general, and pretty much of my five Runagate *Englishmen*, I must say something of the *Spaniards*, who were the main Body of the Family, and in whose Story there are some Incidents also remarkable enough

I had a great many Discourses with them about their Circumstances when they were among the Savages. They told me readily, that they had no Instances to give of their Application or Ingenuity in that Country, that they were a poor miserable dejected Handful of People; that if Means had been put into their Hands, they had yet so abandon'd themselves to Despair, and so sunk under the Weight of their Misfortunes, that they thought of nothing but Starving. One of them, a grave and very sensible Man, told me he was convinc'd they were in the Wrong, that it was not the Part of wise Men to give up themselves to their Misery, but always to take Hold of the Helps which Reason offer'd, as well for present Support as for future Deliverance. He told me that Grief was the most senseless insigni-

ficant Passion in the World, for that it regarded only Things past, which were generally impossible to be recall'd or to be remedy'd, but had no View to Things to come, and had no Share in anything that looked like Deliverance, but rather added to the Affliction than propos'd a Remedy And upon this, he repeated a *Spanish* Proverb, which though I cannot repeat in just the same Words that he spoke in, yet I remember I made it into an *English* Proverb of my own, thus

*In Trouble to be troubl'd,  
Is to have your Trouble doubl'd*

He ran on then in Remarks upon all the little Improvements I had made in my Solitude, my unwear'd Application, as he called it, and how I had made a Condition, which, in its Circumstances, was at first much worse than theirs a thousand Times, more happy than theirs was, even now, when they were all together He told me it was remarkable that *Englishmen* had a greater Presence of Mind in their Distress than any People that ever he met with, that their unhappy Nation, and the *Portuguese*, were the worst Men in the World to struggle with Misfortunes, for that their first Step in Dangers, after the common Efforts are over, was always to despair, lie down under it, and die, without rousing their Thoughts up to proper Remedies for Escape

I told him their Case and mine differ'd exceedingly, that they were cast upon the Shore without Necessaries, without Supply of Food, or of present Sustenance, till they could provide That it is true, I had this Disadvantage and Discomfort, that I was alone, but then the Supplies I had providentially thrown into my Hands, by the unexpected driving of the Ship on Shore, was such a Help as would have encourag'd any Creature in the World to have apply'd himself as I had done. Seignior, says the *Spaniard*, had we poor *Spaniards* been in your Case, we should never have gotten half those Things out of the Ship as you did Nay, says he, we should never have found Means to have gotten a Raft to carry them, or to have gotten the Raft on Shore without Boat or Sail, and how much less should we have done, said he, if any of us had been alone? Well, I desir'd him to abate his Compliment, and go on with the History of their coming on Shore, where they landed He told me they unhappily landed at a Place where there were People without Provisions.

whereas had they had the common Sense to have put off to Sea again, and gone to another Island a little farther, they had found Provisions, though without People, there being an Island that Way, as they had been told, where there was Provisions, though no People, that is to say, that the *Spaniards* of *Trinidad* had frequently been there, and had filled the Island with Goats and Hogs at several Times, where they have bred in such Multitudes, and where Turtle and Sea-Fowls were in such Plenty, that they could have been in no Want of Flesh, though they had found no Bread, whereas here, they were only sustain'd with a few Roots and Herbs, which they understood not, and which had no Substance in them, and which the Inhabitants gave them sparingly enough, and who could treat them no better, unless they would turn Cannibals, and eat Men's Flesh, which was the great Dainty of their Country

They gave me an Account how many Ways they strove to civilize the Savages they were with, and to teach them rational Customs in the ordinary Way of Living, but in vain, and how they retorted it upon them as unjust, that they who came there for Assistance and Support, should attempt to set up for Instructors of those that gave them Bread, intimating, it seems, that none should set up for the Instructors of others, but those who could live without them

They gave me dismal Accounts of the Extremities they were driven to, how sometimes they were many Days without any Food at all, the Island they were upon being inhabited by a Sort of Savages that lived more indolent, and for that Reason were less supplied with the Necessaries of Life, than they had Reason to believe others were in the same Part of the World, and yet they found, that these Savages were less ravenous and voracious, than those who had better Supplies of Food

Also they added, That they could not but see with what Demonstrations of Wisdom and Goodness the governing Providence of God directs the Events of Things in the World, which, they said, appear'd in their Circumstances, for if, pressed by the Hardships they were under, and the Barrenness of the Country where they were, they had searched after a better Place to live in, they had then been out of the Way of the Relief that happen'd to them by my Means

Then they gave me an Account how the Savages, whom they lived among, expected them to go out with them into their Wars And it was true that, as they had Firearms with them, had they not had the



Disaster to lose their Ammunition, they should not have been serviceable only to their Friends, but have made themselves terrible both to Friends and Enemies, but being without Powder and Shot, and yet in a Condition that they could not in Reason deny to go out with their Landlords to their Wars, when they came into the Field of Battle, they were in a worse Condition than the Savages themselves, for they neither had Bows or Arrows, nor could they use those the Savages gave them, so that they could do nothing but stand still, and be wounded with Arrows, till they came up to the Teeth of their Enemy, and then indeed the three Halberts they had were of Use to them; and they would often drive a whole little Army before them with those Halberds and sharpen'd Sticks put into the Muzzles of their Muskets. But that for all this they were sometimes surrounded with Multitudes, and in great Danger from their Arrows, till at last they found the Way to make themselves large Targets of Wood, which they cover'd with Skins of wild Beasts, whose Names they knew not, and these cover'd them from the Arrows of the Savages, that notwithstanding these, they were sometimes in great Danger, and were once five of them knocked down together with the Clubs of the Savages, which was the Time when one of them was taken Prisoner, that is to say, the *Spaniard* whom I had reliev'd, that at first they thought had been killed. But when afterwards they heard he was taken Prisoner, they were under the greatest Grief imaginable, and would willingly have ventur'd their Lives to have rescu'd him.

They told me that when they were so knocked down, the rest of their Company rescu'd them, and stood over them, fighting till they were come to themselves, all but him who they thought had been dead, and then they made their Way with their Halberds and Pieces, standing close together in a Line, through a Body of above a thousand Savages, beating down all that came in their Way, got the Victory over their Enemies, but to their great Sorrow, because it was with the Loss of their Friend, whom, the other Party finding him alive, carry'd off with some others, as I gave an Account in my former

They describ'd most affectionately how they were surpris'd with Joy at the Return of their Friend and Companion in Misery, who they thought had been devour'd by wild Beasts of the worst kind, (*viz*) by wild Men, and yet how more and more they were surpris'd with the Account he gave them of his Errand, and that there was a Christian in any Place near, much more one

that was able, and had Humanity enough to contribute to their Deliverance

They describ'd how they were astonish'd at the Sight of the Relief I sent them, and at the Appearance of Loaves of Bread, Things they had not seen since their coming to that miserable Place, how often they crossed it, and blessed it, as Bread sent from Heaven, and what a reviving Cordial it was to their Spirits to taste it, as also of the other Things I had sent for their Supply And after all, they would have told me something of the Joy they were in at the Sight of a Boat and Pilots to carry them away to the Person and Place from whence all these new Comforts came, but they told me it was impossible to express it by Words, for their excessive Joy, naturally driving them to unbecoming Extravagances, they had no way to describe them but by telling me that they border'd upon Lunacy, having no way to give Vent to their Passion suitable to the Sense that was upon them, that in some it worked one Way, and in some another, and that some of them, through a Surprise of Joy, would burst out into Tears; others be stark mad, and others immediately faint. This Discourse extremely affected me, and called to my Mind *Friday's* Ecstasy, when he met his Father, and the poor People's Ecstasy, when I took them up at Sea, after their Ship was on Fire, the Mate of the Ship's Joy, when he found himself deliver'd in the Place where he expected to perish, and my own Joy when after 28 Years' Captivity, I found a good Ship ready to carry me to my own Country All these Things made me more sensible of the Relation of those poor Men, and more affected with it.

Having thus given a View of the State of Things as I found them, I must relate the Heads of what I did for these People, and the Condition in which I left them It was their Opinion and mine too, that they would be troubled no more with the Savages, or that if they were, they would be able to cut them off, if they were twice as many as before, so they had no Concern about that. Then I enter'd into a serious Discourse with the *Spaniard*, whom I call Governor, about their Stay in the Island, for as I was not come to carry any of them off, so it would not be just to carry off some, and leave others, who perhaps would be unwilling to stay, if their Strength was diminished.

On the other hand, I told them I came to establish them there, not to remove them, and then I let them know that I had brought with me Relief of sundry Kinds for them, That I had been at a great

Charge to supply them with all Things necessary, as well for their Convenience, as their Defence, and that I had such and such particular Persons with me, as well to increase and recruit their Number, as by the particular necessary Employments which they were bred to, being Artificers, to assist them in those Things, in which, at present, they were to seek.

They were all together when I talked thus to them, and before I delivered to them the Stores I had brought, I asked them one by one, If they had entirely forgot, and bury'd the first Animosities that had been among them, and would shake Hands with one another, and engage in a strict Friendship and Union of Interest, that so there might be no more Misunderstandings or Jealousies

*Will Atkins*, with abundance of Frankness and good Humour, said, They had met with Afflictions enough to make them all sober, and Enemies enough to make them all Friends, that for his Part, he would live and die with them, and was so far from designing anything against the *Spaniards*, that he owned they had done nothing to him but what his own mad Humour made necessary, and what he would have done, and perhaps much worse, in their Case, and that he would ask them Pardon, if I desir'd it, for the foolish and brutish Things he had done to them, and was very willing and desirous of living in Terms of entire Friendship and Union with them, and would do anything that lay in his Power to convince them of it, and as for going to *England*, he cared not if he did not go thither these twenty Years

The *Spaniards* said, They had indeed at first disarm'd and excluded *Will Atkins* and his two Countrymen for their ill Conduct, as they had let me know, and they appeal'd to me, for the Necessity they were under to do so. But that *Will Atkins* had behav'd himself so bravely in the great Fight they had with the Savages, and on several Occasions since, and had showed himself so faithful to and concern'd for, the general Interest of them all, that they had forgotten all that was past, and thought he merited as much to be trusted with Arms, and supply'd with Necessaries, as any of them, and that they had testify'd their Satisfaction in him by committing the Command to him, next to the Governor himself. And as they had an entire Confidence in him and all his Countrymen so they acknowledg'd they had merited that Confidence by all the Methods that honest Men could merit to be valued and trusted

and they most heartily embrac'd the Occasion of giving me this Assurance, that they would never have any Interest separate from one another.

Upon these frank and open Declarations of Friendship, we appointed the next Day to dine all together, and indeed we made a splendid Feast I caused the Ship's Cook and his Mate to come on Shore, and dress our Dinner, and the old Cook's Mate we had on Shore, assisted We brought on Shore six Pieces of good Beef, and four Pieces of Pork out of the Ship's Provision, with our Punch-bowl, and Materials to fill it, and in particular, I gave them ten Bottles of *French* Claret, and ten Bottles of *English* Beer, Things that neither the *Spaniards*, or the *Englishmen* had tasted for many Years, and which, it may be supposed, they were exceedingly glad of

The *Spaniards* added to our Feast five whole Kids, which the Cooks roasted, and three of them were sent cover'd up close on Board the Ship, to the Seamen, that they might feast on fresh Meat from on Shore, as we did with their Salt Meat from on Board

After this Feast, at which we were very innocently merry, I brought out my Cargo of Goods, wherein, that there might be no Dispute about dividing, I showed them that there was sufficient for them all, and desir'd that they might all take an equal Quantity of the Goods that were for wearing, that is to say, equal when made up, as first, I distributed Linen sufficient to make every one of them four Shirts, and at the *Spaniards'* Request afterwards, made them up six, these were exceeding comfortable to them, having been what, as I may say, they had long since forgot the Use of, or what it was to wear them

I allotted the thin *English* Stuffs, which I mention'd before, to make every one a light Coat, like a Frock, which I judged fittest for the Heat of the Season, cool and loose, and order'd, that whenever they decayed, they should make more, as they thought fit The like for Pumps, Shoes, Stockings and Hats, &c

I cannot express what Pleasure, what Satisfaction, sat upon the Countenances of all these poor Men, when they saw the Care I had taken of them, and how well I had furnish'd them, they told me I was a Father to them, and that having such a Correspondent as I was, in so remote a Part of the World, it would make them forget that they were left in a desolate Place, and they all voluntarily engag'd to me not to leave the Place without my Consent.

Then I presented to them the People I had brought with me, par

ticularly the Tailor, the Smith, and the two Carpenters, all of them most necessary People, but above all, my general Artificer, than whom they could not name anything that was more useful to them. And the Tailor, to show his Concern for them, went to work immediately, and, with my Leave, made them every one a Shirt the first Thing he did, and, which was still more, he taught the Women, not only how to sew and stitch, and use the Needle, but made them assist to make the Shirts for their Husbands and for all the rest.

As to the Carpenters, I scarce need mention how useful they were, for they took in pieces all my clumsy unhandy Things, and made them clever convenient Tables, Stools, Bedsteads, Cupboards, Lockers, Shelves, and everything they wanted of that Kind.

But to let them see how Nature made Artificers at first, I carried the Carpenters to see *Will Atkins's* Basket-house, as I called it, and they both owned they never saw an Instance of such natural Ingenuity before, nor anything so regular, and so handily built, at least of its Kind. And one of them, when he saw it, after musing a good while, turning about to me, I am sure, says he, that Man has no need of us, you need do nothing but give him Tools.

Then I brought them out all my Store of Tools, and gave every Man a Digging-Spade, a Shovel, and a Rake, for we had no Harrows or Ploughs, and to every separate Place a Pick-axe, a Crow, a broad Axe, and a Saw, always appointing, that as often as any were broken, or worn out, they should be supply'd without grudging, out of the general Stores that I left behind.

Nails, Staples, Hinges, Hammers, Chisels, Knives, Scissors, and all sorts of Tools, and Iron-work, they had without Tale, as they requir'd, for no Man would care to take more than they wanted, and he must be a Fool that would waste or spoil them, on any Account whatever, and, for the Use of the Smith, I left two Ton of unwrought Iron for a Supply.

My Magazine of Powder and Arms which I brought them, was such, even to Profusion, that they could not but rejoice at them, for now they could march as I used to do, with a Musket upon each Shoulder, if there was Occasion, and were able to fight a thousand Savages, if they had but some little Advantages of Situation, which also they could not miss of if they had Occasion.

I carry'd on Shore with me the young Man, whose Mother was starved to Death, and the Maid also, she was a sober, well educated, religious young Woman, and behaved so inoffensively that every one

gave her a good Word, she had indeed an unhappy Life with us, there being no Woman in the Ship but herself, but she bore it with Patience. After a while, seeing Things so well order'd and in so fine a way of thriving upon my Island, and considering that they had neither Business or Acquaintance in the *East Indies*, or Reason for taking so long a Voyage. I say, considering all this, both of them came to me, and desur'd I would give them leave to remain on the Island, and be enter'd among my Family, as they called it.

I agreed to it readily, and they had a little Plot of Ground allotted to them, where they had three Tents or Houses set up, surrounded with a Basket-work, Palisado'd like *Atkins's*, adjoining to his Plantation. Their Tents were contriv'd so, that they had each of them a Room apart to lodge in, and a middle Tent like a great Storehouse to lay all their Goods in, and to eat and drink in, and now the other two *Englishmen* remov'd their Habitation to the same Place, and so the Island was divided into three Colonies, and no more, *viz* the *Spaniards* with old *Friday*, and the first Servants, at my old Habitation under the Hill, which was, in a word, the capital City, and where they had so enlarg'd and extended their Works, as well under as on 'be outside of the Hill, that they lived, though perfectly conceal'd, yet full at large. Never was there such a little City in a Wood, and so hid, I believe, in any Part of the World, for I verily believe, a thousand Men might have ranged the Island a Month, and if they had not known there was such a Thing, and looked on purpose for it, they would not have found it, for the Trees stood so thick and so close, and grew so fast matted into one another, that nothing but cutting them down first could discover the Place, except the only two narrow Entrances, where they went in and out, could be found, which was not very easy, one of them was just down at the Water Edge of the Creek, and it was afterwards above two hundred Yards to the Place; and the other was up the Ladder at twice, as I have already formerly describ'd it, and they had a large Wood thick planted, also, on the Top of the Hill, which contain'd above an Acre, which grew apace, and cover'd the Place from all Discovery there, with only one narrow Place between two Trees, not easy to be discover'd, to enter on that Side.

The other Colony was that of *W Atkins's*, where there were four Families of *Englishmen*, I mean those I had left there, with their Wives and Children; three Savages that were Slaves, the Widow

and Children of the *Englishman* that was killed, the young Man and the Maid, and by the way, we made a Wife of her also, before we went away. There were also the two Carpenters and the Tailor, whom I brought with me for them; also the Smith, who was a very necessary Man to them, especially as a Gunsmith, to take care of their Arms, and my other Man, whom I called *Jack of all Trades*; who was in himself as good, almost, as 20 Men, for he was not only a very ingenious Fellow, but a very merry Fellow, and before I went away, we married him to the honest Maid that came with the Youth in the Ship, I mention'd before.

And now I speak of Marrying, it brings me naturally to say something of the *French Ecclesiastic* that I had brought with me out of the Ship's Crew, whom I took up at Sea. It is true, this Man was a *Roman*, and perhaps it may give Offence to some hereafter if I leave anything extraordinary upon Record of a Man whom, before I begin, I must (to set him out in just Colours), represent in Terms very much to his Disadvantage, in the Account of Protestants, as *first*, that he was a Papist, *secondly*, a popish Priest, and *thirdly*, a *French popish Priest*.

But Justice demands of me to give him a due Character, and must say he was a grave, sober, pious, and most religious Person exact in his Life, extensive in his Charity, and exemplar in almost everything he did, what then can any one say against my being very sensible of the Value of such a Man, notwithstanding his Profession? Though it may be my Opinion, perhaps, as well as the Opinion of others who shall read this, that he was mistaken.

The first Hour that I began to converse with him, after he had agreed to go with me to the *East Indies*, I found Reason to delight exceedingly in his Conversation, and he first began with me about Religion in the most obliging Manner imaginable.

Sir, says he, you have not only, under God (and at that he crossed his Breast), saved my Life, but you have admitted me to go this Voyage in your Ship, and by your obliging Civility have taken me into your Family, giving me an Opportunity of free Conversation. Now Sir, says he, you see by my Habit what my Profession is, and I guess by your Nation what yours is. I may think it is my Duty, and doubtless it is so, to use my utmost Endeavours, on all Occasions, to bring all the Souls I can to the Knowledge of the Truth, and to embrace the Catholic Doctrine, but as I am here under your Permission, and

in your Family, I am bound in Justice to your Kindness, as well as in Decency and good Manners, to be under your Government, and therefore I shall not, without your Leave, enter into any Debates on the Point of Religion, in which we may not agree, farther than you shall give me Leave.

I told him, his Carriage was so modest, that I could not but acknowledge it, that it was true, we were such People as they called Heretics; but that he was not the first Catholic that I had convers'd with, without falling into any Inconveniencies, or carrying the Questions to any height in Debate That he should not find himself the worse used for being of a different Opinion from us, and if we did not converse without any Dislike on either Side upon that Score, it should be his Fault, not ours.

He reply'd, that he thought all our Conversation might be easily separated from Disputes That it was not his Business to cap Principles with every Man he discours'd with; and that he rather desir'd me to converse with him as a Gentleman, than as a Religieuse, that if I would give him leave at any time to discourse upon religious Subjects, he would readily comply with it, and that then, he did not doubt but I would allow him also to defend his own Opinions, as well as he could, but that without my Leave he would not break in upon me with any such thing

He told me farther, that he would not cease to do all that became him in his Office, as a Priest, as well as a private Christian, to procure the Good of the Ship, and the Safety of all that was in her, and though perhaps we would not join with him, and he could not pray *with* us, he hoped he might pray *for* us, which he would do upon all Occasions In this Manner we convers'd, and as he was of a most obliging Gentleman-like Behaviour, so he was, if I may be allow'd to say so, a Man of good Sense, and as I believe, of great Learning

He gave me a most diverting Account of his Life, and of the many extraordinary Events of it, of many Adventures which had befallen him in the few Years that he had been abroad in the World, and particularly this was very remarkable, (*viz*) That in the Voyage he was now engag'd, he had had the Misfortune to be five times shipped and unshipp'd, and never to go to the Place whither any of the Ships, he was in, were at first design'd. That his first Intent was to have gone to *Martinico*, and that he went on board a Ship bound thither, at *St. Malo*, but being forced into *Lisbon* by bad Weather, the Ship



received some Damage, by running aground in the Mouth of the River *Tagus*, and was oblig'd to unload her Cargo there, that finding a *Portuguese* Ship there bound to the *Madeiras*, and ready to sail, and supposing he should easily meet with a Vessel there bound to *Martinico*, he went on board, in order to sail to the *Madeiras*, but the Master of the *Portuguese* Ship being but an indifferent Manner, had been out in his Reckoning, and they drove to *Fajal*, where, however, he happen'd to find a very good Market for his Cargo, which was Corn, and therefore resolv'd not to go to the *Madeiras*, but to load Salt at the *Isle of May*, and to go away to *Newfoundland*. He had no Remedy in this Exigence, but to go with the Ship, and had a pretty good Voyage as far as the *Banks*, so they call the Place where they catch the Fish, where meeting with a *French* Ship, bound from *France* to *Quebec* in the River of *Canada*, and from thence to *Martinico*, to carry Provisions, he thought he should have an Opportunity to complete his first Design. But when he came to *Quebec*, the Master of the Ship died, and the Ship proceeded no farther, so the next Voyage he shipped himself for *France*, in the Ship that was burnt, when we took them up at Sea, and then shipped with us for the *East Indies*, as I have already said. Thus he had been disappointed in five Voyages, all, as I may call it, in one Voyage, besides what I shall have Occasion to mention farther of the same Person.

But, I shall not make Digressions into other Men's Stories, which have no Relation to my own. I return to what concerns our Affair in the Island. He came to me one Morning, for he lodged among us all the while we were upon the Island, and it happen'd to be just when I was going to visit the *Englishmen's* Colony, at the farthest Part of the Island, I say, he came to me and told me, with a very grave Countenance, that he had for two or three Days desir'd an Opportunity of some Discourse with me, which he hoped should not be displeasing to me, because he thought it might in some Measure correspond with my general Design, which was the Prosperity of my new Colony, and perhaps might put it, at least more than he yet thought it was, in the Way of God's Blessing.

I looked a little surpris'd at the last Part of his Discourse, and turning a little short, *How Sir*, said I, *can it be said*, that we are not in the Way of God's Blessing, after such *visible Assistances* and *wonderful Deliverances*, as we have seen here, and of which I have given you a large Account?

If you had pleased, Sir, said he, with a world of Modesty, and yet with great Readiness, to have heard me, you would have found no room to have been displeas'd, much less to think so hard of me, that I should suggest, that you have not had wonderful Assistances and Deliverances, and I hope, on your Behalf, that you are in the Way of God's Blessing, and your Design is exceeding good, and will prosper. But, Sir, though it were more so, than is even possible to you, yet there may be some among you that are not equally right in their Actions. And you know, that in the Story of the Children of Israel, one Achan in the Camp, remov'd God's Blessing from them, and turned his Hand so against them, that six-and-thirty of them, though not concern'd in the Crime, were the Object of Divine Vengeance, and bore the Weight of that Punishment.

I was sensibly touched with this Discourse, and told him, his Inference was so just, and the whole Design seem'd so sincere, and was really so religious in its own Nature, that I was very sorry I had interrupted him, and begged him to go on, and in the mean Time, because it seem'd, that what we had both to say might take up some Time, I told him, I was going to the *Englishmen's* Plantations, and asked him to go with me, and we might discourse of it by the Way. He told me, he would more willingly wait on me thither, because there partly the Thing was acted, which he desir'd to speak to me about, so we walked on, and I press'd him to be free and plain with me, in what he had to say.

Why then, Sir, says he, be pleased to give me Leave to lay down a few Propositions, as the Foundation of what I have to say, that we may not differ in the general Principles, though we may be of some differing Opinions in the Practice of Particulars. First, Sir, though we differ in some of the doctrinal Articles of Religion, and it is very unhappy that it is so, especially in the Case before us, as I shall show afterwards. Yet there are some general Principles in which we both agree, (*viz*) first, That there is a God, and that this God having given us some stated general Rules for our Service and Obedience, we ought not willingly and knowingly to offend him, either by neglecting to do what he has commanded, or by doing what he has expressly forbidden. And let our different Religions be what they will, this general Principle is readily owned by us all, That the Blessing of God does not ordinarily follow a presumptuous sinning against his Command, and every good

Christian will be affectionately concern'd to prevent any that are under his Care, living in a total Neglect of God and his Commands. It is not your Men being Protestants, whatever my Opinion may be of such, that discharges me from being concern'd for their Souls, and from endeavouring, if it lies before me, that they should live in as little Distance from and Enmity with their Maker, as possible, especially if you give me Leave to meddle so far in your Circuit.

I could not yet imagine what he aimed at, and told him, I granted all he had said, and thanked him, that he would so far concern himself for us, and begged he would explain the Particulars of what he had observ'd, that, like *Joshua*, to take his own Parable, I might put away the accursed Thing from us.

Why then, Sir, says he, I will take the Liberty you give me, and there are three Things, which, if I am right, must stand in the Way of God's Blessing upon your Endeavours here, and which I should rejoice for your sake, and their own, to see remov'd. And, Sir, says he, I promise myself, that you will fully agree with me in them all, as soon as I name them, especially because I shall convince you, that every one of them may, with great Ease, and very much to your Satisfaction, be remedy'd.

He gave me no Leave to put in any more Civilities, but went on: *First*, Sir, says he, you have here four *Englishmen*, who have fetched Women from among the Savages, and have taken them as their Wives, and have had many Children by them all, and yet are not marry'd to them after any stated legal Manner, as the Laws of God and Man require, and therefore are yet, in the Sense of both no less than *Adulterers*, and living in Adultery. To this, Sir, says he, I know you will object, That there was no Clergyman or Priest of any Kind, or of any Profession, to perform the Ceremony, nor any Pen and Ink, or Paper, to write down a Contract of Marriage, and have it signed between them. And I know also, Sir, what the *Spaniard* Governor has told you, I mean of the Agreement that he oblig'd them to make, when they took these Women (*viz*) That they should choose them out by Consent, and keep separately to them, which, by the way, is nothing of a Marriage, no Agreement with the Women, as Wives, but only an Agreement among themselves, to keep them from quarrelling.

But, Sir, the Essence of the Sacrament of Matrimony (so he calls it, being a *Roman*) consists not only in the mutual Consent of the

Parties to take one another, *as Man and Wife*, but in the formal and legal Obligation, that there is in the Contract, to compel the Man and Woman at all Times, to own and acknowledge each other, obliging the Men to abstain from all other Women, to engage in no other Contract while these subsist, and on all Occasions, as Ability allows, to provide honestly for them and their Children, and to oblige the Women to the same, or like Conditions, *mutatis mutandis*, on their Side

Now, Sir, *says he*, these Men may, when they please, or when Occasion presents, abandon these Women, disown their Children, leave them to perish, and take other Women, and marry them whilst these are living And here he added, with some Warmth, How, Sir, is God honour'd in this unlawful Liberty? And how shall a Blessing succeed your Endeavours in this Place, *however good in themselves*, and *however sincere in your Design*, while these Men, who at present are your Subjects, under your absolute Government and Dominion, are allow'd by you to live in open Adultery?

I confess, I was struck at the Thing itself, but much more with the convincing Arguments he supported it with, for it was certainly true, that though they had no Clergyman upon the Spot, yet a formal Contract on both Sides, made before Witnesses, and confirm'd by any Token, which they had all agreed to be bound by, though it had been but breaking a Stick between them, engaging the Men to own these Women for their Wives, upon all Occasions, and never to abandon them or their Children, and the Women to the same with their Husbands, had been an effectual lawful Marriage in the Sight of God, and it was a great Neglect that it was not done

But I thought to have gotten off with my young Priest, by telling him, that all that Part was done when I was not here, and they had lived so many Years with them now, that if it was an Adultery, it was past Remedy, they could do nothing in it now

Sir, *says he*, *asking your Pardon for such Freedom*, you are right in this, that it being done in your Absence, you could not be charged with that Part of the Crime But I beseech you, flatter not yourself, that you are not therefore under an Obligation to do your utmost now to put an End to it. How can you think, but that, let the Time past lie on whom it will, all the Guilt, for the future, will lie entirely upon you? Because it is certainly in your Power now to put an End to it, and in nobody's Power but yours

I was so dull still, that I did not take him right, but I imagin'd,

that by putting an End to it, he meant that I should part them, and not suffer them to live together any longer, *And I said to him*, I could not do that by any Means, for that it would put the whole Island into Confusion. He seemed surpris'd, that I should so far mistake him. No, Sir, *says he*, I do not mean, that you should now separate them, but legally and effectually marry them now, and as, Sir, my Way of marrying them may not be so easy to reconcile them to, though it will be as effectual, even by your own Laws, so your Way may be as well before God, and as valid among Men. I mean, by a written Contract, signed by both Man and Woman, and by all the Witnesses present, which all the Laws of *Europe* would decree to be valid.

I was amaz'd to see so much true Piety, and so much Sincerity of Zeal, besides the unusual Impartiality in his Discourse, as to his own Party or Church, and such true Warmth for the preserving People that he had no Knowledge of, or Relation to, I say, for preserving them from transgressing the Laws of God, the like of which I had indeed not met with anywhere but recollecting what he had said, of marrying them by a written Contract, which I knew would stand too, I return'd it back upon him, and told him, I granted all that he had said to be just, and on his Part very kind, that I would discourse with the Men upon the Point now, when I came to them. And I knew no Reason why they should scruple to let him marry them all, which I knew well enough would be granted to be as authentic and valid in *England*, as if they were married by one of our own Clergymen. What was afterwards done in this matter, I shall speak of by itself.

I then pressed him to tell me what was the *second Complaint* which he had to make, acknowledging, that I was very much his Debtor for the *first*, and thanked him heartily for it. He told me, he would use the same Freedom and Plainness in the *second*, and hoped I would take it as well. And this was, that notwithstanding these *English* Subjects of mine, as he called them, had lived with those Women for almost seven Years, had taught them to speak *English*, and even to read it, and that they were, as he perceiv'd, Women of tolerable Understanding, and capable of Instruction, yet they had not to this Hour taught them anything of the Christian Religion, nor not so much as to know that there was a God, or a Worship, or what Manner God was to be served, or that their own Idolatry, worshipping they knew not who, was false and absurd.

This, he said, was an unaccountable Neglect, and what God would certainly call them to Account for, and perhaps at last take the Work out of their Hands. He spoke this very affectionately and warmly. I am persuaded, *says he*, had those Men lived in the savage Country, whence their Wives came, the Savages would have taken more Pains to have brought them to be Idolaters, and to worship the Devil, than any of these Men, *so far as he could see*, had taken with them to teach them the Knowledge of the true God. Now, Sir, *said he*, though I do not acknowledge your Religion, or you mine, yet we should be glad to see the Devil's Servants, and the Subjects of his Kingdom, taught to know the general Principles of the Christian Religion, that they might, at least, hear of God, and of a Redeemer, and of the Resurrection, and of a future State, Things which we all believe, they had at least been so much nearer coming into the Bosom of the true Church, than they are now in the public Profession of Idolatry and Devil-Worship.

I could hold no longer, I took him in my Arms, and embrac'd him with an Excess of Passion. *How far*, said I to him, have I been from understanding the most essential Part of a Christian (*viz*) to love the Interest of the Christian Church, and the good of other Men's Souls. I scarce have known what belongs to being a Christian. O, Sir, do not say so, *reply'd he*, this Thing is not your Fault. No, *says I*, but why did I never lay it to Heart as well as you? 'Tis not too late yet, *said he*, be not too forward to condemn yourself. But what can be done now, *said I*, you see I am going away? Will you give me Leave, *said he*, to talk with those poor Men about it? Yes, with all my Heart, *said I*, and will oblige them to give heed to what you say too. As to that, *said he*, we must leave them to the Mercy of Christ; but it is our Business to assist them, encourage them, and instruct them, and if you will give me Leave, and God his Blessing, I do not doubt but the poor ignorant Souls shall be brought home into the great Circle of Christianity, if not into the particular Faith that we all embrace, and that even while you stay here, Upon this, *I said*, I shall not only give you Leave, but give you a thousand Thanks for it. What follow'd on this Account, I shall mention also again in its Place.

I now pressed him for the *third* Article, in which we were to blame. Why really, *says he*, it is of the same Nature, and I will proceed, *asking your Leave*, with the same Plainness as before, it is about



engage in this Work, unless I would suffer myself to be left behind here again; in which Case, if this single Ship should miscarry in any Part of her Voyage, I should be just in the same Condition that I was left in here at first, and from which I have been so wonderfully delivered

He owned the Case was very hard upon me, as to my Voyage, but laid it home upon my Conscience, whether the Blessing of saving seven-and-thirty Souls, was not worth my venturing all I had in the World for? I was not so sensible of that *as he was* I return'd upon him thus, Why, Sir, it is a valuable Thing, indeed, to be an Instrument in God's Hand to convert seven-and-thirty Heathens to the Knowledge of Christ, but as you are an Ecclesiastic, and are given over to the Work, so that it seems so naturally to fall into the Way of your Profession, how is it, that you do not rather offer yourself to undertake it, than press me to it?

Upon this he faced about, just before me, as we walked along, and putting me to a full Stop, made me a very low Bow, I most heartily thank God and you, Sir, *says he*, for giving me so evident a Call to so blessed a Work, and if you think yourself discharg'd from it, and desire me to undertake it, I will most readily do it, and think it a happy Reward for all the Hazards and Difficulties of such a broken disappointed Voyage as I have met with, that I may be dropped at last into so glorious a Work.

I discover'd a kind of Rapture in his Face while he spoke this to me, his Eyes sparkled like Fire, his Face glowed, and his Colour came and went, as if he had been falling into Fits, in a Word, he was fired with the Joy of being embark'd in such a Work. I paused a considerable while before I could tell what to say to him, for I was really surpris'd to find a Man of such Sincerity and Zeal, and carry'd out in his Zeal beyond the ordinary Rate of Men, not of his Profession only, but even of any Profession whatsoever But after I had consider'd it awhile, I asked him seriously if he was in earnest, and that he would venture on the single Consideration of an Attempt on those poor People, to be locked up in an unplanted Island for, perhaps, his Life, and at last might not know whether he should be able to do them any Good, or not?

He turned short upon me, and asked me what I call'd a Venture? Pray, Sir, *said he*, what do you think I consented to go in your Ship to the *East Indies* for? Nay, *said I*, that I know not, unless it wa-





told him, *Friday's* Father had learned *Spanish*, which I found he also understood, and he should serve him for an Interpreter, so he was much better satisfied, and nothing could persuade him, but he would stay to endeavour to convert them, but Providence gave another, and very happy, Turn to all this

I come back now to the first Part of his Objections When we came to the *Englishmen*, I sent for them all together, and after some Account given them of what I had done for them, *viz* what necessary Things I had provided for them, and how they were distributed, which they were very sensible of, and very thankful for; I began to talk to them of the scandalous Life they led, and gave them a full Account of the Notice the Clergyman had already taken of it, and arguing how unchristian and irreligious a Life it was I first asked them if they were married Men or Bachelors? They soon explain'd their Condition to me, and showed me that two of them were Widowers, and the other three were single Men or Bachelors I asked them with what Consciences they could take these Women and lie with them, as they had done, call them their Wives, and have so many Children by them, and not be marry'd lawfully to them.

They all gave me the Answer that I expected, *viz* that there was nobody to marry them; that they agreed before the Governor to keep them as their Wives; and to keep them and own them as their Wives, and they thought as Things stood with them, they were as legally married as if they had been married by a Parson, and with all the Formalties in the World.

I told them, that no doubt they were married in the Sight of God, and were bound in Conscience to keep them as their Wives, but that the Laws of Men being otherwise, they might pretend they were not married, and so desert the poor Women and Children hereafter, and that their Wives being poor desolate Women, friendless and moneyless, would have no way to help themselves I therefore told them, that unless I was assur'd of their honest Intent, I could do nothing for them, but would take Care that what I did should be for the Women and their Children without them, and that unless they would give some Assurances that they would marry the Women, I could not think it was convenient they should continue together as Man and Wife, for that it was both scandalous to Men, and offensive to God, who they could not think would bless them, if they went on thus

All this went on as I expected, and they told me, especially *Will*

your poor Savages, who are, as I may say, your conquer'd Subjects I is a Maxim, Sir, that is or ought to be receiv'd among all Christians of what Church or pretended Church soever, (*viz*) *The Christian Knowledge ought to be propagated by all possible Means, and on all possible Occasions* It is on this Principle that our Church sends Missionaries into *Persia, India, and China*, and that our Clergy, even of the superior Sort, willingly engage in the most hazardous Voyages, and the dangerous Residence among Murderers and Barbarians, to teach them the Knowledge of the true God, and to bring them over to embrace the Christian Faith Now, Sir, you have such an Opportunity here, to have six or seven-and-thirty poor Savages brought over from Idolatry to the Knowledge of God, their Maker and Redeemer, that I wonder how you can pass such an Occasion of doing Good, which is really worth the Expence of a Man's whole Life

I was now struck dumb indeed, and had not one Word to say I had here a Spirit of true Christian Zeal for God and Religion before me, let his particular Principles be of what kind soever As for me, I had not so much as entertain'd a Thought of this in my Heart before, and I believe should not have thought of it, for I looked upon these Savages as Slaves, and People, whom, had we any Work for them to do, we would have used as such, or would have been glad to have transported them to any other Part of the World, for our Business was to get rid of them, and we would all have been satisfy'd, if they had been sent to any Country, so they had never seen their own *But to the Case*, I say, I was confounded at his Discourse, and knew not what Answer to make him He looked earnestly at me, seeing me in some Disorder, Sir, *says he*, I shall be very sorry, if what I have said gives you any Offence No, no, *says I*, I am offended with nobody but myself, but I am perfectly confounded, not only to think that I should never take any Notice of this before, but with reflecting what Notice I am able to take of it now You know, Sir, *said I*, what Circumstances I am in; I am bound to the *East Indies*, in a Ship freighted by Merchants, and to them it would be an insufferable Piece of Injustice to detain their Ship here, the Men lying all this while at Victuals and Wages, upon the Owners' Account It is true, I agreed to be allow'd twelve Days here, and if I stay more, I must pay *3l Sterling per Diem* Demurrage, nor can I stay upon Demurrage above eight Days more, and I have been here thirteen Days already, so that I am perfectly unable to

engage in this Work, unless I would suffer myself to be left behind here again, in which Case, if this single Ship should miscarry in any Part of her Voyage, I should be just in the same Condition that I was left in here at first, and from which I have been so wonderfully delivered

He owned the Case was very hard upon me, as to my Voyage, but laid it home upon my Conscience, whether the Blessing of saving seven-and-thirty Souls, was not worth my venturing all I had in the World for? I was not so sensible of that *as he was* I return'd upon him thus, Why, Sir, it is a valuable Thing, indeed, to be an Instrument in God's Hand to convert seven-and-thirty Heathens to the Knowledge of Christ, but as you are an Ecclesiastic, and are given over to the Work, so that it seems so naturally to fall into the Way of your Profession, how is it, that you do not rather offer yourself to undertake it, than press me to it?

Upon this he faced about, just before me, as we walked along, and putting me to a full Stop, made me a very low Bow, I most heartily thank God and you, Sir, *says he*, for giving me so evident a Call to so blessed a Work, and if you think yourself discharg'd from it, and desire me to undertake it, I will most readily do it, and think it a happy Reward for all the Hazards and Difficulties of such a broken disappointed Voyage as I have met with, that I may be dropped at last into so glorious a Work.

I discover'd a kind of Rapture in his Face while he spoke this to me, his Eyes sparkled like Fire, his Face glowed, and his Colour came and went, as if he had been falling into Fits, in a Word, he was fired with the Joy of being embark'd in such a Work. I paused a considerable while before I could tell what to say to him, for I was really surpris'd to find a Man of such Sincerity and Zeal, and carry'd out in his Zeal beyond the ordinary Rate of Men, not of his Profession only, but even of any Profession whatsoever But after I had consider'd it awhile, I asked him seriously if he was in earnest, and that he would venture on the single Consideration of an Attempt on those poor People, to be locked up in an unplanted Island for, perhaps, his Life, and at last might not know whether he should be able to do them any Good, or not?

He turned short upon me, and asked me what I called a Venture? Pray, Sir, *said he*, what do you think I consented to go in your Ship to the *East Indies* for? Nay, *said I*, that I know not, unless it wa-

to preach to the *Indians* Doubtless it was, said he, and do you think, if I can convert these seven-and-thirty Men to the Faith of Christ, it is not worth my time, though I should never be fetched off the Island again? nay, is it not infinitely of more worth to save so many Souls, than my Life is, or the Life of twenty more of the same Profession? Yes, Sir, says he, I would give Christ and the blessed Virgin Thanks all my Days, if I could be made the least happy Instrument of saving the Souls of these poor Men, though I was never to set my Foot off of this Island, or see my native Country any more. But since you will honour me, says he, with putting me into this Work, for which I will pray for you all the Days of my Life, I have one humble Petition to you, said he, besides. What is that? said I. Why, says he, it is, that you will leave your Man *Friday* with me, to be my Interpreter to them, and to assist me, for without some Help I cannot speak to them, or they to me.

I was sensibly troubled at his requesting *Friday*, because I could not think of parting with him, and that for many Reasons, he had been the Companion of my Travels, he was not only faithful to me, but sincerely affectionate to the last Degree, and I had resolv'd to do something considerable for him, if he out-liv'd me, as it was probable he would. Then I knew that, as I had bred *Friday* up to be a Protestant, it would quite confound him to bring him to embrace another Profession, and he would never, while his Eyes were open, believe that his old Master was a Heretic and would be damn'd, and this might in the End ruin the poor Fellow's Principles, and so turn him to his first Idolatry.

However, a sudden Thought reliev'd me in this Strait, and it was this, I told him, I could not say that I was willing to part with *Friday* on any Account whatever, though a Work that to him was of more Value than his Life, ought to be to me of much less Value than the keeping or parting with a Servant, but on the other hand, I was perswaded that *Friday* would by no Means consent to part with me, and I could not force him to it without his Consent, without manifest Injustice, because I had promised I would never put him away, and he had promis'd and engag'd to me that he would never leave me, unless I put him away.

He seem'd very much concern'd at it, for he had no rational Access to these poor People, seeing he did not understand one Word of their Language, nor they one Word of his: To remove this Difficulty, I

told him, *Friday's* Father had learned *Spanish*, which I found he also understood, and he should serve him for an Interpreter, so he was much better satisfied, and nothing could persuade him, but he would stay to endeavour to convert them, but Providence gave another, and very happy, Turn to all this

I come back now to the first Part of his Objections When we came to the *Englishmen*, I sent for them all together, and after some Account given them of what I had done for them, *viz* what necessary Things I had provided for them, and how they were distributed, which they were very sensible of, and very thankful for, I began to talk to them of the scandalous Life they led, and gave them a full Account of the Notice the Clergyman had already taken of it, and arguing how unchristian and irreligious a Life it was I first asked them if they were married Men or Bachelors? They soon explain'd their Condition to me, and showed me that two of them were Widowers, and the other three were single Men or Bachelors I asked them with what Consciences they could take these Women and lie with them, as they had done, call them their Wives, and have so many Children by them, and not be marry'd lawfully to them

They all gave me the Answer that I expected, *viz* that there was nobody to marry them, that they agreed before the Governor to keep them as their Wives; and to keep them and own them as their Wives, and they thought as Things stood with them, they were as legally married as if they had been married by a Parson, and with all the Formalities in the World

I told them, that no doubt they were married in the Sight of God, and were bound in Conscience to keep them as their Wives, but that the Laws of Men being otherwise, they might pretend they were not married, and so desert the poor Women and Children hereafter, and that their Wives being poor desolate Women, friendless and moneyless, would have no way to help themselves I therefore told them, that unless I was assur'd of their honest Intent, I could do nothing for them, but would take Care that what I did should be for the Women and their Children without them, and that unless they would give some Assurances that they would marry the Women, I could not think it was convenient they should continue together as Man and Wife, for that it was both scandalous to Men, and offensive to God, who they could not think would bless them, if they went on thus

All this went on as I expected, and they told me, especially *Will*

*Atkins*, who seemed now to speak for the rest, that they loved their Wives as well as if they had been born in their own Native Country, and would not leave them upon any Account whatever, and they did verily believe their Wives were as virtuous and as modest, and did, to the utmost of their Skill, as much for them, and for their Children, as any Women could possibly do, and they would not part with them on any Account. And *Will Atkins* for his own particular added, if any Man would take him away, and offer to carry him home to *England*, and make him Captain of the best Man of War in the Navy, he would not go with him, if he might not carry his Wife and Children with him, and if there was a Clergyman in the Ship, he would be married to her now with all his Heart.

This was just as I would have it, the Priest was not with me at that Moment, but was not far off. So to try him farther, I told him I had a Clergyman with me, and if he was sincere, I would have him married the next Morning, and bid him consider of it, and talk with the rest, he said, as for himself, he need not consider of it at all, for he was very ready to do it, and was glad I had a Minister with me, and he believ'd they would be all willing also. I then told him that my Friend the Minister was a *Frenchman*, and could not speak *English*, but that I would act the Clerk between them. He never so much as asked me whether he was Papist or Protestant, which was indeed what I was afraid of. But, I say, they never inquir'd about it. So we parted, I went back to my Clergyman, and *Will Atkins* went in to talk to his Companions. I desir'd the *French Gentleman* not to say anything to them, till the Business was thorough ripe, and I told him what Answer the Men had given me.

Before I went from their Quarter, they all came to me, and told me, they had been considering what I had said, that they were very glad to hear I had a Clergyman in my Company, and they were very willing to give me the Satisfaction I desir'd, and to be formally Married as soon as I pleased, for they were far from desiring to part with their Wives, and that they meant nothing but what was very honest when they chose them, so I appointed them to meet me the next Morning, and that in the meantime they should let their Wives know the meaning of the Marriage-Law, and that it was not only to prevent any Scandal, but also to oblige them, that they should not forsake them, whatever might happen.

The Women were easily made sensible of the Meaning of the

Thair and were very well satisfied with it, as, indeed, they had Reason to be; so they failed not to attend all together at my Apartment the next Morning, where I brought out my Clergyman, and though he had not on a Minister's Gown, after the Manner of *England*, or the Habit of a Priest, after the Manner of *France*, yet having a black Vest something like a Cassock, with a Sash round it, he did not look very unlike a Minister, and as for his Language, I was his Interpreter.

But the Seriousness of his Behaviour to them, and the Scriptures he made of marrying the Women, because they were not baptiz'd, and profess'd *Christians*, gave them an exceeding Reverence for his Person, and there was no need after that, to inquire whether he was a Clergyman or no.

Indeed, I was afraid his Scruple would have been carry'd so far, as that he would not have marry'd them at all, my, notwithstanding all I was able to say to him, he resisted me, though modestly, yet very steadily, and at last refused absolutely to marry them, unless he had first talked with the Men, and the Women too, and though at first I was a little backward to it, yet at last I agreed to it with a good Will, perceiving the Sincerity of his Design.

When he came to them, he let them know, that I had acquainted him with their Circumstances, and with the present Design. That he was very willing to perform that Part of his Function, and marry them as I had desir'd, but that before he could do it, he must take the Liberty to talk with them. He told them, That in the Sight of all indifferent Men, and in the Sense of the Laws of Society, they had lived all this while in an open Adultery, and that it was true, that nothing but the Consenting to marry, or effectually separating them from one another now, could put an End to it, but there was a Difficulty in it too, with respect to the Laws of *Christian* Matrimony, which he was not fully satisfy'd about, *viz* That of marrying one that is a professed *Christian*, to a Savage, an Idolater, and a Heathen, one that is not baptiz'd; and yet that he did not see that there was Time left for it to endeavour to persuade the Women to be baptiz'd, or to profess the Name of *Christ*, whom they had, he doubted, heard nothing of, and without which they could not be baptiz'd.

He told them, He doubted they were but indifferent Christians themselves; that they had but little Knowledge of God, or of his Ways, and therefore he could not expect that they had said much



to their Wives on that Head yet, but that unless they would promise him to use their Endeavours with their Wives, to persuade them to become Christians, and would as well as they could instruct them in the Knowledge and Belief of God that made them, and to worship Jesus Christ that redeem'd them, he could not marry them, for he would have no Hand in joining Christians with Savages, nor was it consistent with the Principles of the Christian Religion, and was indeed expressly forbidden in God's Law

They heard all this very attentively, and I deliver'd it very faithfully to them, from his Mouth, as near his own Words as I could, only sometimes adding something of my own to convince them how just it was, and how I was of his Mind, and I always very faithfully distinguish'd between what I said from myself, and what were the Clergyman's Words. They told me, it was very true what the Gentleman had said, that they were but very indifferent *Christians* themselves, and that they had never talked to their Wives about Religion. Lord, Sir! says *Will Atkins*, How should we teach them Religion? Why, we know nothing ourselves; and besides, Sir, said he, should we go to talk to them of *God*, and *Jesus Christ*, and *Heaven* and *Hell*, 'twould be to make them laugh at us, and ask us, What we believe ourselves? And if we should tell them we believe all the Things that we speak of to them, such as of good People going to *Heaven*, and wicked People to the *Dam*, they would ask us, Where we intend to go ourselves, that we believe all this, and are such wicked Fellows, as we indeed are? Why, Sir, it is enough to give them a Surfeit of Religion at first Hearing: Folks must have some Religion themselves, before they pretend to teach other People. *Will Atkins*, said I to him, though I am afraid what you say has too much Truth in it, yet can you not tell your Wife that she's in the wrong? That there is a God and a Religion better than her own; that her Gods are Idols, that they can neither hear nor speak; that there is a great Being that made all Things, and that can destroy all that he has made; that he rewards the Good, and punishes the Evil, and that we are to be judged by him at last for all we do? You are not so ignorant, I at even Nature it self will teach you that all this is true, and I am assur'd you know it all to be true, and believe it yourself.

That's true, Sir, said *Atkins*, but with what Face can I say any thing to my Wife of all this, when she will tell me *her* Religion is true?

Not true! *said I*. What do you mean by that? Why, Sir, *said he*, She will tell me it cannot be true, that this God I shall tell her of can be just, or can punish, or reward, since I am not punish'd, and sent to the Devil, that have been such a wicked Creature as she knows I have been, even to her, and to everybody else, and that I should be suffer'd to live, that have been always acting so contrary to what I must tell her is Good, and to what I ought to have done.

Why, truly, *Atkins, said I*, I am afraid thou speakest too much Truth, and with that I let the Clergyman know what *Atkins* had said, for he was impatient to know *O! said the Priest*, tell him there is one Thing will make him the best Minister in the World to his Wife, and that is, *Repentance*; for none teach Repentance like true Penitents he wants nothing but to repent, and then he will be so much the better qualify'd to instruct his Wife. He will be then able to tell her, that there is not only a God, and that he is the just Rewarder of Good and Evil, but that he is a merciful Being, and with infinite Goodness and Long-suffering forbears to punish those that offend, waiting to be gracious, and willing not the Death of a Sinner, but rather that he should return and live; that oftentimes suffers wicked Men to go on a long Time, and even reserves Damnation to the general Day of Retribution. That it is a clear Evidence of God, and of a future State, that righteous Men receive not their Reward, or wicked Men their Punishment, till they come into another World, and this will lead him to teach his Wife the Doctrine of the Resurrection, and of the last Judgment, let him but repent for himself, he will be an excellent Preacher of Repentance to his Wife.

I repeated all this to *Atkins*, who looked very serious all the while, and who, we could easily perceive, was more than ordinarily affected with it. When being eager, and hardly suffering me to make an End, *I know all this, Master*, says he; *and a great deal more*, but I haven't the Impudence to talk thus to my Wife, when God, and my own Conscience knows, and my Wife will be an undeniable Evidence against me, that I have lived, as if I had never heard of a God, or future State, or anything about it, and to talk of my repenting, ALAS! *And with that he fetch'd a deep Sigh*; and I could see, that Tears stood in his Eyes. 'Tis past all that with me. Past it! *ATKINS, said I*, What dost thou mean by that? I know well enough what I mean, says he, *I mean 'tis too late*, and that is too true.

I told my Clergyman Word for Word what he said, The poor

zealous Priest (I must call him so, for, be his Opinion what it will, he had certainly a most singular Affection for the Good of other Men's Souls, and it would be hard to think he had not the like for his own) I say, this zealous, affectionate Man, could not refrain Tears also. But, recovering himself, he said to me, Ask him but one Question, Is he easy that it is too late, or is he troubled, and wishes it were not so? I put the Question fairly to *Atkins*, and he answered with a great deal of Passion, How could any Man be easy in a Condition that certainly must end in eternal Destruction? That he was far from easy, but that, on the contrary, he believ'd it would one Time or other, ruin him

What do you mean by that? said I. Why, he said he believ'd he should, one Time or other, cut his Throat to put an End to the Terror of it.

The Clergyman shook his Head with a great Concern in his Face, when I told him all this. But turning quick to me upon it, *says he*, If that be his Case, you may assure him it is not too late, Christ will give him Repentance. But pray, *says he*, explain this to him, That as no Man is saved but by Christ and the Merit of his Passion, procuring divine Mercy for him, how can it be too late for any Man to receive Mercy? Does he think he is able to sin beyond the Power or Reach of divine Mercy? Pray tell him, there may be a time when provok'd Mercy will no longer strive, and when God may refuse to hear, but that it is never too late for Men to ask Mercy, and we that are Christ's Servants are commanded to *preach* Mercy at all times, *in the Name of Jesus Christ, to all those that sincerely repent*; so that it is never too late to repent.

I told *Atkins* all this, and he heard me with great Earnestness, but it seem'd as if he turned off the Discourse to the rest, for he said to me he would go and have some Talk with his Wife, so he went out awhile, and we talked to the rest. I perceiv'd they were all stupidly ignorant as to Matters of Religion, much as I was when I went rambling away from my Father, and yet that there were none of them backward to hear what had been said, and all of them seriously promis'd that they would talk with their Wives about it, and do their Endeavour to persuade them to turn Christians.

The Clergyman smil'd upon me, when I reported what Answer they gave, but said nothing a good while, but, *at last*, shaking his Head, We that are Christ's Servants, *says he*, can go no further than

to exhort and instruct, and when Men comply, submit to the Reproof, and promise what we ask 'tis all we can do, we are bound to accept their good Words But believe me, Sir, *said he*, whatever you may have known of the Life of that Man you call *Will Atkins*, I believe he is the only sincere Convert among them, I take that Man to be a true Penitent, I wont despair of the rest, but that Man is apparently struck with the Sense of his past Life, and I doubt not, but when he comes to talk Religion to his Wife, he will talk himself effectually into it, for attempting to teach others, is sometimes the best way of teaching ourselves. I knew a Man, who having nothing but a summary Notion of Religion himself, and being wicked and profligate to the last Degree in his Life, made a thorough Reformation in himself, by labouring to convert a *Jew* If that poor *Atkins* begins but once to talk seriously of Jesus Christ to his Wife, my Life for it, he talks himself into a thorough Convert, makes himself a Penitent And who knows what may follow?

Upon this Discourse however, and their promising, as above, to endeavour to persuade their Wives to embrace Christianity, he marry'd the other three Couple, but *Will Atkins* and his Wife were not yet come in After this, my Clergyman, waiting awhile, was curious to know where *Atkins* was gone, and, turning to me, *says he*, I entreat you, Sir, let us walk out of your Labyrinth here, and look, I dare say, we shall find this poor Man somewhere or other talking seriously to his Wife, and teaching her already something of Religion I began to be of the same Mind, so we went out together, and I carry'd him a Way which none knew but myself, and where the Trees were so thick set, as that it was not easy to see through the Thicket of Leaves, and far harder to *see in*, than to *see out*, when, coming to the Edge of the Wood, I saw *Atkins* and his tawny Savage Wife sitting under the Shade of a Bush, very eager in Discourse, I stopped short till my Clergyman came up to me, and then having showed him where they were, we stood and looked very steadily at them a good while.

We observ'd him very earnest with her, pointing up to the Sun, and to every Quarter of the Heavens, then down to the Earth, then out to the Sea, then to himself, then to her, to the Woods, to the Trees Now, says my Clergyman, you see my Words are made good. the Man preaches to her, mark him now, he is telling her, that our God has made him, and her, and the Heavens, the Earth, the Sea, the

Woods, the Trees, &c I believe he is, said I, immediately we perceiv'd *Will Atkins* start up upon his Feet, fall down on his Knees, and lift up both his Hands We suppose he said something, but we could not hear him, it was too far for that, he did not continue kneeling half a Minute, but comes and sits down again by his Wife, and talks to her again We perceiv'd then the Woman very attentive, but whether she said anything or no we could not tell; while the poor Fellow was upon his Knees, I could see the Tears run plentifully down my Clergyman's Cheeks, and I could hardly forbear myself, but it was a great Affliction to us both that we were not near enough to hear anything that passed between them.

Well, however, we could come no nearer for fear of disturbing them, so we resolv'd to see an End of this Piece of *still Conversation*, and it spoke loud enough to us without the Help of Voice He sat down again, as I have said, close by her, and talked again earnestly to her, and two or three times we could see him embrace her most passionately, another time we saw him take out his Handkerchief and wipe her Eyes, and then kiss her again with a kind of Transport very unusual, and after several of these Things we see him; on a sudden, jump up again and lend her his hand to help her up, when immediately, leading her by the Hand a Step or two, they both knelt down together, and continu'd so about two Minutes.

My Friend could bear it no longer, but cries out aloud, *St. PAUL St. PAUL! behold he prayeth*, I was afraid *Atkins* would hear him, therefore I entreated him to withhold himself awhile, that we might see an End of the Scene, which to me, I must confess, was the most affecting, and yet the most agreeable that ever I saw in my Life. Well, he strove with himself and contain'd himself for a while, but was in such Raptures of Joy, to think that the poor Heathen Woman was become a Christian, that he was not able to contain himself, he wept several times, then throwing up his Hands and crossing his Breast, said over several Things Ejaculatory and by way of giving God Thanks for so miraculous a Testimony of the Success of our Indivours; some he spoke softly, and I could not well hear, others audibly, some in *Latin*, some in *French*, then two or three times the Tears of Joy would interrupt him, that he could not speak at all. But I begged that he would compose himself, and let us more exactly and fully observe what was before us, which he did for a Time and the Scene was not ended there yet, for after the poor

Man and his Wife were risen again from their Knees, we observ'd he stood talking still eagerly to her, and we observ'd by her Motion, that she was greatly affected with what he said, by her frequent lifting up her Hands, laying her Hand to her Breast, and such other Postures, as usually express the greatest Seriousness and Attention. This continu'd about half a Quarter of an Hour, and then they walk'd away too, so that we could see no more of them in that Situation.

I took this Interval to talk with my Clergyman. And first, I told him, I was glad to see the Particulars we had both been Witnesses to, that though I was hard enough of Belief in such Cases, yet that I began to think it was all very sincere here, both in the Man and his Wife, however ignorant they might both be, and I hoped such a Beginning would have a yet more happy End, and who knows, *said I*, but these two may in Time, by Instruction and Example, work upon some of the others? Some of them! *said he, turning quick upon me*, ay, *upon all of them*, depend upon it, if those two Savages, for he has been but little better, as you relate it, should embrace Jesus Christ, they will never leave till they work upon all the rest, for true Religion is naturally communicative, and he that is once made a Christian, will never leave a Pagan behind him, if he can help it. I own'd it was a most Christian Principle to think so, and a Testimony of a true Zeal, as well as a generous Heart in him. But, my Friend, *said I*, will you give me Leave to start one Difficulty here? I cannot tell how to object the least Thing against that affectionate Concern, which you show for the turning the poor People from their Paganism to the Christian Religion. But how does this comfort you, while these People are in your Account out of the Pale of the Catholic Church, without which you believe there is no Salvation, so that you esteem these but Heretics, and for other Reasons as effectually lost as the Pagans themselves.

To this he answer'd with abundance of Candour and Christian Charity thus, Sir, I am a Catholic of the *Roman* Church, and a Priest of the Order of *St Benedict*, and I embrace all the Principles of the *Roman* Faith. But yet if you will believe me, *and that I do not speak in Compliment to you, or in respect to my Circumstances and your Civilities*, I say, nevertheless, I do not look upon you, who call yourselves Reform'd, without some Charity. I dare not say, *though I know it is our Opinion in general*, I say, I dare not say that you cannot be saved. I will by no means limit the Mercy of Christ so

far, as to think that he cannot receive you into the Bosom of his Church in a Manner to us unperceivable, and which it is impossible for us to know, and I hope you have the same Charity for us. I pray daily for your being restored to Christ's Church, by whatsoever Methods he, who is *All-wise*, is pleased to direct. In the meantime, sure you will allow it to consist with me, as a *Roman*, to distinguish far between a Protestant and a Pagan, between one that calls on Jesus Christ, though in a Way which I do not think is according to the true Faith, and a Savage, a Barbarian, that knows no God, no Christ, no Redeemer, and if you are not within the Pale of the Catholic Church, we hope you are nearer being restor'd to it than those that know nothing of God or his Church. And I rejoice therefore when I see this poor Man, who you say has been a Profligate, and almost a Murderer, kneel down and pray to Jesus Christ, as we suppose he did, though not fully enlighten'd, believing that God, from whom every such Work proceeds, will sensibly touch his Heart, and bring him to the further Knowledge of that Truth in his own Time, and if God shall influence this poor Man to convert and instruct the ignorant Savage his Wife, I can never believe that he shall be cast away himself, and have I not Reason then to rejoice, the nearer any are brought to the Knowledge of Christ, though they may not be brought quite home into the Bosom of the Catholic Church, just at the time when I may desire it? leaving it to the Goodness of Christ to perfect his Work in his own time, and his own way. Certainly I would rejoice if all the Savages in *America* were brought like this poor Woman to pray to God, though they were to be all Protestants at first, rather than they should continue Pagans and Heathens, firmly believing, that he that had bestow'd the first Light to them, would further illuminate them with a Beam of his heavenly Grace, and bring them into the Pale of his Church when he should see good.

I was astonish'd at the Sincerity and Temper of this truly pious Papist, as much as I was oppress'd by the power of his Reasoning and it presently occur'd to my Thoughts that if such a Temper was universal, we might be all Catholic Christians, whatever Church or particular Profession we joined to, or joined in, that a Spirit of Charity would soon work us all up into right Principles, and in the end, as he thought that the like Charity would make us all Catholic so I told him I believed, had all the Members of his Church the like

Moderation, they would soon be all Protestants. And there we left that Part, for we never disputed at all.

However, I talked to him another Way, and *taking him by the Hand*, My Friend, says I, I wish all the Clergy of the *Roman Church* were blest with such Moderation, and had an equal Share of your Charity I am entirely of your Opinion, but I must tell you, that if you should preach such Doctrine in *Spain* or *Italy*, they would put you into the *Inquisition*

It may be so, said he, I know not what they might do in *Spain* or *Italy*, but I will not say they would be the better Christians for that Severity, for I am sure there is no Heresy in too much Charity

Well, as *Will Atkins* and his Wife were gone, our Business there was over, so we went back our own Way, and when we came back, we found them waiting to be called in, observing this, I asked my Clergyman if we should discover to him that we had seen him under the Bush, or no, and it was his Opinion we should not, but that we should talk to him first, and hear what he would say to us, so we called him in alone, nobody being in the Place but ourselves, and I began with him thus

*Will Atkins*, said I, prithee what Education had you? What was your Father?

*W A* A better Man than ever I shall be. *Sir, my Father was a Clergyman*

*R C* What Education did he give you?

*W A* He would have taught me well, *Sir*, but I despis'd all Education, Instruction or Correction, like a Beast as I was

*R C* It's true, *Solomon* says, *He that despises Reproof is brutish*

*W A* Ay, *Sir*, I was brutish, indeed, I murder'd my Father, for God's sake, *Sir*, talk no more about that, *Sir*, I murder'd my poor Father

*Pr.* Ha! a Murderer!\*

\* *Here the Priest started (for I interpreted every Word as he spoke it) and looked pale It seems he believ'd that Will had really killed his own Father.*

*R C* No, no, *sir*, I do not understand him so; *Will Atkins*, explain yourself, you did not kill your Father, did you, with your own Hands?



*W A* No, Sir, I did not cut his Throat, but I cut the Thread of all his Comforts, and shorten'd his Days, I broke his Heart by the most ungrateful, unnatural Return, for the most tender affectionate Treatment that ever Father gave, or Child could receive

*R C* Well, I did not ask you about your Father to extort this Confession, I pray God give you Repentance for it, and forgive you that, and all your other Sins, but I asked you, because I see, that though you have not much Learning, yet you are not so ignorant as some are in Things that are Good, that you have known more of Religion a great deal than you have practised.

*W A* Though you, Sir, did not extort the Confession that I make about my Father, Conscience does, and whenever we come to look back upon our Lives, the Sins against our indulgent Parents are certainly the first that touch us, the Wounds they make lie the deepest, and the Weight they leave will lie heaviest upon the Mind, of all the Sins we can commit.

*R C* You talk too feelingly and sensibly for me, *Atkins*, I cannot bear it.

*W A* You bear it, Master! I daresay you know nothing of it.

*R C* Yes, *Atkins*, every Shore, every Hill, nay, I may say, every Tree in this Island is witness to the Anguish of my Soul, for my Ingratitude and base Usage of a good tender Father, a Father much like yours, by your Description, and I murder'd my Father as well as you, *Will Atkins*, but I think, for all that, my Repentance is short of yours too\* by a great deal.

\* *I would have said more, if I could have restrain'd my Passions, but I thought this poor Man's Repentance was so much sincerer than mine, that I was going to leave off the Discourse and retire, for I was surpris'd with what he said; and thought, that instead of my going about to teach and instruct him, the Man was made a Teacher and Instructor to me, in a most surprisng and unexpected Manner.*

I laid all this before the young Clergyman, who was greatly affected with it, and said to me, Did I not say, Sir, that when this Man was converted, he would preach to us all? I tell you, Sir, if this one Man be made a true Penitent, here will be no need of me; he will make Christians of all in the Island But

having a little compos'd myself, I renew'd my Discourse with *Will Atkins*.

But, *WILL*, said I, How comes the Sense of this Matter to touch you just now?

*W A*. Sir, you have set me about a Work that has struck a Dart through my very Soul, I have been talking about God and Religion to my Wife, in order, as you directed me, to make a Christian of her, and she has preached such a Sermon to me, as I shall never forget while I live

*R C* No, no, it is not your Wife has preached to you, but when you were moving religious Arguments to her, Conscience has flung them back upon you

*W A* Ay, Sir, with such a Force as is not to be resisted.

*R C* Pray *Will* let us know what passed between you and your Wife, for I know something of it already

*W A* Sir, it is impossible to give you a full Account of it, I am too full to hold it, and yet have no Tongue to express, but let her have said what she will, and though I cannot give you an Account of it, this I can tell you of it, that I resolve to amend and reform my Life.

*R C* But tell us some of it. How did you begin, *Will*? For this has been an extraordinary Case, that's certain She has preached a Sermon, indeed, if she has wrought this upon you

*W A*. Why, I first told her the Nature of our Laws about Marriage, and what the Reasons were, that Men and Women were oblig'd to enter into such Compacts, as it was neither in the Power of one or other to break, that otherwise, Order and Justice could not be maintain'd, and Men would run from their Wives, and abandon their Children, mix confusedly with one another, and neither Families be kept entire, or Inheritances be settled by legal Descent.

*R C* You talk like a Civilian, *Will*, could you make her understand what you meant by Inheritance and Families? They know no such Thing among the Savages, but marry anyhow, without Regard to Relation, Consanguinity, or Family, Brother and Sister, nay, as I have been told, even the Father and Daughter, and Son and the Mother.

*W A* I believe, Sir, you are misinform'd, and my Wife assures me of the contrary, and that they abhor it, perhaps, for any farther Rela-

tions they may not be so exact as we are. But she tells me they never touch one another in the near Relations you speak of

*R C* Well, what did she say to what you told her?

*W A* She said, she lik'd it very well, and it was much better than in her Country

*R C* But did you tell her what Marriage was?

*W A* Ay, ay, there began all our Dialogue. I asked her if she would be marry'd to me our Way? She asked me what Way that was? I told her Marriage was appointed by God, and here we had a strange Talk together, indeed, as ever Man and Wife had I believe.

*N B* *This Dialogue between W Atkins and his Wife, as I took it down in Writing, just after he told it me, was as follows*

*Wife* Appointed by your God! Why, have you a God in your Country?

*W A* Yes, my Dear, God is in every Country

*Wife* No, you God in my Country, my Country have the great old *Benamuckee* God.

*W A* Child, I am very unfit to show you who God is, God is in Heaven, and made the Heaven and the Earth, the Sea, and all that in them is.

*Wife* No makee de Earth, no, you God make all Earth, no make my Country \*

\* *W A* laughed a little at her Expression of God not making her Country

*Wife* No laugh, why laugh me? This no Thing to Laugh \*

\* *He was justly reprov'd by his Wife, for she was more serious than he at first*

*W A* That's true indeed, I will not laugh any more my Dear.

*Wife* Why you say, you God make all?

*W A* Yes, Child, our God made the whole World, and you, and I, and all Things, for he is the only true God, there is no God but him, he lives for ever in Heaven.

*Wife* Why you no tell me long ago?

*W. A.* That's true indeed, but I have been a wicked Wretch, and have not only forgotten to acquaint thee with anything before, but have lived without God in the World myself.

*Wife* What have you de great God in you Country, you no know him? No say O to him? No do good Thing for him? That no possible!

*W. A.* It is too true; though for all that, we live as if there was no God in Heaven, or that he had no Power on Earth

*Wife* But why, God let you do so? Why he no makee you good live?

*W. A.* It is all our own Fault.

*Wife* But you say me, he is Great, much Great, have much great Power, can makee kill, when he will, why he no makee kill when you no serve him? No say O to him? No be good Mans?

*W. A.* That is true; he might strike me dead, and I ought to expect it, for I have been a wicked Wretch, that is true, but God is merciful, and does not deal with us as we deserve

*Wife* But then, do not you tell God Tankee for that too?

*W. A.* No, indeed, I have not thanked God for his Mercy, any more than I have feared God for his Power

*Wife* Then you God no God, me no think, believe, he be such one, great much Power, strong, no makee kill you though you makee him much Angry

*W. A.* What? Will my wicked Life hinder you from believing in God! What a dreadful Creature am I, and what a sad Truth is it, that the horrid Lives of Christians hinder the Conversions of Heathens!

*Wife* How me tink you have great much God\* up there, and yet no do well, no do good Thing? Can he tell? Sure he no tell what you do?

\* *She points up to Heaven*

*W. A.* Yes, yes, he knows and sees all Things, he hears us speak, sees what we do, knows what we think, though we do not speak.

*Wife* What! he no hear you swear, curse, speak the great Damn.

*W. A.* Yes, yes, he hears it all.

*Wife* Where be then the muchee great Power strong?

*W. A.* He is merciful, that's all we can say for it, and this proves

him to be the true God, he is God and not Man, and therefore we are not consum'd.\*

\* *Here Will Atkins told us he was struck with Horror, to think how he could tell his Wife so clearly that God sees, and hears, and knows the secret Thoughts of the Heart, and all that we do, and yet that he had dar'd to do all the vile Things he had done.*

*Wife.* Merciful! what you call that?

*IV A* He is our Father and Maker, and he pities and spares us

*Wife* So then he never makee kill, never angry when you do wicked, then he no good himself, or no great able.

*IV A* Yes, yes, my Dear, he is infinitely good, and infinitely great, and able to punish too, and sometimes to show his Justice and Vengeance, he lets fly his Anger to destroy Sinners, and make Examples, many are cut off in their Sins

*Wife* But no make kill you yet, then he tell you *may be* that he no make you kill, so you make de Bargain with him, you do bad Thing, he no be angry at you, when he be angry at other Mans

*IV A* No indeed, my Sins are all Presumptions upon his Goodness, and he would be infinitely just if he destroy'd me as he has done other Men

*Wife* Well, and yet no kill, no makee you dead, what you say to him for that, you no tell him Tankee for all that too?

*IV A* I am an unthankful, ungrateful Dog, that's true

*Wife* Why? He no makee you much good better, you say he makee you.

*IV A* He made me as he made all the World, 'tis I have deform'd myself, and abus'd his Goodness, and made myself an abominable Wretch

*Wife.* I wish you makee God know me, I no makee him angry, I no do bad wicked Thing

*Here Will Atkins said his Heart sunk within him, to hear a poor untought Creature desire to be taught to know God, and he such a wicked Wretch, that he could not say one Word to her about God, but what the Retraoch of his own Carriage would make most irrational to her to believe, nay, that already she had told him, that she could not believe in God, because he that was so wicked was not destroy'd.*

*W A* My Dear, you mean, you wish I could teach you to know God, not God to know you, for he knows you already, and every Thought in your Heart.

*Wife* Why then he know what I say to you now? He know me wish to know him; how shall me know who makee me?

*W A* Poor Creature, he must teach thee, I cannot teach thee; I'll pray to him to teach thee to know him, and to forgive me that I am unworthy to teach thee.

*The poor Fellow was in such an Agony at her desiring him to make her know God, and her wishing to know him, that, he said, he fell down on his Knees before her, and prayed to God to enlighten her Mind with the saving Knowledge of Jesus Christ, and to pardon his Sins, and accept of his being the unworthy Instrument of instructing her in the Principles of Religion; after which he sat down by her again, and their Dialogue went on - N B This was the Time when we saw him kneel down, and lift up his Hands*

*Wife* What you put down the Knee for? What you hold up the Hand for? What you say? Who you speak to? What is all that?

*W. A* My Dear, I bow my Knees in Token of my Submission to him that made me, I said O to him, as you call it, and as you say your old Men do to their Idol *Benamuckee*, that is, I prayed to him.

*Wife* What you say O to him for?

*W A* I prayed to him to open your Eyes, and your Understanding, that you may know him, and be accepted by him.

*Wife* Can he do that too?

*W. A* Yes, he can, he can do all Things

*Wife* But now he hear what you say?

*W A* Yes, he has bid us pray to him, and promis'd to hear us

*Wife* Bid you pray? When he bid you? How he bid you? What! you hear him speak?

*W. A* No, we do not hear him speak, but he has reveal'd himself many Ways to us.

*Here he was at a great Loss to make her understand, that God has reveal'd himself to us by his Word, and what his Word was. But at last he told it her thus*

*W A* God has spoken to some good Men in former Days, even from Heaven, by plain Words, and God has inspir'd good Men by his Spirit, and they have written all his Laws down in a Book.

*Wife* Me no understand that, where is Book?

*W A* Alas, my poor Creature, I have not this Book, but I hope I shall one Time or other get it for you, and help you to read it.

*Here he embrac'd her with great Affection, but with inexpressible Grief, that he had not a Bible*

*Wife* But how you makee me know, that God teachee them to write that Book?

*W A* By the same Rule that we know him to be God.

*Wife* What Rule, what Way you know him?

*W A* Because he teaches and commands nothing but what is good, righteous, and holy, and tends to make us perfectly good, as well as perfectly happy, and because he forbids and commands us to avoid all that is wicked, that is evil in itself, or evil in its Consequences

*Wife* That me would understand, that me fain see, if he teachee all good Thing, forbid all wicked Thing, he reward all good Thing punish all wicked Thing, he make all Thing, he give all Thing, he hear me when I say O to him, as you go do just now; he makee me good, if I wish be good, he spare me, no makee kill me, when I be good, all this you say he do, yet he be great God, me take think, believe him be great God, me say O to him too with you, my Dear

Here the poor Man could forbear no longer, but raising her up made her kneel by him, and he prayed to God aloud to instruct her in the Knowledge of himself by his Spirit, and that by some good Providence, if possible, she might some time or other come to have Bible, that she might read the Word of God, and be taught by it to know him

This was the Time that we saw him lift her up by the hand, and saw him kneel down by her, as above.

They had severel other Discourses it seems after this, too long to set down here; and particularly she made him promise, that since he confess'd his own Life had been a wicked abominable Course of Provocations against God, that he would reform it, and not make Go

angry any more, lest he should *make him dead*, as she called it, and then she should be left alone, and never be taught to know this God better, and lest he should be miserable, as he had told her wicked Men should be after Death

This was a strange Account, and very affecting to us both, but particularly to the young Clergyman, he was indeed wonderfully surpris'd with it, but under the greatest Affliction imaginable, that he could not talk to her, that he could not speak *English* to make her understand him, and as she spoke but very broken *English*, he could not understand her, However he turned himself to me, and told me, that he believ'd there must be more to do with this Woman than to marry her. I did not understand him at first, but at length he explain'd himself, (*viz*) that she ought to be Baptiz'd

I agreed with him in that Part readily, and was for going about it presently No, no, hold Sir, said he, though I would have her be Baptiz'd by all Means, yet I must observe, that *Will Atkins*, her Husband, has indeed brought her in a wonderful Manner to be willing to embrace a religious Life, and has given her just Ideas of the Being of a God, of his Power, Justice, Mercy, yet I desire to know of him, if he had said anything to her of Jesus Christ, and of the Salvation of Sinners, of the Nature of Faith in him, and Redemption by him, of the Holy Spirit, the Resurrection, the last Judgment, and a future State.

I called *Will Atkins* again, and asked him, but the poor Fellow fell immediately into Tears, and told us he had said something to her of all those things, but that he was himself so wicked a Creature, and his own Conscience so reproach'd him with his horrid ungodly Life, that he trembled at the Apprehensions, that her Knowledge of him should lessen the Attention she should give to those Things, and make her rather contemn Religion than receive it But he was assur'd, he said, that her Mind was so dispos'd to receive due Impressions of all those Things, that if I would but discourse with her, she would make it appear to my Satisfaction, that my Labour would not be lost upon her

Accordingly I called her in, and placing myself as Interpreter between my religious Priest and the Woman, I entreated him to begin with her, but sure such a Sermon was never preached by a Popish Priest in these latter Ages of the World, and, as I told him, I thought he had all the Zeal, all the Knowledge, all the Sincerity of a Chris



tian, without the Error of a *Roman Catholic*, and that I took him to be such a Clergyman, as the *Roman* Bishops were before the Church of *Rome* assum'd spiritual Sovereignty over the Consciences of Men.

In a word, he brought the poor Woman to embrace the Knowledge of Christ, and of Redemption by him, not with Wonder and Astonishment only, as she did the first Notions of a God, but with Joy and Faith, with an Affection and a surprising Degree of Understanding, scarce to be imagin'd, much less to be express'd, and at her own Request she was Baptiz'd.

When he was preparing to Baptize her, I entreated him that he would perform that Office with some Caution, that the Man might not perceive he was of the *Roman* Church, if possible, because of other ill Consequences which might attend a Difference among us in that very Religion, which we were instructing the other in. He told me, that as he had no consecrated Chapel, no proper Things for the Office, I should see he would do it in a Manner that I should not know by it, that he was a *Roman Catholic* myself, if I had not known it before. And so he did, for saying only some Words over to himself in *Latin*, which I could not understand, he poured a whole Dishful of Water upon the Woman's Head, pronouncing in *French*, very loud, *MARY*, which was the Name her Husband desir'd me to give her, for I was her Godfather, I Baptize thee in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, so that none could know anything by it, what Religion he was of. He gave the Benediction afterwards in *Latin*, but either *Will Atkins* did not know but it was in *French*, or else did not take Notice of it at that time.

As soon as this was over we married them; and after the Marriage was over he turned himself to *Will Atkins*, and in a very affectionate Manner exhorted him, not only to persevere in that good Disposition he was in, but to support the Convictions that were upon him by a Resolution to reform his Life, told him it was in vain to say he repented, if he did not forsake his Crimes. Represented to him, how God had honour'd him with being the Instrument of bringing his Wife to the Knowledge of the Christian Religion, and that he should be careful he did not dishonour the Grace of God, and that if he did, he would see the Heathen a better Christian than himself, the Savage converted, and the Instrument cast away.

He said a great many good Things to them both, and then recommending them in a few Words to God's Goodness, gave them the

Benediction again, I repeating every thing to them in *English*, and thus ended the Ceremony I think it was the most pleasant, agreeable Day to me that ever I passed in my whole Life

But my Clergyman had not done yet, his Thoughts hung continually upon the Conversion of the seven and thirty Savages, and said he would have stayed upon the Island to have undertaken it, but I convinc'd him, first, that his Undertaking was impracticable in itself, and secondly, that perhaps I would put it into a Way of being done in his Absence to his Satisfaction, of which, by and by

Having thus brought the Affair of the Island to a narrow Compass, I was preparing to go on board the Ship, when the young Man whom I had taken out of the famish'd Ship's Company, came to me, and told me, he understood I had a Clergyman with me, and that I had caused the *Englishmen* to be married to the Savages, whom they called Wives, that he had a Match too, which he desir'd might be finish'd before I went, between two Christians, which he hoped would not be disagreeable to me.

I knew this must be the young Woman who was his Mother's Servant, for there was no other Christian Woman on the Island, so I began to persuade him not to do anything of that Kind rashly, or because he found himself in this solitary Circumstance I represented to him that he had some considerable Substance in the World, and good Friends, as I understood by himself, and by his Maid also, that the Maid was not only poor, and a Servant, but was unequal to him, she being six or seven and twenty Years old, and he not above seventeen or eighteen, that he might very probably, with my Assistance, make a remove from this Wilderness, and come into his own Country again, and that then it would be a thousand to one but he would repent his Choice, and the Dislike of that Circumstance might be disadvantageous to both I was going to say more, but he interrupted me, smiling, and told me, with a great deal of Modesty, that I mistook in my Guesses, that he had nothing of that Kind in his Thoughts, his present Circumstance being melancholy and disconsolate enough, and he was very glad to hear that I had Thoughts of putting them in a Way to see their Country again, and nothing should have put him upon staying there, but that the Voyage I was going was so exceeding long and hazardous, and would carry him quite out of the Reach of all his Friends, that he had nothing to desire of me, but that I would settle him in some little Property in

the Island where he was, give him a Servant or two and some few Necessaries, and he would settle himself here like a Planter, waiting the good Time, when, if ever I return'd to *England*, I would redeem him, and hoped I would not be unmindful of him when I came into *England*, that he would give me some Letters to his Friends in *London*, to let them know how good I had been to him, and in what Part of the World, and what Circumstance I had left him in, that he promised me, that whenever I redeemed him, the Plantation, and all the Improvement he had made upon it, let the Value be what it would, should be wholly mine.

His Discourse was very prettily deliver'd, considering his Youth, and as the more agreeable to me, because he told me positively the Match was not for himself. I gave him all possible Assurances, that if I lived to come safe to *England*, I would deliver his Letters and do his Business effectually, and that he might depend I would never forget the Circumstance I had left him in, but still I was impatient to know who was the Person to be married, upon which he told me it was my *Jack of all Trades*, and his Maid *Susan*.

I was most agreeably surpris'd, when he named the Match, for indeed I thought it very suitable, the Character of that Man I have given already, and as for the Maid, she was a very honest, modest, sober and religious young Woman, had a very good Share of Sense, was agreeable enough in her Person, spoke very handsomely and to the purpose, always with Decency and good Manners, and not backward to speak when anything required it, or impertinently forward to speak when it was not her Business, very handy and housewifely in anything that was before her, an excellent Manager, and fit indeed to have been Governess to the whole Island, she knew very well how to behave to all kind of Folks she had about her, and to better, if she had found any there.

The Match being proposed in this Manner, we married them the same Day, and as I was Father at the Altar, as I may say, and gave her away, so I gave her a Portion, for I appointed her and her Husband a handsome large Space of Ground for their Plantation; and indeed this Match and the Proposal the young Gentleman made to give him a small Property in the Island, put me upon perceiving it out amongst them, that they might not quarrel afterwards about the Partition.

This Sharing out the Land to them I left to *Will Atkins*, who

indeed was now grown a most sober, grave, managing Fellow. perfectly reform'd, exceeding Pious and Religious, and as far as I may be allow'd to speak positively in such a Case, I verily believe, was a true sincere Penitent.

He divided Things so justly, and so much to every one's Satisfaction, that they only desired one general Writing under my Hand for the whole, which I caused to be drawn up and signed and sealed to them, setting out the Bounds and Situation of every Man's Plantation, and testifying that I gave them thereby severally a Right to the whole Possession and Inheritance of the respective Plantations or Farms, with their Improvements to them and their Heirs, reserving all the rest of the Island as my own Property, and a certain Rent for every particular Plantation after eleven Years, if I, or any one from me, or in my Name, came to demand it, producing an attested Copy of the same Writing

As to the Government and Laws among them, I told them I was not capable of giving them better Rules, than they were able to give themselves, only made them promise me to live in Love and good Neighbourhood with one another, and so I prepared to leave them

One Thing I must not omit, and this is, that being now settled in a Kind of Commonwealth among themselves, and having much Business in Hand, it was but odd to have seven and thirty *Indians* live in a Nook of the Island, independent, and indeed unemployed, for excepting the providing themselves Food, which they had Difficulty enough in too, sometimes, they had no manner of Business or Property to manage, I propos'd therefore to the Governor *Spaniard*, that he should go to them with *Friday's* Father, and propose to them to remove, and either plant for themselves, or take them into their several Families as Servants to be maintain'd for their Labour, but without being absolute Slaves, for I would not admit them to make them Slaves by Force by any Means, because they had their Liberty given them by Capitulation, and as it were Articles of Surrender, which they ought not to break.

They most willingly embrac'd the Proposal, and came all very cheerfully along with him, so we allotted them Land, and Plantations, which three or four accepted of, but all the rest chose to be employ'd as Servants in the several Families we had settled, and thus my Colony was in a Manner settled as follows. The *Spaniards* possess'd my original Habitation, which was the Capital City, and

extended their Plantations all along the side of the Brook, which made the Creek that I have so often describ'd, as far as my Bower, and as they increas'd their Culture, it went always Eastward; the *English* lived in the North-East Part, where *W. Atkins*, and his Comrades began, and came on Southward, and South-West, towards the back Part of the *Spaniards*, and every Plantation had a great Addition of Land to take in, if they found Occasion, so that they need not jostle one another for want of Room.

All the East End of the Island was left uninhabited, that if any of the Savages should come on Shore there, only for their usual customary Barbarities, they might come and go, if they disturb'd nobody, nobody would disturb them, and no doubt but they were often ashore, and went away again, for I never heard that the Planters were ever attack'd or disturb'd any more.

It now came into my Thoughts, that I had hinted to my Friend the Clergyman, that the Work of converting the Savages might perhaps be set on Foot in his Absence, to his Satisfaction; and I told him that now I thought it was put in a fair Way; for the Savages being thus divided among the Christians, if they would but every one of them do their part with those which came under their Hands, I hoped it might have a very good Effect.

He agreed presently in that, if, *said he*, they will do their Part but how, *says he*, shall we obtain that of them? I told him, we would call them all together, and leave it in Charge with them, or go to them one by one, which he thought best, so we divided it; he to speak to the *Spaniards*, who were all Papists, and I to the *English* who were all Protestants, and we recommended it earnestly to them and made them promise, that they never would make any Distinction of Papist or Protestant, in their exhorting the Savages to turn Christians; but teach them the general Knowledge of the true God and of the Saviour Jesus Christ, and they likewise promis'd us, that they would never have any Differences or Disputes one with another about Religion.

When I came to *W. Atkins's House*, I may call it so, for such a House, or such a piece of Basket Work, I believe, was not standing in the World again, I say, when I came there, I found the young Woman I have mention'd above, and *Will Atkins's Wife*, were become Intimates, and this prudent religious young Woman had perfected the Work *Will Atkins* had begun, and though it was not

above four Days after what I have related, yet the new baptiz'd Savage Woman was made such a Christian, as I have seldom heard of any like her in all my Observation, or Conversation, in the World.

It came next into my Mind in the Morning before I went to them, that amongst all the needful Things I had to leave with them, I had not left them a Bible, in which I showed myself less considering for them, than my good Friend the Widow was for me, when she sent me the Cargo of an hundred Pounds from *Lisbon*, where she packed up three Bibles and a Prayer-book: However, the good Woman's Charity had a greater Extent than ever she imagin'd; for they were reserv'd for the Comfort and Instruction of those, that made much better Use of them than I had done

I took one of the Bibles in my Pocket, and when I came to *Will Atkins's* Tent or House, and found the young Woman, and *Atkins's* baptiz'd Wife, had been discoursing of Religion together, for *Will Atkins* told it me, with a great deal of Joy - I asked if they were together now, and he said, yes, so I went into the House, and he, with me, and we found them together very earnest in Discourse, O Sir, says *Will Atkins*, when God has Sinners to reconcile to himself, and Aliens to bring Home, he never wants a Messenger, my Wife has got a new Instructor, I knew I was unworthy, as I was incapable of that Work; That young Woman has been sent hither from Heaven, she is enough to convert a whole Island of Savages, the young Woman blushed, and rose up to go away, but I desir'd her to sit still, I told her, she had a good Work upon her Hands, and I hoped God would bless her in it.

We talked a little, and I did not perceive they had any Book among them, though I did not ask, but I put my Hand in my Pocket, and pulled out my Bible, here, says I, to *Atkins*, I have brought you an Assistant that perhaps you had not before, the Man was so confounded, that he was not able to speak for some Time, but recovering himself, he takes it with both his Hands, and turning to his Wife, here, my Dear, says he, did not I tell you, our God, though he lives above, could hear what we said? Here's the Book I prayed for, when you and I kneeled down under the Bush, now God has heard us, and sent it; when he had said so, the Man fell into such Transports of a passionate Joy, that between the Joy of having it, and giving God Thanks for it, the Tears run down his Face like a Child that was crying

The Woman was surprised, and was like to have run into a Mistake, that none of us were aware of, for she firmly believ'd God had sent the Book upon her Husband's Petition, It is true, that providentially it was so, and might be taken so in a consequent Sense, but I believ'd, it would have been no difficult Matter at that Time, to have persuaded the poor Woman to have believ'd that an express Messenger came from Heaven, on Purpose to bring that individual Book; but it was too serious a matter, to suffer any Delusion to take Place, so I turned to the young Woman and told her we did not desire to impose upon the new Convert, in her first, and more ignorant Understanding of Things, and begged her to explain to her that God may be very properly said to answer our Petitions, when in the Course of his Providence, such Things are in a particular Manner brought to pass, as we petition'd for, but we do not expect Returns from Heaven, in a miraculous and particular Manner, and that it is our Mercy that it is not so

This the young Woman did afterwards effectually, so that there was I assure you, no Pricstcraft used here, and I should have thought it one of the most unjustifiable Frauds in the World, to have had it so, but the Surprize of Joy upon *Will Atkins*, is really not to be expressed, and there we may be sure, there was no Delusion. Sure, no Man was ever more thankful in the World for anything of its Kind, than he was for this Bible, nor I believe, never any Man was glad of a Bible from a better Principle and though he had been a most profligate Creature, desperate, headstrong, outrageous, furious, and wicked to a great Degree, yet this Man is a standing Rule to us all, for the well instructing Children, (*viz*) that Parents should never give over to teach and instruct, or ever despair of the Success of their Endeavours, let the Children be ever so obstinate, refractory, or to Appearance, insensible of Instruction, for if ever God in his Providence, touches the Consciences of such, the Force of their Education returns upon them, and the early Instruction of Parents is not lost, though it may have been many Years laid asleep, but some Time or other, they may find the Benefit of it.

Thus it was with this poor Man, However ignorant he was, or divested of Religion and Christian Knowledge He found he had some to do with now, more ignorant than himself, and that the least Part of the Instruction of his good Father that could now come to his Mind was of Use to him.

Among the rest it occur'd to him, he said, how his Father used to insist much upon the inexpressible Value of the Bible, the Privilege and Blessing of it to Nations, Families, and Persons, but he never entertain'd the least Notion of the Worth of it, till now, when being to talk to Heathens, Savages, and Barbarians, he wanted the Help of the written Oracle for his Assistance.

The young Woman was very glad of it also for the present Occasion, though she had one, and so had the Youth on board our Ship among their Goods, which were not yet brought on Shore, and now having said so many Things of this young Woman, I cannot omit telling one Story more of her, and myself, which has something in it very informing and remarkable

I have related, to what Extremity the poor young Woman was reduced, how her Mistress was starv'd to Death, and did die on board that unhappy Ship we met at Sea, and how the whole Ship's Company being reduc'd to the last Extremity, the Gentlewoman, and her Son, and this Maid, were first hardly used as to Provisions, and at last totally neglected and starv'd, that is to say, brought to the last Extremity of Hunger

One Day being discoursing with her upon the Extremities they suffer'd, I asked her if she could describe by what she had felt, what it was to starve, and how it appear'd, she told me, she believ'd she could, and she told her Tale very distinctly thus.

"First, Sir, said she, we had for some Days fared exceeding hard, and suffer'd very great Hunger, but now at last, we were wholly without Food of any Kind, except Sugar, and a little Wine, and a little Water. The first Day, after I had receiv'd no Food at all, I found myself towards Evening, first empty and sickish at my Stomach, and nearer Night mightily inclin'd to yawning and sleepy, I laid down on a Couch in the great Cabin to sleep, and slept about three Hours, and awak'd a little refresh'd, having taken a Glass of Wine when I lay down, after being about three Hours awake, it being about five o'Clock in the Morning, I found myself empty and my Stomach sickish, and laid down again, but could not sleep at all, being very faint, and ill, and thus I continu'd all the second Day, with a strange Variety, first hungry, then sick again, with retchings to Vomit, the second Night being oblig'd to go to Bed again, without any Food, more than a Draught of fair Water, and being



"asleep, I dream'd I was at *Barbadoes*, and that the Market was mightily stocked with Provisions, that I bought some for my Mistress, and went and dined very heartily

"I thought my Stomach was as full after this as any would have been after, or at a good Dinner, but when I waked, I was exceedingly sunk in my Spirits, to find myself in the Extremity of Famine. The last Glass of Wine we had, I drank, and put Sugar in it, because, of its having some Spirit to supply Nourishment, but there being no Substance in the Stomach for the digesting Office to work upon, I found the only Effect of the Wine was, to raise disagreeable Fumes from the Stomach, into the Head, and I lay, as they told me, stupid, and senseless, as one drunk for some Time.

"The third Day in the Morning, after a Night of strange and confused inconsistent Dreams, and rather dozing than sleeping, I waked, ravenous and furious with Hunger, and I question, had not my Understanding return'd and conquer'd it—I say, I question whether if I had been a Mother, and had had a little Child with me, its Life would have been safe or not.

"This lasted about three Hours, during which Time I was twice raging mad as any Creature in *Bedlam*, as my young Master told me, and as he can now inform you.

"In one of these Fits of Lunacy or Distraction, whether by the Motion of the Ship, or some Slip of my Foot, I know not, I fell down, and struck my Face against the Corner of a Pallet Bed in which my Mistress lay, and with the Blow the Blood gush'd out of my Nose; and the Cabin Boy bringing me a little Bason, I sat down and bled into it a great deal, and as the Blood run from me, I came to myself, and the Violence of the Flame or the Fever, I was in, abated; and so did the ravenous Part of the Hunger.

"Then I grew sick, and retched to vomit, but could not, for I had nothing in my Stomach to bring up. After I had bled some Time, I swooned, and they all believ'd I was dead, but I came to myself soon after, and then had a most dreadful Pain in my Stomach, not to be describ'd, not like the Colic, but a gnawing eager Pain for Food; and towards Night it went off with a kind of earnest Wishing or Longing for Food, something like, as I suppose, the Longing of a Woman with Child. I took another Draught of Water with Sugar in it, but my Stomach loathed the Sugar, and brought it all up again; then I took a Draught of Water without Sugar, and that

“stayed with me, and I laid me down upon the Bed, praying most heartily, that it would please God to take me away, and composing my Mind in Hopes of it, I slumber’d a while, and then waking, thought myself dying, being light with Vapours from an empty Stomach, I recommended my Soul then to God, and earnestly wished that somebody would throw me into the Sea.

“All this while my Mistress lay by me just as I thought expiring, but bore it with much more Patience than I, and gave the last Bit of Bread she had left to her Child, my young Master, who would not have taken it, but she oblig’d him to eat it, and I believe it saved his Life.

“Towards the Morning I slept again, and first when I awak’d, I fell into a violent Passion of Crying, and after that had a second Fit of violent Hunger, I got up ravenous, and in a most dreadful Condition, had my Mistress been dead, as much as I loved her, I am certain, I should have eaten a Piece of her Flesh, with as much Relish, and as unconcern’d, as ever I did the Flesh of any Creature appointed for Food, and once or twice I was going to bite my own Arm. At last, I saw the Bason in which was the Blood I had bled at my Nose the Day before, I ran to it, and swallow’d it with such Haste, and such a greedy Appetite, as if I had wonder’d nobody had taken it before, and afraid it should be taken from me now.

“Though after it was down, the Thoughts of it filled me with Horror, yet it checked the Fit of Hunger, and I drank a Draught of fair Water, and was compos’d and refresh’d for some Hours after it. This was the 4th Day, and thus I held it, till towards Night, when within the Compass of three Hours, I had all these several Circumstances over again, one after another, (*viz*) sick, sleepy, eagerly hungry, Pain in the Stomach, then ravenous again, then sick again, then lunatic, then crying, then ravenous again, and so every quarter of an Hour, and my Strength wasted exceedingly. At Night I laid me down, having no Comfort, but in the Hope that I should die before Morning.

“All this Night I had no Sleep, but the Hunger was now turned into a Disease, and I had a terrible Colic and Gniping, by Wind instead of Food, having found its Way into the Bowels, and in this Condition I lay till Morning, when I was surpriz’d a little with the Cries and Lamentations of my young Master, who called out to me that his Mother was dead, I lifted myself up a little, for

"I had not Strength to rise, but found she was not dead, though she  
"was able to give very little Signs of life.

"I had then such Convulsions in my Stomach, for want of some  
"sustenance, that I cannot describe, with such frequent Throws and  
"Pangs of Appetite, that nothing but the Tortures of Death can  
"imitate, and in this condition I was when I heard the Seamen  
"above cry out *a Sail, a Sail*, and halloo and jump about, as if they  
"were distracted

"I was not able to get off from the Bed, and my Mistress much  
"less, and my young Master was so sick, that I thought he had been  
"expiring, so we could not open the Cabin Door, or get any Account  
"what it was that occasion'd such a Combustion, nor had we had  
"any Conversation with the Ship's Company for two Days, they  
"having told us, that they had not a Mouthful of anything to eat in the  
"Ship, and they told us afterwards, they thought we had been dead

"It was this dreadful Condition we were in when you were sent to  
"save our Lives, and how you found us, Sir, you know as well as I,  
"and better too"

This was her own Relation, and in such a distinct Account of  
Starving to Death, as I confess, I never met with, and was exceeding  
entertaining to me, I am the rather apt to believe it to be a true  
Account, because the Youth gave me an Account of a good Part of  
it, though I must own, not so distinct and so feelingly as his Maid;  
and the rather, because it seems his Mother fed him at the Price of  
her own Life. But the poor Maid, though her Constitution being  
stronger than that of her Mistress, who was in Years, and a weakly  
Woman too, she might struggle harder with it, I say, the poor Maid  
might be supposed to feel the Extremity something sooner than her  
Mistress, who might be allowed to keep the last Bit something longer  
than she parted with any to relieve the Maid. No Question, as the  
Case is here related, if our Ship, or some other, had not so providentially  
met them, a few Days more would have ended all their  
Lives, unless they had prevented it by eating one another; and even  
that as their Case stood would have served them but a little while,  
they being 500 Leagues from any Land, or any Possibility of Relief,  
other than in the miraculous Manner it happen'd: But this is by the  
Way, I return to my Disposition of Things among the People

And, *First*, It is to be observ'd here, That for many Reasons I did  
not think fit to let them know anything of the Sloop I had frained

and which I thought of setting up among them, for I found, *at least at my first coming*, such Seeds of Divisions among them, that I saw it plainly had I set up the Sloop, and left it among them, they would upon every light Disgust have separated, and gone away from one another, or perhaps have turned Pirates, and so made the Island a Den of Thieves, instead of a Plantation of sober and religious People, so as I intended it, nor did I leave the two Pieces of Brass Cannon that I had on Board, or the two Quarter-Deck Guns, that my Nephew took extraordinarily for the same Reason I thought it was enough to qualify them for a defensive War against any that should invade them, but not to set them up for an offensive War, or to encourage them to go Abroad to attack others, which in the End would only bring Ruin and Destruction upon themselves and all their Undertaking I reserved the Sloop therefore, and the Guns, for their Service another Way, as I shall observe in its Place

I have now done with the Island I left them all in good Circumstances, and in a flourishing Condition, and went on board my Ship again the 5th of *May*, having been five-and-twenty Days among them, and as they were all resolv'd to stay upon the Island till I came to remove them, I promis'd to send some further Relief from the *Brasils*, if I could possibly find an Opportunity, and particularly I promis'd to send them some Cattle, such as Sheep, Hogs, and Cows. For as to the two Cows and Calves which I brought from *England*, we had been oblig'd by the Length of our Voyage to kill them at Sea, for want of Hay to feed them

The next Day, giving them a Salute of five Guns at parting, we set sail, and arriv'd at the Bay of *All-Saints* in the *Brasils* in about 22 Days, meeting nothing remarkable in our Passage, but this, That about three Days after we sailed, being becalm'd, and the Current setting strong to the E N E, running, as it were, into a Bay or Gulf on the Land Side, we were driven something out of our Course, and once or twice our Men cried Land to the Eastward, but whether it was the Continent or Islands, we could not tell by any Means

But the third Day towards Evening, the Sea smooth, and the Weather calm, we saw the Sea, as it were, cover'd towards the Land with something very black, not being able to discover what it was, till after some Time, our chief Mate going up the main Shrouds a little Way, and looking at them with a Perspective, cried out it was an Army I could not imagine what he meant by an Army, and

spoke a little hastily, calling the Fellow a Fool, or some such Word : Nay, Sir, *says he*, don't be angry, for 'tis an Army and a Fleet too; for I believe there are a thousand Canoes, and you may see them paddle along, and they are coming towards us too, apace.

I was a little surpris'd then indeed, and so was my Nephew, the Captain, for he had heard such terrible Stories of them in the Island, and having never been in those Seas before, that he could not tell what to think of it, but said two or three Times, we should all be devour'd I must confess considering we were becalm'd, and the Current set strong towards the Shore, I liked it the worse However, I bad him not be afraid, but bring the Ship to an Anchor, as soon as we came so near to know that we must engage them

The Weather continu'd calm, and they came on apace towards us : so I gave Order to come to an Anchor, and furl all our Sails As for the Savages, I told them they had nothing to fear but Fire, and therefore they should get their Boats out, and fasten them, one close by the Head, and the other by the Stern, and man them both well and wait the Issue in that Posture This I did, that the Men in the Boats might be ready with Skeets and Buckets to put out any Fire these Savages might endeavour to fix to the Outside of the Ship

In this Posture we lay by for them, and in a little while they came up with us, but never was such a horrid Sight seen by Christians My Mate was much mistaken in his Calculation of their Number, I mean of a thousand Canoes, the most we could make of them when they came up, being about a hundred and six-and-twenty, and great many of them too, for some of them had sixteen or seventeen Men in them, and some more, and the least six or seven.

When they came nearer to us they seemed to be struck with Wonder and Astonishment, as at a Sight which they had doubtles never seen before; nor could they at first, as we afterwards understood, know what to make of us They came boldly up however very near to us, and seemed to go about to row round us, but we called to our Men in the Boats, not to let them come too near them

This very Order brought us to an Engagement with them, without our designing it; for five or six of their large Canoes came so near our Long Boat, that our Men beclon'd with their Hands to them to keep back, which they understood very well, and went back, but in their Retreat, about 50 Arrows came on board us from those Boats and one of our Men in the Long-Boat was very much wounded.

However, I called to them not to fire by any Means, but we handed down some Deal-Boards into the Boat, and the Carpenter presently set up a kind of a Fence, like waste Boards, to cover them from the Arrows of the Savages, if they should shoot again

About half an Hour afterwards they came all up in a Body astern of us, and pretty near us, so near that we could easily discern what they were, though we could not tell their Design And I easily found they were some of my old Friends, the same Sort of Savages that I had been used to engage with, and in a little Time more they rowed a little farther out to Sea, till they came directly Broad-side with us, and then rowed down straight upon us, till they came so near, that they could hear us speak. Upon this I order'd all my Men to keep close, lest they should shoot any more Arrows, and made all our Guns ready, but being so near as to be within hearing, I made *Friday* go out upon the Deck, and call out aloud to them in his Language to know what they meant, which accordingly he did, whether they understood him or not, that I knew not But as soon as he had called to them, six of them, who were in the foremost or highest Boat to us, turns their Canoes from us, and stooping down, showed us their naked Backsides, just as if in *English*, saving your Presence, they had *bid us Liss* —; whether this was a Defiance or Challenge, we know not, or whether it was done in mere Contempt, or as a Signal to the rest, but immediately *Friday* cried out they were going to shoot, and unhappily for him, poor Fellow, they let fly about 300 of their Arrows, and, to my inexpressible Grief, kill'd poor *Friday*, no other Man being in their Sight. The poor Fellow was shot with no less than three Arrows, and about three more fell very near him, such unlucky Marksmen they were.

I was so enrag'd with the Loss of my old Servant, the Companion of all my Sorrows and Solitudes, that I immediately order'd five Guns to be loaded with small Shot, and four with great, and gave them such a Broad-side, as they had never heard in their Lives before, to be sure.

They were not above half a Cable Length off when we fired, and our Gunners took their Aim so well, that three or four of their Canoes were overset, as we had reason to believe, by one Shot only

The ill manners of turning up their bare Backsides to us, gave us no great Offence neither did I know for certain, whether that which would pass for the greatest Contempt among us, might be understood

so by them, or not; therefore in Return, I had only resolv'd to have fired four or five Guns at them with Powder only, which I knew would fright them sufficiently. But when they shot at us directly with all the Fury they were capable of, and especially as they had killed my poor *Friday*, who I so entirely loved and valu'd, and who indeed so well deserv'd it, I not only had been justify'd before God and Man, but would have been very glad, if I could, to have overboard every Canoe there, and drown'd every one of them.

I can neither tell, how many we killed, or how many we wounded at this Broad-side, but sure such a Fright and Hurry never was seen among such a Multitude, there were 13 or 14 of their Canoes split and upset in all, and the Men all set a swimming, the rest frighted out of their Wits, scoured away as fast as they could, taking but little care to save those whose Boats were split or spoiled with our Shot. So I suppose that they were many of them lost. And our Men took up one poor Fellow swimming for his Life, above an Hour after they were all gone.

Our small Shot from our Cannon must needs kill and wound a great many, but, in short, we never knew anything how it went with them, for they fled so fast, that in three Hours or thereabouts, we could not see above three or four straggling Canoes, nor did we ever see the rest any more, for a Breeze of Wind springing up the same Evening, we weigh'd and set Sail for the *Brasils*.

We had a Prisoner indeed, but the Creature was so sullen, that he would neither eat or speak, and we all fancy'd he would starve himself to Death. But I took a Way to cure him, for I made them take him and turn him into the Long-Boat, and make him believe they would toss him into the Sea again, and so leave him where they found him, if he would not speak. Nor would that do, but they really did throw him into the Sea, and came away from him, and then he follow'd them, for he swam like a Cork, and called to them in his Tongue, though they knew not one Word of what he said. However, at last they took him in again, and then he began to be more tractable; nor did I ever design they should drown him.

We were now under Sail again, but I was the most disconsolate Creature alive, for want of my Man *Friday*, and would have been very glad to have gone back to the Island, to have taken one of the rest from thence for my Occasion, but it could not be, so we went on. We had one Prisoner, as I have said; and 'twas a long while before

we could make him understand anything But, in time, our Men taught him some *English*, and he began to be a little tractable, afterwards we inquir'd what Country he came from, but could make nothing of what he said, for his Speech was so odd, all Gutturals, and spoke in the Throat in such an hollow odd Manner, that we could never form a Word from him, and we were all of opinion, that they might speak that Language as well, if they were gagged, as otherwise Nor could we perceive that they had any Occasion, either for Teeth, Tongue, Lips or Palate, but formed their Words, just as a hunting Horn forms a Tune with an open Throat. He told us however, some time after when we had taught him to speak a little *English*, that they were going with their Kings to fight a great Battle When he said Kings, we asked him how many Kings? He said, they were FIVE NATION, we could not make him understand the Plural S and that they all joined to go against *Two Nation* We asked him, what made them come up to us? He said, *to make te great Wonder look* Where it is to be observ'd, That all those Natives, as also those of *Africa*, when they learn *English*, they always add two E's at the End of the Words where we use one, and make the Accent upon them, as *malèè takèè*, and the like, and we could not break them of it, nay, I could hardly make *Friday* leave it off, though at last he did

And now I name the poor Fellow once more, I must take my last Leave of him, poor honest *Friday*! We buried him with all the Decency and Solemnity possible, by putting him into a Coffin, and throwing him into the Sea And I caused them to fire eleven Guns for him, and so ended the Life of the most grateful, faithful, honest, and most affectionate Servant that ever Man had

We went now away with a fair Wind for *Brasil*, and in about twelve Days' Time we made Land in the Latitude of five Degrees South of the Line, being the North Easternmost Land of all that Part of *America* We kept on S by E. in Sight of the Shore four Days, when we made *Cape St Augustine*, and in three Days came to an Anchor off of *the Bay of All Saints*, the old Place of my Deliverance, from whence came both my good and evil Fate

Néver Ship came to this Part that had less Business than I had, and yet it was with great Difficulty that we were admitted to hold the least Correspondence on Shore, not my Partner himself, who was alive, and made a great Figure among them, not my two Merchants Trustees, not the Fame of my wonderful Preservation in that Island,



could obtain me that Favour. But my Partner remembering, that I had given 500 Moidores to the Prior of the Monastery of the *Augustines*, and 272 to the Poor, went to the Monastery, and oblig'd the Prior that then was, to go to the Governor, and get leave for me personally, with the Captain and one more besides Eight Seamen, to come on Shore, and no more, and this upon Condition absolutely capitulated for, that we should not offer to land any Goods out of the Ship, or to carry any Person away without Licence.

They were so strict with us, as to landing any Goods, that it was with extreme Difficulty that I got on Shore three Bales of *English* Goods, such as fine Broadcloths, Stuffs, and some Linen which I had brought for a Present to my Partner.

He was a very generous broad-hearted Man, though like me, he came from little at first, and though he knew not that I had the least Design of giving him anything, he sent me on Board a Present of fresh Provisions, Wine, and Sweetmeats, worth above 30 Moidores, including some Tobacco, and three or four fine Medals in Gold. But I was even with him in my Present, which, as I have said, consisted of fine Broadcloth, *English* Stuffs, Lace, and fine Hollands. Also I deliver'd him about the Value of 100 *lib Sterl* in the same Goods for other Uses, and I oblig'd him to set up the Sloop which I had brought with me from *England*, as I have said, for the Use of my Colony, in order to send the Refreshments I intended to my Plantation.

Accordingly, he got Hands and finish'd the Sloop in a very few Days, for she was already framed, and I gave the Master of her such Instructions, as he could not miss the Place, nor did he miss them, as I had an Account from my Partner afterwards. I got him soon loaded with the small Cargo I sent them, and one of our Seamen that had been on shore with me there, offer'd to go with the Sloop, and settle there upon my Letter to the Governor *Spaniard*, to allot him a sufficient Quantity of Land for a Plantation, and giving him some Clothes, and Tools for his Planting-work, which he said he understood, having been an old Planter at *Maryland*, and a Buccaneer into the Bargain.

I encourag'd the Fellow, by granting all he desir'd, and as an Addition, I gave him the Savage, which we had taken Prisoner of War, to be his Slave, and order'd the Governor *Spaniard* to give him his share of everything he wanted, with the rest.

When we came to fit this Man out, my old Partner told me, there was a certain very honest Fellow, a *Brasil* Planter of his Acquaintance, who had fallen into the Displeasure of the Church, I know not what the matter is with him, *says he*, but on my Conscience, I think he is a Heretic in his Heart, and he has been oblig'd to conceal himself for fear of the Inquisition, that he would be very glad of such an Opportunity to make his Escape with his Wife and two Daughters; and if I would let them go to my Island, and allot them a Plantation, he would give them a small stock to begin with, for the Officers of the Inquisition had seized all his Effects and Estate, and he had nothing left but a little Household stuff and two Slaves. And, *says he*, Though I hate his Principles, yet I would not have him fall into their Hands; for he would assuredly be burnt alive, if he does

I granted this presently, and joined my *Englishman* with them, and we conceal'd the Man, and his Wife and Daughters on Board our Ship, till the Sloop put out to go to Sea, and then (having put all their Goods on board the Sloop, some time before) we put them on board the Sloop, after he was got out of the Bay

Our Serman was mightily pleased with this new Partner, and their Stock indeed was much alike, rich in Tools, in Preparations, and a Farm, but nothing to begin with, but as above. However, they carried over with them, which was worth all the rest, some Materials for planting Sugar canes, with some Plants of Canes, which he, I mean the *Portugal* Man, understood very well

Among the rest of the Supplies sent my Tenants in the Island, I sent them by their Sloop, three Milch Cows, and five Calves, about 22 Hogs among them, three Sows big with Pig, two Mares, and a Stone horse.

For my *Spaniards*, according to my Promise, I engaged three *Portugal* Women to go, and recommended it to them to marry them, and use them kindly. I could have procured more Women, but I remember'd, that the poor persecuted Man had two Daughters, and there was but five of the *Spaniards* that wanted, the rest had Wives of their own, though in another Country.

All this Cargo arriv'd safe, and as you may easily suppose, very welcome to my old Inhabitants, who were now with this Addition, between sixty and seventy People, besides little Children; of which there was a great many. I found Letters at *London* from them all by

the Way of *Lisbon*, when I came back to *England*. of which I shall also take some Notice immediately

I have now done with my Island, and all Manner of Discourse about it, and whoever reads the rest of my Memorandums, would do well to turn his Thoughts entirely from it, and expect to read of the Follies of an old Man, not warn'd by his own Harms, much less by those of other Men, to beware of the like, not cooled by almost forty Years' Misery and Disappointments, not satisfy'd with Prosperity beyond Expectation, not made cautious by Affliction and Distress beyond Imitation.

I had no more Business to go to the *East Indies*, than a Man at full Liberty, and having committed no Crime, has to go to the Turnkey at *Newgate*, and desire him to lock him up among the Prisoners there, and starve him Had I taken a small Vessel from *England*, and went directly to the Island, had I loaded her, as I did the other Vessel, with all the Necessaries for the Plantation, and for my People, took a Patent from the Government here, to have secur'd my Property, in subjection only to that of *England*, had I carried over Cannon and Ammunition, Servants and People, to plant, and taking possession of the Place, fortified and strengthen'd it in the Name of *England*, and increas'd it with People, as I might easily have done, had I then settled myself there, and sent the Ship back, loaden with good Rice, as I might also have done in six Months' time, and order'd my Friends to have fitted her out again for our Supply, had I done this, and stayed there myself, I had, at least, acted like a Man of common sense, but I was possest with a wandering Spirit, scorned all Advantages, I pleased myself with being the Patron of those People I placed there, and doing for them in a kind of haughty majestic Way, like an old Patriarchal Monarch, providing for them, as if I had been Father of the whole Family, as well as of the Plantation. But I never so much as pretended to plant in the Name of any Government or Nation, or to acknowledge any Prince, or to call my People Subjects to any one Nation more than another, nay, I never so much as gave the Place a Name, but left it as I found it, belonging to no Man, and the People under no Discipline or Government but my own, who, though I had influence over them as Father and Benefactor, had no Authority or Power to Act or Command one way or other, farther than voluntary Consent moved them to comply, yet even this, had I stayed there, would have done well

enough; but as I rambl'd from them, and came there no more, the last Letters I had from any of them, was by my Partner's Means, who afterwards sent another Sloop to the Place, and who sent me word, though I had not the Letter till five Years after it was written, that they went on but poorly, were discontent with their long stay there That *Will Atkins* was dead, That five of the *Spaniards* were come away, and that though they had not been much molested by the Savages, yet they had had some Skirmishes with them, That they begged of him to write to me, to think of the Promise I had made, to fetch them away, that they might see their own Country again before they died.

But I was gone *a Wild-Goose Chase* indeed, and They who will have any more of me, must be content to follow me through a new Variety of Follies, Hardships, and Wild Adventures, wherein the Justice of Providence may be duly observ'd, and we may see how easily Heaven can gorge us with our own Desires, make the strongest of our Wishes be our Affliction, and punish us most severely with those very Things, which we think, it would be our utmost Happiness to be allow'd in

Let no wise Man flatter himself with the Strength of his own Judgment, as if he was able to choose any particular Station of Life for himself Man is a short-sighted Creature, sees but a very little Way before him, and as his Passions are none of his best Friends, so his particular Affections are generally his worst Counsellors

I say this, with Respect to the impetuous Desire I had from a Youth, to wander into the World, and how evident it now was, that this Principle was preserv'd in me for my Punishment How it came on, the Manner, the Circumstance, and the Conclusion of it, it is easy to give you Historically, and with its utmost Variety of Particulars But the secret Ends of Divine Power, in thus permitting us to be hurried down the Stream of our own Desires, is only to be understood of those who can listen to the Voice of Providence, and draw religious Consequences from God's Justice, and their own Mistakes

Be it, I had Business, or no Business, away I went. It is no Time now to enlarge any farther upon the Reason, or Absurdity of my own Conduct, but to come to the History, I was embark'd for the Voyage, and the Voyage I went.

I should only add here, that my Honest and truly pious Clergyman left me here, a Ship being ready to go to *Lisbon*, he asked me Leave

to go thither, being still, as he observ'd, bound never to finish any Voyage he began. How happy had it been for me, if I had gone with him !

But it was too late now, all things Heaven appoints are best, had I gone with him, I had never had had so many things to be thankful for, and you had never heard of the second Part of the Travels and Adventures of *Robin Crusoe*, so I must leave here the fruitless exclaiming at myself, and go on with my Voyage.

From the *Brasils*, we made directly away over the *Atlantic Sea*, to the *Cape de bon Esperance*, or as we call it, the *Cape of Good Hope*, and had a tolerable good Voyage, our Course generally South-East ; now and then a storm, and some contrary Winds, but my Disasters at Sea were at an end ; my future Rubs and cross Events were to befall me on shore, that it might appear the Land was as well prepar'd to be our scourge as the Sea, when Heaven, who directs the Circumstances of Things, pleases to appoint it to be so.

Our Ship was on a Trading Voyage, and had a *Supercargo* on board, who was to direct all her Motions after she arriv'd at the *Cape*, only being limited to certain Numbers of Days, for stay, by Charter-party, at the several Ports she was to go to. This was none of my Business, neither did I meddle with it at all, my Nephew, the Captain, and the *Supercargo*, adjusting all those things between them, as they thought fit.

We made no stay at the *Cape* longer than was needful to take in fresh Water, but made the best of our way for the Coast of *Coromandel*. We were, indeed, inform'd that a *French* Man of War of fifty Guns, and two large Merchant Ships, were gone for the *Indies*, and as I knew we were at War with *France*, I had some Apprehensions of them, but they went their own Way, and we heard no more of them.

I will not pester my Account, or the Reader, with Descriptions of Places, Journals of our Voyages, Variations of Compass, Latitudes, Meridian Distances, Trade-Winds, Situation of Ports, and the like, such as almost all the Histories of long Navigation are full of, and makes the Reading tiresome enough, and are perfectly unprofitable to all that read it, except only to those who are to go to those Places themselves.

It is enough to name the Ports and Places which we touched at, and what occur'd to us upon our passing from one to another. We touched first at the Island of *Madagascar*, where, though the People

are fierce and treacherous, and in particular very well armed with Lances and Bows, which they use with inconceivable dexterity, yet we fared very well with them awhile, they treated us very civilly, and for some Trifles which we gave them, such as Knives, Scissors, &c, they brought us eleven good fat Bullocks, middling in Size, but very good in Flesh, which we took in, partly for fresh Provisions for our present spending, and the rest to Salt for the Ship's Use

We were obliged to stay here some Time after we had furnish'd ourselves with Provisions, and I, that was always too curious, to look into every Nook of the World wherever I came, was for going on Shore as often as I could it was on the East Side of the Island that we went on Shore, one Evening, and the People, who by the Way are very numerous, came thronging about us, and stood gazing at us at a Distance, but as we had traded freely with them, and had been kindly used, we thought ourselves in no Danger, but when we saw the People, we cut three Boughs out of a Tree, and stuck them up at a Distance from us, which it seems is a Mark in the Country not only of Truce and Friendship, but when it is accepted, the other Side set up three Poles or Boughs, which is a Signal that they accept the Truce too, but then, this is a known Condition of the Truce, that you are not to pass beyond their three Poles towards them, nor they to come past your three Poles or Boughs towards you, so that you are perfectly secure within the three Poles, and all the Space between your Poles and theirs, is allow'd like a Market, for free Converse, Traffic, and Commerce When you go there, you must not carry your Weapons with you, and if they come into that Space they stick up their Javelins and Lances, all at the first Poles, and come on unarm'd, but if any Violence is offer'd them, and the Truce thereby broken, away they run to the Poles, and lay hold of their Weapons, and then the Truce is at an End

It happen'd one Evening when we went on Shore, that a greater Number of their People came down than usual, but all was very friendly and civil, and they brought in several Kinds of Provisions, for which we satisfied them, with such Toys as we had, their Women also brought us Milk, and Roots, and several Things very acceptable to us, and all was quiet, and we made us a little Tent, or Hut, of some Boughs of Trees, and lay on Shore all Night.

I know not what was the Occasion, but I was not so well satisfied

to lie on Shore as the rest, and the Boat lying at an Anchor, about a Stone cast from the Land, with two Men in her to take care of her, I made one of them come on shore, and getting some Boughs of Trees to cover us also in the Boat, I spread the Sail on the Bottom of the Boat, and lay under the Cover of the Branches of Trees all Night in the Boat.

About two o'clock in the Morning, we heard one of our Men make a terrible Noise on the shore, calling out for God's sake to bring the Boat in, and come and help them, for they were all like to be murder'd, at the same time I heard the firing of 5 Muskets, which was the Number of the Guns they had, and that three times over, for it seems the Natives here were not so easily frightened with Guns, as the Savages were in *America*, where I had to do with them.

All this while I knew not what was the matter, but rousing immediately from Sleep with the Noise, I caused the Boat to be thrust in, and resolv'd, with three Fusils we had on board, to land and assist our Men.

We got the Boat soon to the Shore, but our Men were in too much Haste. For being come to the shore, they plunged into the Water to get to the Boat with all the Expedition they could, being pursued by between three and four hundred Men. our Men were but Nine in all, and only five of them had Fusils with them, the rest had indeed Pistols and Swords, but they were of small use to them.

We took up seven of our Men, and with Difficulty enough too, three of them being very ill wounded, and that which was still worse was, that while we stood in the Boat to take our Men in, we were in as much Danger as they were in on Shore, for they poured their Arrows in upon us so thick that we were fain to barricade the Side of the Boat up with the Benches, and two or three loose Boards, which to our great Satisfaction we had by mere Accident or Providence in the Boat.

And yet, had it been Daylight, they are it seems such exact Marksmen, that if they could have seen but the least Part of any of us, they would have been sure of us, we had by the Light of the Moon a little Sight of them, as they stood pelting us from the Shore with Darts and Arrows, and having got ready our Fire-arms, we gave them a Volley, that we could hear by the Cries of some of them, that we had wounded several, however. they stood thus in Battl

Array on the Shore till break of Day, which we suppose was, that they might see the better to take their Aim at us

In this Condition we lay, and could not tell how to weigh our Anchor or set up our Sail, because we must needs stand up in the Boat, and they were as sure to hit us, as we were to hit a Bird in a Tree with small Shot, we made Signals of Distress to the Ship, which, though we rode a League off, yet my Nephew the Captain hearing our Firing, and by Glasses perceiving the Posture we lay in, and that we fired towards the Shore, pretty well understood us, and weighing Anchor, with all speed, he stood as near the Shore as he durst with the Ship, and then sent another Boat with ten Hands in her to assist us, but we call'd to them not to come too near, telling them what Condition we were in. However, they stood in nearer to us, and one of the Men taking the End of a Tow-Line in his Hand, and keeping our Boat between him and the Enemy, so that they could not perfectly see him, swam on board us, and made fast the Line to the Boat, upon which we slipped our little Cable, and leaving our Anchor behind, they towed us out of reach of the Arrows, we all the while lying close behind the Barricado we had made

As soon as we were got from between the Ship and the Shore, that she could lay her Side to the Shore, she run along just by them, and we poured in a Broadside among them loaden with Pieces of Iron and Lead, small Bullets, and such stuff, besides the great Shot, which made a terrible Havoc amongst them.

When we were got on board and out of Danger, we had time to examine into the Occasion of this Fray, and indeed our *Supercargo* who had been often in those Parts, put me upon it, for he said, he was sure the Inhabitants would not have touched us after we had made a Truce, if we had not done something to provoke them to it. At length it came out (*viz*) that an Old Woman who had come to sell us some Milk, had brought it within our Poles, with a young Woman with her, who also brought some Roots or Herbs, and while the Old Woman, whether she was Mother to the young Woman or no, they could not tell, was selling us the Milk, one of our Men offer'd some Rudeness to the Wench that was with her, at which the old Woman made a great Noise. However, the Seaman would not quit his Prize, but carry'd her out of the old Woman's Sight among the Trees, it being almost dark, the old Woman went away without her, and as we suppose, made an Outcry among the People she came



from, who upon Notice, raised this great Army upon us in three or four Hours, and it was great odds, but we had been all destroy'd.

One of our Men was kill'd with a Lance thrown at him just at the beginning of the Attack, as he sally'd out of the Tent they had made, the rest came off free, all but the Fellow who was the Occasion of all the Mischief, who paid dear enough for his black Mistress, for we could not hear what became of him, a great while, we lay upon the Shore two Days after, though the Wind presented, and made Signals for him, made our Boat sail up Shore and down Shore, several Leagues, but in vain, so we were oblig'd to give him over, and if he alone had suffer'd for it, the Loss had been the less

I could not satisfy myself, however, without venturing on Shore once more, to try if I could learn anything of him or them, it was the third Night after the Action, that I had a great Mind to learn if I could by any Means what Mischief we had done, and how the Game stood on the *Indians'* Side I was careful to do it in the Dark; lest we should be attack'd again, but I ought indeed to have been sure, that the Men I went with had been under my Command, before I engag'd in a Thing so hazardous and mischievous as I was brought into by it, without my Knowledge or Design

We took twenty stout Fellows with us as any in the Ship, besides the Supercargo and myself, and we landed two Hours before Midnight, at the same Place where the *Indians* stood drawn up the Evening before, I landed here, because my Design as I have said, was chiefly to see if they had quitted the Field, and if they had left any Marks behind them of the Mischief we had done them; and I thought, if we could surprise one or two of them, perhaps we might get our Man again by Way of Exchange

We landed without any Noise, and divided our Men into two Bodies, whereof the Boatswain commanded one, and I the other; we neither saw or heard anybody stir when we landed, and we marched up one Body at a Distance from the other, to the Place, but at first could see nothing it being very dark, till by and by, our Boatswain that led the first Party, stumbled and fell over a Dead Bay, this made them halt awhile, for knowing by the Circumstances that they were at the Place where the *Indians* had stood, they waited for my coming up here, we concluded to halt till the Moon began to rise, which we knew would be in less than an Hour, when

we could easily discern the Havoc we had made among them, we told two-and thirty Bodies upon the Ground, whereof two were not quite dead. Some had an Arm, and some a Leg shot off, and one his Head, those that were wounded we suppos'd they had carried away.

When we had made, as I thought, a full Discovery of all we could come at the Knowledge of, I was resolv'd for going on board, but the Boatswain and his Party sent me Word, that they were resolv'd to make a Visit to the *Indian* Town, where these Dogs, as they called them, dwelt, and asked me to go along with them, and if they could find them, as still they fancied they should, they did not doubt getting a good Booty, and it might be, they might find *Tho Jeffry* there, *that was the Man's Name we had lost*.

Had they sent to ask my Leave to go, I knew well enough what Answer to have given them, for I would have commanded them instantly on Board, knowing it was not a Hazard fit for us to run, who had a Ship, and Ship-lording in our Charge, and a Voyage to make, which depended very much upon the Lives of the Men, but as they sent me Word they were resolv'd to go, and only asked me and my Company to go along with them, I positively refus'd it, and rose up, *for I was sitting on the Ground*, in Order to go to the Boat, one or two of the Men begun to importune me to go, and when I refus'd positively, begun to grumble, and say they were not under my Command, and they would go. Come, *Jack*, says one of the Men, will go with me? I'll go for one. *Jack* said he would, and another followed, and then another, and in a Word, they all left me but one, who I persuaded to stay, and a Boy left in the Boat, so the Supercargo and I, with the third Man, went back to the Boat, where we told them we would stay for them, and take Care to take in as many of them as should be left, for I told them it was a mad Thing they were going about, and supposed most of them would run the Fate of *Thom Jeffry*.

They told me, like Seamen, they'd warrant it they would come off again, and they would take care, &c. So away they went, I entreated them to consider the Ship and Voyage, that their Lives were not their own, and that they were entrusted with the Voyage in some measure, that if they miscarry'd, the Ship might be lost for want of their Help, and that they could not answer it to God or Man. I said a great deal more to them on that Head, but I might as well have

talked to the Mainmast of the Ship, they were mad upon their Journey, only they gave me good Words, and begged I would not be angry, That they would be very cautious, and they did not doubt but they would be back again in about an Hour at farthest, for the *Indian Town*, they said, was not above half a Mile off, though they found it above two Miles before they got to it.

Well, they all went away, as above, and though the Attempt was desperate, and such as none but mad Men would have gone about, yet to give them their due, they went about it warily as boldly. They were gallantly armed, that's true, for they had every Man a Fussee or Musket, a Bayonet, every Man a Pistol, some of them had broad Cutlasses, some of them Hangers, and the Boatswain and Two more had Pole-Axes. Besides all which, they had among them Thirteen Hand-Grenadoes. Bolder Fellows, and better provided, never went about any wicked Work in the World.

When they went out, their chief Design was Plunder, and they were in mighty hopes of finding Gold there, but a Circumstance which none of them were aware of, set them on fire with Revenge, and made Devils of them all. When they came to the few *Indian Houses* which they thought had been the Town, which was not above half a Mile off, they were under a great Disappointment; for there were not above 12 or 13 Houses, and where the Town was, or how big, they knew not. They consulted therefore what to do, and were some time before they could resolve for if they fell upon these, they must cut all their Throats, and it was ten to one but some of them might escape, it being in the Night, though the Moon was up, and if one escap'd, he would run away, and raise all the Town, so they should have a whole Army upon them. Again, on the other hand, if they went away, and left those untouch'd (for the People were all asleep) they could not tell which Way to look for the Town.

However, the last was the best Advice, so they resolv'd to leave them, and look for the Town as well as they could. They went on a little way, and found a Cow tied to a Tree, this they presently concluded, would be a good Guide to them, for they said, the Cow certainly belonged to the Town before them, or the Town behind them; and if they untied her, they should see which way she went, if she went back, they had nothing to say to her, but if she went forward, they had nothing to do but to follow her. So they cut the Cord, which was made of twisted Flags, and the Cow went on before them, in a

Word, the Cow led them directly to the Town, which as they report, consisted of above 200 Houses or Huts, and in some of these they found several Families living together

Here they found all in Silence, as profoundly secure, as Sleep, and a Country that had never seen an Enemy of that Kind could make them; and first, they called another Council, to consider what they had to do, and in a Word, they resolv'd to divide themselves into three Bodies, and to set three Houses on Fire in three Parts of the Town, and as the Men came out, to seize them and bind them, if any resisted, they need not be asked what to do then, and so to search the rest of the Houses for Plunder, but they resolv'd to march silently first through the Town, and see what Dimensions it was of, and if they might venture upon it or no

They did so, and desperately resolv'd that they would venture upon them; but while they were animating one another to the Work, three of them that were a little before the rest, called out aloud to them, and told them they had found *Thom Jeffry*, they all run up to the Place and so it was indeed, for there they found the poor Fellow hanged up naked by one Arm, and his Throat cut, there was an *Indian* House just by the Tree, where they found sixteen or seventeen of the principal *Indians* who had been concern'd in the Fray with us before, and two or three of them wounded with our Shot, and our Men found they were awake, and talking one to another in that House, but knew not their Number.

The Sight of their poor mangled Comrade so enrag'd them, as before, that they swore to one another they would be reveng'd, and that not an *Indian* who came into their Hands should have Quarter, and to work they went immediately, and yet not so madly as by the Rage and Fury they were in might be expected. Their first Care was to get something that would soon take Fire, but after a little search, they found that would be to no Purpose, but most of the Houses were low, and Thatched with Flags or Rushes, of which the Country is full, so they presently made some wild Fire, as we call it, by wetting a little Powder in the Palms of their hands, and in a quarter of an Hour they set the Town on fire in four or five Places, and particularly that House where the *Indians* were not gone to Bed. As soon as the Fire began to blaze, the poor frighted Creatures began to rush out to save their Lives; but met with their Fate in the Attempt, and especially at the Door, where they drove them back, the Boatswain

himself killing one or two with his Pole-Axe; the House being large, and many in it, he did not care to go in, but called for a Hand Grenado, and threw it among them, which at first frighted them, but when it burst, made such Havoc among them, that they cried out in a hideous manner

In short, most of the *Indians* who were in the open Part of the House were killed or hurt with the Grenado, except two or three more who pressed to the Door, which the Boatswain and two more kept with their Bayonets in the Muzzles of their Pieces, and dispatch'd all who came that Way. But there was another Apartment in the House where the Prince or King, or whatever he was, and several others were, and these they kept in till the House, which was by this time all of a light Flame, fell in upon them, and they were smother'd or burnt together

All this while they fired not a Gun, because they would not waken the People faster than they could master them, but the Fire began to waken them fast enough, and our Fellows were glad to keep a little together in Bodies, for the Fire grew so raging, all the Houses being made of light combustible Stuff, that they could hardly bear the Street between them, and their Business was to follow the Fire for the surer Execution. As fast as the Fire either forced the People out of those Houses which were burning, or frighted them out of others, our People were ready at their Doors to knock them on the Head, still calling and hallooing to one another to remember *Them Jeffry*.

While this was doing, I must confess I was very uneasy, and especially when I saw the Flames of the Town, which, it being Night, seemed to be just by me

My Nephew, the Captain, who was roused by his Men too, seeing such a Fire, was very uneasy, not knowing what the Matter was, or what Danger I was in, especially hearing the Guns too; for by this time they began to use their Fire-Arms, a thousand Thoughts oppress'd his Mind concerning me and the Supercargo, what should become of us. And at last, though he could ill spare any more Men, yet not knowing what Exigence we might be in, he takes another Boat, and with 13 Men and himself, comes on Shore to me

He was surpris'd to see me and the Supercargo in the Boat with no more than two Men, and though he was glad that we were well, yet he was in the same Impatience with us to know what was doing;

for the Noise continu'd and the Flame increas'd In short, it was next to an Impossibility for any Men in the World to restrain their Curiosity to know what had happen'd, or the Concern for the Safety of the Men. In a Word, the Captain told me, he would go and help his Men, let what would come I argu'd with him as I did before with the Men, the Safety of the Ship, the Danger of the Voyage, the Interest of the Owners and Merchants, &c and told him, I would go and the two Men, and only see if we could at a Distance learn what was like to be the Event, and come back and tell him

It was all one, to talk to my Nephew, as it was to talk to the rest before, he would go he said, and he only wished he had left but Ten Men in the Ship, for he could not think of having his Men lost for want of Help, he had rather lose the Ship, the Voyage, and his Life and all, and away went he.

In a Word, I was no more able to stay behind now, than I was to persuade them not to go, so in short, the Captain order'd two Men to row back the Pinnace, and fetch twelve Men more, leaving the Long-Boat at an Anchor, and that when they came back, six Men should keep the two Boats, and six more come after us, so that he left only 16 Men in the Ship, for the whole Ship's Company consisted of 65 Men, whereof two were lost in the last Quarrel, which brought this Mischief on

Being now on the March, you may be sure we felt little of the Ground we trode on, and being guided by the Fire, we kept no Path, but went directly to the Place of the Flame If the Noise of the Guns was surprising to us before, the Cries of the poor People were now of quite another Nature, and filled us with Horror I must confess, I never was at the sacking a City, or at the taking a Town by storm. I had heard of *Oliver Cromwell* taking *Drogheda* in *Ireland*, and killing Man, Woman and Child And I had read of Count *Tilly*, sacking of the City of *Magdeburgh*, and cutting the Throats of 22,000 of all Sexes But I never had an Idea of the Thing itself before, nor is it possible to describe it, or the Horror which was upon our Minds at hearing it.

However, we went on, and at length came to the Town, though there was no entering the Streets of it for the Fire The first Object we met with was the Ruins of a Hut or House, or rather the Ashes of it, for the House was consum'd, and just before it, plain now to

be seen by the Light of the Fire, lay four Men and three Women killed, and as we thought, one or two more lay in the Heap among the Fire. In short there were such Instances of a Rage altogether barbarous, and of a Fury something beyond what was human, that we thought it impossible our Men could be guilty of it, or if they were the Authors of it, we thought they ought to be every one of them put to the worst of Deaths. But this was not all, we saw the Fire increas'd forward, and the Cry went on just as the Fire went on, so that we were in the utmost Confusion. We advanc'd a little Way farther, and behold, to our Astonishment, three Women naked, and crying in a most dreadful Manner, come flying, as if they had indeed had Wings, and after them sixteen or seventeen Men, Natives, in the same Terror and Consternation, with three of our *English* Butchers, for I can call them no better, in their Rear, who, when they could not, overtake them, fired in among them, and one that was killed by their Shot fell down in our Sight, when the rest saw us, believing us to be their Enemies, and that we would murder them as well as those that pursued them, they set up a most dreadful Shriek, especially the Women, and two of them fell down as if already dead with the Fright.

My very Soul shrunk within me, and my Blood run chill in my Veins, when I saw this, and I believe, had the three *English* Sailor that pursu'd them come on, I had made our Men kill them all. However we took some Ways to let the poor flying Creatures know that we would not hurt them, and immediately they came up to us, and kneeling down, with their Hands lifted up, made piteous Lamentation to us to save them, which we let them know we would, whereupon they crept all together in a Huddle close behind us, as for Protection. I left my Men drawn up together, and charged them to hurt nobody, but if possible to get at some of our People, and see what Devil it was possess'd them, and what they intended to do, and in a word, to command them off, assuring them that if they stay'd till Daylight, they would have an hundred thousand Men about their Ears. I say, I left them, and went among those flying People, taking only two of our Men with me, and there was indeed a piteous Spectacle among them. Some of them had their Feet terribly burnt with trampling and running through the Fire, others their Hands burnt; one of the Women had fallen down in the Fire, and was very much harm before she could get out again, and two or three of the Men had Cuts in their Backs and Thighs from our Men pur-

suings, and another was shot through the Body, and died while I was there

I would fain have learned what the Occasion of all this was, but I could not understand one Word they said, though by Signs I perceived that some of them knew not what was the Occasion themselves. I was so terrified in my Thoughts at this outrageous Attempt, that I could not stay there, but went back to my own Men, and resolv'd to go into the Middle of the Town through the Fire, or whatever might be in the Way, and put an End to it, cost what it would. Accordingly, as soon as I came back to my Men, I told them my Resolution, and commanded them to follow me, when in the very Moment came four or our Men with the Boatswain at their Head, roving over the Heaps of Bodies they had killed, all cover'd with Blood and Dust, as if they wanted more People to massacre, when our Men halloo'd to them as loud as they could halloo, and with much ado one of them made them hear, so that they knew who we were, and came up to us.

As soon as the Boatswain saw us, he set up a Halloo like a Shout of Triumph, for having, as he thought, more help come, and without bearing to hear me, Captain, says he, noble Captain, I am glad you are come, we have not half done yet, villanous Hell-hound Dogs, I'll kill as many of them as poor *Tom* has Hairs upon his Head. We have sworn to spare none of them, we'll root out the very Nation of them from the Earth. And thus he run on, out of Breath too with Action, and would not give us leave to speak a Word.

At last raising my Voice, that I might silence him a little, Barbarous Dog, said I, what are you doing? I won't have one Creature touched more, upon pain of Death. I charge you upon your Life, to stop your Hands, and stand still here, or you are a dead Man this Minute.

Why, Sir, says he, Do you know what you do, or what they have done? If you want a Reason for what we have done, come hither, and with that he showed me the poor Fellow hanging with his Throat cut.

I confess, I was urged then myself, and at another time should have been forward enough, but I thought they had carried their Rage too far, and thought of *Jacob's* Words to his Sons *Simeon* and *Levi*, *Cursed be their Anger, for it was fierce, and their Wrath, for it was cruel*. But I had now a new Task upon my hands, for when the Men I carried with me saw the Sight as I had done, I had as much to do to restrain them, as I should have had with the other, nay,



my Nephew himself fell in with them, and told me in their hearing that he was only concern'd for fear of the Men being overpower'd, for as to the People, he thought not one of them ought to live, for they had all glutted themselves with the Murder of the poor Man, and that they ought to be used like Murderers Upon these Words, away run eight of my Men with the Boatswain and his Crew, to complete their bloody Work, and I seeing it quite out of my Power to restrain them, came away pensive and sad, for I could not bear the Sight, much less the horrible Noise and Cries of the poor Wretches that fell into their Hands

I got nobody to come back with me but the Supercargo and two Men, and with these I walked back to the Boats It was a very great Piece of Folly in me, I confess, to venture back, as it were alone, for as it began now to be almost Day, and the Alarm had run over the Country, there stood about 40 Men armed with Lances and Bows at the little Place where the 12 or 13 Houses stood mention'd before, but by Accident I missed the Place, and came directly to the Sea side, and by the time I got to the Sea-side it was broad Day, immediately I took the Pinnace, and went aboard, and sent her back to assist the Men in what might happen

I observ'd about the Time that I came to the Boat-side, that the Fire was pretty well out, and the Noise abated, but in about half an Hour after I got on Board, I heard a Volley of our Men's Fire-arms, and saw a great Smoke, this, as I understood afterwards, was our Men falling upon the Men who as I said stood at the few Houses on the Way, of whom they killed sixteen or seventeen, and set all those Houses on Fire, but did not meddle with the Women or Children

By that Time the Men got to the Shore again with the Pinnace our Men began to appear, they came dropping in, some and some not in two Bodies, and in Form as they went, but all in Heaps straggling here and there, in such a Manner, that a small Force of resolute Men might have cut them all off

But the Dread of them was upon the whole Country, and the Men were amaz'd, and surpris'd, and so frightened, I believe a hundred of them would have fled at the Sight of but five of our Men Nor in all this terrible Action was there a Man who made any considerable Defence, they were so surpris'd between the Terror of the Fire, and the sudden Attack of our Men in the Dark, that they knew not which

Way to turn themselves, for if they fled one Way, they were met by one Party, if back again, by another So that they were everywhere knocked down Nor did any of our Men receive the least hurt, except one who strained his Foot, and another had one of his Hands very much burnt.

I was very angry with my Nephew the Captain, and indeed with all the Men in my Mind, but with him in particular, as well for his acting so out of his Duty as Commander of the Ship, and having the Charge of the Voyage upon him, as in his prompting rather than cooling the Rage of his Men in so bloody and cruel an Enterprise My Nephew answer'd me very respectfully, but told me, that when he saw the Body of the poor Seaman, whom they had murder'd in such a cruel and barbarous manner, he was not Master of himself, neither could he govern his Passion He owned, he should not have done so, as he was Commander of the Ship, but as he was a Man, and Nature moved him, he could not bear it. As for the rest of the Men, they were not subject to me at all, and they knew it well enough, so they took no notice of my Dishke

The next Day we set sail, so we never heard any more of it Our Men differ'd in the Account of the Number they killed Some said one Thing, some another, but according to the best of their Accounts put all together, they killed or destroy'd about 150 People, Men, Women, and Children, and left not a House standing in the Town

As for the poor Fellow *Tho Jeffry*, as he was quite dead, for his Throat was so cut, that his Head was half off, it would do him no Service to bring him away, so they left him where they found him, only took him down from the Tree where he was hanged by one Hand

However just our Men thought this Action, I was against them in it, and I always, after that Time, told them, God would blast the Voyage, for I looked upon all the Blood they shed that Night to be Murder in them For though it is true, that they had killed *Tho Jeffry*, yet it was as true that *Jeffry* was the Aggressor, had broken the Truce, and had violated or debauch'd a young Woman of theirs who came down to them innocently, and on the Faith of their public Capitulation.

The Boatswain defended this Quarrel when we were afterwards on board He said, It is true that we seemed to break the Truce, but really had not, and that the War was begun the Night before by the Natives themselves, who had shot us, and killed one of our Men

without any just Provocation, so that as we were in a Capacity to fight them now, we might also be in a Capacity to do ourselves Justice upon them in an extraordinary Manner, that though the poor Man had taken a little Liberty with a Wench, he ought not to have been murder'd, and that in such a villanous Manner and that they did nothing but what was just, and what the Laws of God allow'd to be done to Murderers

One would think this should have been enough to have warned us against going on Shore among Heathens and Barbarians But it is impossible to make Mankind wise, but at their own Expense, and their Experience seems to be always of most Use to them when it is dearest bought.

We are now bound to the Gulf of *Persia*, and from thence to the Coast of *Coromandel*, only to touch at *Surrat* But the chief of the Supercargo's Design lay at the Bay of *Bengal*, where if he missed of his Business outward bound, he was to go up to *Cluna*, and return to the Coast as he came Home

The first Disaster that befel us, was in the Gulf of *Persia*, where five of our Men venturing on Shore on the *Arabian* Side of the Gulf, were surrounded by the *Arabians*, and either all killed or carry'd away into Slavery, the rest of the Boat's Crew were not able to rescue them, and had but just Time to get off their Boat. I began to upbraid them with the just Retribution of Heaven in this Case But the Boatswain very warmly told me, he thought I went farther in my Censures than I could show any Warrant for in Scripture, and referr'd to the 13 St. *Luke*, Verse 4th, where our Saviour intimates, that those Men, on whom the Tower of *Siloam* fell, were not Sinners above all the *Galileans* But that which indeed put me to Silence in the Case, was, That not one of these five Men, who were now lost, were of the Number of those who went on Shore to the Massacre of *Madagascar*, (so I always call'd it, though our Men could not bear the Word Massacre w<sup>th</sup> any Patience) And indeed, this last Circumstance, as I have said, put me to Silence for the present.

But my frequent preaching to them on this Subject had worse Consequences than I expected, and the Boatswain, who had been the Head of the Attempt, came up boldly to me one Time, and told me he found that I continually brought that Affair upon the Stage, that I made unjust Reflections upon it, and had used the Men very ill on that Account, and himself in particular, that as I was but a

Passenger, and had no Command in the Ship, or Concern in the Voyage, they were not oblig'd to bear it, that they did not know, but I might have some ill Design in my Head, and perhaps to call them to Account for it, when they came to *England*, and that therefore, unless I would resolve to have done with it, and also, not to concern myself any farther with him, or any of his Affairs, he would leave the Ship, for he did not think it was safe to sail with me among them.

I heard him patiently enough till he had done, and then told him that I did confess I had all along oppos'd the *Massacre of Madagascar* for such I would always call it; and that I had on all Occasions spoken my Mind freely about it, though not more upon him than any of the rest. That as to my having no Command in the Ship, that was true, nor did I exercise any Authority, only took my Liberty of speaking my Mind in Things which publicly concern'd us all, and what Concern I had in the Voyage was none of his Business, that I was a considerable Owner of the Ship, and in that Claim I conceiv'd I had a Right to speak even farther than I had yet done, and would not be accountable to him or any one else, and begun to be a little warm with him. He made but little Reply to me at that Time, and I thought that Affair had been over. We were at this Time in the Road at *Bengal*, and being willing to see the Place, I went on Shore with the Supercargo in the Ship's Boat, to divert myself, and towards Evening was preparing to go on Board, when one of the Men came to me, and told me, he would not have me trouble myself to come down to the Boat, for they had Orders not to carry me on Board any more. Any one may guess what a Surprise I was in at so insolent a Message, and I asked the Man, who bade him deliver that Errand to me? He told me, the Coxswain. I said no more to the Fellow, but bade him let them know he had deliver'd his Message, and that I had given him no Answer to it.

I immediately went and found out the Supercargo, and told him the Story, adding what I presently foresaw, (*viz*) That there would certainly be a Mutiny in the Ship, and entreated him to go immediately on Board the Ship in an *Indian* Boat, and acquaint the Captain of it. But I might have spared this Intelligence, for before I had spoken to him on Shore, the Matter was effected on Board. The Boatswain, the Gunner, the Carpenter, and in a Word, all the Inferior Officers, as soon as I was gone off in the Boat, came up to the Quarter-Deck, and desir'd to speak with the Captain, and there

the Boatswain making a long Harangue, for the Fellow talked very well, and repeating all he had said to me, told the Captain in few Words, That as I was now gone peaceably on Shore, they were loth to use any Violence with me, which, if I had not gone on Shore, they would otherwise have done, to oblige me to have gone. They therefore thought fit to tell him, That as they shipp'd themselves to serve in the Ship under his Command, they would perform it well and faithfully. But if I would not quit the Ship, or the Captain oblige me to quit it, they would all leave the Ship, and sail no farther with him; and at that Word, ALL, he turned his Face about towards the Main mast, which was it seems the Signal agreed on between them, at which, all the Seamen being got together, they cried out, *One* and ALL, *One* and ALL.

My Nephew, the Captain, was a Man of Spirit, and of great Presence of Mind, and though he was surpris'd, you may be sure, at the Thing, yet he told them calmly, that he would consider of the Thing, but that he could do nothing in it till he had spoken to me about it. He used some Arguments with them, to show them the Unreasonableness and Injustice of the Thing. But it was all in vain they swore and shook Hands round before his Face, that they would go all on Shore, unless he would engage to them, not to suffer me to come any more on Board the Ship.

This was a hard Article upon him, who knew his Obligation to me and did not know how I might take it, so he began to talk cavalierly to them, told them that I was a very considerable Oyner of the Ship and that in Justice he could not put me out of my own House; that this was next Door to serving me, as the famous Pirate *Kid* had done who made the Mutiny in a Ship, set the Captain on Shore in an uninhabited Island, and run away with the Ship, that let them go into what Ship they would, if ever they came to *England* again, it would cost them dear, that the Ship was mine, and that he could not put me out of it, and that he would rather lose the Ship and the Voyage too, than disoblige me so much, so they might do as they pleased. However, he would go on Shore, and talk with me on Shore, and invited the Boatswain to go with me, and perhaps they might accommodate the Matter with me.

But they all rejected the Proposal, and said, they would have nothing to do with me any more, neither on Board or on Shore; and if I came on Board, they would all go on Shore. Well, said I.

Captain, if you are all of this Mind, let me go on Shore and talk with him; so away he came to me with this Account, a little after the Message had been brought to me from the Coxswain

I was very glad to see my Nephew, I must confess, for I was not without Apprehensions, that they would confine him by Violence, set Sail, and run away with the Ship, and then I had been stripped naked in a remote Country, and nothing to help myself In short, I had been in a worse Case, than when I was all alone in the Island

But they had not come that length, it seems, to my great satisfaction, and when my Nephew told me what they had said to him, and how they had sworn, and shook Hands, that they would *one* and *all* leave the Ship, if I was suffer'd to come on Board, I told him, he should not be concern'd at it at all, for I would stay on Shore I only desir'd he would take Care and send me all my necessary Things on Shore, and leave me a sufficient Sum of Money, and I would find my Way to *England*, as well as I could

This was a heavy Piece of News to my Nephew, but there was no Way to help it, but to comply with it So, in short, he went on Board the Ship again, and satisfy'd the Men, that his Uncle had yielded to their Importunity, and had sent for his Goods from on Board the Ship, so that Matter was over in a very few Hours, the Men return'd to their Duty, and I began to consider what Course I should steer

I was now alone in the remotest Part of the World, *as I think I may call it*, for I was near three thousand Leagues by Sea farther off from *England*, than I was at my Island, only it is true, I might travel here by Land over the Great Mogul's Country to *Surat*, might go from thence to *Bassora* by Sea, up the Gulf of *Persia*, and from thence might take the Way of the Caravans over the Desert of *Arabia* to *Aleppo* and *Scanderoon*, from thence by Sea again to *Italy*, and so over Land into *France*, and this put together might be, at least, a full Diameter of the Globe, but if it were to be measur'd, I suppose it would appear to be a great deal more.

I had another Way before me, which was to wait for some *English* Ships, which were coming to *Bengal* from *Achin* on the Island of *Sumatra*, and get Passage on Board them for *England* But as I came hither without any Concern with the *English East-India Company*, so it would be difficult to go from hence without their Licence, unless with great Favour of the Captains of the Ships, or of the Company's Factors, and to both, I was an utter Stranger.

Here I had the particular Pleasure, speaking by Contraries, to see the Ship set sail without me, a Treatment I think a Man in my Circumstances scarce ever met with, except from Pirates running away with a Ship, and setting those that would not agree with their Villany, on Shore. Indeed this was next Door to it, both Ways; however, my Nephew left me two Servants, or rather one Companion, and one Servant, the first was Clerk to the Purser, who he engag'd to go with me, and the other was his own Servant, I took me also a good Lodging in the House of an *Englishwoman*, where several Merchants lodged, some *French*, two *Italians*, or rather *Jews*, and one *Englishman*. Here I was handsomely enough entertain'd, and that I might not be said to run rashly upon anything, I stayed here above nine Months, considering what Course to take, and how to manage myself, I had some *English* Goods with me of Value, and a considerable Sum of Money, my Nephew furnishing me with a thousand Pieces of Eight, and a Letter of Credit for more, if I had Occasion, that I might not be straiten'd whatever might happen.

I quickly dispos'd of my Goods, and to Advantage too, and, as I originally intended, I bought here some very good Diamonds, which, of all other Things, was the most proper for me in my present Circumstances, because I might always carry my whole Estate about me.

After a long Stay here, and many Proposals made for my Return to *England*, but none falling out to my Mind, the *English* Merchant who lodged with me, and with whom I had contracted an intimate Acquaintance, came to me one Morning. Countryman, says he, I have a Project to communicate to you, which, as it suits with my Thoughts, may for aught I know, suit with yours also, when you shall have thoroughly consider'd it.

Here we are posted, says he, you by Accident, and I by my own Choice, in a Part of the World very remote from our own Country but it is in a Country, where, by us who understand Trade and Business, a great deal of Money is to be got. If you will put thousand Pound to my thousand Pound, we will hire a Ship here, the first we can get to our Minds, you shall be Captain, I'll be Merchant and we will go a trading Voyage to *China*; for what should we stand still for? The whole World is in motion, rolling round and round, all the Creatures of God, heavenly Bodies and earthly, are busy and diligent, Why should we be idle? There are no Drones in the World but Men, Why should we be of that Number?

I liked his Proposal very well, and the more, because it seemed to be express'd with so much good Will, and in so friendly a Manner I will not say, but that I might by my loose and unhing'd Circumstances be the fitter to embrace a Proposal for Trade, or indeed for anything else, whereas, otherwise, Trade was none of my Element. However, I might perhaps say with some Truth, that if Trade was not my Element, Rambling was, and no Proposal for seeing any Part of the World which I never had seen before, could possibly come amiss to me.

It was however, some Time before we could get a Ship to our Minds, and when we had got a Vessel, it was not easy to get *English* Sailors, that is to say, so many as were necessary to govern the Voyage, and manage the Sailors which we should pick up there. After some Time we got a Mate, a Boatswain, and a Gunner *English*, a *Dutch* Carpenter, and three *Portuguese* Foremast Men, with these we found we could do well enough, having *Indian* Seamen, such as they are, to make up

There are so many Travellers, who have wrote the History of their Voyages and Travels this Way, that it would be very little Diversion to anybody, to give a long Account of the Places we went to, and the People who inhabit there, those Things I leave to others, and refer the Reader to those Journals and Travels of *Englishmen*, of which many I find are publish'd, and more promis'd every Day, it is enough to me to tell you, That I made this Voyage to *Achin*, in the Island of *Sumatra*, and from thence to *Siam*, where we exchange'd some of our Wares for Opium, and some Arrack, the first, a Commodity which bears a great Price among the *Chinese*, and which at that Time, was very much wanted there. In a Word, we went up to *Suskan*, made a very great Voyage; was eight Months out, and return'd to *Bengal*, and I was very well satisfy'd with my Adventure. I observe that our People in *England*, often admire how the Officers which the Company send into *India*, and the Merchants which generally stay there, get such very great Estates as they do, and sometimes come home worth 60, 70 to 100 thousand Pound at a Time.

But it is no Wonder, or at least we shall see so much farther into it, when we consider the innumerable Ports and Places where they have a free Commerce, that it will then be no Wonder, and much less will it be so, when we consider, that at all those Places and Ports where the *English* Ships come, there is so much, and such constant



Demand for the Growth of all other Countries, that there is a certain Vent for the Returns, as well as a Market abroad, for the Goods carried out.

In short, we made a very good Voyage, and I got so much Money by the first Adventure, and such an Insight into the Method of getting more, that had I been twenty Year younger, I should have been tempted to have stayed here and sought no farther, for making my Fortune, but what was all this, to a Man on the wrong Side of threescore, that was rich enough, and came abroad, more in Obedience to a restless Desire of seeing the World, than a covetous Desire of getting in it, and indeed I think, it is with great Justice, that I now call it a restless Desire for it was so, when I was at Home, I was restless to go abroad, and now I was abroad, I was restless to be at Home. I say, what was this Gain to me? I was rich enough, nor had I any uneasie Desires about getting more Money, and therefore the Profits of the Voyage to me were Things of no great Force, for the prompting me forward to farther Undertakings, and I thought that by this Voyage I had made no Progress at all, because I was come back as I might call it, to the Place from whence I came as to a Home, whereas, my Eye, which like that which *Solomon* speaks of, *was never satisfied with Seeing*, was still more desirous of Wandering and Seeing, I was come into a Part of the World, which I was never in before, and that Part in particular, which I had heard much of, and was resolv'd to see as much of as I could, and then I thought, I might say, I had seen all the World, that was worth seeing.

But my Fellow Traveller and I, had different Notions, I do not name this, to insist upon my own, for I acknowledg'd his were the most just and the most suited to the end of a Merchant's Life, who, when he is abroad upon Adventures, it is his Wisdom to stick to that as the best Thing for him, which he is like to get the most Money by. My new Friend kept himself to the Nature of the Thing, and would have been content to have gone like a Carrier's Horse, always to the same Inn, backward and forward, provided he could, as he called it, *find his Account in it*, on the other Hand, mine was the Notion of a mad rambling Boy, that never cares to see a Thing twice over.

But this was not all, I had a Kind of Impatience upon me to be nearer Home, and yet the most unsettled Resolution imaginable which Way to go, in the Interval of these Consultations, my Friend, who was always upon the Search for Business, propos'd another

Voyage to me among the Spice Islands, and to bring Home a Load-  
ing of Cloves from the *Manillas*, or thereabouts, Places where  
indeed the *Dutch* do trade, but Islands, belonging partly to the  
*Spaniards*, though we went not so far, but to some other, where they  
have not the whole Power, as they have at *Batavia*, *Ceylon*, &c.  
We were not long in preparing for this Voyage, the chief Difficulty was  
in bringing me to come into it, however, at last nothing else offering,  
and finding that really stirring about and trading, the Profit being  
so great, and as I may say certain, had more Pleasure in it, and more  
Satisfaction to the Mind than sitting still, which to me especially,  
was the unhappiest Part of Life I resolv'd on his Voyage too,  
which we made very successfully, touching at *Borneo*, and several  
Islands, whose Names I do not remember, and came Home in about  
five Months, we sold our Spice, which was chiefly Cloves, and  
some Nutmegs, to the *Persian* Merchants, who carry'd them away  
for the Gulf and making near five of one, we really got a great  
deal of Money

My Friend, when we made up this Account smiled at me; well  
now, said he, with a Sort of agreeable insulting my indolent  
Temper, is not this better than walking about here, like a Man of  
*nothing to do*, and spending our Time in staring at the Nonsense and  
Ignorance of the Pagans? Why truly, says I, my Friend, I think it is,  
and I begin to be a Convert to the Principles of Merchandising,  
but I must tell you, said I, by the Way, you do not know what I am  
a-doing, for if once I conquer my backwardness, and embark heartily,  
as old as I am, I shall harass you up and down the World, till I  
tire you, for I shall pursue it so eagerly, I shall never let you lie  
still.

But to be short with my Speculations, a little while after this, there  
came in a *Dutch* Ship from *Batavia*, she was a Coaster, not an  
*European* Trader, and of about two hundred Ton Burden The Men,  
as they pretended, having been so sickly, that the Captain had not  
Men enough to go to Sea with, he lay by at *Bengal*, and having it  
seems got Money enough, or being willing for other Reasons, to go  
for *Europe*, he gave public Notice, that he would sell his Ship This  
came to my Ears before my new Partner heard of it, and I had a  
great Mind to buy it, so I goes Home to him, and told him of it  
He considered awhile, for he was no rash Man neither, but musing  
some Time, he reply'd, she is a little too big, but however, we will

have her, accordingly we bought the Ship, and agreeing with the Master, we paid for her, and took Possession, when we had done so, we resolv'd to entertain the men if we could, to join them with those we had, for the pursuing our Business, but on a sudden, they having receiv'd not their Wages, but their Share of the Money, not one of them was to be found, we inquir'd much about them, and at length were told, that they were all gone together by Land to *Agra*, the great City of the *Mogul's* Residence, and from thence were to travel to *Surat*, and so by Sea, to the Gulf of *Persia*

Nothing had so heartily troubled me a good while, as that I missed the Opportunity of going with them, for such a Ramble I thought, and in such Company, as would both have guarded me and diverted me, would have suited mightily with my great Design, and I should both have seen the World, and gone homewards too, but I was much better satisfied a few Days after, when I came to know what sort of Fellows they were, for in short their History was, that this Man they called Captain was the Gunner only, not the Commander, that they had been a trading Voyage, in which, they were attack'd on Shore, by some of the *Malayans*, who had killed the Captain, and three of his Men, and that after the Captain was killed, these Men, eleven in Number, had resolv'd to run away with the Ship, which they did, and brought her in at the Bay of *Bengal*, leaving the Mate and five Men more on Shore, of whom, we shall hear farther

Well, let them come by the Ship how they would, we came honestly by her, as we thought, though we did not I confess, examine into Things so exactly as we ought, for we never inquir'd anything of the Seamen, who, if we had examin'd, would certainly have falter'd in their Account, contradicted one another, and perhaps contradicted themselves, or onehow or other, we should have seen Reason to have suspected them, but the Man showed us a Bill of Sale for the Ship, to one *Emanuel Clostershoven*, or some such Name, for I suppose it was all a Forgery, and called himself by that Name, and we could not contradict him, and being withal a little too unwary, or at least, having no Suspicion of the Thing, we went through with our Bargain.

We picked up some more *English* Seamen here after this, and some *Dutch*, and now we resolv'd for a second Voyage, to the South East for Cloves, &c., that is to say, among the *Philippine* and *Malacca* Isles, and in short, not to fill this Part of my Story with Trifles,

When what is yet to come, is so remarkable, I spent from first to last six Years in this Country, trading from Port to Port, backward and forward, and with very good Success; and was now the last Year with my new Partner, going in the Ship above-mention'd, on a Voyage to *China*; but designing first to *Siam*, to buy Rice.

In this Voyage, being by contrary Winds oblig'd to beat up and down a great while in the Straits of *Malacca*, and among the Islands, we were no sooner got clear of those difficult Seas, but we found our Snip had sprung a Leak, and we were not able by all our Industry to find it out where it was. This forced us to make for some Port, and my Partner, who knew the Country better than I did, directed the Captain to put into the River of *Cambodia*, for I had made the English Mate, one Mr. Thomson, Captain, not being willing to take the Charge of the Ship upon myself. This River lies on the North Side of the great Bay or Gulf, which goes up to *Siam*.

While we were here, and going often on Shore for Refreshment, there comes to me one Day an *Englishman*, and he was it seems, a Gunner's Mate, on board an *English East-India Ship*, which rode in the same River, up at, or near the City of *Cambodia*, what brought him hither we know not, but he comes up to me, and speaking *English*. Sir, says he, you are a Stranger to me, and I to you; but I have something to tell you, that very nearly concerns you.



I looked steadily at him a good while, and thought at first I had known him, but I did not, if it very nearly concerns me, said I, and not yourself, what moves you to tell it me? I am moved, says he, by the imminent Danger you are in, and for aught I see, you have no Knowledge of it, I know no Danger I am in, said I, but that my Ship is leaky, and I cannot find it out, but I purpose to lay her a-Ground to-Morrow, to see if I can find it, but Sir, says he, leaky, or not leaky, find it, or not find it, you will be wiser than to lay your Ship on Shore to-Morrow, when you hear what I have to say to

you, do you know Sir, said he, the Town of *Cambodia* lies about fifteen Leagues up this River? And there are two large *English* Ships about five Leagues on this side, and three *Dutch*, well, said I, and what is that to me? Why Sir, said he, is it for a Man that is upon such Adventures as you are upon, to come into a Port, and not examine first what Ships there are there, and whether he is able to deal with them? I suppose you do not think you are a Match for them. I was amus'd very much at his Discourse, but not amaz'd at it, for I could not conceive what he meant, and I turned short upon him and said, Sir, I wish you would explain yourself, I cannot imagine what Reason I have to be afraid of any Company of Ships, or *Dutch* Ships; I am no Interloper, what can they have to say to me?

He looked like a Man half angry, half pleased, and pausing awhile, but smiling, well, Sir, says he, if you think yourself secure, you must take your Chance, I am sorry your Fate should blind you against good Advice, but assure yourself, if you do not put to Sea immediately, you will the very next Tide be attack'd by five Long-Boats full of Men, and perhaps if you are taken, you'll be hanged for a Pirate, and the Particulars be examin'd afterwards. I thought, Sir, added he, I should have met with a better Reception than this, for doing you a Piece of Service of such Importance. I can never be ungrateful, said I, for any Service, or to any Man that offers me any Kindness, but it is past my Comprehension, said I, what they should have such a Design upon me for, however, since you say, there is no Time to be lost, and that there is some villanous Design in Hand against me; I'll go on board this Minute, and put to sea immediately, if my Men can stop the Leak, or if we can swim without stopping it. But, Sir, said I, shall I go away ignorant of the Reason of all this? Can you give me no farther Light into it?

I can tell you but Part of the Story, Sir, says he, but I have a *Dutch* Seaman here with me, and I believe I could persuade him to tell you the rest, but there is scarce Time for it. But the Short of the Story is this, the first Part of which, I suppose, you know well enough, (viz) that you was with this Ship at *Sumatra*, that there your Captain was murder'd by the *Mahyars*, with three of his Men, and that you or some of those who were on board with you, ran away with the Ship and are since turned *PIRATES*, this is the Sum of the Story, and you will be all seized as Pirates I can assure you, and executed, with very

little Ceremony ; for you know, Merchants' Ships show but little Law to Pirates, if they get them into their Power

Now you speak plain *English*, said I, and I thank you, and though I know nothing, that we have done, like what you talk of, but am sure we came honestly and fairly by the Ship, yet seeing such Work is a-doing as you say, and that you seem to mean honestly, I'll be upon my Guard. Nay, Sir, says he, do not talk of being upon your guard ; the best Defence, is to be out of the Danger, if you have any Regard to your Life, and the Lives of all your Men, put out to Sea without sail at High Water, and as you have a whole Tide before you, you will be gone too far out before they can come down, for they came away at High Water, and as they have twenty Miles to come, you get near two Hours of them, by the Difference of the Tide, not reckoning the Length of the Way, besides, as they are only Boats, and not Ships, they will not venture to follow you far out to Sea, especially if it blows

Well, says I, you have been very kind in this, what shall I do for you, to make you amends ? Sir, says he, you may not be so willing to make me any amends, because you may not be convinc'd of the Truth of it I'll make an Offer to you, I have nineteen Months' Pay due to me, on board the Ship ——— which I came out of *England* in, and the *Dutchman* that is with me has seven Months' Pay due to him, if you will make good our Pay to us, we will go along with you, if you find nothing more in it, we will desire no more, but if we do convince you, that we have saved your Lives, and the Ship, and the Lives of all the Men in her, we will leave the rest to you.

I consented to this readily, and went immediately on board, and the two Men with me, as soon as I came to the Ship Side, my Partner who was on Board, came out on the Quarter-Deck, and called to me with a great deal of Joy, *O ho ! O ho ! we have stopp'd the leak ! we have stopp'd the leak !* Say you so, said I, thank God, but weigh the Anchor then immediately, weigh ! says he, what do you mean by that ? What is the Matter ? says he Ask no Questions, says I, but all Hands to work, and weigh, without losing a Minute ; he was surpris'd, but however, he called the Captain, and he immediately ordered the Anchor to be got up, and though the Tide was not quite done, yet a little Land Breeze blowing, we stood out to Sea, then I called him into the Cabin, and told him the Story at large,

and we called in the Men, and they told us the rest of it, but as it took us up a great deal of Time, so before we had done, a Seaman comes to the Cabin Door, and calls out to us, that the Captain bad him tell us, we were chased, chased, *says I*, by who, and by what? By five Sloops or Boats, says the Fellow, full of Men, very well, *said I*, then it is apparent there is something in it, in the next Place I order'd all our Men to be called up, and told them, that there was a Design to Seize the Ship, and to take us for Pirates, and asked them, if they would stand by us, and by one another, the Men answer'd cheerfully, that one and all, they would live and die with us. Then I asked the Captain, what Way he thought best for us to manage a Fight with them, for resist them I was resolv'd we would, and that, to the last Drop, he said readily, That the Way was to keep them off with our great Shot, as long as we could, and then to fire at them with our small Arms as long as we could, but when neither of these would do any longer, we should retire to our close Quarters, perhaps they had not Materials to break open our Bulk-Heads, or get in upon us.

The Gunner had in the meantime, Order to bring two Guns to bear fore and aft out of the Steerage, to clear the Deck, and load them with Musket Bullets and small Pieces of old Iron, and what next came to Hand, and thus we made ready for Fight, but all this while we kept out to Sea, with Wind enough, and could see the Boats at a Distance, being five large *Long-Boats*, following us with all the sail they could make.

Two of those Boats, which by our Glasses we could see were *English*, out-sailed the rest, were near two Leagues a-Head of them, and guned upon us considerably, so that we found they would come up with us, upon which, we fired a Gun without Ball, to intimate, that they should bring to, and we put out a Flag of Truce, as a Signal for Parley, but they kept crowding after us, till they came within Shot. When we took in our White Flag, they having made no Answer to it, hung out a red Flag, and fired at them with a Shot. Notwithstanding this, they came on, till they were near enough to call to them with a speaking Trumpet, which we had on Board, so we called to them, and bid them keep off at their Peril.

It was all one, they crowded after us, and endeavoured to come under our Stern, so to board us on our Quarter, upon which, seeing they were resolute for Mischief, and depended upon the Strength that

followed them, I ordered to bring the Ship to, so that they lay upon our Broadside, when immediately we fired five Guns at them, one of which had been levelled so true, as to carry away the Stern of the hindermost Boat, and bring them to the Necessity of taking down their Sail, and running all to the Head of the Boat to keep her from sinking, so she lay by, and had enough of it, but seeing the foremost Boat crowd on after us, we made ready to fire at her in particular

While this was doing, one of the three Boats that was behind, being forwarder than the other two, made up to the Boat which we had disabled, to relieve her, and we could afterwards see her take out the Men, we called again to the foremost Boat, and offer'd a Truce to parley again, and to know what was her Business with us, but had no Answer, only she crowded close under our Stern, upon this our Gunner, who was a very dexterous Fellow, run out his two Chase-Guns and fired again at her, but the shot missing, the Men in the Boat shouted, waved their Caps, and came on, but the Gunner getting quickly ready again, fired among them the second Time, one Shot of which, though it missed the Boat itself, yet fell in among the Men, and we could easily see, had done a great deal of Mischief among them, but we taking no Notice of that, wared the Ship again, and brought our Quarter to bear upon them, and firing three Guns more, we found the Boat was split almost to Pieces, in particular, her Rudder, and a Piece of her Stern was shot quite away, so they handed their Sail immediately, and were in great Disorder, but to complete their misfortune, our Gunner let fly two Guns at them again, where he hit them we could not tell, but we found the Boat was sinking, and some of the Men already in the Water, upon this, I immediately Manned out our Pinnace, which we had kept close by our Side, with Orders to pick up some of the Men if they could, and save them from drowning, and immediately to come on board with them, because we saw the rest of the Boats began to come up, our Men in the Pinnace followed their Orders, and took up three Men, one of which was just drowning, and it was a good while before we could recover him, as soon as they were on Board, we crowded all the Sail we could make, and stood farther out to Sea, and we found that when the other three Boats came up to the first two, they gave over their Chase.

Being thus deliver'd from a Danger, which though I knew not the Reason of it, yet seemed to be much greater than I apprehended, I took Care that we would change our Course, and not let any one



imagine whither we were going, so we stood out to Sea Eastward, quite out of the Course of all *European* Ships, whether they were bound to *China*, or anywhere else, within the Commerce of the *European* Nations

When we were now at Sea, we began to consult with the two Sea men, and inquire first what the Meaning of all this should be, and the *Dutchman* let us into the Secret of it at once, telling us that the Fellow that sold us the Ship, *as we said*, was no more than a Thief, that had run away with her. Then he told us, how the Captain, whose Name too he told us, though I do not remember, was treacherously murdered by the Natives on the Coast of *Malacca*, with three of his Men, and that he, this *Dutchman*, and four more, got into the Woods, where they wandered about a great while, till at length, he in particular, in a miraculous Manner made his Escape, and swam off to a *Dutch* Ship, which sailing near the Shore, in its way from *China*, had sent their Boat on Shore for fresh Water, that he durst not come to that Part of the Shore where the Boat was, but shift in the Night, to take the Water farther off, and the Ship's Boat took him up

He then told us, that he went to *Batavia*, where two of the Seamen belonging to the Ship arriv'd, having deserted the rest in their Travels, and gave an Account, that the Fellow who had run away with the Ship, sold her at *Bengal*, to a Set of Pirates, which were gone a Cruising in her, and that they had already taken an *English* Ship, and two *Dutch* Ships very richly laden

This latter Part we found to concern us directly, and though we knew it to be false, yet as my Partner said very well, if we had fallen into their Hands, and they had had such a Prepossession against us beforehand, it had been in vain for us to have defended ourselves, or to hope for any good Quarter at their Hands, and especially considering that our Accusers had been our Judges, and that we could have expected nothing from them, but what Rage would have dictated, and an ungovern'd Passion have executed, and therefore it was his Opinion, we should go directly back to *Bengal*, from whence we came, without putting in at any Port whatever; because there we could give a good Account of ourselves, could prove where we were when the Ship put in, who we bought her of, and the like; and which was more than all the rest, if we were put to the Necessity of bringing it before the proper Judges, we should

be sure to have some Justice, and not be hanged first, and judged afterwards.

I was sometime of my Partner's Opinion, but after a little more serious thinking, I told him, I thought it was a very great Hazard for us to attempt returning to *Bengal*, for that we were on the wrong Side of the Straits of *Maacca*, and that if the Alarm was given, we should be sure to be Waylaid on every Side, as well by the *Dutch* of *Batavia*, as the *English* elsewhere, that if we should be taken, as it were, running away, we should even condemn ourselves, and there would want no more Evidence to destroy us, I also asked the *English* Sailor's Opinion, who said, he was of my Mind, and that we should certainly be taken.

This Danger a little startled my Partner and all the Ship's Company, and we immediately resolv'd to go away to the Coast of *Tongun*, and so on to the Coast of *China*, and pursuing the first Design as to Trade, find some Way or other to dispose of the Ship, and come back in some of the Vessels of the Country, such as we could get. This was approv'd of as the best Method for our Security, and accordingly we steered away N N.E., keeping above fifty Leagues off from the usual Course to the Eastward.

This however put us to some Inconveniences, for first the Winds, when we came to the Distance from the Shore, seemed to be more steadily against us, blowing almost Trade, *as we call it*, from the East, and E.N.E. so that we were a long while upon our Voyage, and we were but ill provided with Victuals for so long a Voyage, and which was still worse, there was some Danger that those *English* and *Dutch* Ships, whose Boats pursu'd us, whereof some were bound that Way, might be got in before us, and if not, some other Ship, bound to *China*, might have Information of us from them, and pursue us with the same Vigour.

I must confess I was now very uneasy, and thought myself, including the late Escape from the Long-Boats, to have been in the most dangerous Condition that ever I was in through all my past Life; or whatever ill Circumstances I had been in, I was never pursu'd for a Thief before, nor had I ever done anything that merited the Name of Dishonest or Fraudulent, much less Thievish. I had chiefly been my own Enemy, or as I may rightly say, I had been nobody's Enemy but my own. But now I was embarrass'd in the worst Condition imaginable, for though I was perfectly innocent, I was in no Condition to make that Innocence appear. And if I had been taken,

it had been under a suppos'd Guilt of the worst Kind; at least, a Crime esteem'd so among the People I had to do with

This made me very anxious to make an Escape, though, which Way to do it, I knew not, or what Port or Place we should go to My Partner seeing me thus dejected, though he was the most concern'd at first, began to encourage me, and describing to me the several Ports of that Coast, told me he would put in on the Coast of *Cochinchina*, or the Bay of *Tonquin*, intending to go afterwards to *Maao*, a Town once in the Possession of the *Portuguese*, and where still a great many *European* Families resided, and particularly the Missionary Priests usually went thither, in order to their going forward to *China*

Hither then we resolv'd to go, and accordingly, though after a tedious and irregular Course, and very much straitened for Provisions, we came within Sight of the Coast very early in the Morning, and upon Reflection upon the past Circumstances we were in, and the Danger if we had not escap'd, we resolv'd to put into a small River, which however had a Depth enough of Water for us, and to see if we could, either over Land, or by the Ship's Pinnaçe, come to know what Ships were in any Port thereabouts This happy Step was indeed our Deliverance, for though we did not immediately see any *European* Ships in the Bay of *Tonquin*, yet the next Morning there came into the Bay two *Dutch Ships*, and a third without any Colours spread out, but which we believ'd to be a *Dutchman* passed by at about two Leagues' Distance, steering for the Coast of *China*; and in the Afternoon went by two *English Ships* steering the same Course, and thus, we thought, we saw ourselves beset with Enemies, both one Way or other The Place we were in was wild and barbarous, the People Thieves, even by Occupation or Profession, and though it is true we had not much to seek of them, and except getting a few Provisions, cared not how little we had to do with them, yet it was with much Difficulty that we kept ourselves from being insulted by them, several Ways

We were in a small River of this Country, within a few Leagues of its utmost Limits Northward, and by our Boat we coasted North-East to the Point of Land, which opens the great Bay of *Tonquin*, and it was in this beaung up along the Shore, that we discover'd, as above, that in a Word, we were surrounded with Enemies The People we were among, were the most barbarous of all the Inhabitants of the Coast, having no Correspondence with any other Nation, and bearing

only in Fish, and Oil, and such Gross Commodities, and it may be particularly seen, that they are, *as I said*, the most barbarous of any of the Inhabitants, (*viz*) that among other Customs they have this as one, (*viz*) That if any Vessel have the Misfortune to be shipwreck'd upon their Coast, they presently make their Men all Prisoners or Slaves, and it was not long before we found a spice of their Kindness this Way, on the Occasion following

I have observ'd above, that our Ship sprung a Leak at Sea, and that we could not find it out, and however, it happen'd, that as I have said, it was stopped unexpectedly in the happy Minute of our being to be seiz'd by the *Dutch* and *English* Ships in the Bay of *Siam*, yet as we did not find the Ship so perfectly fit and sound as we desir'd, we resolv'd, while we were in this Place, to lay her on Shore, take out what heavy Things we had on Board, which were not many, and to wash and clean her Bottom, and, if possible, to find out where the Leaks were

Accordingly, having lighten'd the Ship, and brought all our Guns and other moveable Things to one Side, we tried to bring her down, that we might come at her Bottom, but on second Thoughts we did not care to lay her dry on Ground, neither could we find out a proper Place for it.

The Inhabitants, who had never been acquainted with such a Sight, came wondering down to the Shore, to look at us, and seeing the Ship lie down on one side in such a manner, and heeling in towards the Shore, and not seeing our Men, who were at Work on her Bottom, with Stages and with their Boats on the off-side, they presently concluded that the Ship was cast away, and lay so fast on the Ground

On this Supposition they came all about us in two or three Hours' time, with ten or twelve large Boats, having some of them eight, some ten Men in a Boat, intending, no doubt, to have come on Board, and plunder'd the Ship, and if they had found us there, to have carry'd us away for Slaves to their King, or whatever they call him, for we knew nothing who was their Governor

When they came up to the Ship, and began to row round her, they discover'd us all hard at Work on the Outside of the Ship's bottom and side, washing, and graving, and stopping, as every Seafaring Man knows how

They stood for a while gazing at us, and we, who were a little sur-

pris'd, could not imagine what their Design was, but, being *willing to be sure*, we took this Opportunity to get some of us into the Ship, and others to hand down Arms and Ammunition to those that were at Work, to defend themselves with, if there should be Occasion, and it was no more that Need, for in less than a quarter of an Hour's Consultation, they agreed, it seems, that the Ship was really a Wreck, that we were all at Work endeavouring to save her, or to save our Lives by the Help of our Boats, and when we handed our Arms into the Boats, they concluded, by that motion, that we were endeavouring to save some of our Goods, upon this they took it for granted we all belong'd to them, and away they came down upon our Men, as if it had been in a Line of Battle.

Our Men, seeing so many of them, began to be frighted, for we lay but in an ill Posture to fight, and cried out to us to know what they should do. I immediately called to the Men who worked upon the Stages, to slip them down, and get up the side into the Ship, and bade those in the Boat to row round and come on board, and those few of us, who were on board, worked with all the strength and hands we had, to bring the Ship to Rights, but however, neither the Men upon the Stages or those in the Boats, could do as they were order'd, before the *Cochinineses* were upon them, and two of their Boats boarded our Long-Boat, and began to lay hold of the Men as their Prisoners.

The first Man they laid hold of was an *English* Scaman, a stout strong Fellow, who having a Musket in his Hand, never offer'd to fire it, but laid it down in the Boat, *like a Fool, as I thought*. but he understood his Business better than I could teach him, for he grappled the Pagan, and dragged him by main Force out of their own Boat into ours, where, taking him by the two Ears, he beat his Head so against the Boat's Gunnel, that the Fellow died instantly in his Hands, and in the meantime, a *Dutchman*, who stood next, took up the Musket and with the Butt-end of it, so laid about him, that he knock'd down five of them, who attempted to enter the Boat. But this was doing little towards resisting thirty or forty Men, who fearless, because ignorant of their Danger, began to throw themselves into the Long Boat, where we had but five Men in all to defend it. But one Accident gave our Men a complete Victory, which deserv'd our Laughter rather than anything else, and that was this

Our Carpenter being preparing to grave the Outside of the Ship

as well as to pay the Seams, where he had caulked her to stop the Leaks, had got two Kettles just let down into the Boat, one filled with boiling Pitch, and the other with Rosin, Tallow, and Oil, and such Stuff as the Shipwrights use for that Work, and the Man that tended the Carpenter had a great Iron Ladle in his Hand, with which he supply'd the Men that were at Work with that hot Stuff, two of the Enemy's Men entered the Boat just where this Fellow stood, being in the Fore-sheets, he immediately saluted them with a Ladle full of the Stuff, boiling hot, which so burnt and scalded them, being half naked, that they roared out like two Bulls, and, enrag'd with the Fire, leaped both into the Sea. The Carpenter saw it, and cried out, Well done, *Jack*, give them some more of it, and stepping forward himself, takes one of their Mops, and dipping it in the Pitch-Pot, he and his Man threw it among them so plentifully that, in short, of all the Men in three Boats, there was not one that was not scalded and burnt with it in a most frightful pitiful Manner, and made such a Howling and Crying, that I never heard a worse Noise, and indeed nothing like it, for it is worth observing, That though Pain naturally makes all People cry out, yet every Nation has a particular Way of Exclamation, and make Noises as different from one another as their Speech, I cannot give the Noise these Creatures made a better Name than Howling, nor a Name more proper to the Tone of it, for I never heard anything more like the Noise of the Wolves, which as I have said, I heard howl in the Forest on the Frontiers of *Languedoc*

I was never pleas'd with a Victory better in my Life; not only as it was a perfect Surprise to me, and that our Danger was imminent before. But as we got this Victory without any Bloodshed, except of that Man the Fellow killed with his naked Hands, and which I was very much concern'd at, for I was sick of killing such poor savage Wretches, even though it was in my own Defence, knowing they came on Errands which they thought just, and knew no better, and that though it may be a just Thing, because necessary, for there is no necessary Wickedness in Nature, yet I thought it was a sad Life, which we must be always oblig'd to be killing our Fellow-Creatures to preserve our own, and indeed I think so still, and I would even now suffer a great deal, rather than I would take away the Life, even of that Person injuring me, And I believe, all considering People, who know the Value of Life, would be of my

Opinion, at least, they would, if they entered seriously into the Consideration of it.

But to return to my Story All the while this was doing, my Partner and I, who manag'd the rest of the Men on Board, had with great Dexterity brought the Ship almost to Rights, and having gotten the Guns into their Places again, the Gunner called to me to bid our Boat get out of the Way, for he would let fly among them I called back again to him, and bid him not offer to fire, for the Carpenter would do the Work without him, but bade him heat another Pitch-Kettle, which our Cook, who was on Board, took Care of But the Enemy were so terrify'd with what they had met with in their first Attack, that they would not come on again, and some of them that were farthest off, seeing the Ship swim, as it were upright, begun, as we supposed, to see their Mistake, and give over the Enterprise, finding it was not as they expected. Thus we got clear of this merry Fight, and having gotten some Rice, and some Roots, and Bread, with about sixteen good big Hogs on Board, two Days before, we resolv'd to stay here no longer, but go forward whatever came of it, for we made no Doubt but we should be surrounded the next Day with Rogues enough, perhaps more than our Pitch-Kettle would dispose of for us.

We therefore got all our Things on Board the same Evening, and the next Morning were ready to sail, in the meantime, lying at an Anchor at some Distance, we were not so much concern'd, being now in a fighting Posture, as well as in a sailing Posture, if any Enemy had presented The next Day having finish'd our Work within Board, and finding our Ship was perfectly healed of all her Leaks, we set Sail. We would have gone into the Bay of *Tonquin*; for we wanted to inform ourselves of what was to be known concerning the *Dutch* Ships that had been there; but we durst not stand in there, because we had seen several Ships go in, as we suppos'd, but a little before so we kept on N.E. towards the Isle of *Formosa*, as much afraid of being seen by a *Dutch* or *English* Merchant Ship, as a *Dutch* or *English* Merchant Ship in the *Mediterranean* is of an *Algerine* Man of War

When we were thus got to Sea, we kept out N.E. as if we would go to the *Maillas* or the *Philippine* Islands; and this we did, that we might not fall into the Way of any of our *European* Ships, and then we steer'd North till we came to the Latitude of 22 Degrees

30 Min , by which means we made the Island *Formosa* directly, where we came to an Anchor, in order to get Water and fresh Provisions, which the People there, who are very courteous and civil in their Manners, supplied us with willingly, and dealt very fairly and punctually with us in all their Agreements and Bargains , which is what we did not find among other People , and may be owing to the Remains of Christianity, which was once planted here by a *Dutch* Missionary of Protestants, and is a Testimony of what I have often observ'd, *viz* That the Christian Religion always civilizes the People, and reforms their Manners, where it is receiv'd, whether it works saving Effects upon them or no

From hence we sailed still North, keeping the Coast of *China* at an equal Distance, till we knew we were beyond all the Ports of *China*, where our *European* Ships usually come , being resolv'd, if possible, not to fall into any of their Hands, especially in this Country, where, as our Circumstances were, we could not fail of being entirely ruined , nay, so great was my Fear in particular, as to my being taken by them, that I believe firmly, I would much rather have chosen to fall into the Hands of the *Spanish Inquisition*

Being now come to the Latitude of 30 Degrees, we resolv'd to put into the first trading Port we should come at , and standing in for the Shore, a Boat came off two Leagues to us, with an old *Portuguese* Pilot on Board, who knowing us to be an *European* Ship, came to offer his Service, which indeed we were very glad of, and took him on Board , upon which, without asking us whither we would go, he dismiss'd the Boat he came in, and sent them back.

I thought it was now so much in our Choice, to make the old Man carry us whither we would , that I began to talk with him about carrying us to the Gulf of *Nankin*, which is the most Northern Part of the Coast of *China* The old Man said he knew the Gulf of *Nankin* very well , but smiling, asked us what we would do there ?

I told him, we would sell our Cargo, and purchase *China*-Wares, Calicoes, Raw-Silks, Tea, Wrought-Silks, &c, and so would return by the same Course we came He told us our best Port had been to have put in at *Macao*, where we could not have failed of a Market for our Opium, to our Satisfaction, and might for our Money have purchas'd all Sorts of *China*-Goods, as cheap as we could at *Nankin*

Not being able to put the old Man out of his Talk, of which he was very opinated or conceited, I told him, we were Gentlemen, as



well as Merchants, and that we had a Mind to go and see the great City of *Pekin*, and the famous Court of the Monarch of *China*. Why then, says the old Man, you should go to *Ningpo*, where, by the River which runs into the Sea there, you may go up within five Leagues of the *Great Canal*. This Canal is a navigable River, which goes through the Heart of that vast Empire of *China*, crosses all the Rivers, passes some considerable Hills by the Help of Sluices and Gates, and goes up to the City of *Pekin*, being in Length near 270 Leagues.

Well, said I, *Seignior Portuguese*, but that is not our Business now. The great Question is, If you can carry us up to the City of *Nankin*, from whence we can travel to *Pekin* afterwards? Yes, he said, he could do so very well, and that there was a great *Dutch Ship* gone up that Way just before. This gave me a little Shock, and a *Dutch Ship* was now our Terror, and we had much rather have met the Devil, at least, if he had not come in too frightful a Figure, and we depended upon it, that a *Dutch Ship* would be our Destruction, for we were in no Condition to fight them, all the Ships they trade with into those Parts being of great Burden, and of much greater Force than we were.

The old Man found me a little confus'd, and under some Concern, when he named a *Dutch Ship*, and said to me, Sir, you need be under no Apprehensions of the *Dutch*, I suppose they are not now at War with your Nation. No, says I, that's true, but I know not what Liberties Men may take when they are out of the Reach of the Law. Why, says he, *you are no Pirates*, what need you fear? They will not meddle with peaceable Merchants sure.

If I had any Blood in my Body that did not fly up into my Face at that Word, it was hinder'd by some Stop in the Vessels, appointed by Nature to prevent it, for it put me into the greatest Disorder and Confusion imaginable. Nor was it possible for me to conceal it so, but that the old Man easily perceiv'd it.

Sir, says he, I find you are in some Disorder in your Thoughts at my Talk, pray be pleased to go which Way you think fit, and depend upon it, I'll do you all the Service I can. Why, *Seignior*, said I, it is true I am a little unsettled in my Resolution at this Time whether to go in particular, and I am something more so, for what you say about *Pirates*, I hope there are no Pirates in these Seas, we are but in an ill Condition to meet with them, for you see we have but small Force and but very weakly Manned.

O Sir, says he, do not be concern'd, I do not know that there has been any Pirates in these Seas these fifteen Years, except one which was seen, as I hear, in the Bay of *Siam*, about a Month since, but you may be assur'd she is gone to the Southward, nor was she a Ship of any great Force, or fit for the Work, she was not built for a Privateer, but was run away with by a reprobate Crew that were on Board, after the Captain and some of his Men had been murder'd by the *Malayans*, at or near the Island of *Sumatra*

What! said I, *seeming to know nothing of the Matter*, did they murder the Captain? No, said he, I do not understand that they murder'd him, but as they afterwards run away with the Ship, it is generally believ'd they betray'd him into the Hands of the *Malayans*, who did murder him, and perhaps they procur'd them to do it. Why then, said I, they deserve Death as much as if they had done it themselves. Nay, says the old Man, they do deserve it, and they will certainly have it, if they light upon any *English* or *Dutch* Ship, for they have all agreed together, that if they meet that Rogue, they will give him no Quarter.

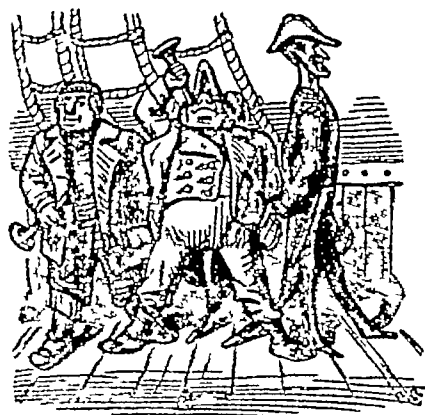
But, said I to him, you say the Pirate is gone out of those Seas. How can they meet with him? Why, that is true, says he, they do say so, but he was, as I tell you, in the Bay of *Siam*, in the River *Cambodia*, and was discover'd there by some *Dutchmen* who belong'd to the Ship, and who were left on Shore when they run away with her, And some *English* and *Dutch* Traders being in the River, they were within a little of taking him. Nay, said he, if the foremost Boats had been well seconded by the rest, they had certainly taken him, but he finding only two Boats within reach of him, tacked about, and fired at these two, and disabled them before the other came up, and then standing off to Sea, the other were not able to follow him, and so he got away. But they have all so exact a Description of the Ship, that they will be sure to know him, and wherever they find him, they have vowed to give no Quarter, to either the Captain, or the Seamen, but to hang them all up at the Yard-Arm.

What! says I, will they execute them right or wrong, hang them first, and judge them afterwards? O Sir! says the old Pilot, there's no Need to make a formal Business of it with such Rogues as those, let them tie them Back to Back, and set them a diving, it is no more than they richly deserve.

I knew I had my old Man fast aboard, and that he could do me

no Harm, so that I turned short upon him Well now, Seignior, said I, and this is the very Reason why I would have you carry us up to *Nankin*, and not to put back to *Macao*, or to any other part of the

Country, where the *English* or *Dutch* Ships come; for be it known to you, Seignior, those Captains of the *English* and *Dutch* Ships are a Parcel of rash, proud, insolent Fellows, that neither know what belongs to Justice, nor how to behave themselves, as the Laws of God and Nature direct, but being proud of their Offices, and not understanding their Power, they would act the Murderers to punish Robbers, would take upon them to insult Men falsely



accus'd, and determine them guilty without due Inquiry, and perhaps I may live to call some of them to an Account for it, where they may be taught how Justice is to be executed, and that no Man ought to be treated as a Criminal, till some Evidence may be had of the Crime, and that he is the Man

With this I told him, that this was the very Ship they attack'd, and gave him a full Account of the Skirmish we had with their Boats, and how foolishly and coward-like they behav'd I told him all the Story of our buying the Ship, and how the *Dutchmen* served us I told him the Reasons I had to believe that this Story of killing the Master by the *Malayans* was true, as also the running away with the Ship, but that it was all a Fiction of their own, to suggest that the Men were turned *Pirates*, and they ought to have been sure it was so, before they had ventur'd to attack us by Surprise, and oblige us to resist them, adding that they would have the Blood of those Men, who we killed there in our just Defence, to answer for

The old Man was amaz'd at this Relation, and told us, we were very much in the Right to go away to the *North*, and that if he might advise us, it should be to sell the Ship in *China*, which we might very well do, and buy or build another in the Country, and, said he, though you will not get so good a Ship, yet you may get one able

enough to carry you and all your Goods back again to *Bengal*, or anywhere else.

I told him, I would take his Advice, when I came to any Port where I could find a Ship for my Turn, or get any Customer to buy this. He reply'd, I should meet with Customers enough for the Ship at *Nankin*, and that a *Chinese* Junk would serve me very well to go back again, and that he would procure me People, both to buy one and sell the other

Well, but *Signior*, says I, as you say they know the Ship so well, I may perhaps, if I follow your Measures, be instrumental to bring some honest innocent Men into a terrible Broil, and perhaps to be murder'd in cold Blood, for wherever they find the Ship, they will prove the Guilt upon the Men, by proving this was the Ship, and so innocent Men may probably be overpower'd and murder'd Why, says the old Man, I will find out a Way to prevent that also, for as I know all those Commanders you speak of very well, and shall see them all as they pass by, I will be sure to set them to Rights in the Thing, and let them know that they had been so much in the Wrong, that though the People, who were on board at first, might run away with the Ship, yet it was not true that they had turned Pirates, and that in particular, these were not the Men that first went off with the Ship, but innocently bought her for their Trade, and I am persuaded they will so far believe me, as at least to act more cautiously for the Time to come Well, says I, And will you deliver one Message to them from me? Yes, I will, says he, if you will give it under your Hand in Writing, that I may be able to prove that it came from you, and not out of my own Head. I answer'd, That I would readily give it him under my Hand, so I took a Pen, and Ink, and Paper, and wrote at large the Story of assaulting me with the Long-Boats, &c, the pretended Reason of it, and the unjust cruel Design of it, and concluded to the Commanders, that they had done what they not only should have been ashamed of, but also, that if ever they came to *England*, and I lived to see them there, they should all pay dearly for it, if the Laws of my Country were not grown out of Use before I arriv'd there

My old Pilot read this over and over again, and asked me several Times if I would stand to it? I answer'd, I would stand to it as long as I had anything left in the World, being sensible that I should one Time or other find an Opportunity to put it home to them But

we had no Occasion ever to let the Pilot carry this Letter, for he never went back again. While those things were passing between us, by Way of Discourse, we went forward, directly for *Nankin*, and in about thirteen Days' Sail came to an Anchor at the South-West Point of the great Gulf of *Nankin*, where, by the Way, I came by Accident to understand, that two *Dutch* Ships were gone the Length before me, and that I should certainly fall into their Hands, I consulted my Partner again in this Exigency, and he was as much at a Loss as I was, and would very gladly have been safe on Shore almost anywhere, however, I was not in such Perplexity neither, but I asked the old Pilot, if there was no Creek or Harbour, which I might put into, and pursue my Business with the *Chinese* privately, and be in no Danger of the Enemy. he told me, if I would sail to the Southward about two and forty Leagues, there was a little Port called *Quinchang*, where the Fathers of the Mission usually landed from *Macao*, on their Progress to teach the Christian Religion to the *Chinese*, and where no *European* Ships ever put in, and if I thought to put in there, I might consider what farther Course to take when I was on Shore. He confess'd, he said, it was not a Place for Merchants, except that at some certain Times, they had a Kind of a Fair there, when the Merchants from *Japan* came over thither to buy the *Chinese* Merchandizes.

We all agreed to go back to this Place; the name of the Port, as he called it, I may perhaps spell wrong, for I do not particularly remember it, having lost this, together with the Names of many other Places, set down in a little Pocket-Book, which was spoiled by the Water, on an Accident, which I shall relate in its Order, but this I remember, that the *Chinese*, or *Japanese* Merchants we corresponded with, called it by a differing Name from that which our *Portuguese* Pilot gave it, and pronounc'd it as above, *Quinchang*.

As we were unanimous in our Resolutions to go to this Place, we weigh'd the next Day, having only gone twice on Shore, where we were to get fresh Water, on both which Occasions, the People of the Country were very civil to us, and brought us Abundance of Things to sell to us, I mean, of Provisions, Plants, Roots, Tea, Rice, and some Fowls, but nothing without Money.

We came to the other Port, (the Wind being contrary) not till five Days, but it was very much to our Satisfaction, and I was joyful, and I may say, thankful, when I set my Foot safe on Shore, resolving, and

my Partner too, that if it was possible to dispose of ourselves and Effects, any other Way, though not every Way to our Satisfaction, we would never set one Foot on Board that unhappy Vessel more, and indeed I must acknowledge, that of all the Circumstances of Life, that ever I had any Experience of, nothing makes Mankind so completely miserable, as that of being in constant Fear. Well does the Scripture say, *the Fear of Man brings a Snare*, it is a Life of Death, and the Mind is so entirely suppress'd by it, that it is capable of no Relief, the animal Spirits sink, and all the Vigour of Nature, which usually supports Men under other Afflictions, and is present to them in the greatest Exigencies, fails them here.

Nor did it fail of its usual Operations upon the Fancy, by heightening every Danger, representing the *English* and *Dutch* Captains to be Men incapable of hearing Reason, or of distinguishing between honest Men and Rogues, or between a Story calculated for our own Turn, made out of nothing, on purpose to deceive, and a true genuine Account of our whole Voyage, Progress, and Design, for we might many Ways have convinc'd any reasonable Creature, that we were not Pirates, the Goods we had on board, the Course we steered, or frankly showing ourselves, and entering into such and such Ports, and even our very Manner, the Force we had, the Number of Men, the few Arms, little Ammunition, short Provisions, all these would have served to convince any Men, that we were no Pirates; the Opium, and other Goods we had on board, would make it appear, the Ship had been at *Bengal*, the *Dutchmen*, who it was said, had the Names of all the Men that were in the Ship, might easily see that we were a Mixture of *English*, *Portuguese*, and *Indians*, and but two *Dutchmen* on board. These, and many other particular Circumstances, might have made it evident to the Understanding of any Commander, whose Hands we might fall into, that we were no Pirates.

But Fear, that blind useless Passion, worked another Way, and threw us into the Vapours, it bewilder'd our Understandings, and set the Imagination at Work, to form a thousand terrible Things, that perhaps might never happen, we first suppos'd, as indeed everybody had related to us, that the Seamen on board the *English* and *Dutch* Ships, but especially the *Dutch*, were so enrag'd at the Name of a Pirate, and especially at our beating of their Boats, and escaping, that they would not give themselves Leave to inquire, whether we were

Pirates or no, but would execute us off Hand, as we call it, without giving us any Room for a Defence, we reflected that there was really so much apparent Evidence before them, that they would scarce inquire after any more, as first, That the Ship was certainly the same, and that some of the Seamen among them knew her, and had been on board her, and secondly, That when we had Intelligence at the River of *Cambodia*, that they were coming down to examine us, we fought their Boat and fled, so that we made no doubt but they were fully satisfy'd of our being Pirates, as we were satisfy'd of the contrary, and as I often said, I know not but I should have been apt to have taken those Circumstances for Evidence, if the Tables were turned, and my Case was theirs, and have made no Scruple of cutting all the Crew to Pieces, without believing, or perhaps considering, what they might have to offer in their Defence

But let that be how it will, those were our Apprehensions, and both my Partner and I too, scarce slept a Night, without dreaming of Halters, and Yard-Arms, that is to say, Gibbets, of fighting, and being taken, of killing and being killed, and one Night I was in such a Fury in my Dream, fancying the *Dutchmen* had boarded us, and I was knocking one of their Seamen down, that I struck my double Fist against the Side of the Cabin I lay in, with such a Force, as wounded my Hand most grievously, broke my Knuckles, and cut and bruised the Flesh, so that it not only waked me out of my Sleep, but I was once afraid I should have lost two of my Fingers

Another Apprehension I had, was of the cruel Usage we might meet with from them, if we fell into their Hands, then the Story of *Ambony* came into my Head, and how the *Dutch* might perhaps torture us, as they did our Countrymen there, and make some of our Men, by Extremity of Torture, confess those Crimes they never were guilty of, own themselves, and all of us to be Pirates, and so they would put us to Death, with a formal Appearance of Justice, and that they might be tempted to do this, for the Gain of our Ship and Cargo, which was worth four or five thousand Pound, put all together

These Things tormented me and my Partner too, Night and Day; nor did we consider that the Captains of Ships have no Authority to act thus, and if we had surrender'd Prisoners to them, they could not answer the destroying us, or torturing us, but would be accountable for it, when they came into their own Country. This I say, gave me no Satisfaction; for if they will act thus with us, what Advantage

would it be to us; that they would be called to an Account for it, or if we were first to be murder'd, what Satisfaction would it be to us to have them punish'd when they came Home?

I cannot refrain taking Notice here, what Reflections I now had upon the past Variety of my particular Circumstances, how hard I thought it was, that I who had spent forty Years in a Life of continu'd Difficulties, and was at last come as it were to the Port or Haven, which all Men drive at, (*vis*) to have Rest and Plenty, should be a Volunteer in new Sorrows, by my own unhappy Choice, and that I, who had escap'd so many Dangers in my Youth, should now come to be hanged in my old Age, and in so remote a Place, for a Crime I was not in the least inclin'd to, much less really guilty of, and in a Place and Circumstance where Innocence was not like to be any Protection at all to me

After these Thoughts, something of Religion would come in, and I should be considering, that this seemed to me to be a Disposition of immediate Providence, and I ought to look upon it, and submit to it as such, that although I was innocent as to Men, I was far from being innocent as to my Maker, and I ought to look in and examine, what other Crimes in my Life, were most obvious to me, and for which, Providence might justly inflict this Punishment, as a Retribution, and that I ought to submit to this, just as I would to a Shipwreck, if it had pleased God to have brought such a Disaster upon me.

In its Turn, Natural Courage would sometimes take its Place, and then I would be talking myself up to vigorous Resolutions, that I would not be taken, to be barbarously used by a Parcel of merciless Wretches, in cold Blood, that it were much better to have fallen into the Hands of the Savages, who were Man-Eaters, and who, I was sure, would feast upon me, when they had taken me, than by those, who would perhaps glut their Rage upon me, by inhuman Tortures and Barbarities, that in the Case of the Savages, I always resolv'd to die fighting, to the last Gasp, and why should I not do so, seeing it was much more dreadful to me at least, to think of falling into these Men's Hands, than ever it was to think of being eaten by Men, for the Savages, give them their Due, would not eat a Man till he was dead, and killed them first, as we do a Bullock, but that these Men had many Arts beyond the Cruelty of Death Whenever these Thoughts prevail'd, I was sure to put myself in a kind of Fever, with the Agitations of a suppos'd Fight my Blood would boil, and my



Eyes sparkle, as if I was engag'd, and I always resolv'd that I would take no Quarter at their Hands, but even at last, if I could resist no longer, I would blow up the Ship and all that was in her, and leave them but little Booty to boast of

By how much the greater Weight, the Anxieties and Perplexities of these Things were to our Thoughts while we were at Sea, by so much the greater was our Satisfaction, when we saw ourselves on Shore; and my Partner told me he dreamed, that he had a very heavy Load upon his Back, which he was to carry up a Hill, and found that he was not able to stand long under it, but that the *Portuguese* Pilot came and took it off his Back, and the Hill disappear'd, the Ground before him showing all smooth and plain, and truly it was so, we were all like Men, who had a Load taken off their Backs

For my Part, I had a Weight taken off from my Heart, that I was not able any longer to bear, and as I said above, we resolv'd to go, no more to Sea in that Ship When we came on Shore, the old Pilot, who was now our Friend, got us a Lodging and a Warehouse for our Goods, which by the Way, was much the same it was a little House or Hut, with a large House joining to it, all built with Canes, and palisadoed round with large Canes, to keep out pilfering Thieves, of which, it seems, there were not a few in that Country, however, the Magistrates allow'd us also a little Guard, and we had a Sentinel with the kind of Halberd, or Half-pike, who stood Sentinel at our Door, to whom we allow'd a Pint of Rice, and a little Piece of Money, about the Value of three Pence *per* Day, so that our Goods were kept very safe

The Fair or Mart, usually kept in this Place, had been over some Time, however, we found that there were three or four Junks in the River, and two *Japanners*, I mean, Ships from *Japan*, with Goods which they had bought in *China*, and were not gone away, having *Japanese* Merchants on Shore

The first Thing our old *Portuguese* Pilot did for us, was to bring us acquainted with three missionary *Romish* Priests, who were in the Town, and who had been there some Time, converting the People to Christianity, but we thought they made but poor Work of it, and made them but sorry Christians when they had done, however, that was none of our Business One of these was a *Frenchman*, whom they called Father *Simon*; he was a jolly well-condition'd Man, very free in his Conversation, not seeming so serious and grave, as the

other two did, one of whom was a *Portuguese*, and the other a *Genoese*. but Father *Simon* was courteous, easy in his Manner, and very agreeable Company, the other two were more reserv'd, seemed rigid and austere, and apply'd seriously to the Work they came about, (*viz.*) to talk with, and insinuate themselves among the Inhabitants, wherever they had Opportunity, we often eat and drank with those Men, and though I must confess, the Conversion *as they call it*, of the *Chinese* to Christianity, is so far from the true Conversion requir'd, to bring Heathen People to the Faith of Christ, that it seems to amount to little more, than letting them know the Name of Christ, and say some Prayers to the Virgin *Mary*, and her Son, in a Tongue which they understand not, and to cross themselves and the like, yet it must be confess'd that these Religious, who we call Missionaries, have a firm Belief that these People shall be saved, and that they are the Instruments of it, and on this Account, they undergo not only the Fatigue of the Voyage, and Hazards of living in such Places, but oftentimes Death itself, with the most violent Tortures, for the Sake of this Work, and it would be a great Want of Charity in us, whatever Opinion we have of the Work itself, and the Manner of their doing it, if we should not have a good Opinion of their Zeal, who undertook it with so many Hazards, and who have no Prospect of the least Temporal Advantage to themselves

But to return to my Story, this *French Priest*, Father *Simon*, was appointed it seems, by Order of the Chief of the Mission, to go up to *Pekin*, the Royal Seat of the *Chinese* Emperor, and waited only for another Priest, who was order'd to come to him from *Macao*, to go along with him, and we scarce ever met together, but he was inviting me to go that Journey, telling me, how he would show me all the glorious Things of that mighty Empire, and among the rest, the greatest City in the World, a City, said he, that your *London* and our *Paris* put together, cannot be equal to This was the City of *Pekin* which I confess is very great, and infinitely full of People, but as I looked on those Things with different Eyes from other Men, so I shall give my Opinion of them in few Words, when I come in the Course of my Travels, to speak more particularly of them

But first, I come to my Friar or Missionary, dining with him one Day, and being very merry together, I showed some little Inclination to go with him, and he pressed me and my Partner very hard, and with a great many Persuasions to consent, whiv Father *Simon*, says my

Partner, why should you desire our Company so much? You know we are Heretics, and you do not love us, nor cannot keep us Company with any Pleasure. O! says he, You may perhaps be good Catholics in Time, my business here is to convert Heathens, and who knows but I may convert you too. Very well, Father, said I, so you will preach to us all the Way, I won't be troublesome to you, says he; our Religion does not divest us of good Manners; besides, says he, we are here like Countrymen, and so we are compared to the Place we are in, and if you are *Hugonots*, and I a Catholic, we may be all Christians at last, at least, said he, we are all Gentlemen, and we may converse so, without being uneasy to one another. I liked that Part of his Discourse very well, and it began to put me in Mind of my Priest, that I had left in the *Brasils*, but this Father *Simon* did not come up to his Character, by a great deal, for though Father *Simon* had no Appearance of a criminal Levity in him neither, yet he had not that Fund of Christian Zeal, strict Piety, and sincere Affection to Religion, that my other good Ecclesiastic had, of whom I have said so much.

But to leave him a little, though he never left us, nor soliciting us to go with him, but we had something else before us at first, for we had all this while our Ship, and our Merchandize to dispose of, and we began to be very doubtful what we should do, for we were now in a Place of very little Business, and once I was about to venture to sail for the River of *Kilam*, and the City of *Nankin*. But Providence seemed now more visibly as I thought, than ever, to concern itself in our Affair, and I was encourag'd from this very Time, to think, I should one Way or other get out of this tangled Circumstance, and be brought Home to my own Country again, though I had not the least View of the Manner, and when I began sometimes to think of it, could not imagine by what method it was to be done. Providence, I say, began here to clear up our Way a little, and the first Thing that offer'd was, that our old *Portuguese* Pilot brought a *Japan* Merchant to us, who began to inquire what Goods we had, and in the first Place, he bought all our Opium, and gave us a very good Price for it, paying us in Gold by Weight, some in small Pieces of their own Coin, and some in small Wedges, of about ten or eleven Ounces each. While we were dealing with him for our Opium, it came into my Head, that he might perhaps deal with us for the Ship too, and I order'd the Interpreter to propose it to him, he shrunk up

his Shoulders at it when it was first propos'd to him, but in a few Days after, he came to me with one of the Missionary Priests for his Interpreter, and told me he had a Proposal to make to me, and that was this, he had bought a great Quantity of Goods of us, when he had no Thoughts (or Proposals made to him) of buying the Ship, and that therefore, he had not Money enough to pay for the Ship, but if I would let the same Men who were in the Ship navigate her, he would hire the Ship to go to *Japan*, and would send them from thence to the *Philippine* Islands with another Loading, which he would pay the Freight of, before they went from *Japan*, and that at their Return, he would buy the Ship I began to listen to his Proposal, and so eager did my Head still run upon Rambling, that I could not but begin to entertain a Notion of going myself with him, and so to sail from the *Philippine* Islands, away to the South-Seas, and accordingly I asked the *Japanese* Merchant, if he would not hire us to the *Philippine* Islands, and discharge us there; he said, No he could not do that, for then he could not have the Return of his Cargo, but he would discharge us in *Japan*, he said, at the Ship's Return Well, still I was for taking him at that Proposal, and going myself, but my Partner, wiser than myself, persuaded me from it, representing the Dangers as well of the Seas, as of the *Japaneses*, who are a false, cruel, and treacherous People, and then of the *Spaniards*, at the *Philippines*, more false, more cruel, and more treacherous than they.

But to bring this long Turn of our Affairs to a Conclusion, the first Thing we had to do, was to consult with the Captain of the Ship, and with his Men, and know if they were willing to go to *Japan*, and while I was doing this, the young Man, who, as I said, my Nephew had left with me as my Companion for my Travels, came to me, and told me, that he thought that Voyage promised very fair, and that there was a great Prospect of Advantage, and he would be very glad if I undertook it, but that if I would not, and would give him leave, he would go as a Merchant, or how I pleased to order him, that if ever he came to *England*, and I was there and alive, he would render me a faithful Account of his Success, and it should be as much mine as I pleased.

I was really loth to part with him, but considering the Prospect of Advantage, which was really considerable, and that he was a young Fellow as likely to do well in it as any I knew, I inclin'd to let him go; but first I told him, I would consult my Partner, and give him

an Answer the next Day, my Partner and I discours'd about it, and my Partner made a most generous Offer, he told me, you know it has been an unlucky Ship, and we both resolve not to go to Sea in it again, if your Steward, *so he called my Man*, will venture the Voyage, I'll leave my Share of the Vessel to him, and let him make his best of it, and if we live to meet in *England*, and he meets with Success abroad, he shall Account for one Half of the Profits of the Ship's Freight to us, the other shall be his own

If my Partner, who was no Way concern'd with my young Man, made him such an Offer, I could do no less than offer him the same, and all the Ship's Company being willing to go with him, we made over Half the Ship to him in Property, and took a Writing from him, obliging him to account for the other, and away he went to *Japan*. The *Japan* Merchant proved a very punctual honest Man to him, protected him at *Japan*, and got him a Licence to come on Shore, which the *Europeans* in general have not lately obtain'd, paid him his Freight very punctually, sent him to the *Philippines*, loaded with *Japan*, and *China* Wares, and a Supercargo of their own, who trafficking with the *Spaniards*, brought back *European* Goods again, and a great Quantity of Cloves, and other Spice, and there he was not only paid his Freight very well, and at a very good Price, but being not willing to sell the Ship then, the Merchant furnish'd him with Goods on his own Account, that for some Money, and some Spices of his own, which he brought with him, he went back to the *Manillas* to the *Spaniards*, where he sold his Cargo very well. Here having gotten a good Acquaintance at *Manilla*, he got his Ship made a free Ship; and the Governor of *Manilla* hired him, to go to *Acapulco*, in *America*, on the Coast of *Mexico*, and gave him a Licence to Land there, and travel to *Mexico*, and to pass in any *Spanish* Ship to *Europe*, with all his Men

He made the Voyage to *Acapulco* very happily, and there he sold his Ship, and having there also obtained Allowance to travel by Land, to *Perto Bello*, he found Means somehow or other, to get to *Jamaica*, with all his Treasure, and about eight Years after, came to *En land* exceeding Rich, of the which, I shall take Notice in its Place, in the mean time, I return to our particular Affairs

Being now to part with the Ship, and Ship's Company, it came before us of Course to consider what Recompense we should give to the two Men that gave us such timely Notice of the Design

against us in the River of *Cambodia*. The Truth was, that they had done us a considerable Service, and deserv'd well at our Hands, though *by the Way*, they were a Couple of Rogues too; for as they believ'd the Story of our being Pirates, and that we had really run away with the Ship, they came down to us, not only to betray the Design that was formed against us, but to go to Sea with us as Pirates; and one of them confess'd afterwards, that nothing else but the Hopes of going a Roguing brought him to do it, however, the Service they did us was not the less, and therefore, as I had promis'd to be grateful to them, I first order'd the Money to be paid to them, which they said was due to them on board their respective Ships; that is to say, the *Englishman* nineteen Months' Pay, and to the *Dutchman* seven, and over and above that, I gave them, each of them, a small Sum of Money in Gold, and which contented them very well, then I made the *Englishman* Gunner in the Ship, the Gunner being now made second Mate, and Purser, the *Dutchman* I made Boatswain, so they were both very well pleased, and proved very serviceable, being both able Seamen, and very stout Fellows.

We were now on Shore in *China*, if I thought myself banish'd, and remote from my own Country at *Bengal*, where I had many Ways to get home for my Money, what could I think of myself now? When I was gotten about a thousand Leagues farther off from Home, and perfectly destitute of all Manner of Prospect of Return.

All we had for it was this, that in about four Months' Time, there was to be another Fair at the Place where we were, and then we might be able to purchase all sorts of the Manufactures of the Country, and withal, might possibly find some *Chinese* Junks or Vessels from *Tongun*, that would be to be sold, and would carry us and our Goods whither we pleased, this I liked very well, and resolv'd to wait, besides, as our particular Persons were not obnoxious, so if any *English* or *Dutch* Ships came thither, perhaps we might have an Opportunity to load our Goods, and get Passage to some other Place in *India*, nearer Home.

Upon these Hopes we resolv'd to continue here, but to divert ourselves, we took two or three Journeys into the Country; first we went ten Days' Journey to see the City of *Nankin*, and a City well worth seeing indeed, they say it has a Million of People in it, which, however, I do not believe, it is regularly built, the Streets all exactly

straight, and cross one another in direct Lines, which gives the Figure of it great Advantage

But when I come to compare the miserable People of these Countries with ours, their Fabrics, their manner of Living, their Government, their Religion, their Wealth, and their Glory, (as some call it,) I must confess I do not so much as think it is worth naming, or worth my while to write of, or any that shall come after me to read.

It is very observable that we wonder at the Grandeur, the Riches, the Pomp, the Ceremonies, the Government, the Manufactures, the Commerce, and the Conduct of these People, not that it is to be wonder'd at, or indeed in the least to be regarded, but because, having first a true Notion of the Barbarity of those Countries, the Rudeness and the Ignorance that prevails there, we do not expect to find any such things so far off.

Otherwise, what are their Buildings to the Palaces and Royal Buildings of *Europe*? What their Trade, to the universal Commerce of *England, Holland, France* and *Spain*? What are their Cities to ours, for Wealth, Strength, Gaiety of Apparel, rich Furniture, and an infinite Variety? What are their Ports, supply'd with a few Junks and Barks, to our Navigation, our Merchant Fleets, our large and powerful Navies? Our City of *London* has more Trade than all their mighty Empire one *English*, or *Dutch*, or *French* Man-of-War of 80 Guns, would fight and destroy all the Shipping of *China*. But the Greatness of their Wealth, their Trade, the Power of their Government, and Strength of their Armies, is surprising to us, because, as I have said, considering them as a barbarous Nation of Pagans, little better than Savages, we did not expect such Things among them, and this indeed is the Advantage with which all their Greatness and Power is represented to us, otherwise it is in itself nothing at all, for as I have said of their Ships, so may be said of their Armies and Troops, all the Forces of their Empire, though they were to bring two Millions of Men into the Field together, would be able to do nothing but ruin the Country, and starve themselves. If they were to besiege a strong Town in *Flanders*, or to fight a disciplin'd Army, one Line of *German* Cuirassiers, or of *French* Cavalry, would overthrow all the Horse of *China*, a Million of their Foot could not stand before one embattled Body of our Infantry, posted so as not to be surrounded, though they were to be not One to Twenty in

Number, nay, I do not boast if I say that 30,000 *German* or *English* Foot, and 10,000 *French* Horse, would fairly beat all the Forces of *China*: And so of our fortified Towns, and of the Art of our Engineers in assaulting and defending Towns, there is not a fortified Town in *China* could hold out one Month against the Batteries and Attacks of an *European* Army, and at the same time, all the Armies of *China* could never take such a Town as *Dunkirk*, provided it was not starved, no, not in a ten Years' Siege. They have Fire-Arms, it is true, but they are awkward, clumsy, and uncertain in going off. They have Powder, but it is of no Strength. They have neither Discipline in the Field, Exercise to their Arms, Skill to Attack, or Temper to Retreat, and therefore, I must confess, it seemed strange to me, when I came Home, and heard our People say such fine Things of the Power, Riches, Glory, Magnificence, and Trade of the *Chinese*, because I saw, and knew, that they were a contemptible Herd or Crowd of ignorant sordid Slaves, subjected to a Government qualified only to rule such a People, and in a word, for I am now launched quite beside my Design, I say, in a word, were not its Distance inconceivably great from *Muscovy*, and was not the *Muscovite* Empire almost as rude, impotent, and ill govern'd a Crowd of Slaves as they, the *Czar* of *Muscovy* might with much Ease drive them all out of their Country, and conquer them in one Campaign, and had the *Czar*, who I since hear is a growing Prince, and begins to appear formidable in the World, fallen this Way, instead of attacking the warlike *Swedes*, in which Attempt none of the Powers of *Europe* would have envy'd or interrupted him, he might by this time have been Emperor of *China*, instead of being beaten by the King of *Sweden* at *Narva*, when the latter was not One to Six in Number. As their Strength and their Grandeur, so their Navigation, Commerce, and Husbandry, is imperfect and impotent, compar'd to the same Things in *Europe*, also in their Knowledge, their Learning, their Skill in the Sciences, they have Globes and Spheres, and a Smatch of the Knowledge of the Mathematics, but when you come to inquire into their Knowledge, how short-sighted are the wisest of their Students! they know nothing of the Motion of the Heavenly Bodies, and so grossly absurdly ignorant, that when the Sun is eclips'd, they think it is a great Dragon has assaulted and run away with it, and they fall a clattering with all the Drums and Kettles in the Country, to fright the Monster away, just as we do to hive a Swarm of Bees.



As this is the only Excursion of this kind which I have made in all the Account I have given of my Travels, so I shall make no more Descriptions of Countries and People, it is none of my Business, or any part of my Design, but giving an Account of my own Adventures, through a Life of inimitable Wanderings, and a long Variety of Changes, which perhaps few that come after me will have heard the like of, I shall therefore say very little of all the mighty Places, desert Countries, and numerous People, I have yet to pass through more than relates to my own Story, and which my Concern among them will make necessary. I was now, as near as I can compute, in the heart of *China*, about the Latitude of thirty Degrees North of the Line, for we were return'd from *Nankin*, I had indeed a mind to see the City of *Pekin*, which I had heard so much of, and Father *Simon* importun'd me daily to do it, at length his Time of going away being set, and the other Missionary, who was to go with him, being arriv'd from *Macao*, it was necessary that we should resolve, either to go, or not to go, so I referr'd him to my Partner, and left it wholly to his Choice, who at length resolv'd it in the Affirmative, and we prepar'd for our Journey. We set out with very good Advantage, as to finding the Way, for we got leave to travel in the Retinue of one of their Mandarins, a kind of Viceroy, or principal Magistrate in the Province where they reside, and who take great State upon them, travelling with great Attendance, and with great Homage from the People, who are sometimes greatly impoverish'd by them, because all the Countries they pass through are oblig'd to furnish Provisions for them and all their Attendance. That which I particularly observ'd, as to our travelling with his Baggage, was this, That though we received sufficient Provisions, both for ourselves and our Horses, from the Country, as belonging to the Mandarin, yet we were oblig'd to pay for everything we had, after the Market Price of the Country, and the Mandarin's Steward, or Commissary of the Provisions, collected it duly from us, so that our travelling in the Retinue of the Mandarin, though it was a very great Kindness to us was not such a mighty Favour in him, but was indeed a great Advantage to him, considering there were above thirty other People travel'd in the same Manner besides us, under the Protection of his Retinue, or as we may call it, under his Convoy. This, I say, was a great Advantage to him, for the Country furnish'd all the Provisions for nothing, and he took all our Money for them.

We were five and twenty Days travelling to *Pekin*, through a Country infinitely populous, but miserably cultivated, the Husbandry, the Economy, and the Way of living miserable, though they boast so much of the Industry of the People, I say miserable, and so it is, if we who understand how to live were to endure it, or to compare it with our own, but not so to these poor Wretches who know no other. The Pride of these People is infinitely great, and exceeded by nothing but their Poverty, which adds to that which I call their Misery, and I must needs think the naked Savages of *America* live much more happy, because, as they have nothing, so they desire nothing, whereas these are proud and insolent, and in the main are mere Beggars and Drudges; Their Ostentation is inexpressible, and is chiefly showed in their Clothes and Building, and in the keeping Multitudes of Servants or Slaves, and, which is to the last Degree ridiculous, their Contempt of all the World but themselves.

I must confess, I travell'd more pleasantly afterwards in the Deserts and vast Wildernesses of Grand *Tartary*, than here, and yet the Roads here are well paved, and well kept, and very convenient for Travellers. but nothing was more awkward to me, than to see such a haughty, imperious, insolent People, in the midst of the grossest Simplicity and Ignorance, for all their famed Ingenuity is no more. And my Friend Father *Simon* and I used to be very merry upon these Occasions, to see the beggarly Pride of those People, for Example. Coming by the House of a Country Gentleman, as Father *Simon* called him, about ten Leagues off of the City of *Nankin*, we had first of all the Honour to ride with the Master of the House about two Miles. The State he rode in was a perfect *Don Quixotism*, being a Mixture of Pomp and Poverty.

The Habit of this greasy Don was very proper for a Scaramouch or Merry-Andrew, being a dirty Calico, with all the Tawdry and Trapping of a Fool's Coat, such as Hanging-sleeves, Tassels, and Cuts and Slashes almost on every Side, it covered a Taffety Vest, as greasy as a Butcher, and which testify'd that his Honour must needs be a most exquisite Sloven.

His Horse was a poor, lean, starved, hobbling Creature, such as in *England* might sell for about 30 or 40 Shillings, and he had two Slaves follow'd him on Foot, to drive the poor Creature along, he had a Whip in his Hand, and he belabour'd the Beast as fast about the Head, as his Slaves did about the Tail, and thus he rode by us

with about ten or twelve Servants, and we were told he was going from the City to his Country Seat, about half a League before us. We travell'd on gently, but this Figure of a Gentleman rode away before us, and as we stopped at a Village about an Hour to refresh us, when we came by the Country Seat of this great Man, we saw him in a little Place, before his Door, eating his Repast, it was a Kind of a Garden, but he was easy to be seen, and we were given to understand that the more we looked on him, the better he would be pleased.

He sat under a Tree, something like the Palmetto Tree, which effectually shaded him over the Head, and on the South Side, but under the Tree also, was placed a large Umbrella, which made that Part look well enough, he sat lolling back in a great Elbow Chair, being a heavy corpulent Man, and his Meat being brought him by two Women Slaves, he had two more, whose Office, I think, few Gentlemen in *Europe* would accept of their Service in, (*viz*) One fed the Squire with a Spoon, and the other held the Dish with one Hand, and scraped off what he let fall upon his Worship's Beard and Taffety Vest, while the great fat Brute thought it below him to employ his own Hands in any of those familiar Offices, which Kings and Monarchs would rather do, than be troubled with the clumsy Fingers of their Servants.

I took this Time to think what Pain Men's Pride puts them to, and how troublesome a haughty Temper, thus ill-manag'd, must be to a Man of common Sense, and leaving the poor Wretch to please himself with our looking at him, as if we admir'd his Pomp, whereas we really pitied and condemn'd him, we pursu'd our Journey, only Father *Simon* had the Curiosity to stay to inform himself what Dainties the Country Justice had to feed on, in all his State, which he said he had the Honour to taste of, and which was, I think, a Dose that in *English* Hound would scarce have eaten, if it had been offer'd him, (*viz*) a Mess of boiled Rice with a great Piece of Garlic in it, and a little Bag filled with Green Pepper, and another Plant which they have here, something like our Ginger, but smelling like Musk, and tasting like Mustard, all this was put together, and a small Lump or Piece of lean Mutton boiled in it, and this was his Worship's Repast, four or five Servants more attending at a Distance. If he fed them meaner than he was fed himself, the Spice excepted, they must fare very coarsely indeed.

As for our Mandarin, with whom we travell'd, he was respected like a King, surrounded always with his Gentlemen, and attended in all his Appearances with such Pomp, that I saw little of him but at a Distance, but this I observ'd, that there was not a Horse in his Retinue, but that our Carriers' Pack-Horses in *England* seem to me to look much better, but they were so cover'd with Equipage, Mantles, Trappings and such like Trumpery, that you cannot see whether they are fat or lean, in a Word, we could see scarce anything but their Feet and their Heads

I was now light-hearted, and all my Trouble and Perplexity that I have given an Account of being over, I had no anxious Thoughts about me, which made this Journey the pleasanter to me, nor had I any ill Accident attended me, only in the passing or fording a small River, my Horse fell, and made me free of the Country, as they call it, that is to say, threw me in, the Place was not deep, but it wetted me all over, I mention it because it spoiled my Pocket-Book, wherein I had set down the Names of several People and Places which I had Occasion to remember, and which, not taking due Care of, the Leaves rotted, and the Words were never after to be read, to my great Loss, as to the Names of some Places I touched at in this Voyage

At length we arriv'd at *Pekin*, I had nobody with me but the Youth, whom my Nephew, the Captain, had given me to attend me as a Servant, and who proved very trusty and diligent, and my Partner had nobody with him but one Servant, who was a Kinsman as for the *Portuguese* Pilot, he being desirous to see the Court, we gave him his Passage, that is to say, bore his Charges for his Company, and to use him, as an Interpreter, for he understood the Language of the Country, and spoke good *French*, and a little *English*, and indeed, this old Man was a most useful Implement to us everywhere, for we had not been above a week at *Pekin*, when he came laughing, *Ah, Signior Inglese*, says he, *I have something to tell you will make your Heart glad* My Heart glad, says I, *What can that be? I don't know anything in this Country can either give me Joy or Grief to any great degree.* Yes, yes, said the old Man in broken *English*, make you glad, me sorrow, sorry he would have said This made me more inquisitive. Why, said I, will it make you sorry? Because, said he, you have brought me here 25 Days' Journey, and will leave me to go back alone, and which way shall I get to my Port afterwards, without a Ship, without a Horse, without Pecune? So he called Money,

being his broken *Latin*, of which he had abundance to make us merry with.

In short, he told us there was a great Caravan of *Muscovite* and *Polish* Merchants in the City, and they were preparing to set out on their Journey by Land to *Moscow* within four or five Weeks, and he was sure we would take the Opportunity to go with them, and leave him behind to go back all alone. I confess, I was surpris'd with his News, a secret Joy spread itself over my own Soul, which I cannot describe, and never felt before or since, and I had no power for a good while to speak a Word to the old Man; but at last I turned to him, How do you know this, said I, are you sure it is true? Yes says he, I met this Morning in the Street an old Acquaintance of mine, an *Armenian*, or one you call a *Grecian*, who is among them he came last from *Astracan*, and was designing to go to *Tonquin* where I formerly knew him, but has alter'd his mind, and is now resolv'd to go with the Caravan to *Moscow*, and so down the River *Volga* to *Astracan*. Well, Seignior, says I, do not be uneasy about being left to go back alone, if this be a Method for my return to *England*, it shall be your Fault if you go back to *Macao* at all. We then went to consulting together what was to be done, and I asked my Partner what he thought of the Pilot's News, and whether it would suit with his Affairs? He told me he would do just as I would, for he had settled all his Affairs so well at *Bengal*, and left his Effects in such good Hands, that as we had made a good Voyage here, if he could vest it in *China* Silks, wrought and raw, such as might be worth the Carriage, he would be content to go *England*, and then make his Voyage back to *Bengal*, by the Company's Ships.

Having resolv'd upon this, we agreed, that if our *Portugal* Pilot would go with us, we would bear his Charges to *Moscow* or to *England* if he pleas'd, nor indeed were we to be esteem'd over generous in the Part neither, if we had not rewarded him farther, for the Service he had done us was really worth all that, and more; for he had not only been a Pilot to us at Sea, but he had been like a Broker for us on Shore, and his procuring for us the *Japan* Merchant, was some hundred of Pounds in our Pocket. So we consulted together about it and being willing to gratify him, which was indeed but doing him Justice, and very willing also to have him with us besides, for he was a most necessary Man on all Occasions, we agreed to give him a Quantity of coined Gold, which, as I compute it, came to about 17

Pounds Sterling between us, and to bear all his Charges, both for himself and Horse, except only a Horse to carry his Goods

Having settled this among ourselves, we called him to let him know what we had resolv'd, I told him, he had complain'd of our being to let him go back alone, and I was now to tell him we were resolv'd he should not go back at all that as we had resolv'd to go to *Europe* with the Caravan, we resolv'd also he should go with us, and that we called him, to know his mind He shook his Head, and said, it was a long Journey, and he had no *Pecune* to carry him thither, or to subsist himself when he came there. We told him we believ'd it was so, and therefore we had resolv'd to do something for him, that should let him see how sensible we were of the Service he had done us, and also how agreeable he was to us, and then I told him what we had resolv'd to give him here, which we might lay out as we would do our own; and that as for his Charges, if he would go with us, we would set him safe ashore, (Life and Casualties excepted,) either in *Muscovy* or *England*, which he would, at our own Charge, except only the Carriage of his Goods

He receiv'd the Proposal like a Man transported, and told us he would go with us over the whole World, and so, in short, we all prepar'd ourselves for the Journey However, as it was with us, so it was with the other Merchants, they had many things to do, and instead of being ready in five Weeks, it was four Months and some odd Days before all Things were got together.

It was the Beginning of *February*, our Style, when we set out from *Pekin*, my Partner and the old Pilot had gone express back to the Port where he had first put in, to dispose of some Goods which we had left there; and I with a *Chinese* Merchant, whom I had some Knowledge of at *Nankin*, and who came to *Pekin* on his own Affairs, went to *Nankin*, where I bought ninety Pieces of fine Damasks, with about two hundred Pieces of other very fine Silks, of several Sorts, some mixed with Gold, and had all these brought to *Pekin* against my Partner's Return; besides this, we bought a very large Quantity of Raw Silk, and some other Goods, our Cargo amounting in these Goods only to about three thousand five hundred Pounds Sterling, which, together with Tea and some fine Calicoes, and three Camels' Loads of Nutmegs and Cloves, loaded in all eighteen Camels for our Share, besides those we rode upon, which with two or three spare Horses, and two Horses loaded with

Provisions, made us in short 26 Camels and Horses in our Retinue

The Company was very Great, and, as near as I can remember, made between three and four hundred Horse, and upwards of a hundred and twenty Men, very well armed and provided for all Events for as the Eastern Caravans are subject to be attack'd by the *Arabs*, so are these by the *Tartars*, but they are not altogether so dangerous as the *Arabs*, nor so barbarous when they prevail.

The Company consisted of People of several Nations, such as *Muscovites* chiefly, for there were above Sixty of them who were Merchants or Inhabitants of *Moscow*, though of them, some were *Livonians*, and to our particular Satisfaction, Five of them were *Scots*, who appear'd also to be Men of great Experience in Business, and Men of very good Substance.

When we had travell'd one Day's Journey, the Guides, who were Five in Number, called all the Gentlemen and Merchants, that is to say, all the Passengers except the Servants, to a great Council, as they called it. At this great Council every one deposited a certain Quantity of Money to a common Stock, for the necessary Expense of buying Forage on the Way, where it was not otherwise to be had, and for satisfying the Guides, getting Horses, and the like. And here they constituted the Journey, as they call it, *viz* They named Captains and Officers, to draw us all up, and give the Command in case of an Attack, and gave every one their turn of Command nor was this forming us into Order any more than what we found needful upon the Way, as shall be observ'd in its Place.

The Road all on this Side of the Country is very populous, and is full of Potters and Earth-makers, that is to say, People that temper'd the Earth for the *China* Ware, and as I was coming along, our *Portugal* Pilot, who had always something or other to say to make us merry, came sneering to me, and told me he would show me the greatest Rarity in all the Country, and that I should have this to say of *China*, after all the ill-humour'd things I had said of it, that I had seen one thing which was not to be seen in all the World beside. I was very importunate to know what it was. At last he told me it was a Gentleman's house built all with *China* Ware. Well, says I, are not the Materials of their Building the Product of their own Country, and so it is all *China* Ware, is not it? No, no, says he, I mean it is a House all made of *China* Ware, such as you call it in *England*;

or as it is called in our Country, *Porcelain* Well, says I, such a thing may be; how big is it? Can we carry it in a Box upon a Camel? If we can, we will buy it. *Upon a Camel!* says the old Pilot, holding up both his Hands, *why there is a Family of Thirty People lives in it.*

I was then curious indeed to see it, and when I came to it, it was nothing but this, it was a Timber-House, or a House built, as we call it in *England*, with Lath and Plaster, but all the Plastering was really *China Ware*, that is to say, it was plaster'd with the Earth that makes *China Ware*.

The Outside, which the Sun shone hot upon, was glazed, and looked very well, perfect white, and painted with blue Figures, as the large *China Ware* in *England* is painted, and hard, as if it had been burnt. As to the Inside, all the Walls, instead of Wainscot, were lined up with harden'd and painted Tiles, like the little square Tiles we call Galley-Tiles in *England*, all made of the finest China, and the Figures exceeding fine indeed, with extraordinary Variety of Colours mixed with Gold, many Tiles making but one Figure, but joined so artificially, the Mortar being made of the same Earth, that it was very hard to see where the Tiles met. The Floors of the Rooms were of the same Composition, and as hard as the earthen Floors we have in use in several Parts of *England*, especially *Lincolnshire*, *Nottinghamshire*, *Leicestershire*, &c., as hard as a Stone, and smooth, but not burnt and painted, except some smaller Rooms, like Closets, which were all as it were paved with the same Tile, the Ceilings, and in a word, all the plastering Work in the whole House were of the same Earth, and after all, the Roof was cover'd with Tiles of the same, but of a deep shining black.

This was a *China Warehouse* indeed, truly and literally to be called so, and had I not been upon the Journey, I could have stayed some Days to see and examine the Particulars of it, they told me there were Fountains and Fish-ponds in the Garden, all paved at the Bottom and Sides with the same, and fine Statues set up in Rows on the Walks, entirely formed of the *Porcelain* Earth, and burnt whole.

As this is one of the Singularities of *China*, so they may be allow'd to excel in it; but I am very sure they excel in their Accounts of it; for they told me such incredible things of their Performance in *Crockery Ware*, for such it is, that I care not to relate, as knowing it



could not be true, they told me in particular of one Workman that made a Ship with all its Tackle, and Masts, and Sails, in Earthenware, big enough to carry fifty Men. If he had told me he launched it, and made a Voyage to *Japan* in it, I might have said something to it indeed, but as it was, I knew the whole of the Story, which was in short, asking Pardon for the Word, that the Fellow lied, so I smiled, and said nothing to it.

This odd Sight kept me two Hours behind the Caravan, for which the Leader of it for the Day fined me about the Value of three Shillings, and told me, if it had been three Days' Journey without the Wall, as it was three Days within, he must have fined me four times as much, and made me ask Pardon the next Council Day, so I promis'd to be more orderly, for indeed I found afterward the Orders made for keeping all together, were absolutely necessary for our common Safety.

In two Days more we passed the great *China* Wall, made for a Fortification against the *Tartars*, and a very great Work it is, going over Hills and Mountains in a needless Track, where the Rocks are impassable, and the Precipices such as no Enemy could possibly enter, or indeed climb up, or where if they did, no Wall could hinder them. they tell us, its Length is near a thousand *English* Miles, but that the Country is five hundred in a straight measur'd Line, which the Wall bounds, without measuring the Windings and Turnings it takes. It is about four Fathom high, and as many thick in some Places.

I stood still an Hour or thereabout, without trespassing our Orders, *for so long the Caravan was in passing the Gate*; I say, I stood still an Hour to look at it on every Side, near, and far off, I mean, that was within my View, and the Guide of our Caravan, who had been extolling it for the Wonder of the World, was mighty eager to hear my Opinion of it, I told him it was a most excellent thing to keep off the *Tartars*, which he happen'd not to understand as I meant it, and so took it for a Compliment, but the old Pilot laughed. O, *Seignior Inglese*, says he, you speak in Colours. In Colours, said I, what do you mean by that? Why, you speak what looks white *this way*, and black *that way*, gay *one way*, and dull *another way*; you tell him it is a good Wall to keep out *Tartars*? You tell me *by that*, it is good for nothing but to keep out *Tartars*, or it will keep out none but *Tartars*; I understand you, *Seignior Inglese*, I under

stand you, says he, but Seignior *Chinese* understood you his own way

Well, says I, Seignior, do you think it would stand out an Army of our Country People, with a good Train of Artillery, or our Engineers, with two Companies of Miners, would not they batter it down in ten Days, that an Army might enter in Battalia, or blow it up in the Air, Foundation and all, that there should be no Sign of it left? Ah, ah, says he, I know that. The *Chinese* wanted mightily to know what I said, and I gave him leave to tell him a few Days after, for we were then almost out of their Country, and he was to leave us in a little time afterward; but when he knew what I had said, he was dumb all the rest of the way, and we heard no more of his fine Story of the *Chinese* Power and Greatness, while he stayed

After we had passed this mighty *Nothing* called a Wall, something like the *Picts* Wall, so famous in *Northumberland*, and built by the *Romans*, we began to find the Country thinly inhabited, and the People rather confin'd to live in fortify'd Towns and Cities, as being subject to the Inroads and Depredations of the *Tartars*, who rob in great Armies, and therefore are not to be resisted by the naked Inhabitants of an open Country

And here I began to find the Necessity of keeping together in a Caravan as we travell'd, for we saw several Troops of *Tartars* roving about, but when I came to see them distinctly, I wonder'd more that the *Chinese* Empire could be conquer'd by such contemptible Fellows, for they are a mere Horde or Crowd of wild Fellows, keeping no Order, and understanding no Discipline, or manner of Fight

Their Horses are poor lean starved Creatures, taught nothing, and fit for nothing, and this we said, the first Day we saw them, which was after we enter'd the wilder Part of the Country, our Leader for the Day gave Leave for about sixteen of us to go a hunting, as they call it; and what was this, but hunting of Sheep, however, it may be called hunting too, for the Creatures are the wildest and swiftest of Foot that ever I saw of their Kind, only they will not run a great way, and you are sure of Sport when you begin the Chase, for they appear generally thirty or forty in a Flock, and like true Sheep, always keep together when they fly

In Pursuit of this odd sort of Game, it was our hap to meet with about forty *Tartars*; whether they were hunting Mutton as we were,

or whether they looked for another kind of Prey, I know not, but as soon as they saw us, one of them blew a kind of a Horn very loud, but with a barbarous Sound, that I had never heard before, and by the way, never care to hear again we all suppos'd this was to call their Friends about them, and so it was, for in less than Half a Quarter of an Hour, a Troop of forty or fifty more appear'd, at about a Mile Distance, but our Work was over first, as it happen'd

One of the *Scots* Merchants of *Moscow* happen'd to be amongst us, and as soon as he heard the Horn, he told us in short, that we had nothing to do, but to charge them immediately without loss of Time, and drawing us up in a Line, he asked if we were resolv'd? We told him we were ready to follow him, so he rode directly up to them, they stood gazing at us like a mere Crowd, drawn up in no Order, nor showing the Face of any Order at all; but as soon as they saw us advance, they let fly their Arrows, which however missed us very happily, it seems they mistook not their Aim, but their Distance, for their Arrows all fell a little short of us, but with so true an Aim, that had we been about twenty yards nearer, we must have had several Men wounded, if not killed

Immediately we halted, and though it was at a great Distance, we fired, and sent them Leaden Bullets for Wooden Arrows, following our Shot full Gallop, to fall in among them Sword in Hand, for so our bold *Scot* that led us directed, He was indeed but a Merchant, but he behav'd with that Vigour and Bravery on this occasion, and yet, with such a cool Courage too, that I never saw any Man in Action fitter for Command As soon as we came up to them, we fired our Pistols in their Faces, and then drew, but they fled in the greatest Confusion imaginable, the only Stand any of them made, was on our Right, where three of them stood, and by signs call'd the rest to come back to them, having a kind of Scimitar in their Hands, and their Bows hanging at their Backs Our brave Commander, without asking anybody to follow him, gallops up close to them, and with his Fuzee knocks one of them off his Horse, killed the second with his Pistol, and the third ran away, and thus ended our Fight but we had this Misfortune attending it, (*viz*) that all our Mutton that we had in chase, got away We had not a Man killed or hurt; but as for the *Tartars*, there was about five of them killed, who were wounded, we knew not, but this we knew, that

the other Party was so frighted with the Noise of our Guns, that they made off, and never made any Attempt upon us

We were all this while in the *Chinese* Dominion, and therefore the *Tartars* were not so bold as afterwards, but in about five Days we enter'd a vast great wild Desert, which held us three Days' and Nights' March, and we were oblig'd to carry our Water with us in great Leather Bottles, and to encamp all Night, just as I have heard they do in the Desert of *Arabia*

I asked whose Dominion this was in, and they told me, this was a kind of Border, that might be called *no Man's Land*, being a Part of the Great *Karakathie*, or *Grand Tartary*, but that however it was all reckon'd to *China*, but that there was no Care taken here, to preserve it from the Inroads of Thieves, and therefore it was reckon'd the worst Desert in the whole World, though we were to go over some much larger

In passing this Wilderness, which I confess was at the first very frightful to me, we saw two or three times little Parties of the *Tartars*, but they seemed to be upon their own Affairs, and to have no Design upon us, and so like the Man who met the Devil, if they had nothing to say to us, we had nothing to say to them, we let them go

Once however, a Party of them came so near, as to stand and gaze at us, whether it was to consider what they should do, whether attack us, or not attack us, that we knew not, but when we were passed at some distance by them, we made a Rear-Guard of forty men, and stood ready for them, letting the Caravan pass half a Mile, or thereabouts, before us, but after a while they marched off, only we found they saluted us with five Arrows at their Parting, one of which wounded a Horse so, that it disabled him, and we left him the next Day, poor Creature, in great need of a good Farmer, we suppose they might shoot more Arrows, which might fall short of us, but we saw no more Arrows or *Tartars* that time

We travell'd near a Month after this, the Ways being not so good as it first, though still in the Dominions of the Emperor of *China*, but ay for the most part in Villages, some of which were fortify'd, because of the Incursions of the *Tartars* When we came to one of these Towns, (it was about two Days and a Half Journey before we were to come to the City *Naum*) I wanted to buy a Camel, of which there are plenty to be sold all the way upon that Road, and of Horses also,

such as they are, because so many Caravans coming that way, they are often wanted. The Person that I spoke to to get me a Camel, would have gone and fetched it for me, but I like a Fool must be officious, and go myself along with him. The Place was about two Miles out of the Village, where, it seems, they kept the Camels and Horses feeding under a Guard.

I walked it on Foot with my old Pilot, being very desirous, for sooth, of a little Variety. When we came to the Place, it was a low marshy Ground, walled round with a stone Wall, piled up dry, without Mortar or Earth among it, like a Park, with a little Guard of *Chinese* Soldiers at the Door. Having bought a Camel, and agreed for the Price, I came away, and the *Chinese* man that went with me, led the Camel, when on a sudden came up five *Tartars* on Horseback, two of them seized the Fellow, and took the Camel from him, while other three stepped up to me, and my old Pilot, seeing us as it were unarmed, for I had no Weapon about me but my Sword, which could but ill defend me against three Horsemen, the first that came up, stopped short upon my drawing my Sword, (for they are errant Cowards), but a Second coming upon my Left, gave me a Blow on the Head, which I never felt till afterward, and wondered when I came to myself, what was the matter with me, and where I was, for he laid me flat on the Ground, but my never failing old Pilot, the *Portuguese* (so Providence unlooked for directs Deliverances from Dangers, which to us are unforeseen) had a Pistol in his Pocket, which I knew nothing of, nor the *Tartars*, neither if they had, I suppose they would not have attack'd us. But Cowards are always boldest when there is no Danger.

The old Man seeing me down, with a bold Heart stepped up to the Fellow that had struck me, and laying hold of his Arm with one Hand, and pulling him down by main Force a little towards him with the other, shot him into the Head, and laid him dead upon the Spot; he then immediately stepped up to him who had stopped us, as I said, and before he could come forward again, (for it was all done as it were in a moment) made a Blow at him with a Scimitar which he always wore, but missing the Man, cut his Horse into the Side of his Head, cut one of his Ears off by the Root, and a great Slice down the Side of his Face, the poor Beast enraged with the Wound, was no more to be govern'd by his Rider, though the Fellow sat well enough too, but away he flew, and carry'd him quite out of the Pilot's Reach,

and at some Distance rising up upon his hind Legs, threw down the *Tartar*, and fell upon him

In this Interval, the poor *Chinese* came in, who had lost the Camel, but he had no Weapon, however, seeing the *Tartar* down, and his Horse fallen upon him, away he runs to him, and seizing upon an ugly ill-favour'd Weapon he had by his Side, something like a Pole-axe, but not a Pole-axe neither, he wrenched it from him, and made shift to knock his *Tartarian* Brains out with it. But my old Man had the third *Tartar* to deal with still, and seeing he did not fly, as he expected, nor come on to fight him, as he apprehended, but stand stock still, the old Man stood still too, and falls to work with his Tackle to charge his Pistol again, but as soon as the *Tartar* saw the Pistol, whether he suppos'd it to be the same, or another, I know not, but away he scoured, and left my Pilot, my Champion I called him afterward, a complete Victory

By this time I was a little awake, for I thought when first I began to wake, that I had been in a sweet Sleep, but as I said above, I wonder'd where I was, how I came upon the Ground, and what was the matter. In a word, a few moments after, as Sense return'd, I felt Pain, though I did not know where, I clapped my Hand to my Head, and took it away bloody, then I felt my Head ache, and then in another Moment, Memory return'd, and everything was present to me again

I jumped up upon my Feet instantly, and got hold of my Sword, but no Enemies in view. I found a *Tartar* lie dead and his Horse standing very quietly by him, and looking farther, I saw my Champion and Deliverer, who had been to see what the *Chinese* had done, coming back with his Hanger in his Hand, the old Man seeing me on my Feet, came running to me and embrac'd me with a great deal of Joy, being afraid before that I had been killed, and seeing me bloody, would see how I was hurt, but it was not much, only what we call a broken Head; neither did I afterwards find any great Inconvenience from the Blow, other than the Place which was hurt, and which was well again in two or three Days

We made no great Gain however by this Victory, for we lost a Camel, and gained a Horse, but that which was remarkable, when we came back to the Village, the Man demanded to be paid for the Camel. I disputed it, and it was brought to a hearing before the *Chinese* Judge of the Place, that is to say, in *English*, we went before

a Justice of the Peace Give him his due, he acted with a great deal of Prudence and Impartiality, and having heard both Sides, he gravely asked the *Chinese* Man, that went with me to buy the Camel, whose Servant he was? I am no Servant, says he, but went with the Stranger At whose Request? says the Justice. At the Stranger's Request, says he. Why then, says the Justice, you were the Stranger's Servant for the Time, and the Camel being deliver'd to his Servant, it was deliver'd to him, and he must pay-for it.

I confess the Thing was so clear, that I had not a Word to say, but admiring to see such just Reasoning upon the Consequence, and so accurate stating the Cause, I paid willingly for the Camel, and sent for another, but you may observe, I sent for it, I did not go to fetch it myself any more, I had enough of that.

The City of *Naum* is a Frontier of the *Chinese* Empire, they call it fortified, and so it is, as Fortifications go there, for this I will venture to affirm, that all the *Tartars* in *Karakathie*, which I believe are some Millions, could not batter down the Walls with their Bows and Arrows, but to call it strong, if it were attack'd with Cannon, would be to make those who understand it, laugh at you

We wanted, as I have said, above two Days' Journey of this City, when Messengers were sent Express to every Part of the Road, to tell all Travellers and Caravans, to halt till they had a Guard sent for them, for that an unusual Body of *Tartars*, making ten thousand in all, had appear'd in the Way, about thirty Miles beyond the City

This was very bad News to Travellers, however, it was carefully done of the Governor, and we were very glad to hear we should have a Guard; accordingly, two Days after, we had two hundred Soldiers sent us from a Garrison of the *Chinese*, on our left, and three hundred more from the City of *Naum*, and with those we advanced boldly. The three hundred Soldiers from *Naum* marched in our Front, the two hundred in our Rear, and our Men on each Side of our Camel with our Baggage, and the whole Caravan in the Centre, in this Order, and well prepar'd for Battle, we thought ourselves a Match for the whole ten thousand *Mongol Tartars*, if they had appear'd, but the next day when they did appear, it was quite another thing.

It was early in the Morning, when marching from a little well situated Town called *Changu*, we had a River to pass, where we were oblig'd to ferry, and had the *Tartars* had any Intelligence, then had

been the Time to have attack'd us, wher the Caravan being over, the Rear-Guard was behind, but they did not appear

About three Hours after, when we were enter'd upon a Desert of about fifteen or sixteen Miles over, behold, by a Cloud of Dust they raised, we saw an Enemy was at Hand, and they were at Hand indeed, for they came on upon the Spur.

The *Chinese*, our Guard on the Front, who had talked so big the Day before, began to stagger, and the Soldiers frequently looked behind them, which is a certain Sign in a Soldier, that he is just ready to run away, my old Pilot was of my mind, and being near me, he called out, Seignior *Inglesse*, says he, those Fellows must be encourag'd, or they will ruin us all, for if the *Tartars* come on, they will never stand it. I am of your Mind, said I, but what Course must be done? Done! says he, let fifty of our Men advance, and flank them on each Wing, and encourage them, and they will fight like brave Fellows in brave Company, but without, they will every man turn his back, immediately I rode up to our Leader, and told him, who was exactly of our mind; and accordingly, fifty of us marched to the right Wing, and fifty to the left, and the rest made a Line of Rescue, and so we marched, leaving the last two hundred Men to make another Body by themselves, and to guard the Camels, only that if need were, they should send a hundred Men, to assist the last fifty

In a word, the *Tartars* came on, and an innumerable Company they were, how many, we could not tell, but ten thousand we thought was the least. A Party of them came on first, and viewed our Posture, traversing the Ground in the Front of our Line, and as we found them within Gun-shot, our Leader order'd the two Wings to advance swiftly, and give them a Salvo on each Wing with their Shot, which was done, but they went off, and I suppose back to give an Account of the Reception they were like to meet with and indeed that Salute clogged their Stomach, for they immediately halted, stood awhile to consider of it, and wheeling off to the left, they gave over the Design, and said no more to us for that time, which was very agreeable to our Circumstances, which were but very indifferent for a Battle with such a Number

Two Days after this, we came to the City *Naum*, or *Naum*, we thank'd the Governor for his Care for us, and collected to the Value of a hundred Crowns, or therabouts, which we gave to the Soldiers sent to guard us, and here we rested one Day. This is a Garrison



indeed, and there were nine hundred Soldiers kept here; but the Reason of it was, that formerly the *Muscovite* Frontiers lay nearer to them than they do now, the *Muscovites* having abandon'd that Part of the Country (which lies from this City West, for about two hundred Miles) as desolate and unfit for Use, and more especially, being so very remote, and so difficult to send Troops thither for its Defence, for we had yet above two thousand Miles to *Muscovy*, properly so called.

After this, we passed several great Rivers, and two dreadful Deserts, one of which we were sixteen Days passing over, and which, as I said, was to be called *no Man's Land*, and on the 13th of *April* we came to the Frontiers of the *Muscovite* Dominions. I think the first City, or Town, or Fortress, whatever it might be called, that belong'd to the Czar of *Muscovy*, was called *Argun*, being on the West Side of the River *Argun*.

I could not but discover an infinite Satisfaction, that I was soon arriv'd in, as I called it, a Christian Country, or at least in a Country govern'd by Christians, for though the *Muscovites* do, in my Opinion, but just deserve the Name of Christians, yet such they pretend to be, and are very devout in their Way. It would certainly occur to any Man who travels the World as I have done, and who had any Power of Reflection, I say, it would occur to him, to reflect what a Blessing it is to be brought into the World, where the Name of God, and of a Redeemer is known, worshipp'd and ador'd, and not where the People given up by Heaven to strong Delusions, worship the Devil, and prostrate themselves to Stocks and Stones, worship Monsters, Elements, horrible shaped Animals, and Statues, or Images of Monsters. Not a Town or City we passed through, but had their Pagodas, their Idols, and their Temples, and ignorant People worshipping, even the Works of their own Hands.

Now we came where at least a Face of the Christian Worship appear'd, where the Knee was bowed to Jesus, and whether ignorantly or not, yet the Christian Religion was owned, and the Name of the true God was called upon, and ador'd, and it made the very Recresses of my Soul rejoice to see it. I saluted the brave *Scots* Merchant I mention'd above, with my first acknowledgment of this, and taking him by the Hand, I said to him, Blessed be God, we are once again come among Christians. He smiled, and answer'd, Do not rejoice too soon, Countryman, these *Muscovites* are but an odd sort of

Christians; and but for the Name of it, you may see very little of the Substance, for some Months farther of our Journey

Well, says I, but still it is better than Paganism, and worshipping of Devils. Why, I'll tell you, says he, except the *Russian* Soldiers in Garrisons, and a few of the Inhabitants of the Cities upon the Road, all the rest of this Country, for above a thousand Miles farther, is inhabited by the worst and most ignorant of Pagans, and so indeed we found it

We were now lunched into the greatest Piece of solid Earth, if I understand anything of the Surface of the Globe, that is to be found in any Part of the Earth; we had at least twelve hundred Miles to the Sea, Eastward, we had at least two Thousand to the Bottom of the *Baltic* Sea, Westward, and above three thousand Miles, if we left that Sea, and went on West to the *British* and *French* Channels. We had full five thousand Miles to the *Indian*, or *Persian* Sea, South; and about eight hundred Miles to the Frozen Sea, North; nay, if some People may be believ'd, there might be no Sea North-East, till we came round the Pole, and consequently into the North-West, and so had a Continent of Land into *America*, the Lord knows where, though I could give some Reasons why I believe that to be a Mistake.

As we enter'd into the *Muscovite* Dominions, a good while before we come to any considerable Towns, we had nothing to observe there but this, first, that all the Rivers that run to the East, as I understood by the Charts, which some in our Caravan had with them, it was plain, all those Rivers ran into the Great River *Yamour*, or *Gam-mour*. This River, by the natural Course of it, must run into the East Sea, or *Chinese* Ocean. The Story they tell us, that the Mouth of this River is choked up with Bull-rushes, of a monstrous Growth, (viz) three Foot about, and twenty or thirty Foot high, I must be allow'd to say, I believe nothing of, but as its Navigation is of no Use, because there is no Trade that way, the *Tartars*, to whom alone it belongs, dealing in nothing but Cattle, so Nobody that ever I heard of, has been curious enough, either to go down to the Mouth of it in Boats, or come up from the Mouth of it in Ships, but this is certain, that this River running due East, in the Latitude of [about 50 degrees] carries a vast Concourse of Rivers along with it, and finds an Ocean to empty itself in that Latitude, so we are sure of Sea there

Some Leagues to the North of this River, there are several con-

siderable Rivers, whose Streams run as due North as the *Yamouir* runs East, and these are all found to join their Waters with the Great River *Tartarus*, named so, from the northernmost Nations of the *Mongol Tartars*, who the *Chinese* say, were the first *Tartars* in the World, and who, as our Geographers allege, are the *Gog* and *Magog* mention'd in sacred Story

These Rivers running all Northward, as well as all the other Rivers I am yet to speak of, make it evident, that the Northern Ocean bounds the Land also on that Side, so that it does not seem rational in the least to think, that the Land can extend itself to join with *America* on that side, or that there is not a Communication between the Northern and the Eastern Ocean, but of this I shall say no more, it was my Observation at that time, and therefore I take Notice of it in this Place. We now advanc'd from the River *Arguna* by easy and moderate Journeys, and were very visibly oblig'd to the Care the Czar of *Muscovy* has taken to have Cities and Towns built in as many Places as are possible to place them, where his Soldiers keep Garrison something like the Stationary Soldiers placed by the *Romans* in the remotest Countries of their Empire, some of which I had read particularly were placed in *Britain* for the Security of Commerce, and for the lodging Travellers, and thus it was here, for wherever we came, though at these Towns and Stations, the Garrisons and Governor were *Russians*, and profess'd Christians, yet the Inhabitants of the Country were mere *Pagans*, sacrificing to Idols, and worshipping the Sun, Moon, and Stars, or all the Host of Heaven, and not only so, but were of all the *Heathens* and *Pagans* that ever I met with, the most barbarous, except only that they did not eat Man's Flesh, as our *Savages* of *America* did

Some Instances of this we met with in the Country between *Arguna*, where we enter the *Muscovite* Dominions, and a City of *Tartars* and *Russians* together, called *Nortzinskey*, in which is a continu'd Desert or Forest, which cost us twenty Days to travel over it, in a Village near the last of those Places I had the Curiosity to go and see their Way of Living, which is most brutish and insufferable, they had I suppose a great Sacrifice that Day, for there stood out upon an old Stump of a Tree, an Idol made of Wood, frightful as the Devil, at least as anything we can think of to represent the Devil, can be made, it had a Head certainly not so much as resembling any Creature that the World ever saw, Ears as big as Goat's Horns, and as high, Fyes as

big as a Crown-Piece, a Nose like a crooked Ram's Horn, and a Mouth extended four corner'd, like that of a Lion, with horrible Teeth, hooked like a Parrot's under Bill, it was dressed up in the filthiest manner that you could suppose, its upper Garment was of Sheep-Skins, with the Wool outward, a great *Tartar* Bonnet on the Head, with two Horns growing through it; it was about eight Foot high, yet had no Feet or Legs, or any other Proportion of Parts

This Scare-crow was set up at the outer Side of the Village, and when I came near to it, there were sixteen or seventeen Creatures, whether Men or Women, I could not tell, for they make no Distinction by their Habits, either of Body or Head. These lay all flat on the Ground, round this formidable Block of shapeless Wood. I saw no Motion among them any more than if they had been all Logs of Wood like the Idol, and at first, really thought they had been so, but when I came a little nearer, they started up upon their Feet, and raised a howling Cry, as if it had been so many deep-mouthed Hounds, and walked away as if they were displeas'd at our disturbing them. A little way off from the Idol, and at the Door of that Tent or Hut, made all of Sheep-Skins and Cow-Skins, dried, stood three Butchers, I thought they were such, when I came nearer to them, I found they had long Knives in their Hands, and in the middle of the Tent appear'd three Sheep killed, and one young Bullock or Steer. These it seems, were Sacrifices to that senseless Log of an Idol, and these three Men, Priests belonging to it, and the seventeen prostrated Wretches were the People who brought the Offering, and were making their Prayers to that Stock

I confess I was more moved at their Stupidity and brutish Worship of a Hobgoblin, than ever I was at anything in my Life, to see God's most glorious and best Creature, to whom he had granted so many Advantages, *even by Creation*, above the rest of the Works of his Hands, vested with a reasonable Soul, and that Soul adorn'd with Faculties and Capacities, adapted both to honour his Maker, and be honour'd by him, sunk and degenerated to a Degree so more than stupid, as to prostrate itself to a frightful Nothing, a mere imaginary Object dressed up by themselves, and made terrible to themselves by their own Contrivance, adorn'd only with Clouts and Rags, and that this should be the Effect of mere Ignorance, wrought up into hellish Devotion by the Devil himself, who envying (to his Maker) the Homage and Adoration of his Creatures, had deluded them into such

gross, surfeiting, sordid, and brutish things, as one would think should shock Nature itself

But what signify'd all the Astonishment and Reflection of Thoughts? thus it was, and I saw it before my Eyes, and there was no room to wonder at it, or think it impossible, all my Admiration turned to Rage, and I rid up to the Image, or Monster, call it what you will, and with my Sword cut the Bonnet that was on its Head in two in the middle, so that it hung down by one of the Horns, and one of our Men that was with me took hold of the Sheep-Skin that cover'd it, and pulled at it, when behold a most hideous Outcry and Howling run through the Village, and two or three hundred People came about my Ears, so that I was glad to scour for it, for we saw some had Bows and Arrows, but I resolv'd from that moment to visit them again.

Our Caravan rested three Nights at the Town, which was about four Miles off, in order to provide some Horses which they wanted, several of the Horses having been lamed, and jaded with the badness of the Way and long March over the last Desert; so we had some Leisure here to put my Design in Execution I communicated my Project to the *Scots* Merchant of *Moscow*, of whose Courage I had had sufficient Testimony, as above I told him what I had seen, and with what Indignation I had since thought that human Nature could be so degenerate I told him, I was resolv'd if I could get but four or five Men well armed to go with me, I was resolv'd to go and destroy that vile, abominable Idol, and let them see that it had no Power to help itself, and consequently could not be an Object of Worship, or be prayed to, much less help them that offer'd Sacrifices to it.

He laughed at me, *says he*, Your Zeal may be good, but what do you propose to yourself by it? Propose, *said I*, to vindicate the Honour of God, which is insulted by this Devil Worship But how will it vindicate the Honour of God? *said he* While the People will not be able to know what you mean by it, unless you could speak to them and tell them so, and then they will fight you, and beat you too I'll assure you, for they are desperate Fellows, and that especially in Defence of their Idolatry Can we not, *said I*, do it in the Night and then leave them the Reasons and Causes in Writing in their own Language? Writing! *said he*, why there is not a Man in five Nations of them that know anything of a Letter, or how to read a Word in any Language, or in their own Wretched Ignorance! *said I* to him however I have a great mind to do it; perhaps Nature may draw In

ferences from it to them, to let them see how brutish they are, to worship such horrid Things. Look you, Sir, said he, if your Zeal prompts you to it so warmly, you must do it, but in the next place I would have you consider, these wild Nations of People are subjected by Force to the Czar of *Muscovy's* Dominions, and if you do this, it is ten to one but they will come by Thousands to the Governor of *Nortsnsloy*, and complain, and demand Satisfaction, and if he cannot give them Satisfaction, it is ten to one but they revolt, and will occasion a new War with all the *Tartars* in the Country

This, I confess, put new Thoughts into my Head for a while, but I harped upon the same String still, and all that Day I was uneasy to put my Project in Execution Towards the Evening the *Scots* Merchant met me by Accident in our Walk about the Town, and desir'd to speak with me, I believe, said he, I have put you off of your good Design, I have been a little concern'd about it since, for I abhor the Idol and the Idolatry as much as you can do Truly, says I, you have put it off a little as to the Execution of it, but you have not put it all out of my Thoughts, and I believe I shall do it still before I quit this Place, though I were to be deliver'd up to them for Satisfaction. No, no, says he, God forbid they should deliver you up to such a Crew of Monsters, they shall not do that neither, that would be murdering you indeed. Why, says I, how would they use me? Use you! says he, I'll tell you how they served a poor *Russian*, who affronted them in their Worship just as you did, and who they took Prisoner, after they had lamed him with an Arrow that he could not run away, they took him and stripped him stark naked, and set him up on the top of the Idol Monster, and stood all around him, and shot as many Arrows into him as would stick over his whole Body, and then they burnt him and all the Arrows sticking in him as a Sacrifice to the Idol And was this the same Idol? Yes, says he, the very same. Well, says I, I'll tell you a Story, so I related the Story of our Men at *Madagascar*, and how they burnt and sacked the Village there, and killed Man, Woman, and Child, for their murdering one of our Men, just as it is related before, and when I had done, I added, that I thought we ought to do so to this Village

He listen'd very attentively to the Story, but when I talked of doing so to that Village, says he, You mistake very much, it was not this Village, it was almost a hundred Mile from this place, but it was the same Idol, for they carry him about in Procession all over the

Country Well, then, says I, then that Idol ought to be punish'd for it, and it shall, says I, if I live this Night out.

In a word, finding me resolute, he liked the Design, and told me I should not go alone, but he would go with me, and bring a stout Fellow, one of his Countrymen, to go also with us, and one, says he, as famous for his Zeal as you can desire any one to be, against such Devilish things as these. In a word, he brought me his Comrade, a *Scotsman*, whom he called Captain *Richardson*, and I gave him a full account of what I had seen, and in a word, of what I intended; and he told me readily, he would go with me if it cost him his Life; so we agreed to go only us three. I had indeed propos'd it to my Partner, but he declin'd it, he said, he was ready to assist me to the utmost, and upon all occasions for my defence, but that this was an Adventure quite out of his Way, so, I say, we resolv'd upon our Work only us three and my Man-Servant, and to put it in Execution that Night about Midnight, with all the Secrecy imaginable.

However, upon second Thoughts, we were willing to delay it till the next Night, because the Caravan being to set forward in the Morning, we suppos'd the Governor could not pretend to give them any Satisfaction upon us when we were out of his Power. The *Scots Merchant*, as steady in his Resolution for the Enterprise, as bold in executing, brought me a *Tartar's* Robe or Gown of the Sheep-Skins, and a Bonnet, with a Bow and Arrows, and had provided the same for himself and his Countryman, that the People, if they saw us, should not be able to determine who we were.

All the first Night we spent in mixing up some combustible Matter with Aqua-vitæ, Gunpowder, and such other Materials as we could get, and having a good Quantity of Tar in a little Pot, about an Hour after Night we set out upon our Expedition.

We came to the Place about eleven o'Clock at Night, and found that the People had not the least Jealousy of Danger attending their Idol. The Night was cloudy, yet the Moon gave us Light enough to see that the Idol stood just in the same Posture and Place that it did before. The People seem'd to be all at their Rest, only, that in the great Hut, or Tent, as we call'd it, where we saw the three Priests, whom we mistook for Butchers, we saw a Light, and going up close to the Door, we heard People talking, as if there were five or six of them, we concluded therefore, that if we set the Wild-fire to the Idol, these Men would come out immediately, and run up to the

Place to rescue it from the Destruction that we intended for it, and what to do with them we knew not, once we thought of carrying it away and setting Fire to it at a Distance, but when we came to handle it, we found it too bulky for our Carriage, so we were at a Loss again. The second *Scotsman* was for setting Fire to the Tent or Hut, and knocking the Creatures that were there on the Head when they came out, but I could not join with that, I was against killing them, if it was possible to be avoided. Well then, said the *Scots Merchant*, I'll tell you what we will do, we will try to take them Prisoners, tie their Hands behind them, and make them stand still, and see their Idol destroy'd.

As it happen'd, we had Twine or Packthread enough about us, which was used to tie our Fire-Works together, so we resolv'd to attack these People first, and with as little Noise as we could. The first Thing we did, we knocked at the Door, which issued just as we desir'd it, for one of their Idol Priests came to the Door. We immediately seized upon him, stopped his Mouth, and tied his Hands behind him, and led him to the Idol, where we gagged him, that he might not make a Noise; tied his Feet also together, and left him on the Ground.

Two of us then waited at the Door, expecting that another would come out to see what the Matter was, but we waited so long till the third Man came back to us, and then nobody coming out, we knocked again gently, and immediately out came two more, and we served them just in the same manner, but were oblig'd to go all with them, and lay them down by the Idol some Distance from one another, when going back, we found two more were come out to the Door, and a third more stood behind them within the Door. We seized the two, and immediately tied them, when the third stepping back, and crying out, my *Scots Merchant* went in after him, and taking out a Composition we had made, that would only smoke and stunk, he set Fire to it, and threw it in among them; by that Time the other *Scotsman* and my Man taking Charge of the two Men who were already bound, and tied together also by the Arm, led them away to the Idol, and left them there, to see if their Idol would relieve them, making Haste back to us.

When the Fuze we had thrown in had filled the Hut with so much Smoke that they were almost suffocated we then threw in a small Leather Bag of another Kind, which flamed like a Candle, and



following it in, we found there was but four People left, who, it seems, were two Men and two Women, and, as we suppos'd, had been about some of their Diabolic Sacrifices. They appear'd, in short, frighted to Death, at least so as to sit trembling and stupid, and not able to speak neither, for the Smoke.

In a word, we took them, bound them as we had the other, and all without any Noise. I should have said, we brought them out of the House or Hut first, for indeed we were not able to bear the Smoke any more than they were. When we had done this, we carry'd them all together to the Idol when we came there, we fell to work with him, and first we daubed him all over, and his Robes also, with Tar and such other Stuff as we had, which was Tallow mixed with Brimstone, then we stopp'd his Eyes, and Ears, and Mouth full of Gunpowder, and then we wrapped up a great piece of Wild-fire in his Bonnet, and then sticking all the Combustibles we had brought with us upon him, we looked about to see if we could find anything else to help to burn him, when my Man remember'd, that by the Tent or Hut where the Men were, there lay a heap of dry Forage, whether Straw or Rushes I do not remember, away he and one of the *Scotsmen* run, and fetch'd their Arms full of that. When we had done this, we took all our Prisoners, and brought them, having untied their Feet, and ungagg'd their Mouths, and made them stand up, and set them just before their monstrous Idol, and then set fire to the whole.

We stay'd by it a quarter of an Hour, or thereabouts, till the Powder in the Eyes, and Mouth, and Ears of the Idol blew up, and we could perceive had split and deform'd the Shape, and in a word, till we saw it burn into a mere Block or Log of Wood and then setting the dry Forage to it, we found it would be quite consumed, when we began to think of going away, but the *Scotsman* said no, we must not go, for these poor deluded Wretches will all throw themselves into the Fire, and burn themselves with the Idol, so we resolv'd to stay till the Forage was burnt down too, and then we came away and left them.

In the Morning we appear'd among our Fellow Travellers exceeding busy, in getting ready for our Journey, nor could any Man suggest that we had been anywhere but in our Beds, as Travellers might be suppos'd to be, to fit themselves for the Fatigues of that Day's Journey.

But it did not end so, the next Day came a great Multitude of the Country People, not only of this Village, but of a hundred more, for aught I know, to the Town-Gates, and in a most outrageous manner, demanded Satisfaction of the *Russian* Governor, for the insulting their Priests, and burning their Great *Cham-Chi-Thaungu*, such a hard Name they gave the monstrous Creature they worshipp'd, the People of *Nortsinskoy* were at first in a great Consternation, for they said, the *Tartars* were no less than thirty thousand, and that in a few Days more, would be one hundred thousand strong

The *Russian* Governor sent out Messengers to appease them, and gave them all the good words imaginable He assur'd them, he knew nothing of it, and that there had not a Soul of his Garrison been abroad that it could not be from anybody there, and if they would let him know who it was, they should be exemplarily punish'd. They return'd haughtily, that all the Country reverenc'd the Great *Cham-Chi-Thaungu*, who dwelt in the Sun, and no Mortal would have decreed to offer Violence to his Image, but some Christian Miscreant, so they called them, it seems, and they therefore denounc'd War against him, and all the *Russians*, who, they said, were Miscreants and Christians

The Governor still patient, and unwilling to make a Breach, or to have any Cause of War alleged to be given by him, the Czar having straitly charged them to treat the conquer'd Country with Gentleness and Civility, gave them still all the good Words he could, at last he told them, there was a *Caravan* gone towards *Russia* that Morning, and perhaps it was some of them, who had done them this Injury, and that if they would be satisfied with that, he would send after them, to inquire into it This seemed to appease them a little, and accordingly the Governor sent after us, and gave us a particular Account how the Thing was, intimating withal, that if any in our Caravan had done it, they should make their Escape, but that whether they had done it or no, we should make all the haste forward that was possible and that in the meantime he would keep them in play as long as he could

This was very friendly in the Governor, however, when it came to the Caravan, there was nobody knew anything of the Matter And as for us that were guilty, we were the least of all suspected, none so much as asked us the Question, however, the Captain of the Caravan for the 'time, took the Hint that the Governor gave us, and we

marched or travell'd two Days and two Nights, without any considerable Stop, and then we lay at a Village called *Plotlus*, nor did make any long Stop here, but hasten'd on towards *Jarawena*, another of the Czar of *Muscovy's* Colonies, and where we expected we should be safe, but it is to be observ'd, that here we began for two or three Days' March, to enter upon the vast nameless Desert, of which I shall say more in its Place, and which, if we had now been upon it, it is more than probable, we had been all destroy'd. It was the second Day's March from *Plotlus*, that by the Clouds of Dust behind us at a great Distance, some of our People began to be sensible we were pursu'd, we had enter'd the Desert, and had passed by a great Lake, called, *Seliaks-Oser*, when we perceiv'd a very great Body of Horse appear on the other Side of the Lake to the North, we travelling West. We observ'd they went away West as we did, but had suppos'd we would have taken that Side of the Lake, whereas, we very happily took the South Side, and in two Days more, we saw them not, for they believing we were still before them, pushed on till they came to the river *Udda*, this is a very great River when' it passes farther North, but where we came to it, we found it narrow, and fordable.

The third Day they either found their Mistake, or had Intelligence of us, and came pouring in upon us, towards the Dusk of the Evening. We had, to our great Satisfaction, just pitched upon a Place for our Camp, which was very convenient for the Night, for as we were upon a Desert, though but at the beginning of it, that was above five hundred Miles over, we had no Towns to lodge at, and indeed expected none but the City *Jarawena*, which we had yet two Days' March to; the Desert however, had some few Woods in it on this Side, and little Rivers, which ran all into the great river *Udda*. It was in a narrow Strait between two little, but very thick Woods, that we pitched our little Camp for that Night, expecting to be attack'd in the Night.

Nobody knew but ourselves, what we were pursu'd for; but as it was usual for the *Mongol Tartars* to go about in Troops in that Desert, so the Carivans always fortify themselves every Night against them, as against Armies of Robbers, and it was therefore no new thing to be pursu'd.

But we had this Night, of all the Nights of our Travels, a most advantageous Camp, for we lay between two Woods, with a little Rivulet running just before our Front, so that we could not be sur

rounded, or attack'd any way, but in our Front or Rear, we took care also to make our Front as strong as we could, by placing our Packs, with our Camels and Horses, all in a Line on the Inside of the River, and felling some Trees in our Rear

In this Posture we encamp'd for the Night, but the Enemy was upon us before we had finish'd our Situation. They did not come on us like Thieves as we expected, but sent three Messengers to us, to demand the Men to be deliver'd to them, that had abus'd their Priests, and burnt their God, *Cham-Chi-Thaungu* with Fire, that they might burn them with Fire, and upon this, they said they would go away, and do us no farther harm otherwise, they would burn us all with Fire. Our Men looked very blank at this Message, and began to stare at one another, to see who looked with most Guilt in their Faces, but *nobody* was the Word, nobody did it. The Leader of the Caravan sent Word, he was well assur'd, it was not done by any of our Camp, that we were peaceable Merchants, travelling on our Business, that we had done no harm to them, or to any one else, and that therefore, they must look farther for their Enemies who had injur'd them, for we were not the People, so desir'd them not to disturb us, for if they did, we should defend ourselves

They were far from being satisfy'd with this for an Answer, but a great Crowd of them came down in the Morning by break of Day to our Camp, but seeing us in such an unaccountable Situation, they durst come no farther than the Brook in our Front, where they stood and showed us such a Number, that indeed terrify'd us very much, for those that spoke least of them, spoke of ten thousand here they stood and looked at us a while, and then setting up a great Howl, they let fly a Crowd of Arrows among us, but we were well enough fortify'd for that, for we shelter'd under our Baggage, and I do not remember that one Man of us was hurt.

Some Time after this, we see them move a little to our Right, and expected them on the Rear, when a cunning Fellow, a *Cossack*, as they call them, of *Jarawena*, in the Pay of the *Muscovites*, calling to the Leader of the Caravan, said to him, I'll go send all these People away to *Sihelka*, this was a City, four or five Days' Journey at least to the South, and rather behind us so he takes his Bow and Arrows, and getting on Horse-back, he rides away from our Rear directly, as it were back to *Nortsinskoj*, after this, he takes a great Circuit about, and comes to the Army of the *Tartars*, as if he had been sent

Express to tell them a long Story, that the People who had burnt the *Cham-Chi-Thaungu*, were gone to *Sihailka*, with a Caravan of Miscreants, as he called them, that is to say, Christians, and that they had resolv'd to burn the God *Schal-Isar*, belonging to the *Tongueses*.

As this Fellow was himself a mere *Tartar*, and perfectly spoke their Language, he counterfeited so well, that they all took it from him, and away they drove in a most violent Hurry to *Sihailka*, which it seems was five Days' Journey to the North, and in less than three Hours, they were entirely out of our Sight, and we never heard any more of them, and we never knew whether they went to that other Place called *Sihailka*, or no.

So we passed safely on to the City of *Jarawena*, where there was a Garrison of *Muscovites*, and there we rested five Days, the Caravan being exceedingly fatigu'd with the last Day's hard march, and with want of Rest in the Night.

From this City we had a frightful Desert, which held us three and twenty Days' March. We furnish'd ourselves with some Tents here, for the better accommodating ourselves in the Night, and the Leader of the Caravan procured sixteen Carriages or Waggons of the Country, for carrying our Water and Provisions, and these Carriages were our Defence every Night round our little Camp, so that had the *Tartars* appear'd, unless they had been very numerous indeed, they would not have been able to hurt us.

We may well be suppos'd to want Rest again after this long Journey, for in this Desert we saw neither House or Tree, or scarce a Bush, we saw abundance of the Sable-Hunters, as they call'd them. These are all *Tartars* of the *Mongol Tartary*, of which this Country is a part, and they frequently attack small Caravans, but we saw no Numbers of them together. I was curious to see the Sable Skins they catch'd, but could never speak with any of them, for they durst not come near us, neither durst we straggle from our Company, to go near them.

After we had passed this Desert we came into a Country pretty well inhabited, that is to say, we found Towns and Castles, settled by the Czar of *Muscovy*, with Garrisons of Stationary Soldiers to protect the Caravans, and defend the Country against the *Tartars*, who would otherwise make it very dangerous travelling, and his *Czarist* Majesty has given such strict Orders for the well guarding the Caravans and Merchants, that if there are any *Tartars* heard of in the



And yet here I observ'd Ignorance and Paganism still prevail'd, except in the *Muscovite* Garrisons, all the Country between the River *Oby* and the River *Janezay* is as entirely Pagan, and the People as barbarous, as the remotest of the *Tartars*, nay, as any Nation, for aught I know in *Asia* or *America*. I also found, which I observ'd to the *Muscovite* Governors whom I had Opportunity to converse with, that the poor Pagans are not much the wiser or the nearer Christianity for being under the *Muscovite* Government, which they acknowledg'd was true enough, but, as they said, was none of their Business. That if the Czar expected to convert his *Siberian*, or *Tonguese*, or *Tartar* Subjects, it should be done by sending Clergymen among them, not Soldiers, and they added, with more Sincerity than I expected, that they found it was not so much the Concern of their Monarch to make the People Christians, as it was to make them Subjects.

From this River to the great River *Oby*, we crossed a wild uncultivated Country. I cannot say it is a barren Soil, it is only barren of People, and good Management, otherwise it is in itself a most pleasant, fruitful and agreeable Country. What Inhabitants we found in it are all Pagans, except such as are sent among them from *Russia*, for this is the Country, I mean on both sides the River *Oby*, whither the *Muscovite* Criminals, that are not put to Death, are banish'd, and from whence it is next to impossible they should ever come away.

I have nothing material to say of my particular Affairs, till I came to *Teliskin*, the Capital City of *Siberia*, where I continu'd some time on the following Occasion.

We had been now almost seven Months on our Journey, and Winter began to come on apace, whereupon my Partner and I called a Council about our particular Affairs, in which we found it proper, considering that we were bound for *England*, and not for *Moscow*, to consider how to dispose of ourselves. They told us of Sledges and Reindeer to carry us over the Snow in the Winter time, and indeed they have such things, that it would be incredible to relate the Particulars of, by which means the *Russians* travel more in the Winter than they can in Summer, because in these Sledges they are able to run Night and Day, the Snow being frozen, is one universal Covering to Nature, by which the Hills, the Vales, the Rivers, the Lakes, all are smooth, and hard as a Stone, and

they run upon the Surface, without any regard to what is under neath

But I had no occasion to push at a Winter Journey of this kind I was bound to *England*, not to *Moscow*, and my Route lay two ways, either I must go on as the Caravan went till I came to *Jeroslaw*, and then go off West for *Narva*, and the Gulf of *Finland*, and so either by Sea or Land to *Dantzic*, where I might possibly sell my *China* Cargo to good Advantage, or I must leave the Caravan at a little Town on the *Dwina*, from whence I had but six Days by Water to *Archangel*, and from thence might be sure of Shipping, either to *England*, *Holland*, or *Hamburg*

Now to go any of these Journeys in the Winter, would have been preposterous, for as to *Dantzic*, the *Baltic* would be frozen up, and I could not get Passage, and to go by Land in those Countries, was far less safe than among the *Mongol Tartars*, likewise to go to *Archangel* in *October*, all the Ships would be gone from thence, and even the Merchants who dwell there in Summer, retire South to *Moscow* in the Winter when the Ships are gone, so that I should have nothing but Extremity of Cold to encounter, with a Scarcity of Provisions, and must lie there in an empty Town all the Winter so that upon the whole I thought it much my better way to let the Caravan go, and to make Provision to winter where I was, (*viz*) at *Tobolski* in *Siberia*, in the Latitude of 60 Degrees, where I was sure of three Things to wear out a cold Winter with, (*viz*) Plenty of Provision such as the Country afforded, a warm House, with Fuel enough, and excellent Company, of all which I shall give a full Account in its Place.

I was now in a quite different Climate from my below'd Island, where I never felt Cold except when I had my Ague, on the contrary, I had much to do to bear any Clothes on my Back, and never made any Fire but without Doors, and for my necessity in dressing my Food, &c Now I made me three good Vests, with large Robes or Gowns over them to hang down to the Feet, and button close to the Wrists, and all these lined with Furs to make them sufficiently warm.

As to a warm House, I must confess I greatly dislike'd our way in *England* of making Fires in every Room in the House, in open Chimneys, which when the Fire was out, always kept the Air in the Room cold as the Climate But taking an Apartment in a good House in the Town, I order'd a Chimney to be built like a Furnace,



in the centre of six several Rooms, like a Stove, the Funnel to carry the Smoke went up one Way, the Door to come at the Fire went in another, and all the Rooms were kept equally warm, but no Fire seen, just as they heat the Bagnios in *England*

By this means we had always the same Climate in all the Rooms, and an equal Heat was preserv'd, and how cold soever it was without, it was always warm within, and yet we saw no Fire, nor were incommoded with any Smoke

The most wonderful thing of all was, that it should be possible to meet with good Company here, in a Country so barbarous as that, of the most Northerly Parts of *Europe*, near the frozen Ocean, and within but a very few Degrees of *Nova Zembla*

But this being the Country where the State Criminals of *Muscovy*, as I observ'd before, are all banish'd, this City was full of Noblemen, Princes, Gentlemen, Colonels, and in short all Degrees of the Nobility, Gentry, Soldiery, and Courtiers of *Muscovy* Here was the famous Prince *Galliozen*, the old General *Robostiski*, and several other Persons of Note, and some Ladies

By means of my *Scots* Merchant, whom nevertheless I parted with here, I made an Acquaintance here with several of these Gentlemen, and some of them of the first Rank, and from these in the long Winter Nights in which I stay'd here, I receiv'd very agreeable Visits. It was talking one Night with Prince ----- one of the banish'd Ministers of State, belonging to the Czar of *Muscovy*, that my Talk of my particular Case began He had been telling me abundance of fine Things of the Greatness, the Magnificence, the Dominions, and the absolute Power of the Emperor of the *Russians* I interrupted him, and told him I was a greater and more powerful Prince than ever the Czar of *Muscovy* was, though my Dominions were not so large, or my People so many. The *Russian* Grandee looked a little surpris'd, and fixing his Eyes steadily upon me, began to wonder what I meant.

I told him, his Wonder would cease when I had explain'd myself First, I told him, I had the absolute Disposal of the Lives and Fortunes of all my Subjects That notwithstanding my absolute Power, I had not one Person disaffected to my Government, or to my Person, in all my Dominions He shook his Head at that, and said, there indeed I outdid the Czar of *Muscovy* I told him, That all the Lands in my Kingdom were my own, and all my Subjects were not only my Tenants, but Tenants at Will That they would all fight for me to

the last Drop , and that never Tyrant, *for such I acknowledged myself to be*, was ever so universally belov'd, and yet so horribly feared by his Subjects

After amusing them with these Riddles in Government for a while, I opened the Case, and told them the Story at large of my living in the Island, and how I manag'd both myself and the People there that were under me, just as I have since minuted it down They were exceedingly taken with the Story, and especially the Prince, who told me with a Sigh, that the true Greatness of Life was to be Master of ourselves That he would not have exchang'd such a State of Life as mine, to have been Czar of *Muscovy*, and that he found more Felicity in the Retirement he seem'd to be banish'd to there, than ever he found in the highest Authority he enjoy'd in the Court of his Master the Czar That the Height of human Wisdom was to bring our Tempers down to our Circumstances , and to make a Calm within, under the Weight of the greatest Scorns without When he came first hither, he said he used to tear the Hair from his Head, and the Clothes from his Back, as others had done before him ; but a little Time and Consideration had made him look into himself, as well as round him to things without That he found the Mind of Man, if it was but once brought to reflect upon the State of universal Life, and how little this World was concern'd in its true Felicity, was perfectly capable of making a Felicity for itself, fully satisfying to itself, and suitable to its own best Ends and Desires, with but very little Assistance from the World That Air to breathe in, Food to sustain Life, Clothes for Warmth, and Liberty for Exercise in Order to Health, completed, in his Opinion, all that the World could do for us , and though the Greatness, the Authority, the Riches, and the Pleasures which some enjoy'd in the World, and which he had enjoy'd his Share of, had much in them that was agreeable to us , yet he observ'd that all those things chiefly gratify'd the coarsest of our Affections, such as our Ambition, our particular Pride, our Avarice, our Vanity, and our Sensuality , all which were indeed the mere Product of the worst part of Man, were in themselves Crimes, and had in them the Seeds of all Manner of Crimes, but neither were related to, or concern'd with any of those Virtues that constituted us wise Men, or of those Graces which distinguish'd us as Christians That being now depriv'd of all the fancied Felicity which he enjoy'd in the full Exercise of all those Vices, he said he was at Leisure to look upon

the dark Side of them, where he found all manner of Deformity, and was now convinc'd, that Virtue only makes a Man truly wise, rich, and great, and preserves him in the way to a superior Happiness in a future State And in this he said, they were more happy in their Banishment, than all their Enemies were, who had the full Possession of all the Wealth and Power that they (the Banish'd) had left behind them

Nor, Sir, says he, do I bring my Mind to this politically, by the Necessity of my Circumstances, which some call miserable, but if I know anything of myself, I would not now go back; though the Czar, my Master, should call me, and re-instate me in all my former Grandeur, I say, I would no more go back to it, than I believe my Soul, when it shall be deliver'd from this Prison of the Body, and has had a Taste of the glorious State beyond Life, would come back to the Jail of Flesh and Blood it is now enclos'd in, and leave Heaven to deal in the Dirt and Crime of human Affairs.

He spoke this with so much Warmth in his Temper, so much Earnestness and Motion of his Spirits, which were apparent in his Countenance, that it was evident it was the true Sense of his Soul. There was no room to doubt his Sincerity

I told him, I once thought myself a kind of a Monarch in my old Station, of which I had given him an Account, but that I thought he was not a Monarch only, but a great Conqueror, for that he that has got a Victory over his own exorbitant Desires, and has the absolute Dominion over himself, whose Reason entirely governs his Will, is certainly greater than he that conquers a City But, my Lord, *said I*, shall I take the Liberty to ask you a Question? With all my Heart, says he If the Door of your Liberty was opened, *said I*, would you not take hold of it to deliver yourself from this Exile?

Hold, said he, your Question is subtle, and requires some serious just Distinctions, to give it a sincere Answer, and I'll give it you from the Bottom of my Heart. Nothing that I know of in this World would move me to deliver myself from this State of Banishment, except these two, First, the Enjoyment of my Relations, and Secondly, a little warmer Climate, but I protest to you, that to go back to the Pomp of the Court, the Glory, the Power, the Hurry of a Minister of State, the Wealth, the Gaiety, and the Pleasures, that is to say, Follies of a Courtier, if my Master should send me Word this Moment, that he restores me to all he banish'd me from, I protest

*If I knew myself at all*, I would not leave this Wilderness, these Deserts, and these frozen Lakes, for the Palace at *Moscow*

But, my Lord, said I, perhaps you not only ~~are~~ banish'd from the Pleasures of the Court, and from the Power, and Authority, and Wealth you enjoy'd before, but you may be absent too from some of the Conveniences of Life, your Estate perhaps confiscated and your Effects plunder'd, and the Supplies left you here may not be suitable to the ordinary Demands of Life.

Ay, says he, that is as you suppose me to be a Lord, or a Prince, &c. So indeed I am, but you are now to consider me only as a Man, a human Creature, not at all distinguish'd from another, and so I can suffer no Want, unless I should be visited with Sickness and Distempers. However, to put the Question out of Dispute, you see our Manner, we are in this Place five Persons of Rank, we live perfectly retir'd, as suited to a State of Banishment, we have something rescu'd from the Shipwreck of our Fortunes, which keeps us from the mere Necessity of hunting for our Food, but the poor Soldiers who are here, without that Help, live in as much Plenty as we, who go into the Woods and catch Sables and Foxes, the Labour of a Month will maintain them a Year, and as the Way of living is not expensive, so it is not hard to get sufficient to ourselves. So that Objection is out of Doors.

I have not room to give a full Account of the most agreeable Conversation I had with this truly great Man, in all which he showed, that his Mind was so inspir'd with a superior Knowledge of Things, so supported by Religion, as well as by a vast Share of Wisdom, that his Contempt of the World was really as much as he had express'd, and that he was always the same to the last, as will appear in the Story I am going to tell.

I had been here 8 Months, and a dark dreadful Winter I thought it to be, the Cold so intense, that I could not so much as look abroad without being wrapt in Furs, and a Mask of Fur before my Face, or rather a Hood with only a Hole for Breath, and two for Sight. The little Daylight we had, was, as we reckon'd, for three Months, not above five Hours a Day, and six at most, only that the Snow lying on the Ground continually, and the Weather clear, it was never quite dark. Our Horses were kept (or rather starved) under Ground, and as for our Servants, for we hired three Servants here to look after our Horses and selves, we had every now and then their Fingers

and Toes to thaw and take care of, lest they should mortify and fall off

It is true, within Doors we were warm, the Houses being close, the Walls thick, the Lights small, and the Glass all double, our Food was chiefly the flesh of Deer dried and cured in the Season, good Bread enough, but baked as Biscuits, dried Fish of several Sorts, and some Flesh of Mutton, and of the Buffaloes, which is pretty good Beef. All the Stores of Provisions for the Winter are laid up in the Summer, and well cured, our Drink was Water mixed with Aquavita instead of Brandy, and for a Treat, Mead instead of Wine, which, however, they have excellent good. The Hunters, who venture abroad all Weathers, frequently brought us in fresh Venison, very fat and good, and sometimes Bear's Flesh, but we did not much care for the last. We had a good Stock of Tea, with which we treated our Friends, as above, and in a word, we lived very cheerfully and well, all things consider'd.

It was now *March*, and the Days grown considerably longer, and the Weather, at least, tolerable, so the other Travellers began to prepare Sleds to carry them over the Snow, and to get things ready to be going, but my Measures being fixed, as I have said, for *Archangel*, and not for *Muscovy* or the *Baltic*, I made no Motion, knowing very well that the Ships from the South do not set out for that Part of the World till *May* or *June*, and that if I was there by the beginning of *August*, it would be as soon as any Ships would be ready to go away, and therefore, I say, I made no haste to be gone, as others did, in a Word, I saw a great many People, nay, all the Travellers go away before me. It seems every Year they go from thence to *Moscow* for Trade, (*viz*) to carry Furs, and buy Necessaries with them, which they bring back to furnish their Shops, also others went of the same Errand to *Archangel*, but then they also being to come back again above 800 Miles, went all out before me.

In short, about the latter end of *May* I began to make all ready to pack up, and as I was doing this, it occur'd to me, that seeing all these People were banish'd by the Czar of *Muscovy* to *Siberia*, and yet when they came there, were left at Liberty to go whither they would, why did they not then go away to any Part of the World wherever they thought fit, and I began to examine what should hinder them from making such an Attempt.

But my Wonder was over, when I enter'd upon that Subject with

the Person I have mention'd, who answer'd me thus . Consider, First, Sir, said he, the Place where we are , and Secondly, the Condition we are in , especially, said he, the Generality of the People who are banish'd hither , we are surrounded, said he, with stronger Things than Bars and Bolts , on the North Side an unnavigable Ocean, where Ship never sailed, and Boat never swam , neither, if we had both, could we know where to go with them Every other Way, said he, we have above a Thousand Miles to pass through the Czar's own Dominions, and Byways utterly unpassable, except by the Roads made by the Governor, and by the Towns garrison'd by his Troops , so that we could neither pass undiscover'd by the Road, or subsist any other Way, so that it is in vain to attempt it.

I was silenc'd indeed at once, and found that they were in a Prison, every Jot as secure as if they had been locked up in the Castle at *Moscow*, however, it came into my Thought, that I might certainly be made an Instrument to procure the Escape of this excellent Person, and that whatever Hazard I run, I would certainly try if I could carry him off Upon this I took an Occasion one Evening to tell him my Thoughts I represented to him, that it was very easy for me to carry him away, there being no Guard over him in the Country, and as I was not going to *Moscow*, but to *Archangel*, and that I went in the nature of a Caravan, by which I was not oblig'd to lie in the Stationary Towns in the Desert, but could encamp every Night where I would, we might easily pass uninterrupted to *Archangel*, where I would immediately secure him on Board an *English* or *Dutch* Ship, and carry him off safe along with me , and as to his Subsistence, and other Particulars, it should be my Care till he could better supply himself.

He heard me very attentively, and looked earnestly on me all the while I spoke , nay, I could see in his very Face, that what I said put his Spirits into an exceeding Ferment , his Colour frequently changed, his Eyes looked red, and his Heart flutter'd, that it might be even perceiv'd in his Countenance , nor could he immediately answer me. When I had done, and as it were expected what he would say to it, after he had paused a little he embrac'd me, and said, How unhappy are we, unguarded Creatures as we are, that even our greatest Acts of Friendship are made Snares to us, and we are made Tempters of one another ! My dear Friend, said he, your Offer is so sincere, has such Kindness in it, is so disinterested in itself, and is so calculated

for my Advantage, that I must have very little Knowledge of the World, if I did not both wonder at it, and acknowledge the Obligation I have upon me to you for it. But did you believe I was sincere in what I have so often said to you of my Contempt of the World? Did you believe I spoke my very Soul to you, and that I had really obtain'd that Degree of Felicity here, that had placed me above all that the World could give me, or do for me? Did you believe I was sincere, when I told you I would not go back if I was recall'd, even to be all that once I was in the Court with the Favour of the Czar my Master? Did you believe me, my Friend, to be an honest Man, or did you think me to be a boasting Hypocrite? Here he stopped, as if he would hear what I would say, but indeed, I soon after perceiv'd that he stopped because his Spirits were in Motion, his great Heart was full of Struggles, and he could not go on. I was, I confess, astonish'd at the thing as well as at the Man, and I used some Arguments with him to urge him to set himself free. That he ought to look upon this as a Door open'd by Heaven for his Deliverance, and a Summons by Providence, who has the Care and Disposition of all Events, to do himself good, and to render himself useful in the World.

He had by this Time recover'd himself. How do you know, Sir, says he warmly, that instead of a Summons from Heaven, it may not be a Feint of another Instrument? Representing in all the alluring Colours to me the Show of Felicity as a Deliverance, which may in itself be my Snare, and tend directly to my Ruin. Here I am free from the Temptation of returning to my former miserable Greatness; there I am not sure but that all the Seeds of Pride, Ambition, Avarice and Luxury, which I know remain in Nature, may revive and take Root, and in a Word, again overwhelm me, and then the happy Prisoner, who you see now Master of his Soul's Liberty, shall be the miserable Slave of his own Senses, in the Full of all personal Liberty. Dear Sir, let me remain in this blessed Confinement, banish'd from the Crimes of Life, rather than purchase a Show of Freedom, at the Expense of the Liberty of my Reason, and at the Expense of the future Happiness which now I have in my View, but shall then, I fear, quickly lose Sight of, for I am but Flesh, a Man, a mere Man, have Passions and Affections as likely to possess and overthrow me as any Man. O be not my Friend and my Tempter both together!

If I was surpris'd before, I was quite dumb now, and stood silent,

looking at him, and indeed admir'd at what I saw, the Struggle in his Soul was so great, that though the Weather was extremely cold, it put him into a most violent Sweat, and I found he wanted to give Vent to his Mind, so I said a Word or two, that I would leave him to consider of it, and wait on him again, and then I withdrew to my own Apartment.

About two Hours after I heard somebody at, or near, the Door of my Room, and I was going to open the Door, but he had open'd it, and came in My dear Friend, says he, you had almost overset me, but I am recover'd, do not take it ill that I do not close with your Offer; I assure you, it is not for want of a Sense of the Kindness of it in you, and I came to make the most sincere Acknowledgment of it to you, but I hope I have got the Victory over myself

My Lord, said I, I hope you are fully satisfy'd that you do not resist the Call of Heaven Sir, said he, if it had been from Heaven, the same Power would have influenc'd me to accept it, but I hope, and am fully satisfy'd, that it is from Heaven that I decline it, and I have an infinite Satisfaction in the Parting, that you shall leave me an honest Man still, though not a free Man.

I had nothing to do but to acquiesce, and make Professions to him of my having no End in it but a sincere Desire to serve him He embrac'd me very passionately, and assur'd me, he was sensible of that, and should always acknowledge it, and with that he offer'd me a very fine Present of Sables, too much indeed for me to accept from a Man in his Circumstances, and I would have avoided them, but he would not be refus'd.

The next Morning I sent my Servant to his Lordship, with a small Present of Tea, and two Pieces of *China* Damask, and four little Wedges of *Japan* Gold, which did not all weigh above six Ounces, or thereabout, but were far short of the Value of his Sables, which, indeed, when I came to *England*, I found worth near 200*l* He accepted the Tea, and one Piece of the Damask, and one of the Pieces of Gold, which had a fine Stamp upon it, of the *Japan* Coinage, which I found he took for the Rarity of it, but would not take any more, and he sent Word by my Servant that he desir'd to speak with me.

When I came to him, he told me, I knew what had passed between us, and hoped I would not move him any more in that Affair, but that since I had made such a generous Offer to him, he asked me, if I had Kindness enough to offer the same to another Person that he



would name to me, in whom he had a great Share of Concern, I told him, that I could not say I inclin'd to do so much for any one but himself, for whom I had a particular Value, and should have been glad to have been the Instrument of his Deliverance; however, if he would please to name the Person to me, I would give him my Answer, and hoped he would not be displeas'd with me, if he was with my Answer, he told me, it was only his Son, who, though I had not seen, yet was in the same Condition with himself, and above two hundred Miles from him, on the other side the *Oby*, but that if I consented, he would send for him

I made no Hesitation, but told him I would do it I made some Ceremony in letting him understand that it was wholly on his Account, and that seeing I could not prevail on him, I would show my Respect to him, by my Concern for his Son, but these Things are too tedious to repeat here He sent away the next Day for his Son, and in about twenty Days he came back with the Messenger, bringing six or seven Horses, loaded with very rich Furs, and which in the whole amounted to a very great Value

His Servants brought the Horses into the Town, but left the young Lord at a Distance, till Night, when he came *incognito* into our Apartment, and his Father presented him to me, and in short, we concerted there the Manner of our travelling, and everything proper for the Journey

I had bought a considerable Quantity of Sables, black Fox Skins, fine Ermines, and such other Furs as are very rich; I say, I had bought them in that City in Exchange for some of the Goods I brought from *China*, in particular for the Cloves and Nutmegs, of which I sold the greatest Part here, and the rest afterwards at *Archangel*, for a much better Price than I could have done at *London*, and my Partner who was sensible of the Profit, and whose Business more particularly than mine was Merchandise, was mightily pleased with our Stay, on Account of the Traffic we made here

It was the beginning of *June* when I left this remote Place, a City, I believe, little heard of in the World, and indeed it is so far out of the Road of Commerce, that I know not how it should be much talk'd of We were now come to a very small Caravan, being only thirty-two Horses and Camels in all, and all of them passed for mine, though my new Guest was Proprietor of eleven of them, it was most natural also that I should take more Servants with me than I had

before, and the young Lord passed for my Steward, what great Man I passed for myself, I know not, neither did it concern me to inquire, we had here the worst and the largest Desert to pass over that we met with in all the Journey, indeed I call it the worst, because the Way was very deep in some Places, and very uneven in others, the best we had to say for it was, that we thought we had no Troops of *Tartars* and Robbers to fear, and that they never came on this Side the River *Oby*, or at least but very seldom, but we found it otherwise.

My young Lord had with him a faithful *Muscovite* Servant, or rather a *Siberian* Servant, who was perfectly acquainted with the Country, and led us by private Roads, that we avoided coming in to the principal Towns and Cities upon the great Road, such as *Tumen*, *Soly-Kamskoi*, and several others, because the *Muscovite* Garrisons which are kept there, are very curious and strict in their Observation upon Travellers; and searching lest any of the banish'd Persons of Note should make their escape that Way into *Muscovy*, but by this Means, as we were kept out of the Cities, so our whole Journey was a Desert, and we were oblig'd to encamp and lie in our Tents, when we might have had very good Accommodation in the Cities on the Way. This the young Lord was so sensible of, that he would not allow us to lie abroad, when we came to several Cities on the Way, but lay abroad himself with his Servant in the Woods, and met us always at the appointed Places

We were just enter'd *Europe*, having pass'd the River *Kama*, which in these Parts is the Boundary between *Europe* and *Asia*, and the first City on the *European* Side was called *Soly-Kamskoi*, which is as much as to say, the great City on the River *Kama*, and here we thought to have seen some evident Alteration in the People, their Manner, their Habit, their Religion, and their Business; but we were mistaken, for as we had a vast Desert to pass, which by Relation is near seven hundred Miles long in some Places, but not above two hundred Miles over where we passed it, so till we came past that horrible Place, we found very little Difference between that Country and the *Mongol Tartary*, the People mostly Pagans, and little better than the Savages of *America*, their Houses and Towns full of Idols, and their Way of Living wholly barbarous, except in the Cities as above, and the Villages near them, where there are Christians, as they call themselves, of the *Greek* Church, but have their Religion mingled

with so many Relics of Superstition, that it is scarce to be known in some Places from mere Sorcery and Witchcraft.

In passing this Forest, I thought indeed we must, after all our Dangers were in our Imagination escap'd, as before, have been plunder'd and robbed, and perhaps murder'd by a Troop of Thieves, of what Country they were, whether the roving Bands of the *Ostiachi*, a Kind of *Tartars* or wld People on the Bank of the *Oby*, had ranged thus far, or whether they were the Sable-Hunters of *Siberia*, I am yet at a Loss to know, but they were all on Horseback, carry'd Bows and Arrows, and were at first about five and forty in Number, they came so near to us, as within about two Musket Shot, and asking no Questions, they surrounded us with their Horse, and looked very earnestly upon us twice, at length they placed themselves just in our Way, upon which we drew up in a little Line before our Camels, being not above sixteen Men in all, and being drawn up thus, we halted and sent out the *Siberian* Servant, who attended his Lord, to see who they were, his Master was the more willing to let him go, because he was not a little apprehensive that they were a *Siberian* Troop sent out after him. The Man came up near them with a Flag of Truce, and called them, but though he spoke several of their Languages, or Dialects of Languages rather, he could not understand a Word they said, however, after some Signs to him not to come nearer to them at his Peril, so he said he understood them to mean, offering to shoot at him if he advanc'd, the Fellow came back no wiser than he went, only that by their Dress, he said, he believ'd them to be some *Tartars* of *Kalmuck*, or of *Circassian* Hordes, and that there must be more of them upon the great Desert, though he never heard that any of them ever were seen so far North before.

This was small Comfort to us, however, we had no Remedy; there was on our left Hand at about a Quarter of a Mile's Distance, a little Grove or Clump of Trees which stood close together, and very near the Road; I immediately resolv'd we would advance to those Trees, and fortify ourselves as well as we could there, for first I consider'd that the Trees would in a great Measure cover us from their Arrows, and in the next Place, they could not come to charge us in a Body; it was indeed my old *Portuguese* Pilot who propos'd it, and who had this Excellency attending him, namely, that he was always readiest and most apt to direct and encourage us in Cases of the most Danger; we advanc'd immediately with what Speed we could, and

gained that little Wood, the *Tartars* or Thieves, for we knew not what to call them, keeping their Stand and not attempting to hinder us, when we came thither, we found to our great Satisfaction that it was a swampy springy Piece of Ground, and on the one Side a very great Spring of Water, which running out in a little Rill or Brook, was a little farther joined by another of the like Bigness, and was in short the Head or Source of a considerable River, called afterwards the *Wirtka*, the Trees which grew about this Spring were not all above two hundred, but were very large, and stood pretty thick, so that as soon as we got in we saw ourselves perfectly safe from the Enemy, unless they alighted and attack'd us on Foot.

But to make this more difficult, our *Portuguese*, with undefatigable Application, cut down great Arms of the Trees, and laid them hanging *not quite cut off* from one Tree to another, so that he made a continued Fence almost round us

We stay'd here waiting the Motion of the Enemy some Hours without perceiving they made any Motion; when about two Hours before Night they came down directly upon us, and though we had not perceiv'd it, we found they had been joined by some more of the same, so that they were near fourscore Horse, whereof, however, we fancied some were Women. They came on till they were within half Shot of our little Wood, when we fired one Musket without Ball, and called to them in the *Russian* Tongue, to know what they wanted, and bid them keep off, but as if they knew nothing of what we said, they came on with a double Fury directly up to the Wood side, not imagining we were so barricaded that they could not break in. Our old Pilot was our Captain, as well as he had been our Engineer, and desir'd of us not to fire upon them till they came within Pistol-Shot, and that we might be sure to kill, and that when we did fire, we should be sure to take good Aim, we bade him give the Word of Command, which he delay'd so long, that they were some of them within two Pikes' Length of us when we fired

We aimed so true, (or Providence directed our Shot so true,) that we killed fourteen of them and wounded several others, as also several of their Horses, for we had all of us loaded our Pieces with two or three Bullets at least.

They were terribly surpris'd with our Fire, and retreated immediately about one Hundred Rods from us, in which Time we loaded our Pieces again. and seeing them keep that Distance, we sallied out and

caught four or five of their Horses, whose Riders we supposed were killed, and coming up to the dead, we could easily perceive they were *Tartars*, but knew not from what Country, or how they came to make an Excursion such an unusual Length

About an Hour after they made a Motion to attack us again; and rode round our little Wood, to see where else they might break in; but finding us always ready to Face them, they went off again, and we resolv'd not to stir from the Place for that Night.

We slept little, you may be sure, but spent the most Part of the Night in strengthening our Situation, and barricading the Entrances into the Wood, and keeping a strict Watch We waited for Day-light, and when it came it gave us a very unwelcome Discovery indeed, for the Enemy, whom we thought were discourag'd with the Reception they had met with, were now increas'd to no less than three hundred, and had set up eleven or twelve Huts and Tents, as if they were resolv'd to besiege us, and this little Camp they had pitched upon the open Plain, at about three Quarters of a Mile from us. We were indeed surpris'd at this Discovery, and now I confess I gave myself over for lost, and all that I had The Loss of my Effects did not lie so near me, (*though they were very considerable*), as the Thoughts of falling into the Hands of such *Barbarians*, at the latter End of my Journey, after so many Difficulties and Hazards as I had gone through, and even in Sight of our Port, where we expected Safety and Deliverance, as for my Partner, he was raging, he declar'd that to lose his Goods would be his Ruin, and he would rather die than be starved, and he was for fighting to the last Drop

The young Lord, as gallant as ever Flesh showed itself, was for fighting to the last also, and my old Pilot was of the Opinion we were able to resist them all in the Situation we were then in, and thus we spent the Day in Debates of what we should do, but towards Evening we found that the Number of our Enemies still increas'd, perhaps as they were abroad in several Parties for Prey, the first had sent out Scouts to call for Help, and to acquaint them of the Booty, and we did not know but by the Morning they might still be a greater Number, so I began to inquire of those People we had brought from *Tebolski* if there was no other or more private Ways by which we might avoid them in the Night, and perhaps either retreat to some Town, or get Help to guard us over the Desert

The *Sherman* who was Servant to the young Lord, told us if we

design'd to avoid them and not fight, he would engage to carry us off in the Night, to a Way that went North towards the *Petrou*, by which he made no Question but we might get away, and the *Tartars* néver the wiser, but he said his Lord had told him he would not retreat, but would rather choose to fight. I told him he mustook his Lord, for that he was too wise a Man to love Fighting for the sake of it, that I knew his Lord was brave enough by what he had showed already; but that his Lord knew better than to desire to have seventeen or eighteen Men fight five hundred, unless an unavoidable Necessity forced them to it, and that if he thought it possible for us to escape in the Night, we had nothing else to do but to attempt it. He answer'd, if his Lord gave him such Orders he would lose his Life if he did not perform it, we soon brought his Lord to give that Order, though privately, and we immediately prepar'd for the putting it in Practice.

And first, as soon as it began to be dark, we kindled a Fire in our little Camp, which we kept burning and prepar'd so as to make it burn all Night, that the *Tartars* might conclude we were still there, but as soon as it was dark, (that is to say) so as we could see the Stars (for our Guide would not stir before) having all our Horses and Camels ready loaden, we followed our new Guide, who I soon found steered himself by the Pole, or North Star, all the Country being level for a long Way.

After we had travell'd two Hours very hard, it began to be lighter still, not that it was quite dark all Night, but the Moon began to rise, so that in short it was rather lighter than we wished it to be, but by six o'clock the next Morning we were gotten near forty Miles, though the Truth is we almost spoiled our Horses. Here we found a *Russian* Village named *Kermazinskoy*, where we rested, and heard nothing of the *Calmuck Tartars* that Day, about two Hours before Night we set out again, and travell'd till eight the next Morning, though not quite so quick as before, and about seven o'clock we passed a little River called *Kirtza*, and came to a good large Town inhabited by *Russians*, and very populous, called *Ozomoys*, there we heard that several Troops or Hordes of *Calmucks* had been Abroad upon the Desert, but that we were now completely out of Danger of them, which was to our great Satisfaction, you may be sure. Here we were oblig'd to get some fresh Horses, and having need enough of Rest, we stayed five Days, and my Partner and I agreed to give the

honest *Siberian* who brought us thither the Value of ten Pistoles for his conducting us

In five Days more we came to *Veuslma*, upon the River *Witzogda*, and, running into the *Divina*, we were there very happily near the end of our Travels by Land, that River being navigable in seven Days' Passage to *Archangel*, from hence we came to *Lawrenskoy* the 3rd of *July*, and providing ourselves with two Luggage Boats, and a Barge for our own Convenience, we embark'd the 7th, and arriv'd all safe at *Archangel* the 18th, having been a Year and five Months and three Days on the Journey, including our Stay of eight Months and odd Days at *Tobolski*

We were oblig'd to stay at this Place six Weeks for the Arrival of the Ships, and must have tarried longer, had not a *Hamburgher* come in above a Month sooner than any of the *English* Ships, when after some Consideration, that the City of *Hamburgh* might happen to be as good a Market for our Goods as *London*, we all took Freight with him, and having put my Goods on board, it was most natural for me to put my Steward on board to take care of them, by which means my young Lord had a sufficient Opportunity to conceal himself, never coming on Shore in all the time we stay'd there, and this he did that he might not be seen in the City, where some of the *Moscow* Merchants would certainly have seen and discover'd him

We sailed from *Archangel* the 20th of *August* the same Year, and after no extraordinary bad Voyage, arriv'd in the *Elbe* the 13th of *September* Here my Partner and I found a very good Sale for our Goods, as well those of *China* as the Sables, &c. of *Siberia*; and dividing the Produce of our Effects, my Share amounted to 3475*l* 17*s* 3*d*. notwithstanding so many Losses we had sustain'd and Charges we had been at, only remembering that I had included in this about six hundred Pounds worth of Diamonds which I had purchas'd at *Bengal*

Here the young Lord took his leave of us, and went up the *Elbe* in order to go to the Court of *Vienna*, where he resolv'd to seek Protection, and where he could correspond with those of his Father's Friends who were left alive He did not part without all the Testimonies he could give me of Gratitude for the Service I had done him, and his Sense of my Kindness to the Prince his Father

To conclude, having stay'd near four Months in *Hamburgh*, I came from thence over Land to the *Hague*, where I embark'd in the

Packet, and arriv'd in *London* the 10th of *January*, 1705, having been gone from *England* ten Years and nine Months

And here, resolving to harass myself no more, I am preparing for a longer Journey than all these, having lived 72-Years a Life of infinite Variety, and learned sufficiently to know the Value of Retirement, and the Blessing of ending our Days in Peace



FINIS





FREDERICK WARNE & CO, PUBLISHERS,

---

*The Innsdowne Poets.*

ENTIRELY NEW EDITION, RED LINE BORDER.

*With Original Notes, Steel Portraits, and full-page Illustrations.*

Large crown 8vo, cloth extra, gilt, gilt edges, price 3s 6d each;  
or in morocco elegant, 8s

SHAKSPERE'S POETICAL WORKS

LONGFELLOW'S POETICAL WORKS

BYRON'S POETICAL WORKS

ELIZA COOK'S POEMS

SCOTT'S POETICAL WORKS

BURNS' POETICAL WORKS.

MOORE'S POETICAL WORKS

COWPER'S POETICAL WORKS.

MILTON'S POETICAL WORKS

WORDSWORTH'S POETICAL WORKS

MRS HEMANS' POETICAL WORKS.

HOOD'S POETICAL WORKS

SHILLY'S POETICAL WORKS

MACKAY'S COMPLETE POETICAL WORKS

POPE'S POETICAL WORKS

KEBLE'S (JOHN) THE CHRISTIAN YEAR.

GOLDSMITH'S POETICAL WORKS

MONTGOMERY (JAMES) POETICAL WORKS

JOHNSON'S LIVES OF THE POETS

HEBER'S (BISHOP) POETICAL WORKS

HERBERT'S (GEORGE) POEMS AND PROSE.

*Also uniform, without red line Border*

CAMPBELL'S POETICAL WORKS

KEATS' POETICAL WORKS

COLERIDGE'S POETICAL WORKS

THE POETS' YEAR.

SONGS, SACRED AND DEVOTIONAL.

GOLDEN LEAVES, FROM THE AMERICAN POETS

LEGENDARY BALLADS OF ENGLAND AND SCOTLAND

LAUREL AND LYRE.

MICHELL'S NATURE AND LIFE

---

BEDFORD STREET, STRAND

FREDERICK WARNE & CO., PUBLISHERS,

---

*A COMPLETE COMPENDIUM OF ENGLISH LITERATURE*

---

In crown 8vo, price 3s 6d each, cloth gilt.

**Popular Readings, in Prose and Verse.** Edited by J E CARPENTER FIVE DISTINCT VOLUMES, each Complete, paged throughout, with Index A General Index to the entire work is given with Vol 5.

---

In fcap 8vo, boards, price 1s each, 256 pp

**Penny Readings, in Prose and Verse** Twelve Distinct Volumes. Compiled and Edited by J E. CARPENTER, Twelve Years Public Reader, Lecturer, and Entertainer at the Principal Literary Institutions in Great Britain

*A full Prospectus of the contents can be had on application*

---

In fcap 8vo, price 1s, picture boards

**Moseley's Penny Readings IN PROSE AND VERSE**  
Embracing many of the Popular Readings of Mr J M BELLEW, Mrs. DAUNCEY MASKELL, &c

---

In fcap, Two distinct Volumes, price 1s each

**Tom Hood's Comic Readings** Embracing the Comic Readings of the last Hundred Years

---

In fcap 8vo, price 1s, picture boards

**Choice Readings** Fifty-two Stories of Brave Deeds  
Selected and Edited by the Rev G T HOARE

---

In 48mo, price 1s 6d., cloth gilt,  
or roan, pocket-book style, with elastic band, 2s 6d.

**The Bijou Gazetteer of the World.** Briefly describing, as regards Position, Area, and Population, every Country and State their Sub-divisions, Provinces, Counties, Principal Towns, Villages Mountains, Rivers, Lakes, Capes, &c. By W R ROSSER 30 000 References.

---

BEDFORD STREET STRAND

FREDERICK WARNE & CO, PUBLISHERS,

---

COMPENDIUMS OF ENGLISH LITERATURE

In Four Vols, with a Complete Index and Steel Illustrations, crown  
8vo, price 21s, cloth gilt, or half calf extra, 35s

## HALF-HOURS WITH THE BEST AUTHORS.

Remodelled by its Original Editor, CHARLES KNIGHT, with Selections from Authors added whose works have placed them amongst the "Best Authors" since the publication of the First Edition

\* \* This book contains 320 Extracts of the best efforts of our great Standard Authors, whether they be Poets or Historians, Essayists or Divines, Travellers or Philosophers, arranged so as to form half an hour's reading for every day of the year. The student finds a taste of every quality, and a specimen of every style. Should he grow weary of one author, he can turn to another and if inclined to be critical he can weigh the merits of one writer against those of his fellow. It gives us a glimpse of the celebrities assembled within its portals. At a glance the student can obtain some idea of the subject. *Such books are the true foundations of that knowledge which renders men celebrated and famous*

---

In Two Vols, demy 8vo, price 10s, cloth, 12s with gilt edges, or  
half calf extra, 17s

## THE PEOPLE'S EDITION OF HALF-HOURS WITH THE BEST AUTHORS.

Selected and Edited by CHARLES KNIGHT With 16 Steel Portraits

In this Edition the Biographies are revised, the Pagination of the Volumes completed, and the Serial Nature of the Original Work entirely done away with it now forms a Handsome Library Book.

---

In One Vol, demy 8vo cloth, 5s, with gilt edges, 6s,  
or half-calf extra. 8s 6d

## HALF-HOURS OF ENGLISH HISTORY.

Selected and Arranged by CHARLES KNIGHT

*A Companion Volume to the "Half-Hours with the Best Authors"*

Contains the Choicest Historical Extracts from upwards of Fifty Standard Authors, including Burke, Palgrave, Guizot, Sheridan Knowles, Thierry, H. Taylor, Rev. James White, Charles Knight, G. L. Craik, Lander, Hume, Keats, Hallam, Southey, Shakespeare, Froissart, Sir Walter Scott, Hall Barante, Lord Bacon, Cavendish, Bishop Burnet, Rev. H. H. Milman, Wordsworth, Lord Macaulay with a General Index

The articles are chiefly selected so as to afford a succession of graphic parts of English History, chronologically arranged, from the consideration that the portions of history upon which general readers delight to dwell are those which tell some story which is complete in itself, or furnish some illustration which has a separate as well as a general interest.

---

BEDFORD STREET, STRAND

FREDERICK WARNE & CO., PUBLISHERS,

---

THE POPULAR COOKERY BOOK

In large crown 8vo, price 5s, half-bound, 750 pages.

WARNE'S MODEL COOKERY;

*Containing Complete Instructions in Household Management,*  
AND RECEIPTS FOR

BREAKFAST DISHES  
BREAD, BISCUITS, &c  
FISH AND SOUP  
SAUCES AND GRAVIES.  
BEEF, MUTTON  
LAMB, VENISON  
VEAL, PORK  
POULTRY AND GAME  
MADE DISHES, AND ENTREES  
MEAT AND FISH PIES, &c.  
VEGETABLES  
POTTING AND COLLARING

PASTRY AND PUDDINGS  
CREAMS AND JELLIES  
CUSTARDS, ICES, AND CAKES  
PRESERVES AND PICKLES  
SOUFFLES AND OMELETS  
WINES, DRINKS, AND ALE  
DESSERTS.  
BUTTER AND CHEESE  
RELISHES  
COOKERY FOR THE SICK.  
BILLS OF FARE  
DUTIES OF SERVANTS

Compiled and Edited by MARY JEWRY

With 3,000 Receipts, numerous Woodcuts, and 12 pages of Original Illustrations printed in Colours by KRONHEIM, embodying nearly Two Hundred distinct Subjects

---

A COMPANION VOLUME TO WARNE'S MODEL COOKERY BOOK.

In large crown 8vo, price 5s., half-bound, 570 pages

THE MODERN HOUSEHOLDER.

A Manual of Domestic Economy

IN ALL ITS BRANCHES

COMPILED AND EDITED BY ROSS MURRAY;

Assisted by a Committee of Ladies.

*The Medical Portion by a Member of the Royal College of Surgeons*

With 16 pages of Original Illustrations, printed in Colours by  
KRONHEIM, and numerous Woodcuts

A SUPERIOR EDITION of each of the above, price 7s 6d.

---

BEDFORD STREET, STRAND.

## Popular Cookery Books.

In crown 8vo, price 2s 6d, cloth gilt

### Warne's Every Day Cookery Book.

With nearly 2,000 Receipts, and Coloured Illustrations by KRON  
HEIM

### Warne's Every Day Cookery Book.

Also a 3s 6d Edition of each of the above, with Additional  
Coloured Illustrations, half-bound, gilt lettering

In large crown 8vo, price 1s, cloth boards, or half-bound, 1s 6d

### Warne's Model Cookery and Housekeeping

Book 800 Receipts, and Coloured Illustrations of Fifty Dishes

In square 16mo, price 2d, cloth cover, 64 pp, sewed, 1d

### Warne's Cookery Book for the Million.

With upwards of 200 Useful and Practical Receipts

In royal 48mo, price 1s, cloth, gilt edges

### My Market Table. Showing the Value of any

Article, at per Pound and Ounce, from Sixpence to Eighteenpence

*Invaluable to all Housekeepers who appreciate economical expenditure*

---

## Popular Handy Manuals.

In crown 8vo, price 2s 6d, cloth gilt

### The Young Woman's Book

A Gathering of Useful Information in Household Matters, Taste,  
Duties, Study, &c, &c With Practical Illustrations

In large crown 8vo, price 2s 6d, cloth gilt

### Best of Everything

By the Author of "Enquire Within" Containing 1,800 Useful  
Articles on how to obtain "The Best of Everything, with a  
Special Calendar for the Cook and Gardener for each Month

In large crown 8vo, price 2s 6d, cloth gilt

### Home Doctoring

A Guide to Domestic Medicine and Surgery By a Member of  
the Royal College of Surgeons (England) With Coloured Plates

## Aunt Louisa's Choice Books.

---

In demy 4to, cloth, elegantly gilt, new style, price 5s each.  
Mounted on Linen price 10s 6d, gilt and gilt edges.

**Birthday Gift** Comprising 24 pages of Original Illustrations, printed in Colours, and Descriptive Letterpress. *Contents*—"Hop o' My Thumb" "Sing a Song o' Sixpence," "King, Queen, and Knave of Hearts," "The Fairy at the Fountain."

**Golden Gift** Comprising 24 pages of Original Illustrations, printed in Colours and Gold, with Descriptive Letterpress. *Contents*—"Little Dame Crump," "Childhood's Delight," "Hush a-bye, Baby," 'Tottie's Nursery Rhymes"

**Favourite Toy Book.** Comprising 24 pages of Original Illustrations by HARRISON WHEAT, W GUNSTON, &c., printed in Colours, and Descriptive Letterpress. *Contents*—"Cinderella," "Red Riding Hood," 'Old Mother Hubbard,' "Little Bo Peep."

**Keepsake** Comprising—"Alphabet of Fruits," "Hare and Tortoise," "World Wide Fables," and "Cock Robin's Courtship," &c. With Original Plates printed in Oil Colours, and Descriptive Letterpress

**Welcome Visitor** Comprising—"New Year's Eve," "The Kingdom of the Greedy," "Frisky the Squirrel," "Dick Whittington" With 28 pages of Illustrations in Colours, and Descriptive Letterpress

**London Picture Book** Comprising—"The Globe Alphabet," "Nursery Rhymes," "Railway A B C," "Childhood's Happy Hours." With 24 pages of Illustrations printed in Colours by KRONHEIM

**London Gift-Book** Comprising—"Nursery Songs," "Johnny Gilpin," "Birthday Party" "The Seaside" With 24 pages of Illustrations, printed in Colours by KRONHEIM

**Sunday Picture-Book.** Comprising—"Proverbs of Solomon," 'Joseph and his Brethren," "Wonders of Providence," "Story of King David." Original Plates printed in Oil Colours, and Descriptive Letterpress.

**The Alphabet Book.** Comprising—"The Nursery Alphabet," "Country Alphabet," "London Alphabet," "Alphabet of Games and Sports." With 24 pages of Illustrations, printed in Oil Colours, and Descriptive Letterpress.

**Nursery Favourite** Comprising—"Robin's Christmas Eve," "Pussy's London Life," "Hey Diddle," 'Uncle's Farm Yard" With 24 pages of Illustrations, printed in Colours by KRONHEIM With Descriptive Letterpress

**Holiday Guest** Comprising—"Good Children," "Brun the Bear," "Dame Trot and her Cat" "Home for the Holidays." With Four double Coloured Plates, and 16 pages of Coloured Illustrations, by KRONHEIM. With Descriptive Letterpress

AUNT LOUISA'S CHOICE BOOKS *continued* —

**National Album** *Comprising* — "Punch and Judy," "Jack and Jill," "My Children," "The Faithful Friend" With Four large double Coloured Plates, and 16 pages of Coloured Illustrations, by KRONHEIM

**Zoological Gardens** With 24 Original Plates of the most prominent tenants of the far famed Gardens, printed in Colours by KRONHEIM, and Descriptive Letterpress.

**Home Favourites** With 24 Original Plates by HARRISON WEIR, printed in Colours by KRONHEIM. *Comprising* — "Home Pets," "My Favourites," "Household Pets," "Country Pets," and Descriptive Letterpress.

**Welcome Gift.** With 24 pages of Coloured Plates by KRONHEIM. *Comprising* — "John Bull's Farm Yard Alphabet," "Tabby's Tea Fight," "Rover's Dinner Party," "London Characters," and Descriptive Letterpress

**Choice Present** With 24 pages of Illustrations from the Original Pictures by LANDSEER and HERRING, printed in Colours by BUTTERFIELD & Co, with Descriptive Letterpress

**London Favourite.** With 24 pages of Coloured Plates by KRONHEIM & Co *Comprising* — "Alphabet of Animals," "Childhood's Play Time," "Our Boys and Girls," "A, Apple Pie," and Descriptive Letterpress

*Uniform with the above*

**Book of Drolleries.** *Comprising* — "Ten Little Niggers," "Nine Niggers More," "A Frog who would a Wooing Go." Numerous Original Pictures in Colours, and Letterpress and Musical Accompaniment.

**Lear's Book of Nonsense** With One Hundred and Ten Designs printed in Colours by DALZIEL Brothers, and Descriptive Letterpress.

**Army and Navy Drolleries** With 24 Original Designs by Major SECCOMBE, printed in Colours by KRONHEIM & Co., and Descriptive alphabetical Letterpress

---

In crown 8vo, price 1s, picture boards, or cloth gilt, 1s 6d.  
**THE MAGIC LANTERN MANUAL.**

By W J CHADWICK.

With 100 practical Illustrations. Crown 8vo

---

BEDFORD STREET STRAND



## The Chandos Library.

*A Series of Standard Works in all Classes of Literature*

In crown 8vo, price 3s 6d each, cloth gilt

- The Percy Anecdotes By REUBEN and SHOLTO PERCY  
Verbatim Reprint of Original Edition. Introduction by JOHN TIMBS  
Original Steel Portraits, and Index. Three Vols., each Complete in itself
- Pepys' Diary and Correspondence With Seven Steel Portraits  
arranged as a Frontispiece, Memoir, Introductory Preface, and full Index
- Abbeys, Castles, and Ancient Halls of England and Wales  
Their Legendary Lore and Popular History—South, Midland, North By  
JOHN TIMBS Author of "Curiosities of London," and ALEXANDER GUNN  
New Frontispiece. Three Vols. Each Volume Complete in itself
- Johnson's Lives of the Poets, with Critical Observations on  
their Works, and a Sketch of the Author's Life by SIR WALTER SCOTT
- Book of Authors A Collection of Criticisms, Ana, Mots, Per-  
sonal Descriptions, &c By W CLARK RUSSELL.
- Evelyn's Diary and Correspondence Edited by BRAY 784 pp  
With Frontispiece and full Index
- Gibbon's Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire With  
Portrait. Three Vols
- A Century of Anecdote Compiled and Edited by JOHN TIMBS  
With Frontispiece
- Pope's Homer's Iliad and Odyssey FLAXMAN'S Illustrations.
- Scott's Lives of Eminent Novelists and Dramatists
- Don Quixote (Life and Adventures of) By CERVANTES.
- The Koran A verbatim Reprint. With Maps, Plans, &c.
- The Talmud (Selections from) H POLANO Maps, Plans, &c.
- Gil Blas (The Adventures of) By LE SAGE.
- Carpenter's Popular Elocutionist With Portrait
- Walton and Cotton's Angler Edited, with Notes, by G  
CHRISTOPHER DAVIES.
- The Peninsular War and the Campaigns of Wellington in  
France and Belgium By H R. CLINTON
- Fugitive Poetry of the Last Three Centuries Edited by  
J C. HITCHINSON
- White's Natural History of Selborne Numerous Illustrations
- Lamb's Poems and Essays
- Spenser's Poetical Works With Portrait.

---

In crown 8vo cloth gilt, profusely Illustrated, price 5s each

## THE ROMANCE OF HISTORY.

COMPRISING—

- England By HENRY NEELE 21 Illustrations by T LANDSEER
- France By LEITCH RITCHIE. 21 Illustrations by T LANDSEER
- Spain By DON T DE TRUEBA. Illustrations by J K. MEADOWS
- Italy By C. MACFARLANE. 21 Illustrations by T LANDSEER
- India By the Rev HOBART CAUNTER, B D With Illustrations.

---

BEDFORD STREET STRAND



# Warne's Star Series.

In small crown 8vo, 1/- each, Picture Wrapper.

Or, 1/6 each, Cloth Gilt

- |                            |                            |                                     |                           |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Daisy.                   | ELIZABETH WETHERELL        | 58 Flower of the Family             | Mrs. E. PRENTISS          |
| 2 Daisy in the Field       | ELIZABETH WETHERELL.       | 59 Madame Fontenoy.                 | By the Author of "Denise" |
| 3 Nettie's Mission         | ALICE GRAY                 | 61 Toward Heaven.                   | Mrs. E. PRENTISS          |
| 4 Stopping Heavenward      | Mrs E PRENTISS             | 65 The Prince of the House of David | Rev J H INGRAHAM.         |
| 7 Dunallan                 | GRACE KENNEDY              | 66 The Pillar of Fire               | Rev J H INGRAHAM.         |
| 8 Father Clement           | GRACE KENNEDY              | 67 The Throne of David.             | Rev J H INGRAHAM          |
| 11 From Jest to Earnest.   | Rev E P ROE.               | 69 The Admirals Will.               | M. M. BELL                |
| 15 Mary Elliot             | CATHERINE D BELL           | 70 Sylvia and Janet.                | A C D                     |
| 16 Sydney Stuart           | CATHERINE D BELL           | 51 That Lass o' Lowrie's            | FRANCIS H BURNETT         |
| 17 Picciola.               | X B SAISTINE               | 53 Cloverly                         | MARY A. HIGGINS           |
| 18 Hope Campbell.          | CATHERINE D BELL           | 54 Alec Green.                      | SILAS K. HOCKING          |
| 19 Horace and May          | CATHERINE D BELL           | 55 Sweet Counsel.                   | SARAH TITLES              |
| 20 Ella and Marion.        | CATHERINE D BELL           | 56 The Milestones of Life.          | Rev A. F. THOMSON         |
| 21 Kenneth and Hugh.       | CATHERINE D BELL.          | 57 Little Women.                    | LOUISA M. ALCOCK          |
| 22 Rosa's Wish.            | CATHERINE D BELL.          | 58 Little Wives                     | LOUISA M. ALCOCK          |
| 23 Margaret Cecil          | CATHERINE D BELL.          | 59 Barriers Burned Away             | Rev E P Ro                |
| 24 The Grahams.            | CATHERINE D BELL           | 60 Opening a Chestnut Burr          | Rev E P. Ro               |
| 25 Home Sunshine           | CATHERINE D BELL           | 61 Uncle Tom's Cabin                | Mrs Stow                  |
| 26 What Katy did at School | SEAN COOLIDGE.             | 63 Dorothy                          | A NG                      |
| 27 Wearyfoot Common        | LEITCH RITCHIE             | 67 Pine Needles.                    | ELIZABETH WETHERELL       |
| 28 Sydonie's Dowry         | By the Author of "Denise." | 68 Helen Leslie                     | DARLEY DAI                |
| 29 Aunt Jane's Hero        | Mrs F PRENTISS             | 69 Huguenot Family                  | CATHERINE D BE            |
| 31 Aunt Alice              | CATHERINE D BELL           | 70 Only a Girl's Life               | Mrs MERCH                 |
| 32 What Katy Did           | SUSAN COOLIDGE             | 71 Lilies or Thistledown.           | J A. MATHEW               |
| 33 Grace Huntley           | Mrs S C HALL.              | 72 Jack Grainger's Cousin           | J A. MATHEW               |
| 34 Merchant's Daughter     | Mrs S C HALL               | 73 Little Friends at Glenwood       | J A MATHEW                |
| 35 Daily Governess         | Mrs S C HALL.              | 74 Without a Home                   | Rev. E P R                |

